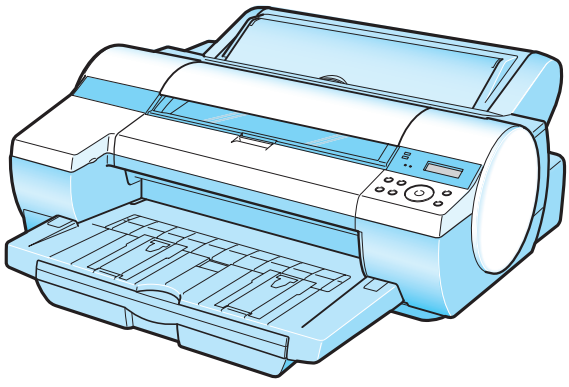
Canon

Large Format Printer

imagePROGRAF

iPF5100

User Manual



ENG

Contents

Introduction 1

How to use this manual 1

About This User Manual 1
Viewing Videos of Explanations 3
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 4

Printer Parts 8

Printer parts 8

Front 8
Back 10
Top Cover (Inside) 11
Tray Feed Area 12
Roll Paper Unit Cover (Inside) 13
Carriage 14
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 15
Control Panel 16
Vents 18
Cassette 19

Control Panel 20

Turning the Printer On and Off 20
Printer Modes 23
Switching Modes 27
Printer Menu Operations 29
Main Menu Operations 30
Menu Structure 32
Main Menu Settings 47
Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 58
Submenu Display 60
Status Print 62

Optional accessories 69

Stand 69
Roll Holder Set 70
Desktop Stacker 71
IEEE 1394 Expansion Board 71

Printer Specifications 72

Specifications 72
Basic Environmental Performance 77
Print Area 78

Basic Printing Workflow 80

Printing procedure 80

Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette 80
Loading and Printing on Rolls 82
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot 86
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 88
Printing from Windows 89
Printing from Mac OS X 90
Printing from Mac OS 9 92
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 94
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) 96
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) 98

Canceling print jobs 100

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 100
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows 101
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X 102
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9 104

Handling Paper 106

Paper 106

Paper 106
Types of Paper 107
Paper Sizes 112

Handling rolls 114

Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source 114
Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder 115
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder 117
Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit 118
Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit 122
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 124
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) 125
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 126
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 127
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically 128
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 130
Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 134
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls 135
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 138
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) 142
Roll Holder Set 143
Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder 144
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit 146
Removing the Roll Feed Unit 147
Installing the Roll Feed Unit 148
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 149
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 151
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 152

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 153

Handling sheets 154

Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source 154
Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source 155
Loading Sheets in the Cassette 156
Loading Sheets Manually 159
Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) 167
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) 168
Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) 170
Removing Paper from the Cassette 171
Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot 172
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette 173
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray 179

Handling sheets for paper feed slots 182

Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source 182
Loading Sheets Manually 183
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) 191
Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) 193
Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot 195
Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot 196
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray 197

Output Stacker 200

Desktop Stacker 200
Using the Output Stacker 201

Enhanced Printing Options 202

Print quality and color settings 202

Choosing a Paper for Printing 202
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 203
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 207
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 209
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 211
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 212
Printing Office Documents 213
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver 214
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment 218
Printing Photos in Monochrome 219
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 220
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) 222
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) 225
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 228
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 231
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 234
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 237
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 239
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) 242
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 245
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 247

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)....249
Printing Office Documents (Windows)....251
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)....253
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)....255
Printing Photos and Images (Windows)....257
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)....259
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)....262
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows)....265
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X)....267
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9)....270
Printing enlargements or reductions....273
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size....273
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width....274
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value....275
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER....276
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)....277
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)....279
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)....281
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)....283
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)....286
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)....290
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)....292
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)....295
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)....298
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)....300
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)....302
Printing at full size....305
Printing on Oversized Paper....305
Borderless Printing at Actual Size....307
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)....309
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)....311
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)....314
Printing at Full Size (Windows)....318
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)....320
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)....323
Borderless Printing....325
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size....325
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width....327
Borderless Printing at Actual Size....329
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)....331
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)....333
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)....336
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)....340
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)....342
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)....345
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)....349
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)....351
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)....354

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 358
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 358
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 359
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 360
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 364
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) 366
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 369
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 373
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) 376
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet 380
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 380
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 382
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 383
Printing Posters in Sections 384
Printing Large Posters (Windows) 385
Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) 387
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 389
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 391
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 393
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 394
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) 396
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 398
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 400
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) 403
Centering originals 405
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 405
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 406
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 407
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) 409
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) 412
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 415
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 417
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) 419
Conserving roll paper 422
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees 422
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 423
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 424
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) 426
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) 429
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) 431
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 433
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) 436
Printing CAD Drawings 438
Printing CAD Drawings 438
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 439
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) 441
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 443

Other useful settings 445
Printing With Watermarks 445
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation 446
Using Favorites 447
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing 447
Printing from Photoshop 448
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 449
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) 450
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) 451
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) 453
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) 455
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 457
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) 459
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 461
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) 463

Software 465

Windows 465
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 465
Confirming Print Settings (Windows) 467
Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows) 469
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 470
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 471
Using Favorites (Windows) 472
Main Sheet (Windows) 474
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 478
Layout Sheet (Windows) 480
Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows) 482
Favorites Sheet (Windows) 483
Utility Sheet (Windows) 484
Support Sheet (Windows) 485
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 486
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 487
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) 489
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 492
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 493
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 494
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 495
Digital Photo Front-Access 496
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) 497
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) 499
Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows) 501
Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 507
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing 509
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 510
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) 511
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) 512
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 514
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 515

Mac OS X 516
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 516
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X) 517
Checking the Layout Before Printing 519
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) 520
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) 521
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 522
Main Pane (Mac OS X) 523
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 525
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 527
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) 528
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) 529
Support Pane (Mac OS X) 530
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 530
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) 531
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 534
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) 535
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 536
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) 538
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) 539
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 540
Mac OS 9 541
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9) 541
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9) 542
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9) 544
Main Pane (Mac OS 9) 545
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) 547
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) 549
Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) 550
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) 551
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) 552
Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) 553
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) 555
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 558
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9) 559
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) 561
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 564
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 566
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 567
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) 568

Network Setting 569

Network Setting 569
Network Environment 569
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 571
Initializing the Network Settings 572
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 573
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 575
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 577

Specifying Printer-Related Information....579
Using RemoteUI....580
Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur....581
Network Setting (Windows)....582
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings....582
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type....584
Specifying NetWare Print Services....587
Specifying NetWare Protocols....590
Configuring NetWare Network Settings....592
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)....593
Sharing the Printer in Windows....594
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....596
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....597
Network Setting (Macintosh)....598
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings....598
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)....599
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)....600
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)....604
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)....608
Maintenance 610
Adjusting the Printhead....610
Correcting Print Misalignment....610
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically....610
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually....612
Adjusting the Printhead Height....614
Adjusting the feed amount....615
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically....615
Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually....619
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength....623
Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy....624
Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets....626
Color adjustment....628
Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors....628
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment....631
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows)....632
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light....636
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)....639
Ink Tanks....641
Ink Tank....641
Replacing Ink Tanks....642
Checking Ink Tank Levels....648
When to Replace Ink Tanks....649
Printheads....650
Printhead....650
Checking the Print Quality....650

Improving the Print Quality 650
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 651
Cleaning the Printhead 652
Replacing the Printhead 653

Maintenance Cartridge 661

Maintenance Cartridge 661
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 661
Checking the Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 667
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 668

Cleaning the Printer 669

Cleaning the Printer Exterior 669
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 670
Cleaning the Paper Retainer 673
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller 674
Cleaning Spurs Used in Paper Feeding 675
Cleaning the Printhead 678

Other Maintenance 679

Preparing to Transfer the Printer 679
Updating the Firmware 685

Troubleshooting 686

Frequently Asked Questions 686

Frequently Asked Questions 686
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 688

Printing does not start 689

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 689
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent 689
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 689

Cannot print over a network 690

Cannot connect the printer to the network 690
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually 691
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network 693
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks 694
Cannot print over a NetWare network 695

The printer stops during a print job 696

An error message is shown on the Display Screen 696
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper 696

Problems with the printing quality 697

Printing is faint 697
Paper rubs against the Printhead 698
The edges of the paper are dirty 699
The surface of the paper is dirty 700
The back side of the paper is dirty 700
Banding in different colors occurs 700
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 700

Colors in printed images are uneven....701
Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper....702
Lines are misaligned....702
The length of printed images is inaccurate....702
Documents are printed in monochrome....702
Printed colors are inaccurate....703
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs....704
Documents are printed crooked....704
White dots about 1 mm (0.039 in) apart appear on printed documents, in the direction paper is fed....704
Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette....704
Immediately After Borderless Printing, the Trailing Edge Margin is Soiled During Regular Printing....705
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper....705
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)....705

Installation problems....706
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly....706
Removing Installed Printer Drivers....707

Clearing jammed paper....708
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper....708
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)....712
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray....713
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette....717

If the Printer makes a strange sound....723
If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound....723

Other problems....724
The printer consumes a lot of ink....724
A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge....724
Paper is not cut straight....724
Paper cannot be cut....725
Depression on the leading edge is left....725
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper....725
The printer does not go on....725
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot....726
Cannot load sheets in the tray....726
The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot.....726
Ink level detection....727

Error Message 729

Responding to Messages....729
Responding to Messages....729
Error Messages....731
Calibration multi-sensor err....733
Paper loaded askew.....733
Paper Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline....733
Paper Mismatch / ReplcPap:Press↓....733

Paper Too Large / Please Check....734
Paper Too Small / Please Check....734
PaprSiz Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline....734
PaprTyp Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline....734
Messages regarding paper....735
Paper Mismatch....735
PaprTyp Mismatch....735
PaprSiz Mismatch....736
Paper Size / Please Check....737
Need A4/Letter Vert. or Larger....737
Need 10 in or Larger Roll....737
Roll Paper / Please Replace....738
Load Papr in Cas / Press Online.....739
Cassette Selectd / Press ↑ Key....739
Cassette Undetected....739
Media Check / Please Cancel....739
Paper Feed Slot / SpcfdPapr NotFit....739
Sheets Loaded / Press ↓ To Eject....740
Tray Selected....740
Check Supported Paper.....741
Remove paper....742
Roll Paper Chk / Check Width/Spcr....743
Paper Loaded / Crooked....744
Paper Askew / Please Reload....745
Paper / Please Reload....746
Papr Size Undetected....746
Can't DetectPapr....747
Feed Limit....747
Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key....747
Cutting Error....748
Roll P Unit / Please Check....748
Roll Selected / Load Roll....749
Messages regarding ink....750
Ink Lvl: Chk xx (xx represents an ink color)....750
Ink Tank / Check xx (xx represents an ink color)....750
Not Enough Ink....751
No Ink Left....752
Ink Tank / Replace xx (xx represents an ink color)....752
Ink Tank Cover / Close Please....753
The remaining level of the following ink cannot be correctly detected.....753
Mist Full Soon....753
Messages regarding printing or adjusment....754
Paper Type / Please Change....754
Online Key / and recalibrate....754
Excessv Temp/Hu / Press OK/Stop....755
Press OK and recalibrate....755

Messages regarding printheads 756
Online Key / and recalibrate 756
Printhead x / Check Nozzles (x is Left or Right) 756
Printhead / Please Check 757
Check Printout 757
Printhead x / Replace Printhd (x is Left or Right) 757
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge 758
Maint Cartridge / Load Cartridge 758
MTCart Full Soon 758
Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart 758
Other Messages 759
GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 759
Top Cover / Please Close 759
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number) 759
Power On / Again 760
Consumables Low 761
Repl Consumables 761
Power On / Again / Multi-sensor Err 761
Cannot update firmware 761

Introduction

How to use this manual

About This User Manual

- Symbols

  The following symbols are used in this User Manual to indicate safety information and explanations on restrictions or precautions in use.

	Important	Indicates important information that must be followed when using the printer. Be sure to read this information to prevent printer damage or operating errors.
	Caution	Indicates caution items for which operating error poses a risk of injury or damage to equipment or property. To ensure safe use, always follow these precautions.
	Note	Indicates helpful reference information and supplemental information on particular topics.

- Button names and user interface elements

  Key and button names on the control panel and user interface elements in software (such as menus and buttons) are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Control Panel Buttons	Example: Press the **OK** button.
Control Panel Interface Items and Messages	Example: **Head Cleaning** is displayed.
Software Interface Items (Menus and Buttons)	Example: Click **OK** .
Keyboard Keys	Example: Press the Tab key.

- Part Names

  Names of printer parts are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Printer part names	Example: Open the Top Cover .

- Cross-reference

  Other pages or manuals that provide related information are indicated as follows in this User Manual.

Cross-Reference in the Same User Manual	Example: see “Turning the Printer On and Off”. (→P.20) Click the link to jump to the corresponding page.
Cross-Reference in Related Manuals	Example: See the Paper Reference Guide .
Other Cross-Reference	Example: See the printer driver help.

- Figures and software screens
  - Figures in this User Manual may be different from the actual appearance of the printer in some cases.
  - Screens depicted in this User Manual for the printer driver or other software may be different from the actual screens because of subsequent updates.
  - Windows XP screens are used in explanations of Windows operations in this User Manual.
- Trademarks
  - Canon, the Canon logo, and imagePROGRAF are trademarks or registered trademarks of Canon Inc.
  - Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
  - Macintosh is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
  - Other company and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.
- Copyright

  © 2007 Canon Inc.
  - Unauthorized reproduction of this User Manual in whole or part is prohibited.
- May we request

  Thank you for understanding the following points.
  - The information in this User Manual is subject to change without notice.
  - We strive to ensure accuracy of information in this User Manual, but if you notice errors or omissions, please contact us.

Viewing Videos of Explanations

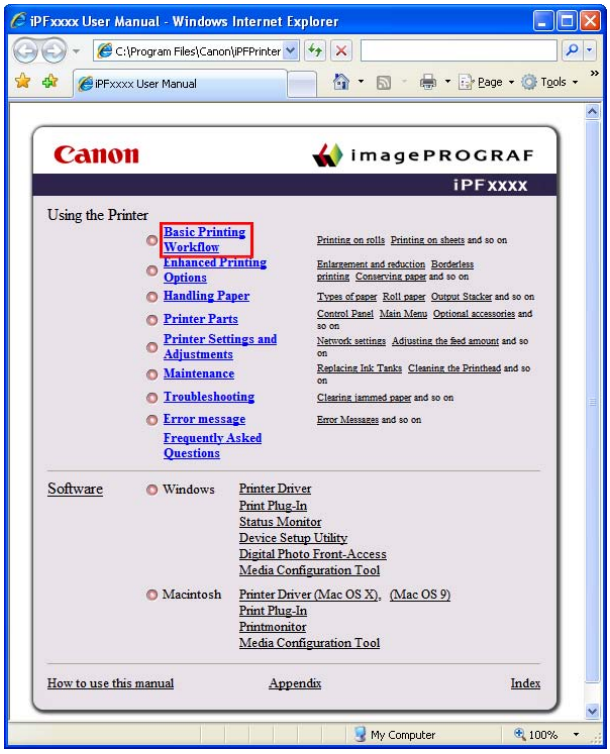
To view videos related to topic pages, click the **View Video** button. The video will play in a separate window. This way, you can learn by watching demonstrations of the actual procedures.

Video Requirements: In Windows, Adobe Flash Player must be installed to view the videos.
If it is not installed, download it by clicking the following URL.
http://www.adobe.com/products/flashplayer/
Note that this URL is subject to change. If you cannot access this URL, download Adobe Flash Player by visiting the main Adobe website and navigating to the appropriate page.

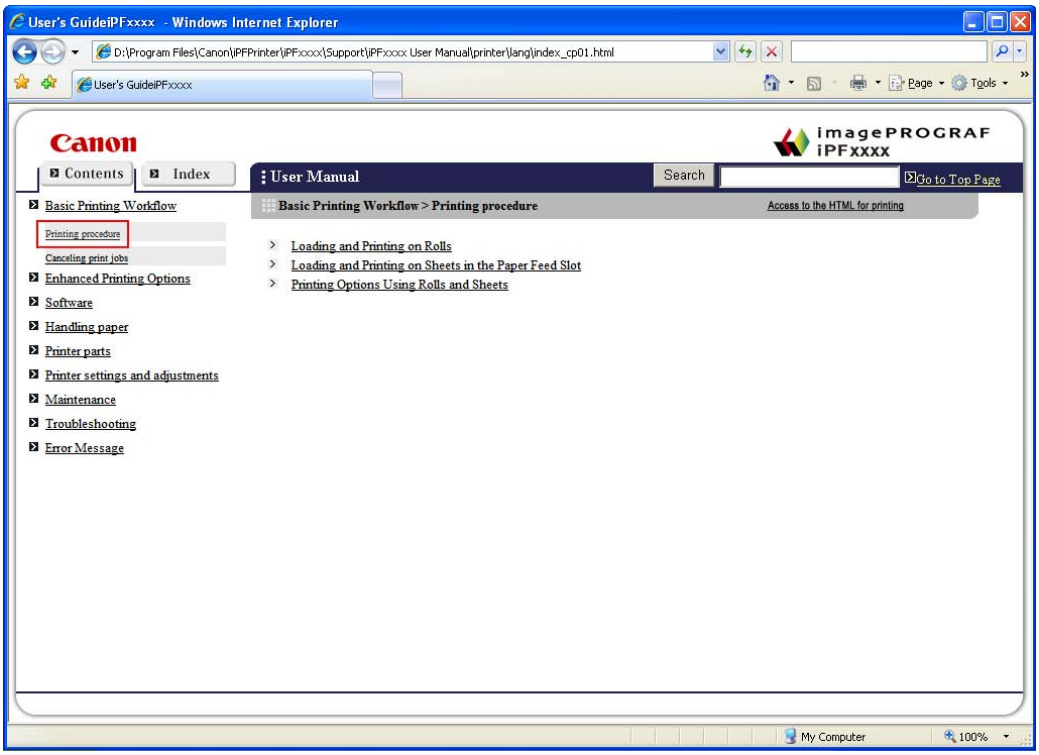
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing

For your convenience when printing this manual, HTML versions of the sections in “Using the Printer” on the top page are available. All topics in a section are combined in one file for printing. This section describes how to print sections of the manual, using the content of **Printing Procedure** in **Basic Printing Workflow** as an example.

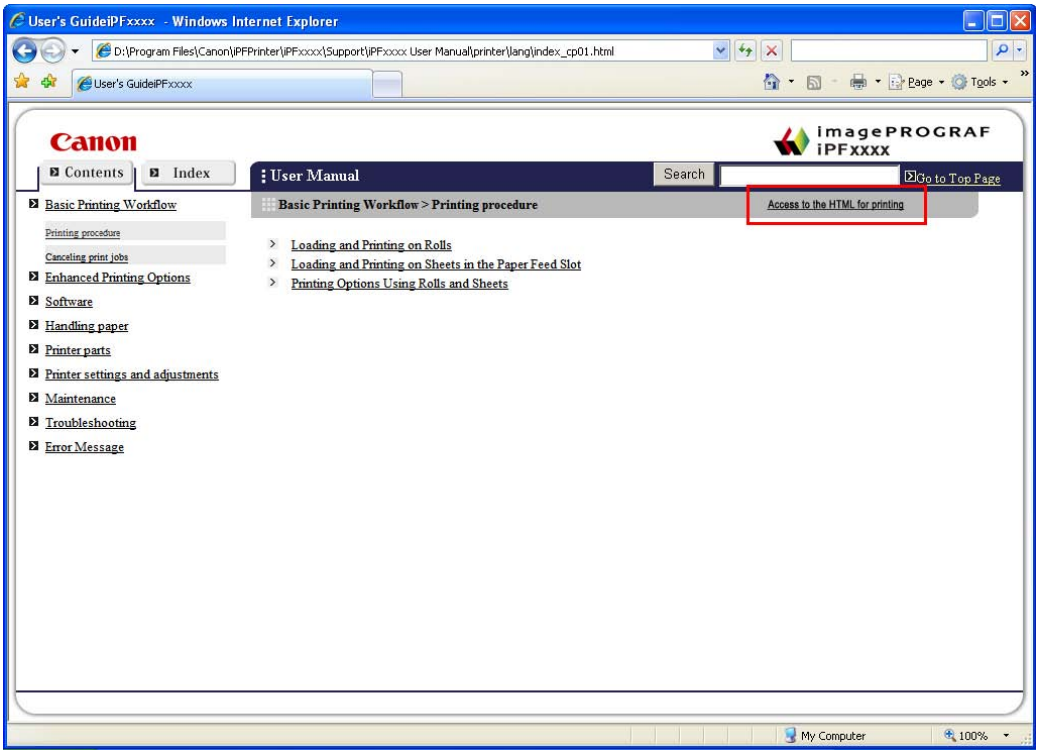
1. On the top page, click **Basic Printing Workflow**.



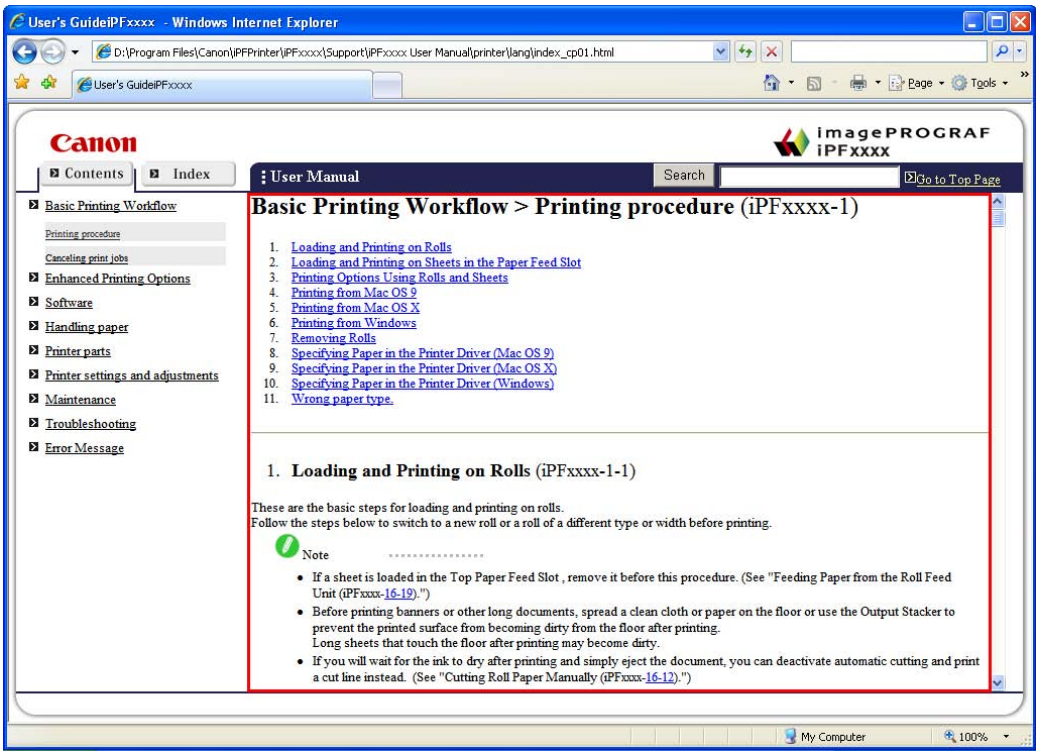
2. Under **Basic Printing Workflow** in the left frame, click **Printing Procedure**.



3. In the title area of **Printing Procedure**, click **Access to the HTML for printing**.



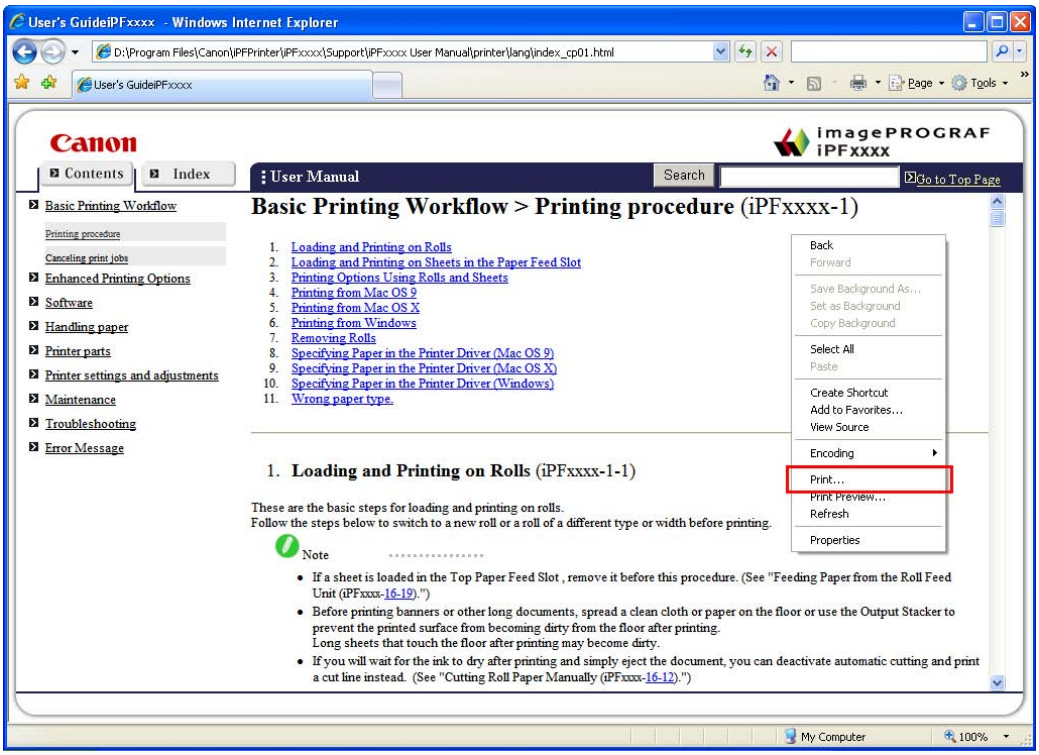
An HTML version of the topics in **Printing Procedure** is displayed, suitable for printing.



4. Access the printing dialog box as follows, depending on your computer's operating system.

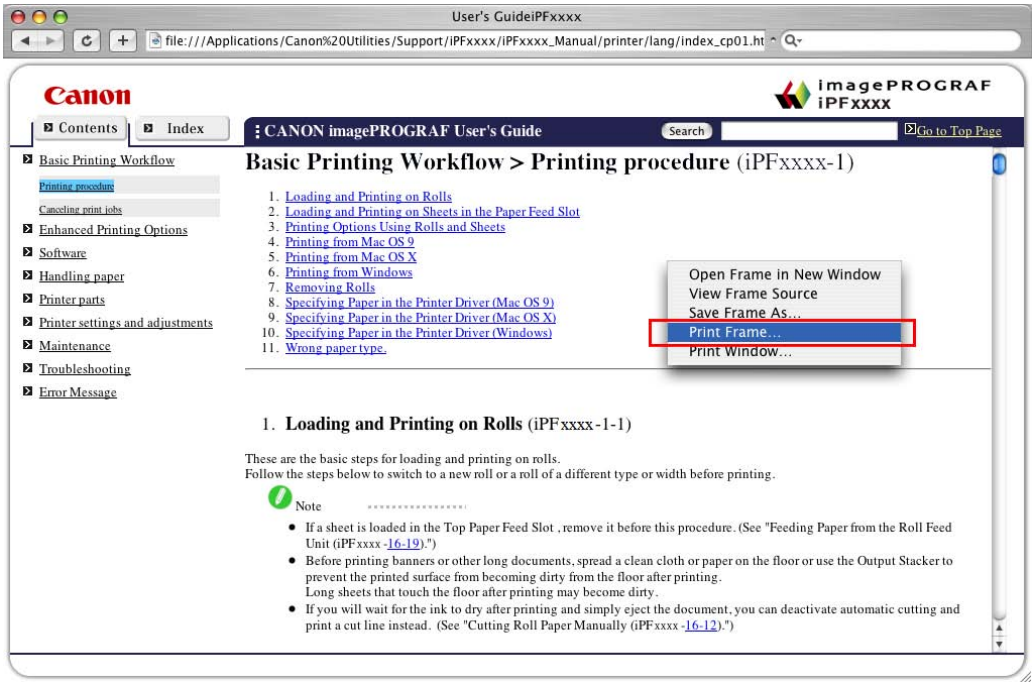
- Windows

  In Windows, right-click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link. In the shortcut menu, click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.



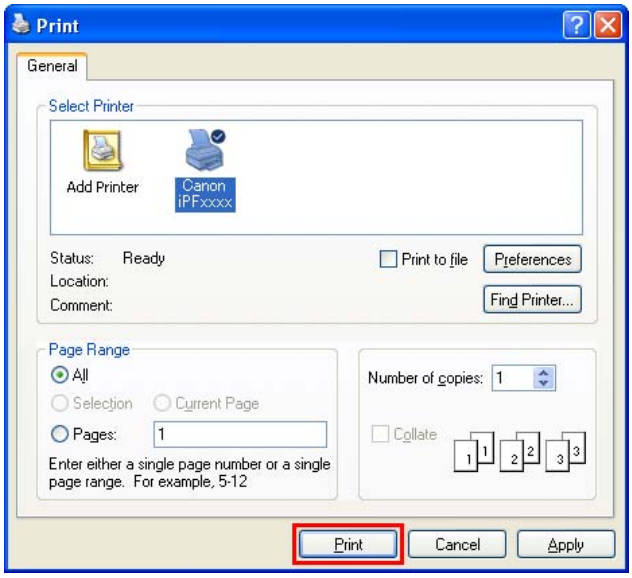
- Macintosh

  On a Macintosh computer, click anywhere in the explanation area except on a figure or a link while holding the Ctrl key. In the shortcut menu, click **Print Frame** to display the **Print** dialog box.

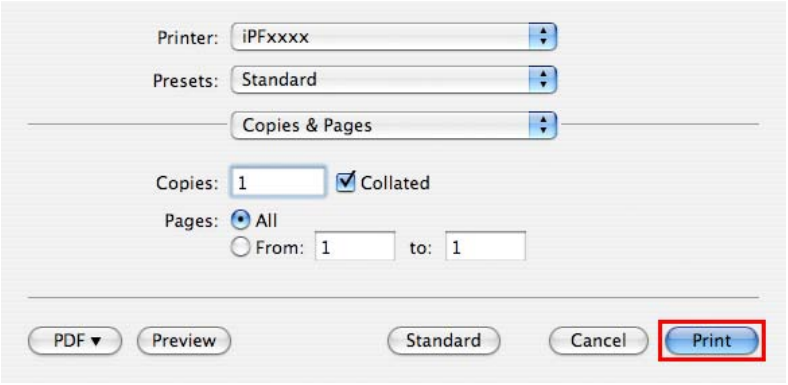


5. Specify conditions as needed, and then click **Print** (Windows) or **Print** (Macintosh).

- Windows



- Macintosh



Note

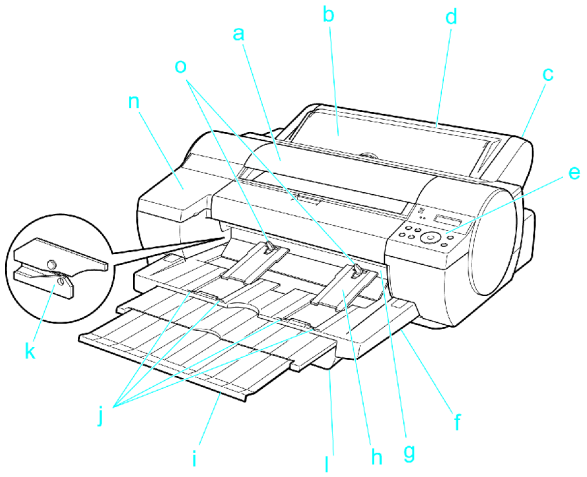
- To print “Software” on the top page or individual topics that are displayed, follow steps 4 and 5.

Printer Parts

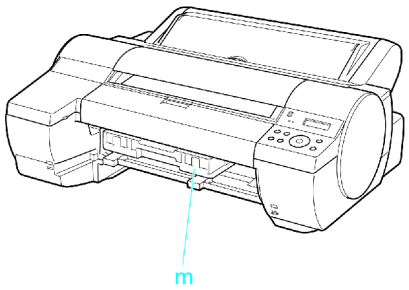
Printer parts

Front

Standard



When the Cassette and Output Tray are removed



*1: When the Cassette and Output Tray are removed

a. Top Cover

Open this cover to install the Printhead and remove any jammed paper from inside the printer, as needed. (→P.11)

b. Paper Tray Cover

Open this cover to load sheets in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (→P.12)

c. Roll Feed Unit

Load rolls in this unit. You can also load sheets in this unit manually.

d. Roll Paper Unit Cover

Open this cover to load rolls. (→P.13)

e. Control Panel

Use this panel to operate the printer and check the printer status. (→P.16)

f. Output Tray

Printed documents are ejected into the output tray.

g. Output Tray (Front Paper Feed Slot)

All printed documents are ejected from this slot. When loading heavyweight paper, insert it here. (→P.12)

h. Vertical Paper Guides

When printing on rolls, lift the guides and support ejected documents to prevent paper jams. Lifting the guides when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot will automatically raise the Front Tray Guides, making it easier to load paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

i. Output Tray Extension

An extension to prevent ejected paper from falling to the floor. Pull out the extension to match the paper size before printing on sheets.

j. Paper Alignment Line

When loading heavyweight paper, ensure the paper edge is parallel to this line.

k. Cutter Unit

A round-bladed cutter for automatic roll cutting. The cutter is retracted inside when not cutting.

l. Cassette

Load sheets in this tray.

m. Maintenance Cartridge

Absorbs excess ink.

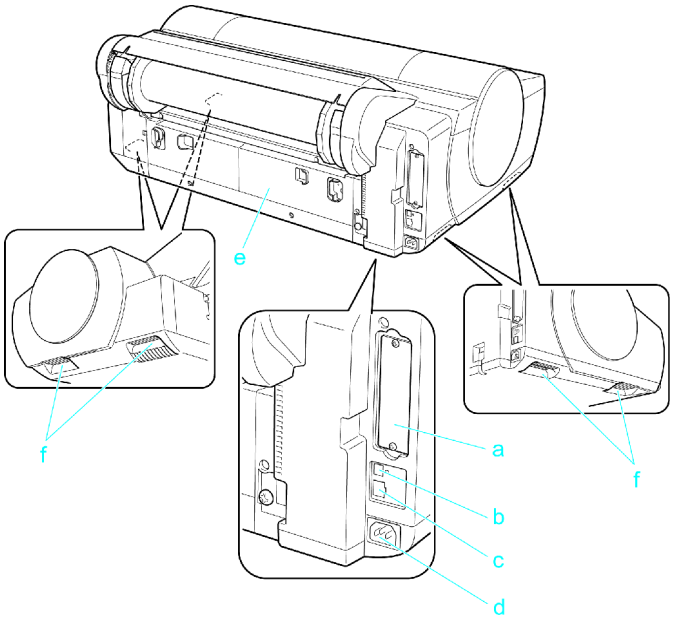
n. Ink Tank Cover

Open this cover to replace Ink Tank. (→P.15)

o. Front Tray Guides

Lifting the Vertical Paper Guides when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot will automatically raise the guides, making it easier to load paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Back



a. Expansion Board Slots

For installing an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board, as desired.

b. USB Port

Connect a USB cable to this port. This port is compatible with USB 2.0 High Speed mode.

c. Ethernet Port

Connect an Ethernet cable to this port.

d. Power Supply Connector

Connect the power cord to this connector.

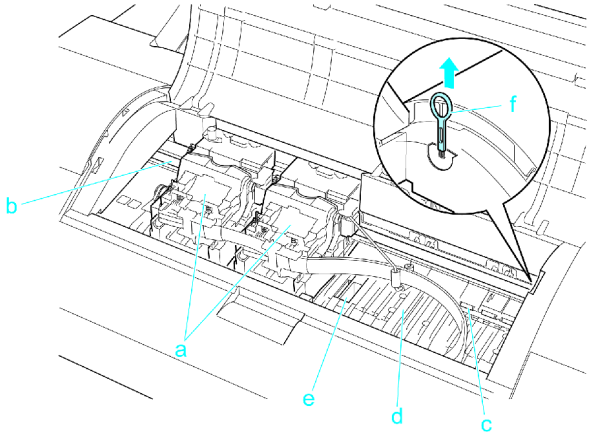
e. Back Cover

Open this cover to remove any jammed paper when printing from the Cassette, as needed.

f. Carrying handles (Four Positions)

When carrying the printer, hold it by these handles under both sides.

Top Cover (Inside)



a. Carriage

Moves the Printhead. The carriage serves a key role in printing. (→P.14)

b. Carriage Shaft

The Carriage slides along this shaft.

c. Paper Retainer

Important in supplying the paper. This retainer holds paper as it is fed.

d. Platen

The Printhead moves across the platen during printing. The Vacuum holes on the platen holds paper in place.

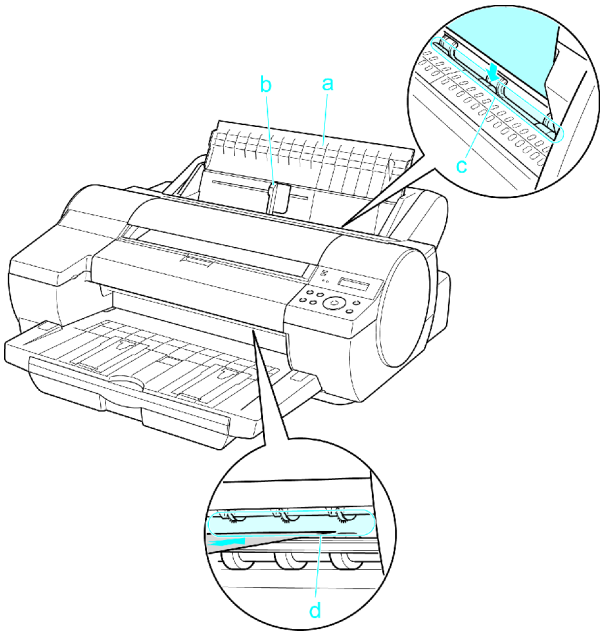
e. Borderless Printing Ink Grooves

For catching ink outside the edges of paper during borderless printing.

f. Cleaning Brush

When cleaning inside the printer under the Top Cover, use this brush to sweep away paper dust on the Platen.

Tray Feed Area



a. Tray

Load sheets manually in this tray.

b. Width Guide

When loading paper, move the guide to match the paper size.

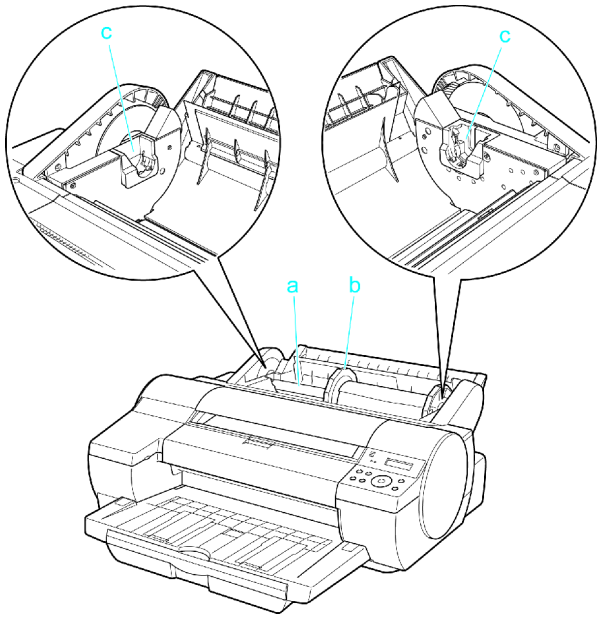
c. Top Paper Feed Slot

When loading sheets, insert them here.

d. Front Paper Feed Slot (Output Tray)

When loading heavyweight paper, insert it here. All printed documents are ejected from this slot.

Roll Paper Unit Cover (Inside)



a. Roll Holder

Load rolls on this holder.

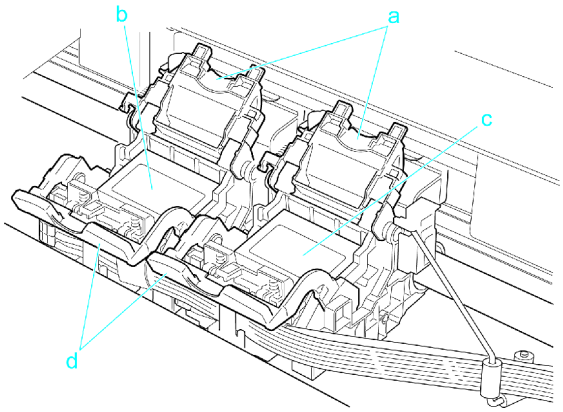
b. Holder Stopper

Secure rolls on the Roll Holder with this part.

c. Roll Holder Slot

Slide the Roll Holder into this guide slot.

Carriage



a. Printhead Fixer Cover

Holds the Printhead in place.

b. Printhead L

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. It serves a key role in printing.

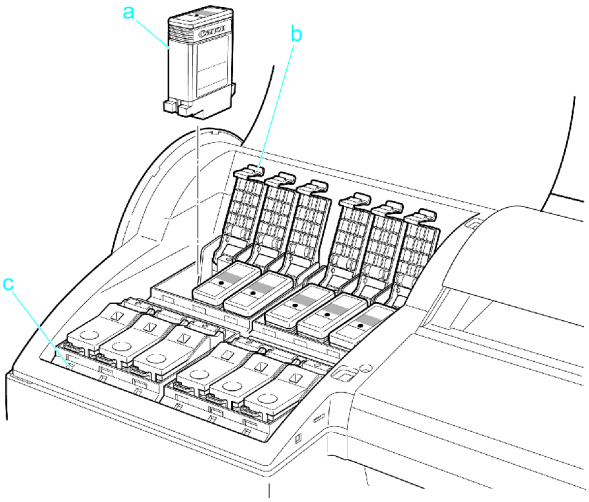
c. Printhead R

The printhead is equipped with ink nozzles. It serves a key role in printing.

d. Printhead Fixer Lever

Locks the Printhead Fixer Cover.

Ink Tank Cover (Inside)



a. Ink Tank

Cartridges of ink in various colors.

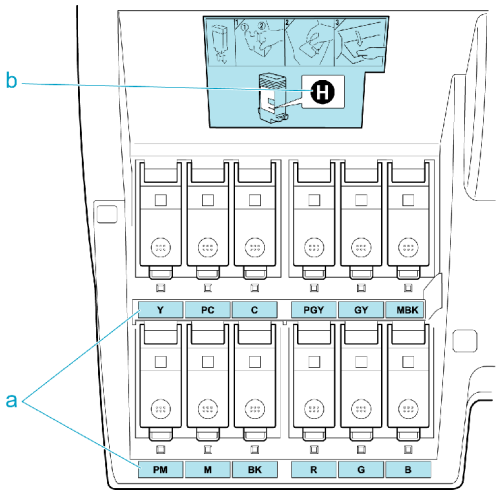
b. Ink Tank Lock Lever

A lever that locks the Ink Tank in place and protects it. Lift and press down the lever when replacing an Ink Tank.

c. Ink Lamp (Red)

Indicates the state of the Ink Tank as follows when the Ink Tank Cover is opened.

- On
  The Ink Tank is installed correctly.
- Off
  No Ink Tank is installed, or the ink level detection function is disabled.
- Flashing Slowly
  Not much ink is left.
- Flashing Rapidly
  There is no more ink.



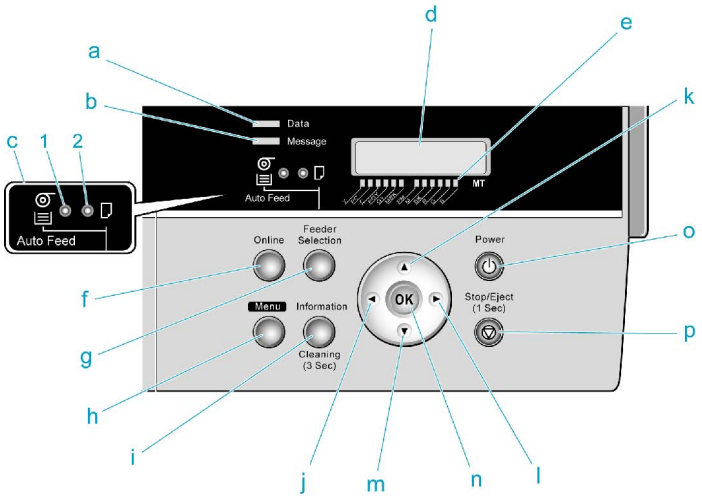
a. Ink Color Label

Load an Ink Tank corresponding to the color and name on these labels.

b. Ink Set

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer (→P.641) is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “H” is printed on the label.

Control Panel



a. **Data lamp** (Green)
   - Flashing
     During printing, the Data lamp flashes when the printer is receiving or processing print jobs. Otherwise, this lamp flashes when the printer is paused or updating the firmware.
   - Off
     There are no active print jobs when the Data lamp is off.

b. **Message lamp** (Orange)
   - On
     A warning message is displayed.
   - Flashing
     An error message is displayed.
   - Off
     The printer is off or is operating normally.

c. Paper Source Section

   After you press the **Feeder Selection** button, the lamp for your chosen paper source is lit.

   1. Auto Feed lamp (Green) (Cassette or Rolls)
      - On
        Shows whether a Cassette or roll is selected as the paper source.
      - Off
        Shows whether the Tray or Front Paper Feed Slot is selected as the paper source.

   2. Paper Tray lamp (Green)
      - On
        Shows whether the Tray or Front Paper Feed Slot is selected as the paper source.
      - Off
        Shows whether a Cassette or roll is selected as the paper source.

d. Display Screen

   Shows the printer menu, as well as the printer status and messages.

e. Color Label

   These labels indicate the Ink Tank colors and names. The labels correspond to the ink levels on the Display Screen.

f. **Online** Button

Switches the printer online and offline. (→P.27)

- Lit (Green)
  The printer is online.
- Flashing
  The printer is recovering from Sleep mode.
- Off
  The printer is offline.

g. **Feeder Selection** Button

Switches the paper source. Each time you press this button, the paper source switches between auto feed (when the paper source is a Cassette or roll) and manual feed (when the paper source is the Tray or the Front Paper Feed Slot). The corresponding lamp in the paper source section is lit.

h. **Menu** Button

Displays the main menu of the printer. (→P.47)

i. **Information** Button

Displays printer submenus. Press this key to display information about ink, paper, and so on. (→P.60)

You can also hold down this button for three seconds to clean the Printhead (**Head Cleaning A**).

j. ◄ Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the previous menu item or setting value.

k. ▲ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to rewind rolls manually. (→P.126)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level higher.

l. ► Button

Menu mode: Press this button to display the next menu item or setting value.

m. ▼ Button

Offline mode: Press this button to feed roll paper manually. (→P.126)

Menu mode: Press this button to display the menu one level lower.

n. **OK** Button

In menu mode, press this button to confirm or execute the selected item or setting.

o. **Power** Button

Turns the printer on and off. (→P.20)

p. **Stop/Eject** Button

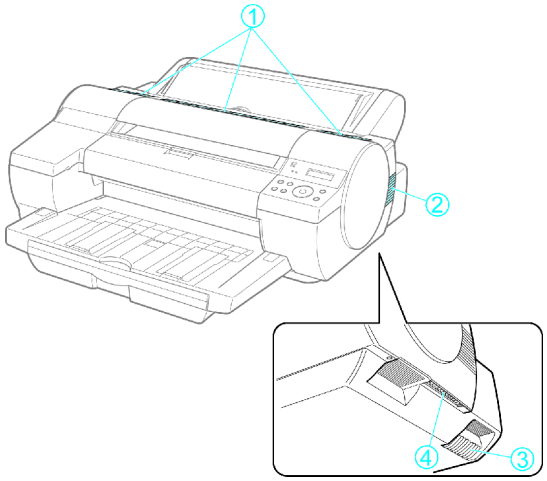
Stops jobs in progress or clears the menu and ejects the paper.

Note

- In Sleep mode, you can press any button to bring the printer online again.

Vents

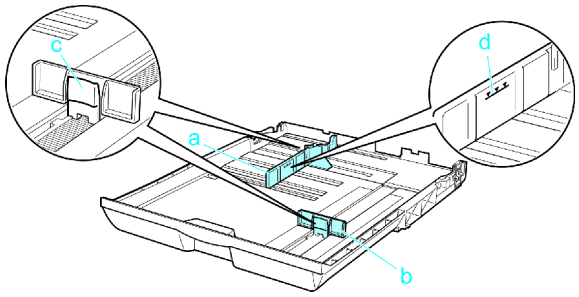
The vents are on top (1), on the right (2), and on the bottom on the right (3 and 4).



Caution

- Do not block these vents when the printer is on.
- Avoid setting paper or other light objects near the vents.

Cassette



a. Width Guide

Adjust this guide to hold paper widthwise.

b. Length Guide

Adjust this guide to hold paper lengthwise.

c. Guide Lever

Squeeze these levers to slide the guides.

d. Maximum Capacity Line

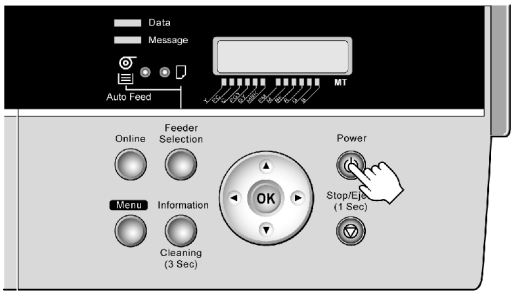
A guide line indicating how many sheets can be loaded. Do not load paper over this line.

Control Panel

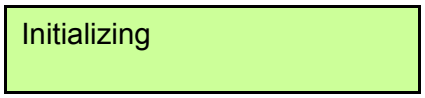
Turning the Printer On and Off

Turning the printer on

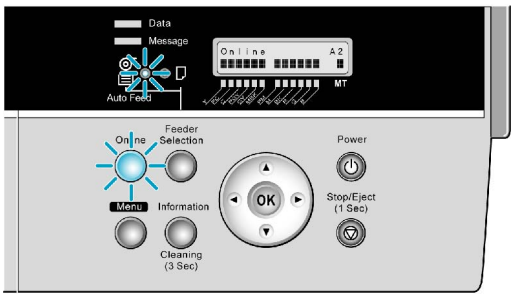
1. Press the **Power** button to turn on the printer.



After all lamps are lit and then go off, the printer starts up.
Initializing is displayed on the top line of the Display Screen, followed by the printer model and version number.



2. The printer goes online after startup, and the Online lamp and paper source section lamp remain lit.



The printer will not go online in the following situations. Take the appropriate action.

- The Top Cover is open
  Close the Top Cover.
- The Ink Tank Cover is open
  Close the Ink Tank Cover.
- The Printhead is not installed
  see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.653)
- Ink Tank is not installed
  see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.642)
- If “ERROR” is shown on the Display Screen.
  Turn off the printer and contact your Canon dealer.

- The Online lamp and **Message lamp** are not lit (even once), and nothing appears on the Display Screen
  Make sure the printer is plugged in correctly. Check the connection at the plug and electrical outlet.

Important

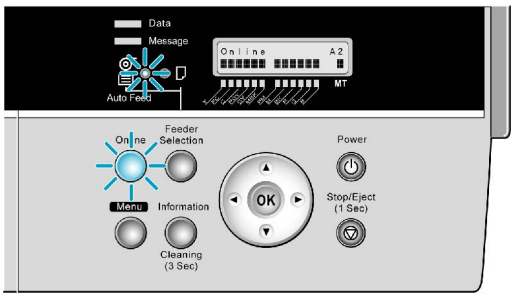
- Starting the printer when it is connected via the USB cable to a Macintosh computer that is off may cause the computer to start up at the same time. To prevent this, disconnect the USB cable before starting the printer. Connecting the printer to the computer via a USB hub may solve this issue.

Turning the printer off

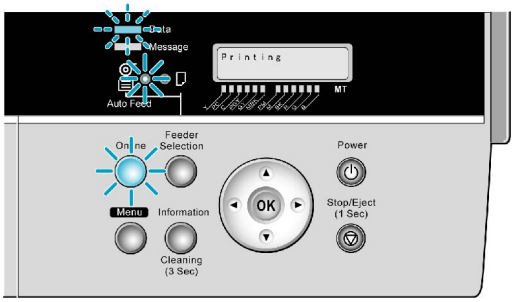
Important

- Never turn the printer off or unplug it during a print job. This could damage the printer.

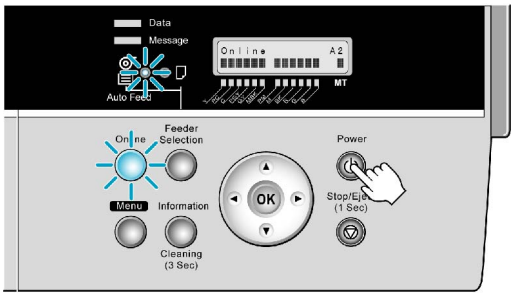
1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.



If the **Message lamp** is flashing, check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.731)
If the **Data lamp** is flashing, the printer is receiving a print job. Turn off the printer only after printing is finished.



2. Hold down the **Power** button for more than a second.



After **Shut Down..** is shown on the Display Screen, the printer shuts off.

```
Shut Down..
Please Wait..
```

Printer Modes

Printer modes are classified as follows and described in this toopic.

- Modes (→P.23)
- Mode transition (→P.24)
- Online, and state of the Control Panel (→P.24)
- Offline, and state of the Control Panel (→P.25)
- Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.26)
- Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel (→P.26)

Modes

The printer has five modes as follows:

- Online

  The printer is ready to receive jobs sent from the computer. Jobs sent from the computer are processed immediately. If jobs are received in other modes, they are printed the next time the printer goes online.
- Offline

  Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being processed.

  While the printer is offline, you can feed or cut roll paper manually.

  The printer goes offline automatically if jobs cannot be processed, such as if errors occur.
- Menu mode

  Menus are displayed on the printer, and you can select, set, or execute menu items. Any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed.
- Submenu mode

  Submenus are displayed regarding ink and paper information. Jobs can be received and printing is possible while submenus are displayed and the printer is online. In other modes, any jobs sent from the computer are held without being printed while submenus are displayed.
- Sleep mode

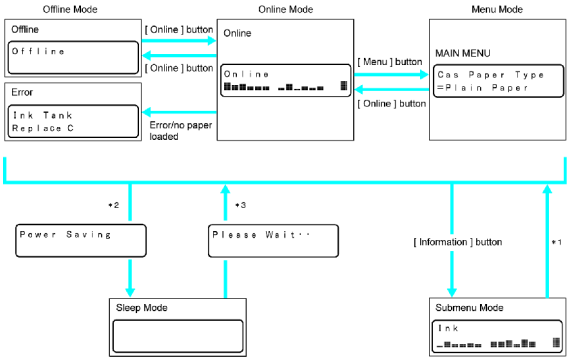
  The printer is in power-saving mode. The printer automatically enters Sleep mode to conserve power if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.

  You can specify the period before the printer enters Sleep mode in the **Sleep Timer** menu. (→P.47)

  If any print jobs are received when the printer is in Sleep mode (after it was originally online), the printer goes online and prints the jobs.

Mode transition

The printer mode transitions are as follows:

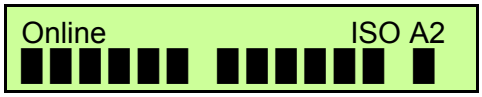


*1: When submenus are displayed, you can press any button other than the **Information** button to return to the previous mode.

*2: In Sleep mode, you can press any button to bring the printer online again.

*3: The printer automatically enters Sleep mode if it is idle for a specific period (by factory default, five minutes), that is, if no print jobs are received or buttons are pressed while all covers are closed.

Online, and state of the Control Panel



- Top Line of the Display Screen

  The printer status is displayed at left. At right, the size of paper loaded in the Cassette is displayed. (→P.170)
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen

  The remaining ink level is displayed at left and the Maintenance Cartridge capacity at right.

  However, any warning messages are displayed here instead. In this case, take the appropriate action. (→P.731)
- Online lamp (→P.16)

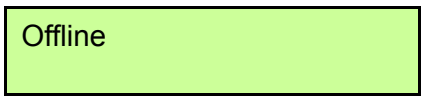
  Lit when the printer is online.
- **Data lamp** (→P.16)

  Flashes when print jobs are being received or processed.
- **Message lamp** (→P.16)

  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

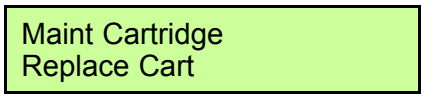
Offline, and state of the Control Panel

Offline



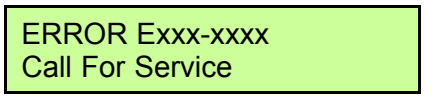
- Top Line of the Display Screen
  The printer status is displayed here.
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen
  Any warning messages are displayed here. In this case, take the appropriate action. (→P.731)
- **Message lamp** (→P.16)
  Lit when warning messages are displayed.

Error Messages (If Action Can be Taken)



- Display Screen
  Error messages are displayed in two pages. The pages are displayed alternately. Take the appropriate action. (→P.731)
- **Data lamp** (→P.16)
  Flashes when print jobs are being received.
- **Message lamp** (→P.16)
  Flashes when error messages are displayed.

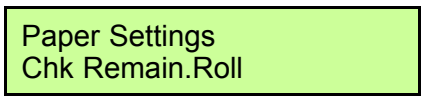
Error Messages (If Action Cannot be Taken)



- Display Screen
  Error notification (“ERROR”) is displayed with the error code and a message.
  Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.
  If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.
- **Data lamp** (→P.16)
  Flashes when print jobs are being received.
- **Message lamp** (→P.16)
  Flashes when error messages are displayed.

Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel

Main menu

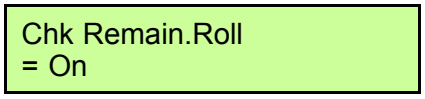


- Top Line of the Display Screen

  Menus and menu items are displayed here.
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen

  The selected item is displayed. Other items are available if "→" is displayed at right. Lower levels are available if "↓" is displayed at right. If other items and lower levels are both available, "↓" and "→" are displayed alternately. (→P.30)

Menu items and settings



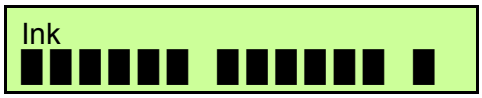
- Top Line of the Display Screen

  Menu items are displayed here.
- Bottom Line of the Display Screen

  Menu items or settings are displayed here. An equals sign "=" displayed at left indicates that this is the current value. (→P.30)

Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel

When submenus are displayed

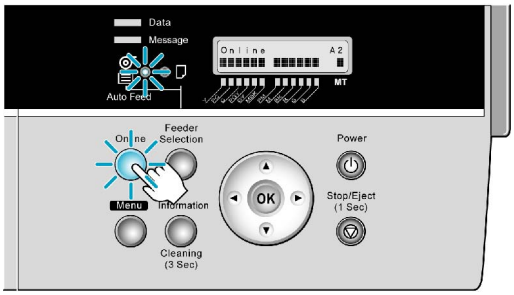


Information on ink and paper is shown on the top line of Display Screen and bottom lines of the Display Screen. (→P.60)

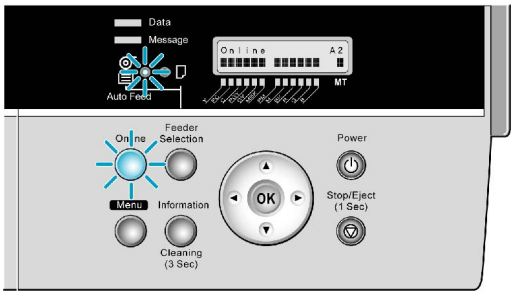
Switching Modes

Switching the Printer Online/Offline

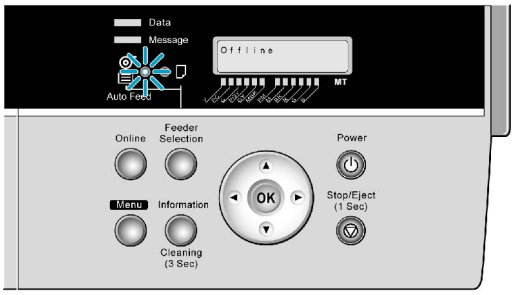
Press **Online** to switch the printer online or offline.



When the printer is online, **Online** is shown on the Display Screen top line and the Online lamp is lit.



When the printer is offline, **Offline** is shown on the Display Screen top line and the Online lamp is off.

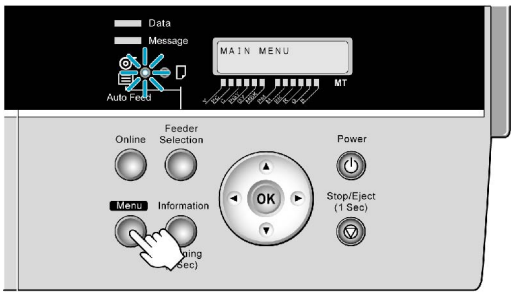


Depending on the status, the printer switches online and offline as follows.

Printer Status	When Online is Pressed
Online	Switches to offline and the Online lamp goes off.
Online (printing)	Switches offline and printing is paused.
Offline	Switches to online and the Online lamp is lit.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	If a Maintenance Cartridge error message is displayed, the error is temporarily cleared; the printer switches to online and the Online lamp is lit.
	If the following error messages are displayed, the printer goes online and printing is resumed. • **Check Supported Paper.** (→P.741) • **Roll Paper / Please Replace** (→P.738)
	In the case of other error messages or if paper is not loaded, the printer remains offline until you solve the problem. The Online lamp remains off.
Menu mode	Switches to online and the Online lamp is lit.
Menu mode (printing)	Switches to online and the Online lamp is lit. Print is resumed.

Switching to Menu Mode

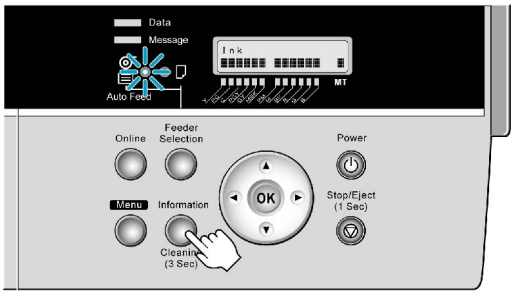
Press **Menu** to display the main menu.
MAIN MENU is shown on the Display Screen top line.



Depending on the status, the printer switches to Menu mode as follows.

Printer Status	When Menu is Pressed
Online	Switches to Menu mode.
Online (printing)	The printer stays online. It does not switch to Menu mode.
Offline	Switches to Menu mode.
Offline (printing)	Menus available during printing are displayed.
Offline, when an error message is displayed	You cannot access Menu mode until the problem is solved.

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.



Press **Information** to display information about ink, paper, and so on. Press **Information** repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.60)
After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about five seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Printer Menu Operations

For instructions on selecting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu levels and menu items, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.32)
The printer menu structure is made up of a main menu and submenus.
Access the main menu by pressing the **Menu** button on the Control Panel. The principal settings available in the main menu are as follows:

- Paper Settings
  Specify the type and size of paper.
- Print Settings
  Adjust or clean the Printhead, or adjust the paper feed amount.
- Printer Settings
  Configure the network settings, set the sleep timer, and specify the unit of measurement on the display.

Note

- By default, main menu settings apply to all print jobs. However, for settings that are also available in the printer driver, the values specified in the printer driver take priority.

Access the submenu by pressing the **Information** button on the Control Panel. You can check the following information in submenus.

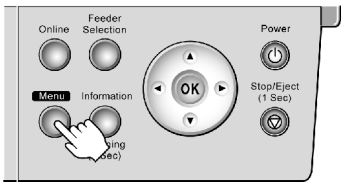
- Ink levels
- Maintenance Cartridge capacity
- Size and type of paper that is selected
- Amount of roll paper left

Main Menu Operations

Selecting Menu Items

To illustrate menu item selection, this section describes how to set the sleep timer for 10 minutes. For details on the sleep timer, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.47)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **System Setup**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
System Setup ↓
```

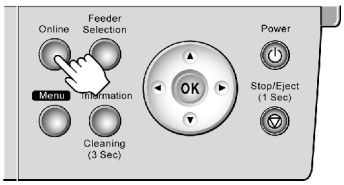
3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Sleep Timer**, and then press ▼.

```
System Setup
Sleep Timer ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **10 min.**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Sleep Timer
= 10 min.
```

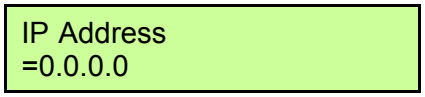
5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



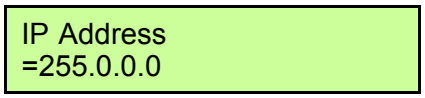
Entering Numbers in Main Menu Settings

This section describes how to enter numbers for IP address settings.

1. Display a menu item for numerical input. (→P.30)
2. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering numbers.



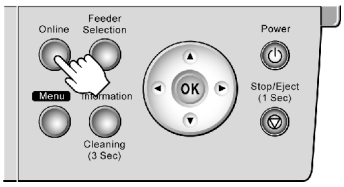
3. Press the **OK** button to prepare to enter the number.
4. Press ◄ or ► to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

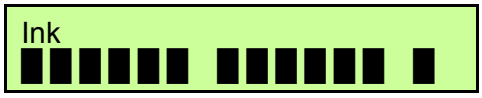
- Hold down ◄ or ► to increase or decrease the value continuously.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings is changed, a confirmation message is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Selecting Submenu Items

Press the **Information** button to display the submenus.



Press the **Information** button to display information about ink, paper, and so on. Press **Information** repeatedly to change the information displayed. (→P.60)
After you display a submenu, the printer will revert to the previous mode in about five seconds if no print job is received or if you do not operate the printer.

Menu Structure

Main Menu

The structure of the main menu is as follows. Values at right indicated by an asterisk "*" are the defaults.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see "Main Menu Operations". (→P.30)
For details on menu items, see "Main Menu Settings". (→P.47)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
Paper Cut (*1)	**No** *				
	Yes				
Head Cleaning (*5)	**Head Cleaning A**				
	Head Cleaning B				
Paper Settings	**Cas Paper Type**	**Plain Paper** * (*6)			
		Plain Paper HQ (*6)			
		Plain Paper HG (*6)			
		High Resolution (*6)			
		Coated Paper (*6)			
		Premium MatteP (*6)			
		Matte Photo (*6)			
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*6)			
		HW SemiGlPhoto2 (*6)			
		Photo PaperPlus (*6)			
		PhotoPlus SemiGl (*6)			
		CAD Trace Paper (*6)			
		Special # Here, the number is 1-10 (*6)			
	Cas Paper Size	**ISO A2**			
		ISO A3			
		ISO A3+			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		ISO A4			
		JIS B3			
		JIS B4			
		ANSI C			
		ANSI B			
		ANSI B Super			
		ANSI Letter			
		ANSI Legal			
		ARCH B			
		14"x17"			
		12"x16"			
		10"x12"			
		10"x15"			
		8"x10"			
		16"x20"			
		13"x22"			
	Manual Pap.Type (*10)	**Plain Paper** * (*6)			
		Plain Paper HQ (*6)			
		Plain Paper HG (*6)			
		High Resolution (*6)			
		Coated Paper (*6)			
		HW Coated (*6)			
		Premium MatteP (*6)			
		Matte Photo (*6)			
		Glossy Photo (*6)			
		Semi-Gl Photo (*6)			
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*6)			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		HW SemiGlPhoto2 (*6)			
		Poster Semi-Gl (*6)			
		SatinPhoto 190 (*6)			
		Photo PaperPlus (*6)			
		PhotoPlus SemiGl (*6)			
		Backlit Film (*6)			
		Backprint Film (*6)			
		ThinFab. Banner2 (*6)			
		Proofing Paper (*6)			
		FineArt Photo (*6)			
		FneArt HW Photo (*6)			
		FineArt Txtr (*6)			
		FineArt Wtrclr (*6)			
		FineArtBlockP (*6)			
		Canvas Matte2 (*6)			
		JPN Paper Washi (*6)			
		CAD Trace Paper (*6)			
		CAD Matte Film (*6)			
		POP Board (*6)			
		Special # Here, the number is 1-10 (*6)			
	Manual Pap.Size	**ISO A2**			
		ISO A2+			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		ISO A3			
		ISO A3+			
		ISO A4			
		ISO B3			
		ISO B4			
		JIS B3			
		JIS B4			
		ANSI C			
		ANSI B			
		ANSI B Super			
		ANSI Letter			
		ANSI Legal			
		ARCH B			
		ARCH A			
		DIN C3			
		DIN C4			
		14"x17"			
		12"x16"			
		10"x12"			
		10"x15"			
		16"x20"			
		13"x22"			
	Roll Media Type (*1), (*2)	**Plain Paper HG** * (*6)			
		Coated Paper (*6)			
		HW Coated (*6)			
		Premium MatteP (*6)			
		Glossy Photo (*6)			
		Semi-Gl Photo (*6)			
		HW GlossyPhoto2 (*6)			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		HW SemiGlPhoto2 (*6)			
		Poster Semi-Gl (*6)			
		SatinPhoto 190 (*6)			
		Backlit Film (*6)			
		Backprint Film (*6)			
		ThinFab. Banner2 (*6)			
		Proofing Paper (*6)			
		FneArt HW Photo (*6)			
		FineArt Txtr (*6)			
		FineArt Wtrclr (*6)			
		FineArtBlockP (*6)			
		Canvas Matte2 (*6)			
		JPN Paper Washi (*6)			
		CAD Trace Paper (*6)			
		Special # Here, the number is 1-10 (*6)			
	Chk Remain.Roll (*2)	**Off** *			
		On			
	Roll Length Set (*2), (*3)	**##.# m**			
		### feet			
Med.Detail Set.	(The paper type is displayed here.) (*6)	**Roll DryingTime**	**Off**		
			30 sec.		
			1 min.		
			3 min.		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			5 min.		
			10 min.		
			30 min.		
			60 min.		
		Scan Wait Time	**Off**		
			1 sec.		
			3 sec.		
			5 sec.		
			7 sec.		
			9 sec.		
		Feed Priority	**Automatic** *		
			Band Joint		
			Print Length		
		Adjust Length	From -0.70% to 0.70%		
		Head Height	**Automatic** *		
			Highest		
			High		
			Standard		
			Low		
			Lowest		
		Skew Check Lv.	**High Accuracy**		
			Standard *		
			Loose		
			Off		
		VacuumStrngth	**Automatic** *		
			Strongest		
			Strong		
			Standard		
			Weak		
			Weakest		
		NearEnd RllMrgn (*2)	**3mm**		
			20mm		
		Cut Speed (*2)	**Fast**		
			Standard		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			Slow		
		Trim Edge First (*2)	**Automatic**		
			On		
			Off *		
		Cutting Mode (*2)	**Automatic**		
			Eject		
			Manual		
		Bordless Margin (*2)	**Automatic**		
			Fixed		
		CutDustReduct. (*2)	**Off**		
			On		
		Nr End Sht Mrgn	**3mm**		
			20mm		
		Tray Source	**Front**		
			Top		
		Return Defaults	**No**		
			Yes		
Adjust Printer	**Auto Head Adj.**	**Standard Adj.**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Advanced Adj.	**No**		
			Yes		
		Auto Print	**Off**		
			On *		
	Manual Head Adj	No			
		Yes			
	Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Advanced Adj.	**No**		
			Yes		
	Manual Band Adj	**Adjust Band**	**No**		
			Yes		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
	Adj Far Ed Feed	**No**			
		Yes			
	Adjust Length	**No**			
		Yes			
	Calibration	**Auto Adjust**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Execution Log	(The date of execution is displayed.)		
			(The paper type is displayed here.)		
		Use Adj. Value	**No**		
			Yes *		
		Return Defaults	**No**		
			Yes		
Interface Setup	**EOP Timer**	**10 sec.**			
		30 sec.			
		1 min.			
		2 min.			
		5 min.			
		10 min. *			
		30 min.			
		60 min.			
	TCP/IP	**IP Mode**	**Automatic**		
			Manual *		
		Protocol (*4)	**DHCP**	**On**	
				Off *	
			BOOTP	**On**	
				Off *	
			RARP	**On**	
				Off *	
		IP Setting	**IP Address**	0.0.0.0* - 255.255.255.255	
			Subnet Mask	0.0.0.0* - 255.255.255.255	
			Default G/W	0.0.0.0* - 255.255.255.255	

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
	NetWare	**NetWare**	**On**		
			Off *		
		Frame Type (*8)	**Auto Detect**		
			Ethernet 2		
			Ethernet 802.2 *		
			Ethernet 802.3		
			Ethernet SNAP		
		Print Service (*8)	**BinderyPServer**		
			RPrinter		
			NDSPServer *		
			NPrinter		
	AppleTalk	**On**			
		Off *			
	Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**	**On** *		
			Off		
		Comm.Mode (*7)	**Half Duplex** *		
			Full Duplex		
		Ethernet Type (*7)	**10 Base-T** *		
			100 Base-TX		
		Spanning Tree	**Not Use** *		
			Use		
		MAC Address			
	Return Defaults	**No**			
		Yes			
Maintenance	**Replace P.head**	**Left Printhead**	**No**		
			Yes		
		Right Printhead	**No**		
			Yes		
	Move Printer	**No**			
		Yes			
	Clean Roller (*12)	**No**			
		Yes			
	Clean Platen	**No**			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		Yes			
	Spur Cleaning	No			
		Yes			
System Setup	Warning	Buzzer	Off		
			On *		
		Detect Mismatch	Pause		
			Warning		
			None *		
	Keep Media Size	Off			
		On *			
	PaperSize Basis	Sht Selection	ISO A3+ *		
			ANSI B Super		
		Roll Selection1 (*2)	ISO A3 (297mm) *		
			300mm Roll		
		Roll Selection2 (*2)	10in. (254mm) *		
			JIS B4 (257mm)		
	TrimEdge Reload	Automatic			
		Off *			
		On			
	Nozzle Check	Off			
		5 pages			
		10 pages			
		Automatic *			
	Sleep Timer	5 min. *			
		10 min.			
		15 min.			
		20 min.			
		30 min.			
		40 min.			
		50 min.			
		60 min.			
		240 min.			
	Length Unit	meter *			

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		feet/inch			
	Time Zone	0:London (GMT)			
		+1:Paris,Rome			
		+2:Athens,Cairo			
		+3:Moscow			
		+4:Eerevan, Baku			
		+5:Islamabad			
		+6:Dacca			
		+7:Bangkok			
		+8:Hong Kong			
		+9:Tokyo,Seoul			
		+10:Canberra			
		+11New Caledonia			
		+12:Wellington			
		-12:Eniwetok			
		-11:Midway is.			
		-10Hawaii(AHST)			
		-9:Alaska(AKST)			
		-8:Oregon (PST)			
		-7:Arizona(MST)			
		-6:Texas (CST)			
		-5:NewYork(EST)			
		-4:Santiago			
		-3:Buenos Aires			
		-2:			
		-1:Cape Verde			
	Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd *			
		dd/mm/yyyy			
		mm/dd/yyyy			
	Date & Time	Date	yyyy/mm/dd (*9)		
		Time	hh:mm		
	Language	[English]*			

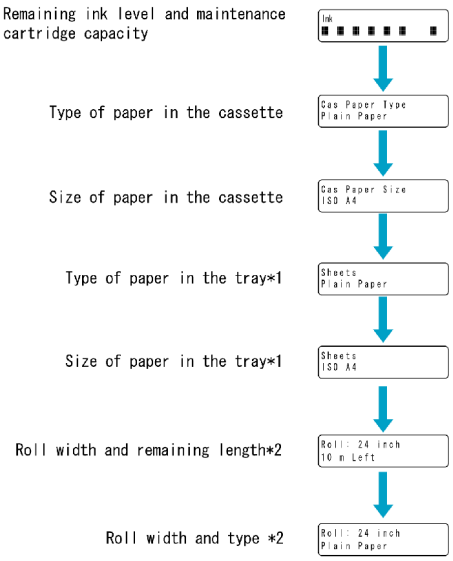
First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
		[Français]			
		[Italiano]			
		[Deutsch]			
		[Español]			
		[カタカナ]			
	Reset MediaType	**No** *			
		Yes			
Test Print	**Status Print**	**No**			
		Yes			
	Media Details	**No**			
		Yes			
	Print Job Log	**No**			
		Yes			
	Menu Map	**No**			
		Yes			
	Nozzle Check	**No**			
		Yes			
Information (*5)	**Version**	**Firm**			
		Boot			
		MIT			
	RAM				
	Ext. Interface	**No**			
		IEEE1394			
	MAC Address	**000085######**			
	Error Log	**1:xxxxx**			
		2:xxxxx			
	Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**		
			User Name		
			Page Count		

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
			Job Status	**OK**	
				CANCELED	
			Print Start Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**	
			Print End Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**	
			Print Time	**xxx sec.**	
			Print Size	**xxxxxxxx sq.mm**	
			Media Type		
			Interface	**USB**	
				Network	
				IEEE1394	
			Ink Consumption	**xx.x ml**	
	Counter	**Cut Count**			

*1: Displayed if a roll is loaded.
*2: Displayed if the Roll Feed Unit is installed.
*3: Displayed if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**.
*4: Displayed if **IP Mode** is **Automatic**.
*5: Only these menus are displayed during printing.
*6: For information on the types of paper Media Configuration Tool the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the . See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
*7: Available only if **Auto Detect** is **Off**.
*8: Available only if **NetWare** is **On**.
*9: Follows the setting in **Date Format**.
*10: Displayed if paper is loaded in the tray.
*11: This menu is only displayed during printing.
*12: Not displayed if a roll or a sheet has been fed.

Submenus

On the Control Panel, press the **Information** button to display information about ink, paper, and so on. Each time you press the **Information** button on the Control Panel, different submenus are displayed in the following order.



*1: Displayed if sheets are loaded.

*2: Displayed if a roll is loaded.

For details on submenu screens, see “Submenu Display”. (→P.60)

Main menu during printing

The structure of the main menu during printing is as follows.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu items available during printing, see “Main Menu Settings (During Printing)”. (→P.58)

First Level	Second Level	Third Level	Fourth Level	Fifth Level	Sixth Level
MAIN MENU	**Head Cleaning**	**Head Cleaning A**			
		Head Cleaning B			
	Fine Band Adj.	From -5 to 5			
	Information	**Version**	**Firm**		
			Boot		
			MIT		
		RAM			
		Ext. Interface	**No**		
			IEEE1394		
		MAC Address	**000085######**		
		Error Log	**1:xxxxx**		
			2:xxxxx		
		Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	
				User Name	
				Page Count	
				Job Status	**OK**
					CANCELED
				Print Start Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**
				Print End Time	**yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm**
				Print Time	**xxx sec.**
				Print Size	**xxxxxxxx sq.mm**
				Media Type	
				Interface	**USB**
					Network
					IEEE1394
				Ink Consumption	**xx.x ml**

Main Menu Settings

Main menu items are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.32)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Paper Cut	Displayed if a roll is loaded. Choose **Yes** to cut the roll at the current position. The paper will be fed, if necessary, so that the sheet is at least 10 cm long after the cut. The paper will not be cut if there is not enough paper left to feed the paper this much.
Head Cleaning	Printhead cleaning options. (→P.652) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A** .
Paper Settings	Specify the type and size of paper. (→P.48)
Med.Detail Set.	Specify detailed paper-related settings, including the ink drying time and borderless printing options. (→P.49)
Adjust Printer	Adjust the Printhead alignment or amount of feed by printing a test pattern. (→P.51)
Interface Setup	Configure the network settings. (→P.53)
Maintenance	Replace the Printhead , prepare to transfer the printer, and clean the Pick Up Roller . (→P.54)
System Setup	Specify the printer system settings, including the date format and display language. (→P.55)
Test Print	Choose **Yes** in **Status Print** to print information about the printer. Choose **Yes** in **Media Details** to print the paper settings as specified in **Med.Detail Set.** Choose **Yes** in **Print Job Log** to print a record of print jobs, including the paper type and size, amount of ink used, and so on. Choose **Yes** in **Menu Map** to print a list of the main menu options. Choose **Yes** in **Nozzle Check** to print a test pattern for checking the nozzles. If you have selected a leading edge margin of **20mm** in **Nr End Sht Mrgn** in the printer menu, the test print sheet may not be printed completely.
Information	Displays the information about the printer and history of print jobs. (→P.57)

Paper Settings

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Cas Paper Type (*1)	Choose the type of paper in the Cassette . (→P.167)
Cas Paper Size	Specify the size of paper in the Cassette . (→P.170)
Manual Pap.Type (*1)	Choose the type of paper in the tray. (→P.168)
Manual Pap.Size	Choose the size of paper in the tray. (→P.193)
Roll Media Type (*1)	Choose the type of roll. (→P.124)
Chk Remain.Roll	Choose **On** to print a barcode at the end of a roll before you remove it. The printed barcode can be used in managing the amount of roll paper left. Choose **Off** if you prefer not to print the barcode.
Roll Length Set	Displayed if **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On** . If a barcode is not printed on rolls, specify the roll length. The roll length is displayed in meters (1.0-91.0 m) or feet (1-300 ft.), depending on the setting in **Length Unit** .

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Med.Detail Set.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1)	**Roll DryingTime**	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry for each sheet.
	Scan Wait Time	Specify the time to wait for the ink to dry between each scan in bidirectional printing, in consideration of how quickly the paper absorbs ink. Note that printing will take longer if you specify a wait time.
	Feed Priority	Specify exact paper feeding, if desired. Normally, click **Automatic** . Choose **Print Length** if you prefer to feed the paper an exact amount. However, note that choosing **Print Length** may result in slight banding in the direction of Carriage scanning.
	Adjust Length	Displayed if **Feed Priority** is **Print Length** . Adjustment relative to the amount of stretching or shrinkage of the current paper. For paper that tends to stretch, increase the feed amount by choosing a higher adjustment value. For paper that tends to shrink, decrease the feed amount by choosing a lower adjustment value. The setting for the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage is relative. If you access it again later, it will be displayed as 0.00%.
	Head Height	Adjust the Printhead height. (→P.614)
	Skew Check Lv.	If you print on Japanese Paper Washi or other handmade paper that has an irregular width, choose **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold, or choose **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off** , note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur. If strict skew detection is required, choose **High Accuracy** .
	VacuumStrngth	Specify the level of suction that holds paper against the Platen . (→P.623)
	NearEnd RllMrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of roll paper to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm** , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge.
	Cut Speed	Choose the cutting speed. For media such as film that are more likely to generate debris when cut, choose **Fast** to reduce the amount of debris.
	Trim Edge First	If a roll is loaded, the end of the paper will be cut. Choose **On** to have 40 mm (1.6 in) cut off the leading edge of the roll every time after you load the roll. Scraps are then removed. When **Automatic** is selected, if the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll are uneven (by 3 mm [0.12 in] or more), the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge after you load the roll. Scraps are then removed. If the unevenness is less than 3 mm or if **Off** is selected, the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
(The paper type is displayed here.) (*1)	**Cutting Mode**	Specify if the Cutter Unit is used for cutting. Choose **Automatic** to have roll paper cut automatically after printing. If you choose **Eject** , the paper will not be cut after printing. Instead, a line will be printed at the cut position.
	Bordless Margin	Choose **On** for margin adjustment during borderless printing.
	CutDustReduct.	Choose **On** to reduce the amount of debris generated when cutting film and similar media by printing a line at the cut position. This option reduces the amount of debris given off after cutting. (→P.134)
	Nr End Sht Mrgn	Specify a margin at the leading edge of sheets to ensure better printing quality at the leading edge. Note that if you choose **3mm** , it may lower the printing quality at the leading edge and affect feeding accuracy. The printed surface may be scratched, and ink may adhere to the leading edge. If you have selected **20mm** , the test print sheet may not be printed completely.
	Tray Source	Choose how the paper is supplied, **Top** for printing from the Tray or **Front** for printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot .
	Return Defaults	Choose **Yes** to restore **Med.Detail Set.** to the factory default values.

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using Media Configuration Tool.

Adjust Printer

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Auto Head Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for automatic adjustment of the Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. (→P.610)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for the automatic adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the nozzle, ink tank, and printing direction. Six sheets are required when printing on sheets. (→P.610)
	Auto Print	Choose **On** to have the printer automatically execute the **Advanced Adj.** operations after you replace the Printhead . (→P.610)
Manual Head Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment of Printhead alignment relative to the printing direction. Enter the adjustment value manually based on the resulting pattern. (→P.612)
Auto Band Adj.	**Standard Adj.**	Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for band adjustment, based on which the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount. (→P.615)
	Advanced Adj.	Choose this option when using paper other than genuine Canon paper, or paper for purposes other than checking output. Choose **Yes** to have the printer print and read a test pattern for band adjustment, based on which the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount. Note that this function takes more time and requires more ink than **Standard Adj.** Two sheets are required when printing on sheets. (→P.615)
Manual Band Adj		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount based on the paper type. Two sheets are required when printing on sheets. (→P.619)
Adj Far Ed Feed		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of paper based on the paper type. (→P.619)
Adjust Length		Choose **Yes** to print a test pattern for adjustment relative to paper stretching or shrinkage, after which you can enter the amount of adjustment. (→P.624)

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Calibration	**Auto Adjust**	Choose **Yes** for automatic adjustment of the adjustment value after a test pattern for color calibration is printed. The most recent adjustment value from color calibration is applied in all printing.
	Execution Log	The date of color calibration and the paper type is indicated on the Display Screen .
	Use Adj. Value	Select **No** to print without applying the color calibration adjustment value. However, the printer driver settings will be applied. Select **Yes** to print applying the color calibration adjustment value. However, the printer driver settings will be given priority.
	Return Defaults	Clears the color calibration adjustment value and log.

Interface Setup

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
EOP Timer			Specify the timeout period for print jobs.
TCP/IP	**IP Mode**		Choose whether the printer IP address is configured automatically or a static IP address is entered manually.
	Protocol	**DHCP**	Specify the protocol used to configure the IP address automatically.
		BOOTP	
		RARP	
	IP Setting	**IP Address**	Specify the printer network information when using a static IP address. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer, as well as the network subnet mask and default gateway.
		Subnet Mask	
		Default G/W	
NetWare	**NetWare**		Specify the NetWare protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Store Setting** .
	Frame Type		Specify the frame type to use.
	Print Service		Choose the print service.
AppleTalk			Specify whether to use the AppleTalk protocol. To apply your changes, choose **Store Setting** .
Ethernet Driver	**Auto Detect**		Specify the communication method. To apply your changes, choose **Store Setting** . Choose **On** for automatic configuration of the LAN communication protocol. Choose **Off** to use settings values of **Comm.Mode** and **Ethernet Type** .
	Comm.Mode		Choose the LAN communication method.
	Ethernet Type		Choose the LAN transfer rate.
	Spanning Tree		Choose whether spanning-tree packets are supported over the LAN.
	MAC Address		Displays the MAC address.
Return Defaults			▼ A confirmation message is displayed if you press the [icon] button. Choose **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Maintenance

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Replace P.head	**Left Printhead**	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the left Printhead , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.653)
	Right Printhead	Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When replacing the right Printhead , choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.653)
Move Printer		Not displayed during a warning message that the remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low. When transferring the printer to another location, choose **Yes** and follow the instructions on the screen. (→P.679)
Clean Roller		Choose **Yes** to clean the Pick Up Roller . (→P.674)
Clean Platen		Use this function to clean inside the Top Cover . After you select **Yes** , the Carriage is moved in preparation for Platen cleaning. (→P.670)
Spur Cleaning		Click **Yes** to clean the spurs. (→P.675)

System Setup

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Warning	**Buzzer**	Set the buzzer. Choose **On** for the buzzer to sound in case of errors.
	Detect Mismatch	Choose **Warning** for notification (display of a warning message) during printing if the paper type specified in the printer menu does not match the paper type in the printer driver. Choose **None** to continue to print without notification. Choose **Pause** to have printing paused under these circumstances. In this case, you can continue printing by pressing the **Online** button.
Keep Media Size		Choose **On** to use the paper size setting as the basis for printing instead of other settings. The margin setting of the printer menu will be used instead of the margin setting of the printer driver if the latter is smaller, which may prevent text or images in the margin from being printed. Choose **Off** to use the printer driver settings instead. Even if the margin setting of the printer driver is smaller than that of the printer menu, text or images will not be cut off. However, this requires longer paper because the actual margin will be equal to the margin setting of the printer driver plus the margin setting of the printer menu.
PaperSize Basis	**Sht Selection**	If sheet size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3+** or **ANSI B Super** is applied when an inbetween size is detected.
	Roll Selection1	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether **ISO A3 (297mm)** and **300mm Roll** is applied when an inbetween size is detected.
	Roll Selection2	If roll size detection is activated, choose whether **10in. (254mm)** or **JIS B4 (257mm)** is applied when an in between size is detected.
TrimEdge Reload		Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge. When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting this option to **On** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.
Nozzle Check		Specify the timing for automatic checks of nozzle clogging. Choose **Off** to disable checking. Choose **5 pages** to check after every 5 pages are printed. Choose **10 pages** to check once after every ten pages are printed.
Sleep Timer		Specify the period before the printer enters sleep mode.
Length Unit		Choose the unit of measurement when roll length is displayed. You can switch the unit displayed for **Roll Length Set** and the remaining paper amount displayed in the submenu.
Time Zone		Specify the time zone. Time zone options indicate a main city in this time zone and the difference from Greenwich Mean Time.
Date Format		Specify the date format.

Setting Item		Description, Instructions
Date & Time	**Date**	Set the current date.
	Time	Set the current time.
Language		Specify the language used on the Display Screen .
Reset MediaType		Restores settings that you have changed with Media Configuration Tool to the factory default values. If paper added using the Media Configuration Tool was used for color calibration, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper.

Information

Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Version			Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
RAM			Displays the printer memory capacity.
Ext. Interface			Identifies boards in the expansion slot.
MAC Address	**000085######**		Displays the MAC address.
Error Log			Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumption	Displays the ink density of each color in the print job.
Counter	**Cut Count**		Displays the total number of cuts made by the Cutter Unit .

Main Menu Settings (During Printing)

Main menu items during printing are described in the following tables.
For instructions on selecting or setting menu items, see “Main Menu Operations”. (→P.30)
For details on menu levels and values, see “Menu Structure”. (→P.32)

Setting Item	Description, Instructions
Head Cleaning	Specify Printhead cleaning options. (→P.652) Choose **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint, oddly colored, or contains foreign substances. Choose **Head Cleaning B** if no ink is printed at all, or if printing is not improved by **Head Cleaning A** .
Adjust Band	Displayed during print jobs. Fine-tune the feed amount manually.
Information	Displays information about the printer and record of print jobs. (→P.59)

Information

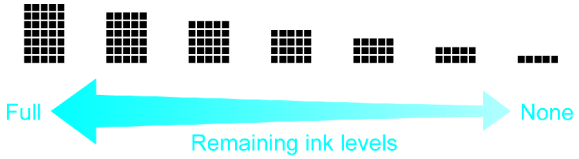
Setting Item			Description, Instructions
Version			Displays the version of the printer and firmware.
RAM			Displays the printer memory capacity.
Ext. Interface			Identifies boards in the expansion slot.
MAC Address	**000085######**		Displays the MAC address.
Error Log			Displays the most recent error messages (up to two).
Job Log	(Choose from information about the latest three print jobs.)	**Document Name**	Displays the document name in the last print job.
		User Name	Displays the name of the user who sent the print job.
		Page Count	Displays the number of pages in the print job.
		Job Status	Displays the results of the print job processed.
		Print Start Time	Displays the time when the print job was started.
		Print End Time	Displays the time when the print job was finished.
		Print Time	Displays the time required to print the job.
		Print Size	Displays the paper size in the print job.
		Media Type	Displays the paper type in the print job.
		Interface	Displays the interface used for the print job.
		Ink Consumption	Displays the ink consumption.
Counter	**Cut Count**		Displays the total number of cuts made by the Cutter Unit .

Submenu Display

Press the **Information** button to display the following information, one item after another: remaining ink levels and Maintenance Cartridge capacity, size and type of the paper loaded in the Cassette, size and type of the paper loaded in the tray, roll width and remaining length, and roll type.

Remaining ink levels and Maintenance Cartridge capacity

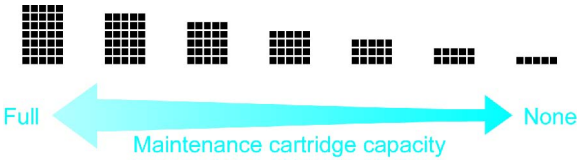
The remaining level of each ink is shown on the Display Screen bottom line at left. These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label below the Display Screen.
Remaining ink is indicated in seven levels.



Note

- When Ink Tank are not installed, the level is not displayed.
- If error messages about Ink Tank are displayed, the level is indicated with one dot.
- If you disable ink level detection, a question mark “?” is displayed.
- When no more ink is left, the level indicator changes to a blank square and flashes.

The remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen bottom line at right.
The available capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge is indicated in seven levels.



Cassette type

Displays the type of paper loaded in the Cassette.

Cas Paper Type Plain Paper

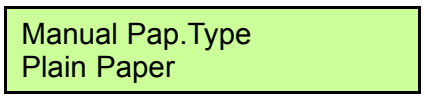
Cassette paper size

Displays the size of paper loaded in the Cassette.

Cas Paper Size ISO A4

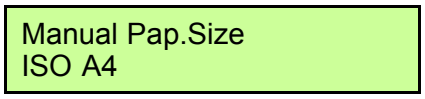
Manual Paper Type

Displays the type of paper loaded in the tray. This information is displayed only when paper is loaded in the tray.



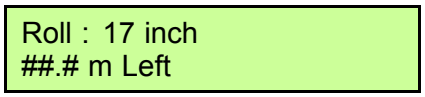
Manual Paper Size

Displays the size of paper loaded in the tray. This information is displayed only when paper is loaded in the tray.



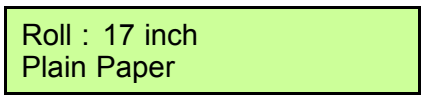
Roll: width and remaining length

Displays the width and remaining length of roll loaded in the Roll Feed Unit. This information is displayed only when a roll is loaded and **Chk Remain.Roll** is **On**.



Roll: width and type

Displays the width and type of roll loaded in the Roll Feed Unit. This information is displayed only when a roll is loaded.



Status Print

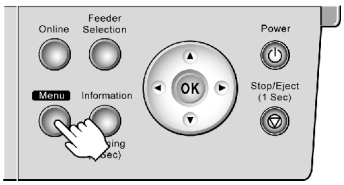
You can print a **Status Print** report indicating the current status of the printer.
With **Status Print**, information is printed regarding the printer firmware version, various settings, and the utilization level of consumables.

Note

- If you have selected **20mm** in **Nr End Sht Mrgn** in the printer menu, the **Status Print** sheet may not be printed completely.
(→P.47)

Printing Status Print Reports

1. Load paper.
   If using sheets, load paper A4/Letter-sized. You will need at least four sheets.
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Test Print**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Test Print ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Status Print**, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Test Print
= Status Print
```

Checking the information in the Status Print report

The following information is included in the **Status Print** report.

Canon imagePROGRAF iPFxxxx Status Print	Printer model

Firm	Firmware version
Boot	Boot version
MIT	MIT format version
S/N	Printer serial number
Y, PC, C, PGY, GY, MBK, PM, M, BK, R, G, B	Ink levels. The remaining ink is displayed in a five-level scale.
MC	Maintenance Cartridge capacity (%)

Media Menu		Information on the loaded paper.
	Cassette Paper Type	
	Cassette Paper Size	
	Roll Media Type	
	Check Remain. Roll	
	Cut Sheet Type	

Adjust Printer			Current printer settings.
	Head Adjust		Printhead adjustment value.
		Auto Print	
		A1-F2	
Feed Priority			Settings related to paper feeding.
Adjust Length			
Calibration			The color calibration setting value.
	Execution Log		The calibration log.
		Date:	Indicates the date calibration was performed and the type of paper used.
		Media:	
	Use Effect Value:		This value indicates whether the results of color calibration are used or not.

Interface Setup				Current network settings.
	EOP Timer			Sets the elapsed time between receiving last data and canceling printing.
	TCP/IP			Settings related to **TCP/IP** .
		IP Mode		
		Protocol		
			DHCP	
			BOOTP	
			RARP	
		IP Setting		**IP Setting** values.
			IP Address	
			Subnet Mask	
			Default G/W	
	NetWare			**NetWare** settings.
		NetWare		
		Frame Type		
		Print Service		
	AppleTalk			Values that specify whether **AppleTalk** is active or not.
	Ethernet Driver			**Ethernet Driver** settings.
		Auto Detect		
		Comm.Mode		
		Ethernet Type		
		Spanning Tree		
		MAC Address		

System Setup			
	Warning		Current warning and error settings.
		Buzzer	
		Detect Mismatch	
	Keep Media Size		Current paper-related settings.
	Sheet Selection		
	Roll Selection 1		
	Roll Selection 2		
	Nozzle Check		Nozzle-check settings.
	Sleep Timer		General printer settings.
	Length Unit		
	Time Zone		
	Date Format		
	Language		
	Contrast Adj.		

Information		System information and an error log.
	RAM	
	Ext. Interface	
	Error Log	

Network (RemoteUI)		Current network settings used by RemoteUI.
TCP/IP		
	Frame Type	
	Use DHCP	
	Use BOOTP	
	Use RARP	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	Enable DNS Dynamic Update	
	Use Zeroconf Function	
	IP Address*	
	Subnet Mask*	
	Gateway Address*	
	LPD Printing	
	IPP Printing	
	IPP Printer URI	
	RAW Printing	
	Raw Port Number	
	Raw Mode Bi-direction	
	FTP Printing	
	Primary DNS Server Address*	
	Secondary DNS Server Address*	
	DNS Host Name*	
	DNS Domain Name*	
	Multicast DNS Service Name	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

NetWare		Current **NetWare** settings.
	Frame Type	
	IPX External Network Number*	
	Node Number*	
	Print Service	

*: Depending on the NetWare print service settings, information on one of the following four items is printed.

	Bindery PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **Bindery PServer** is selected.
		File Server Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	RPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **RPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	
	NDS PServer		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NDS PServer** is selected.
		Tree Name*	
		Context Name*	
		Print Server Name*	
		Print Server Password*	
		Polling Interval	
	NPrinter		Values set when **NetWare** > **Print Service** > **NPrinter** is selected.
		Print Server Name*	
		Printer Number*	

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

AppleTalk			Current **AppleTalk** settings.
	Phase Type		
	Name*		
	Network Number*		
	Zone*		

*: Blank if the status has been saved by using Status Monitor.

HEAD LOT NUMBER			Printhead lot number.
	LOT R,L		

PARTS STATUS			Utilization status of replacement parts that require servicing.
	COUNTER A-I		

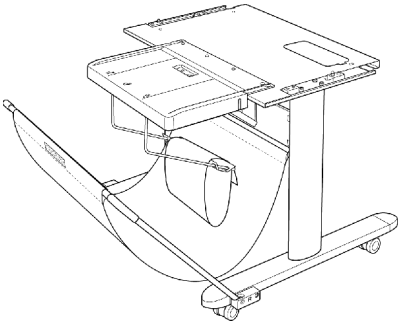
COUNTER			Utilization status of the cutter, media, and other items (indicating how much they have been used).
	CUTTER		
	MEDIA		
	MEDIA1-7		
		NAME	
		TTL	
		ROLL	
		CUTSHEET	
		CASSETTE	
	AFTER INSTALLATION		

Optional accessories

Stand

The printer can be mounted on the following Stand. (Optional)

- Printer Stand ST-11



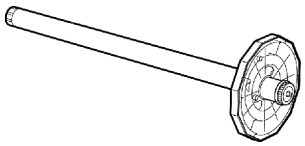
Note

- For details on assembling the Stand, refer to the instructions provided with the Stand.

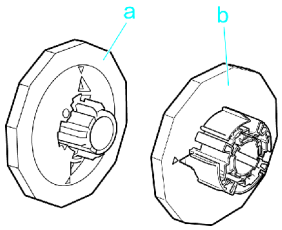
Roll Holder Set

A set of parts including a Roll Holder, Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores), 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and Spacer for Borderless Printing (used for both 2- and 3-inch paper cores).
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder and attach the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores. If you use an A2 (420 mm [16.5 in]) roll for borderless printing, insert the Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

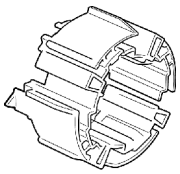
- Roll Holder Set RH2-11
  - Roll Holder



  - Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores (a) and (b))



  - 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment



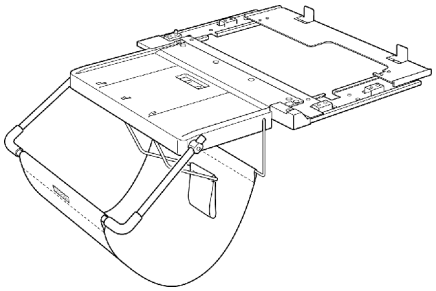
  - Spacer for Borderless Printing

For instructions on installing these parts, see “Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder”. (→P.144)

Desktop Stacker

The printer can be used with the following Desktop Stacker. (Optional)

- Desktop Stacker BU-02



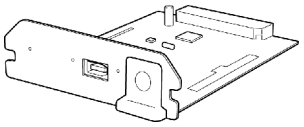
Note

- For Desktop Stacker installation instructions, refer to the instructions provided with the Desktop Stacker.

IEEE 1394 Expansion Board

An interface board to add an IEEE 1394 (also called "FireWire") port.

- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-05



For instructions on installing the IEEE 1394 expansion board, refer to the documentation provided with the optional IEEE 1394 expansion board.

Printer Specifications

Specifications

Important

- This information is subject to change as the printer is updated.
- The following values may vary depending on the operating environment.

Printer

Power supply		100-120 V AC (50/60 Hz), 220-240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Power consumption	In operation	100 W max.
	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (8 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (9 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max. (*1)
Operating noise		Approx. 51 dB (A) max.
Operating environment	Temperature	15-30°C (59-86°F)
	Humidity	10-80%, non-condensing
Dimensions (W × D × H)		999×810×344 mm (39.3×31.9×13.5 in)
Weight (not including the Printhead and Ink Tank)		49 kg (108.0 lb)
Space required for installation (*2)		1,299×1,910×644 mm (51.1×75.2×25.4 in)
Applicable standards		International Energy Star Program, Law on Promoting Green Purchasing, GPN, RoHS, The Eco Declaration, WEEE, U.S. presidential directives

*1: The printer uses a trace amount of power even when turned off. To stop all power consumption, turn off the printer and unplug the power cord.

*2: Normally, you will need to ensure an unobstructed space of 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of the printer, 300 mm (11.8 in) behind, 150 mm (5.9 in) on both sides, and 300 mm (11.8 in) above the printer. Only when printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, leave 800 mm (31.5 in) of unobstructed space in front of the printer and 400 mm (15.7 in) behind it.

Printing performance

Print method	Bubblejet
Maximum resolution	2400 dpi horizontally (*1) × 1200 dpi vertically
Printhead	PF-03
Number of nozzles	2,560 per color

*1: Prints with a minimum 1/2400 inch dot pitch between ink droplets.

Interface

Expansion Board Slots		1
USB 2.0(*1)	Format	Internal port
	Mode	Full-speed (12 Mbps), high-speed (480 Mbps), bulk transfer
	Connector	Series B (4-pin)
Ethernet(*3)	Format	Internal port
	Specification	IEEE 802.3 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.3u 100BASE-TX /Auto-Negotiation, IEEE 802.3x Full Duplex
	Protocols	IPX/SPX (Netware 4.2, 5.1, 6.0), SNMP, HTTP, TCP/IP, AppleTalk
IEEE 1394 (*2)	Format	Optional boards (slot type)
	Specification	IEEE 1394-1995, conforms to P1394a Specification ver. 2.0, half duplex, Data/Strb differential serial
	Transfer speed	100/200/400 Mbps
	Connector	Conforms to IEEE 1394-1995 (6-pin), no power supply

*1: Use in USB 2.0 High Speed mode requires the following environment:

- Computer: USB 2.0 High-Speed-compatible
- Operating system: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000 or Mac OS X ver. 10.3.3 or later
- USB 2.0 driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (available from Windows Update or the Service Pack.)
- USB cable: Certified USB 2.0 cable

*2: One IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board can be installed.

*3: In the European Union, use a shielded LAN cable to comply with EN 55022: 1998 +A1: 2000 and A2: 2003.

Ink

Ink Tank	BK Ink Tank (Black Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-103BK (user-replaceable)
	MBK Ink Tank (Matte Black Ink , or black ink for matte paper)	Pigment ink	PFI-103MBK (user-replaceable)
	C Ink Tank (Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101C (user-replaceable)
	M Ink Tank (Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101M (user-replaceable)
	Y Ink Tank (Yellow Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101Y (user-replaceable)
	PM Ink Tank (Photo Magenta Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101PM (user-replaceable)
	PC Ink Tank (Photo Cyan Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101PC (user-replaceable)
	GY Ink Tank (Gray Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-103GY (user-replaceable)
	PGY Ink Tank (Photo Gray Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-103PGY (user-replaceable)
	R Ink Tank (Red Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101R (user-replaceable)
	G Ink Tank (Green Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101G (user-replaceable)
	B Ink Tank (Blue Ink)	Pigment ink	PFI-101B (user-replaceable)
Capacity			130 ml per color (*1)

*1: Printable pages when using the provided Starter Ink Tanks (90 ml per tank)

Paper (*1)

Paper width			203-432 mm (8-17 in)
Maximum length per page	Sheets	Cassette	594 mm (23.4 in)
		Tray (top)	1600 mm (24 in)
		Tray (front)	914 mm (24 in)
	Rolls		18 m (19.7 yd.)
Thickness	Sheets	Cassette	0.08-0.3 mm (0.003-0.012 in)
		Tray (top)	0.08-0.8 mm (0.003-0.031 in)
		Tray (front)	0.5-1.5 mm (0.02-0.06 in)
	Rolls		0.08-0.8 mm (0.003-0.031 in)
Paper size	Sheets	Supported sizes	ISO A2, ISO A2+, ISO A3, ISO A3+, ISO A4, ISO B3, ISO B4, JIS B3, JIS B4, 17"×22" (ANSI C), 11"×17" (Ledger), 13"×19" (Super B), Letter (8.5"×11"), Legal (8.5"×14"), 12"×18" (ARCH B),9"×12" (ARCH A), DIN C3, DIN C4, 14"×17", 12"×16", 10"×12", 10"×15", US Photo, 13"×22", 300×900 mm
		Cassette	ISO A2, ISO A3, ISO A3+, ISO A4, ISO B3, JIS B4, 17"×22" (ANSI C), 11"×17" (Ledger), 13"×19" (Super B), Letter (8.5"×11"), Legal (8.5"×14"), 12"×18" (ARCH B), 14"×17", 12"×16", 10"×12", 10"×15", 8"×10", US Photo, 13"×22"
		Tray (top)	• Width: 203-432 mm (8-17 in) • Length: 279-1600 mm (11-24 in)
		Tray (front)	• Width: 203-432 mm (8-17 in) • Length: 520-914 mm (20.5-24 in)
	Rolls		8 inches (203 mm), 10 inches (254 mm), JIS B4 (257 mm), ISO A3/A4 (297 mm), Banner (300 mm), A3+ (329 mm), 14 inches (356 mm), 16 inches (407 mm), ISO A2/A3 (420 mm), 17 inches (432 mm)
Print area	Normal size		Printable area • Sheets (Cassette) 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side • Sheets (Top Paper Feed Slot) 3 or 23 mm (0.12 or 0.91 in) on all sides • Sheets (Front Paper Feed Slot) 3 mm (0.12 in) on top, 23 mm (0.9 in) on bottom, and 3 mm (0.12 in) on both sides • Rolls 3 mm (0.12 in) from each side For information on the recommended print area, see “Print Area”. (→P.78)

Print area	Borderless printing (*2)	Printable area (rolls) Entire surface
	Oversized (*2), (*3)	Printable area Entire surface
Supported width for borderless printing		10 inches (254 mm), JIS B4 (257 mm), A3+ (329 mm), 14 inches (356 mm), 16 inches (407 mm), ISO A2/A3 (420 mm) (*4), 17 inches (432 mm)

*1: For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
*2: Printing may not be possible in some cases, depending on the type and size of paper.
*3: Load paper at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm higher than the size selected in **Page Size** for roll paper and the Cassette. Or, load paper at least 26 mm (1.0 in) higher for the tray.
*4: Borderless printing requires the Spacer for Borderless Printing.

Paper capacity (Cassette)

Paper type	Paper size		
	A4, Letter	13×22 in A3	17×22 in A2
Plain Paper	250 sheets	100 sheets	50 sheets
Coated Paper	200 sheets	100 sheets	50 sheets
Photo Paper Plus	20 sheets	20 sheets	-
Premium Matte Paper	30 sheets	20 sheets	-
Glossy Paper	100 sheets	50 sheets	-

- The preceding information is a guideline for the maximum capacity. Load the paper making sure not to exceed the Maximum Capacity Line of the Cassette. (→P.19)
- The maximum paper capacity varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Maximum stacking capacity

The Output Tray can accommodate up to 20 sheets of A2/A3+ paper or 50 sheets of A3/A4 paper.
The maximum stacking capacity varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Basic Environmental Performance

Printer

Power consumption	Sleep mode	100-120 V: 5 W max. (8 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.) 220-240 V: 6 W max. (9 W max. when an IEEE 1394 (FireWire) expansion board is installed.)
	Off	1 W max.
Resource efficiency	Weight	Printer only: 49 kg (108 lb)
	Dimensions (W × D × H)	999×810×344 mm [39.3×31.9×13.5 in]
	Recycling	Recyclable plastic used for printer body
Product safety	Toxic substances	Structural components: No prohibited brominated flame retardants used (PBB or PBDE)
		Body plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], or Cd) or halogenated flame retardants used
	Operating noise	Approx. 51 dB (A) max.

Packaging materials

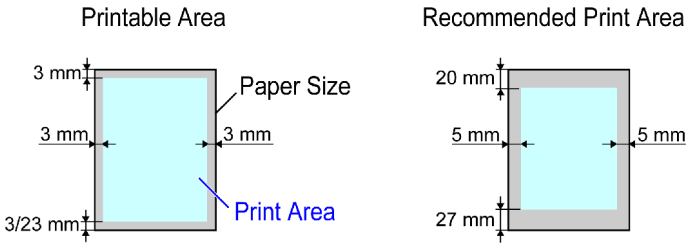
Heavy metal content (Pb, Hg, Cr[VI], and Cd)	None (none in packaging)

Print Area

A margin required by the printer is added with respect to the size of paper loaded in the printer. Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to the paper size minus the space for this margin.

		Printable Area			Recommended Print Area		
		Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides	Top Edge	Bottom Edge	Sides
Sheets	Cassette	3 mm (0.12 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	27 mm (1.06 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)
	Top Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	3/23 mm (0.12/0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)			
	Front Paper Feed Slot	3 mm (0.12 in)	23 mm (0.91 in)	3 mm (0.12 in)			
Rolls		0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	0/3 mm (0/0.12 in)	20 mm (0.79 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)	5 mm (0.20 in)

Sheets



- Printable Area:

  When printing from the Cassette, a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required.

  Printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot requires a margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides. (A bottom margin of 23 mm [0.9 in] may sometimes be required.) The bottom margin is 23 mm for some types of paper. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

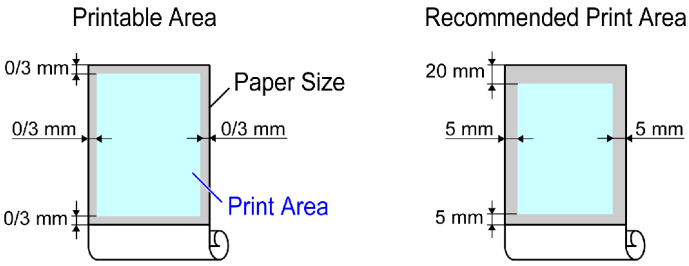
  When printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot, a margin of 23 mm (0.9 in) on all sides is required.
- Recommended print area:

  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 27 mm (1.06 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.305)
- You can choose a bottom margin of 3 mm or 23 mm when printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot.
  In the printer driver, choosing **Manual** in **Media Source** sets the bottom margin at 23 mm. On the other hand, choosing **Manual (3mm margins)** in **Media Source** sets the bottom margin at 3 mm, which provides a larger area for printing.
  However, the option **Manual (3mm margins)** is not available with the following paper.
  - Fine Art Photo Paper
  - Fine Art Heavyweight Photo Paper
  - Fine Art Textured Paper
- The types of paper listed above may be updated, in some cases.
  For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- If you set the bottom margin at 3 mm, images in the bottom margin may be distorted.
  In this case, choose **Manual** in **Media Source** to set the bottom margin at 23 mm.

Rolls



- Printable Area:
  A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on all sides is required. A margin of 3 mm (0.12 in) on the top, bottom, and both sides is required. During borderless printing, the margin on all sides is 0 mm. For information on paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- Recommended print area:
  A margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) on top, 5 mm (0.20 in) on bottom, and 5 mm (0.20 in) on left and right sides is required.

Note

- Printable area: The area that can be printed.
- Guaranteed Print Area: We recommend printing within this area.
- To print so that your original matches the print area exactly, use an oversized paper size that includes the required margin. (→P.305)

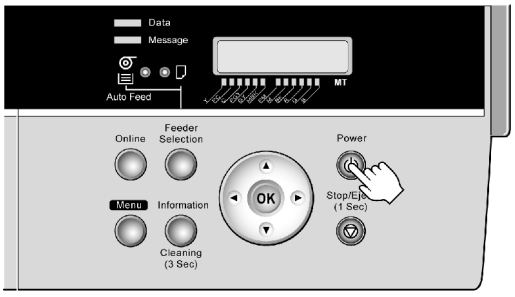
Basic Printing Workflow

Printing procedure

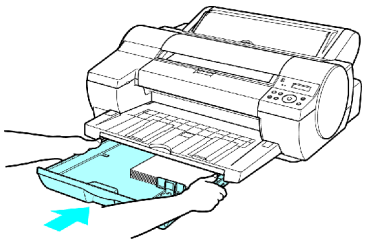
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette

These are the basic steps for loading sheets in the cassette and then printing from the cassette.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets in the cassette.

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.20)

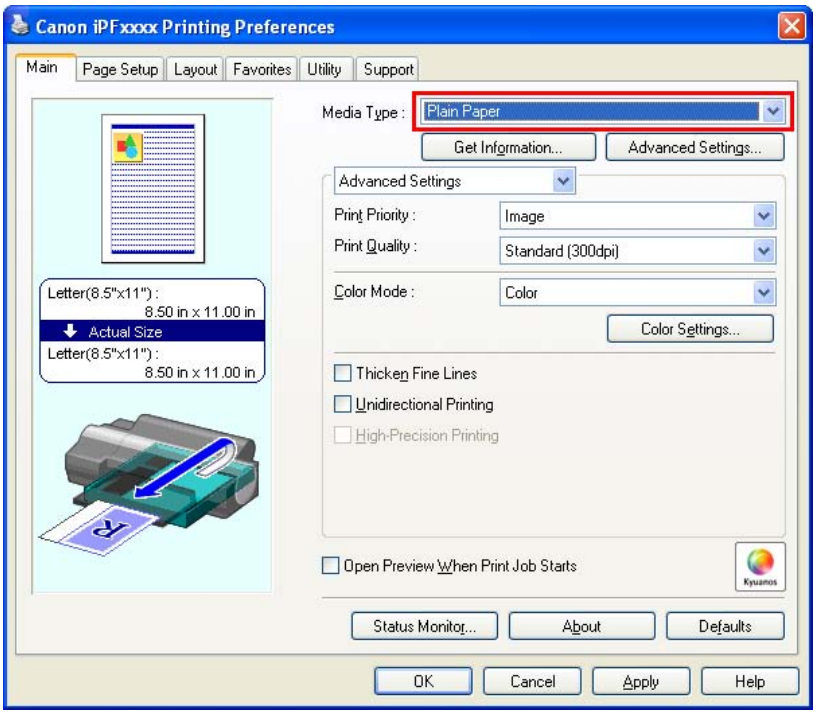


2. Load paper in the Cassette. (→P.156)



3. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.94)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.96)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.98)



4. Send the print job.

- Printing from Windows (→P.89)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.90)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.92)

Start printing.

Note

- For details on supported paper sizes for the Cassette, see Paper Sizes (→P.112) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

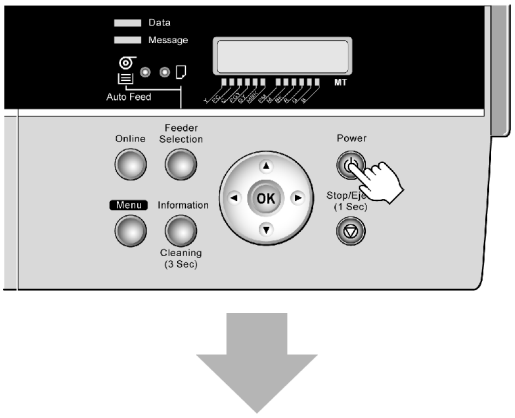
Loading and Printing on Rolls

These are the basic steps for loading and printing on rolls.
Follow the steps below to switch to a new roll or a roll of a different type or width before printing.

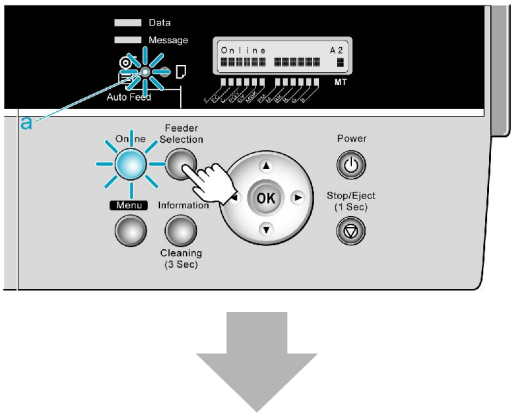
Note

- If a sheet is loaded in the Tray, remove it before this procedure. (→P.146)
- Before printing banners or other large-format documents, spread a clean cloth or paper over the floor. Long sheets that touch the floor after printing may become dirty.
- If you will wait for the ink to dry after printing and simply eject the document, you can deactivate automatic cutting and print a cut line instead. (→P.130)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.20)



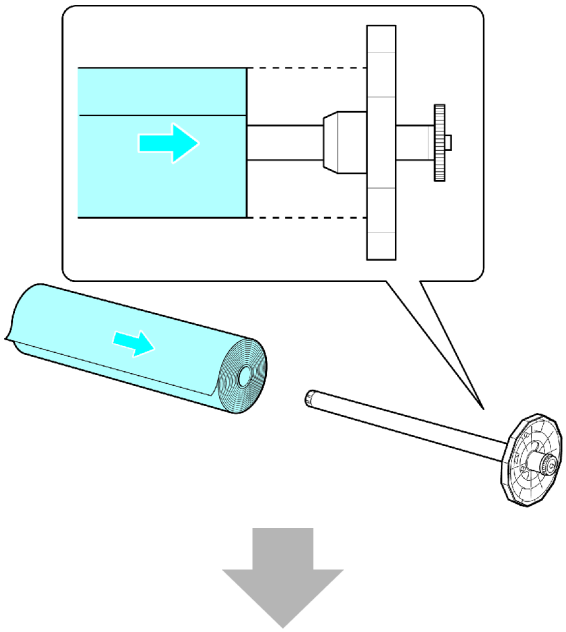
2. Select roll paper (a) as the paper source. (→P.114)



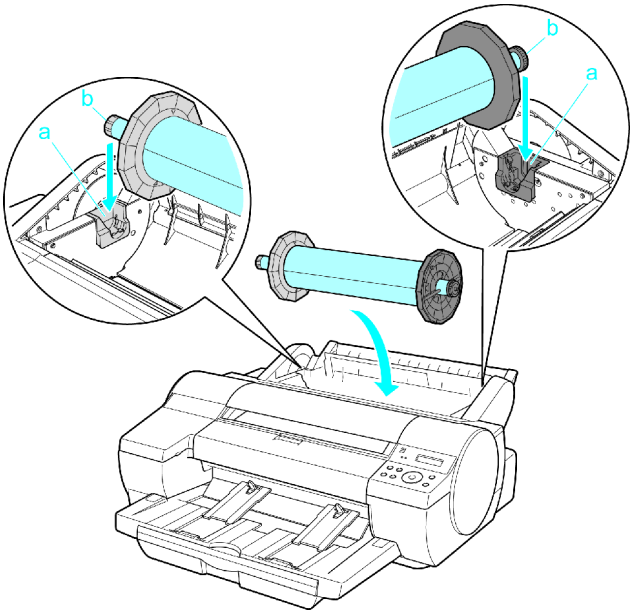
3. Load a roll on the Roll Holder. (→P.115)

Note

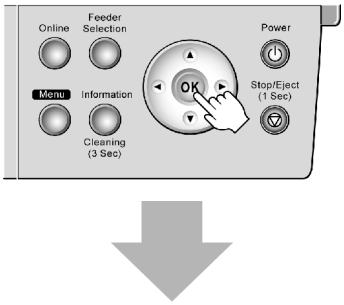
- When switching rolls, first remove the current roll from the Roll Holder. (→P.117)



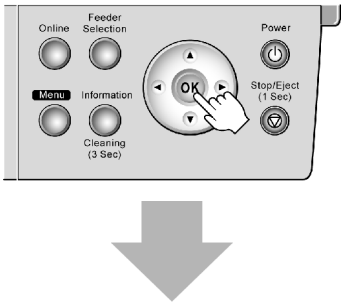
4. Load the roll in the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.118)



5. Select the paper type. (→P.124)

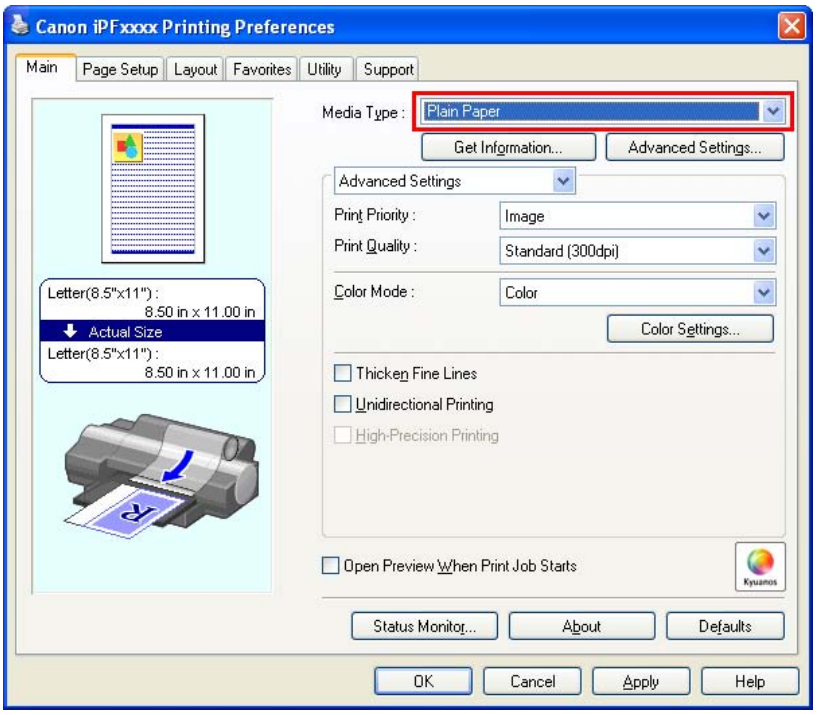


6. Select the paper length. (→P.125)



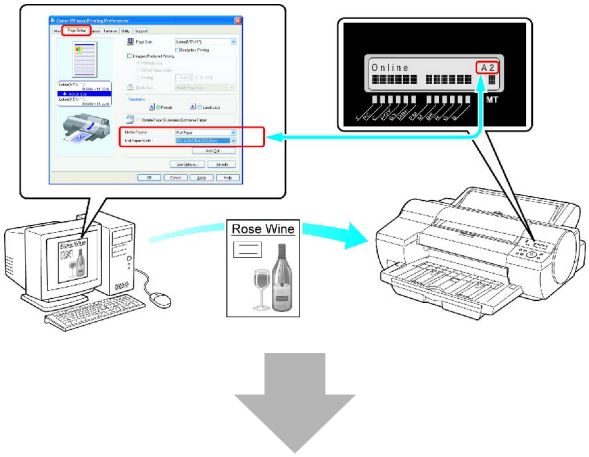
7. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.94)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.96)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.98)



Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message may be displayed and printing may not be possible.
  - **PaprTyp Mismatch** (→P.735)
  - **PaprSiz Mismatch** (→P.736)
  - **Paper Mismatch** (→P.735)



8. Start printing.

- Printing from Windows (→P.89)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.90)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.92)

Note

- Steps 5 and 6 are not required, if a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. The paper type and amount of paper left are automatically detected.
- Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.
  When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting **TrimEdge Reload** to **On** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.
- For details on supported sizes and types of the roll that can be loaded, see Paper Sizes (→P.112) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- Clean the platen after you have used up a roll. (→P.670)
- When a roll has been advanced, do not pull it out by force. This will prevent the paper from being advanced.
  If you accidentally pull out the paper, hold the **Stop/Eject** button to enable feeding again. (→P.122)

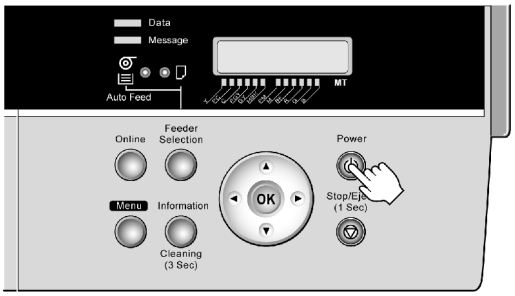
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot

These are the basic steps for loading sheets in the paper feed slot and then printing from this slot.
Follow the steps below to load and print on sheets in the paper feed slot.

Note

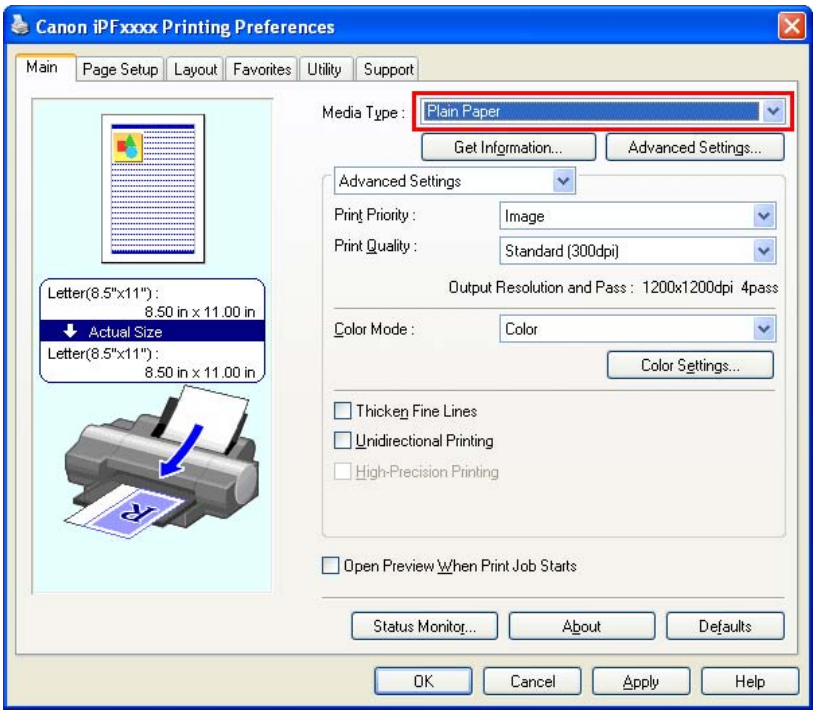
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure.
(→P.146)

1. Turn the printer on. (→P.20)



2. Complete settings in the printer driver for the type and size of paper and other details.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.94)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.96)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.98)



3. Send the print job.

- Printing from Windows (→P.89)
- Printing from Mac OS X (→P.90)
- Printing from Mac OS 9 (→P.92)

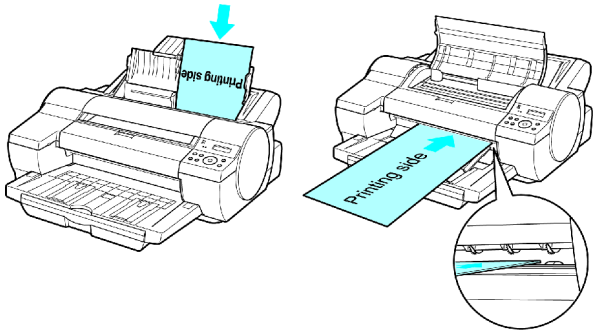
4. Load a sheet manually. (→P.159)

(Top Paper Feed Slot)

(Front Paper Feed Slot)

Note

- If you will load a sheet before sending a print job, you must select the type and size of paper in advance on the printer Display Screen. Follow these steps.
  - Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.168)
  - Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) (→P.193)



5. Start printing.

Note

- For details on supported sizes and types of the paper that can be loaded in the tray, see Paper Sizes (→P.112) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

The printer supports both rolls and sheets. Take advantage of each type of paper for a wide range of printing applications.

Rolls and Sheets

- Media in spooled rolls is generally called Roll Media.
  Rolls can be used to print large photos or create posters or banners that cannot be printed on regular sheets.
- Sheets refers to individual sheets of paper in regular sizes.
  Sheets are loaded in either the Cassette or the Tray.
  Heavyweight paper is loaded in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Paper Size

- Page Size: The size of the image to be printed, as specified in the application.
- Paper Size (also called Media Size):
  - In the case of sheets, paper size refers to the actual size of the paper loaded in the printer.
  - In the case of rolls, paper size is an imagined size set as the printing area for a single page.

Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets

Printing Method	Rolls
Large-Format Printing	Easily print vertical or horizontal banners from familiar applications such as Microsoft Office applications. Print banners up to 18 m (19.7 yd) long.
Borderless Printing	Print without a margin (border) around posters or photos.
Free Layout (Windows)	Print multiple documents from multiple applications (such as word-processing programs, spreadsheet programs, and so on) next to each other.
Free Layout (Macintosh)	
Banner Printing	Print pages of a multi-page document consecutively without blank space between pages.

Important

- If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, be sure to attach the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. If you print without attaching it, the Platen may be soiled, which may cause ink to adhere to the unprinted side of the paper. (→P.144)

Printing from Windows

Print from the application software menu.

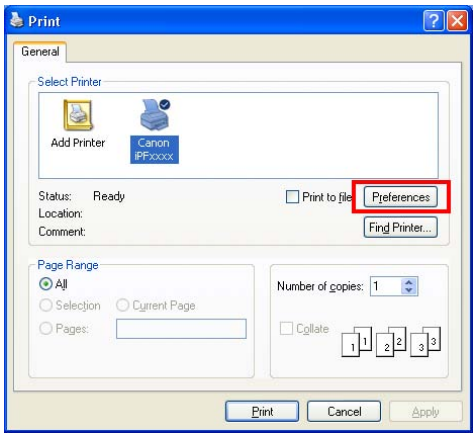
Important

- The Windows printer driver can be used in the following versions of Windows:
  - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
  - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
  - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
  - Windows Vista
- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. After confirming that the printer is selected in the dialog box, click **Print** or **OK** to start printing.

Note

- The appearance of the dialog box varies depending on the application software. In most cases, the dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.
  Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Note

- If another printer is selected, select the printer you want to use under **Select Printer** or in the dialog box displayed after clicking **Printer**.

Settings for many printing methods (including enlarged or reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on) are displayed in the printer driver dialog box. There are two ways to access the printer driver dialog box, as follows:

- From the application software
  (→P.497)
- From the operating system menu
  (→P.499)

Printing from Mac OS X

Print from the application menu after registering the printer.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Registering the printer

Before printing, you must register the printer in **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**).
For instructions on registering the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.599)

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed among available printers if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in an AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.600)

Note

- When registering the printer, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **Canon FireWire(iPF)** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP(iPF)**, or **Bonjour** if connected via a network.
- For **Canon IP(iPF)** connections, enter the printer’s IP address.

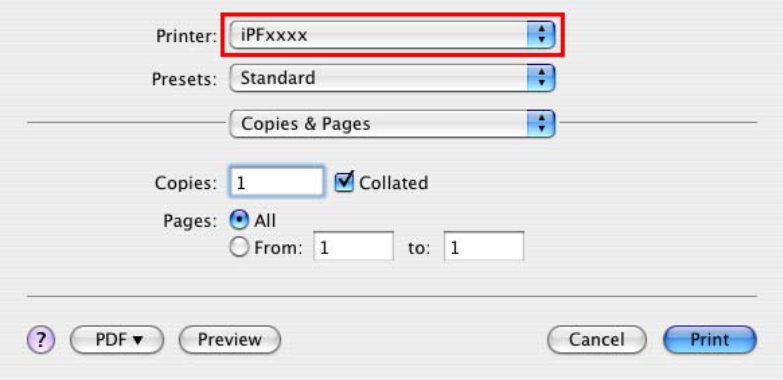
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

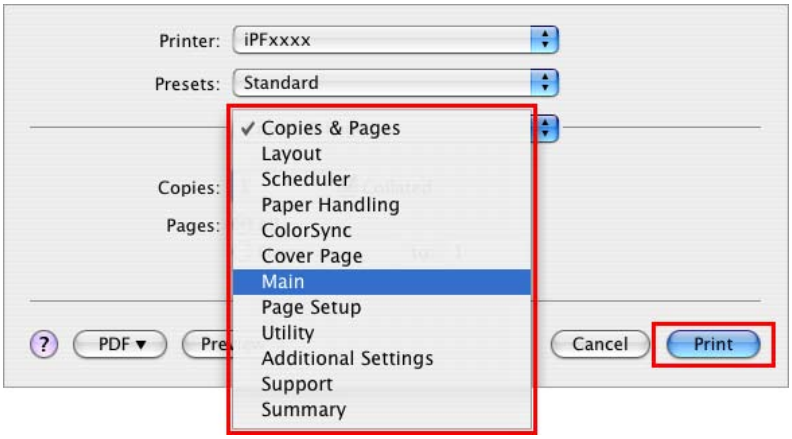
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.



Printing from Mac OS 9

After selecting the printer in **Chooser** from the Apple menu, print by using menus in the application software.

Important

- We recommend exiting unnecessary applications before printing. Running several applications while printing may interrupt the transfer of print data and affect printing quality.

Selecting the printer

Before printing, you must confirm that the printer is selected in **Chooser**.
For instructions on selecting the printer, see “Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)”. (→P.599)

Important

- During this setup process, the printer will not be listed in **Chooser** if it is off or disconnected.
- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer. You must enable the AppleTalk protocol before using the printer in AppleTalk network. For instructions on activating AppleTalk protocol, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.600)

Note

- In **Chooser**, choose **GARO Printer Driver**.
- In **Destination**, choose **USB** if the printer is connected via USB, **FireWire** if connected via IEEE 1394, or **AppleTalk**, **IP Print**, or **IP Print (Auto)** if connected via network.
- If the printer is connected via **AppleTalk**, click **Active** under **AppleTalk** in the lower-right corner of the **Chooser** window.
- If the printer is connected via **IP Print**, click **Registering IP Address** under the **Destination** list to register the printer’s IP address, and then click **IP Print**.

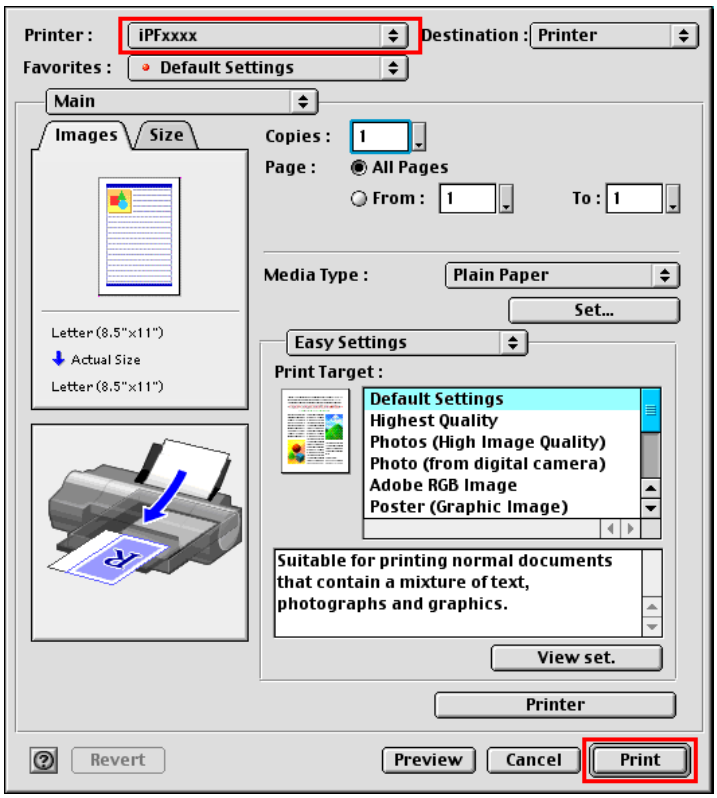
Printing from the application software

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

   - This dialog box includes basic printing options for the range of pages, number of copies, and so on. You can also specify enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, and a variety of other print settings.

2. Make sure the printer is selected in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

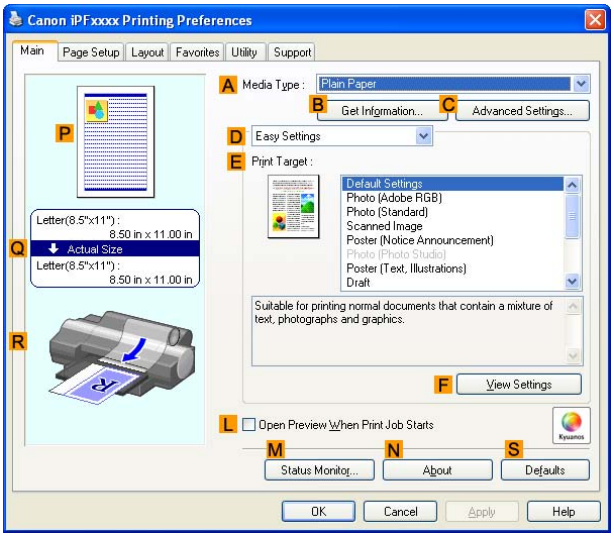
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

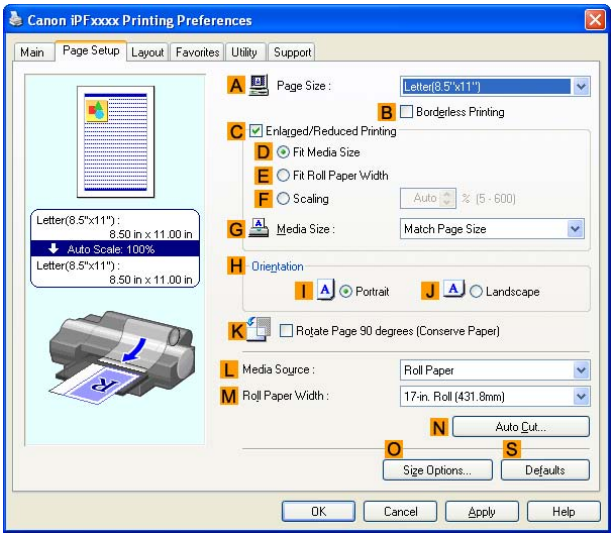
Important

- Always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the type and size do not match, an error message will be displayed and printing is not possible.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, select the size of the original as specified in the application.
7. In the L **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.
8. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in L **Media Source**, select the width of the loaded roll in M **Roll Paper Width**.

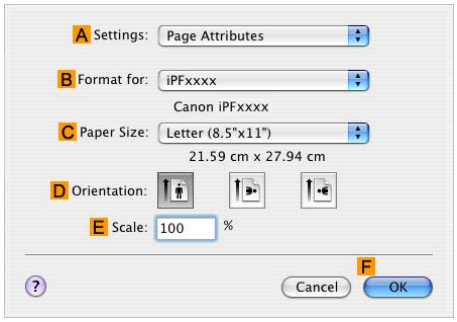
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)

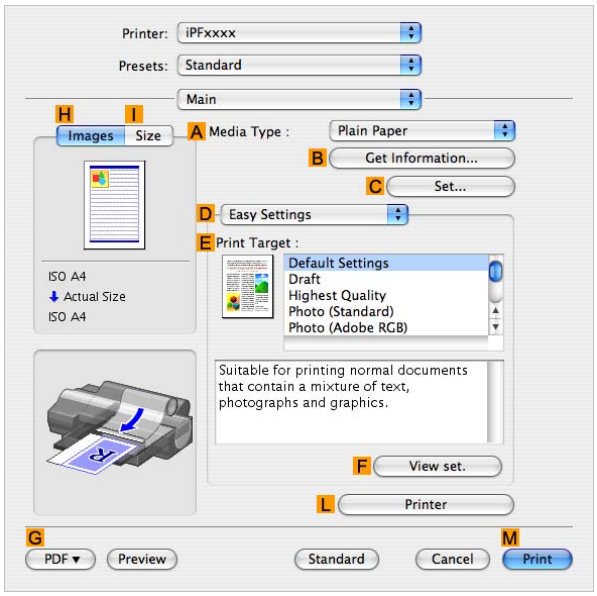
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

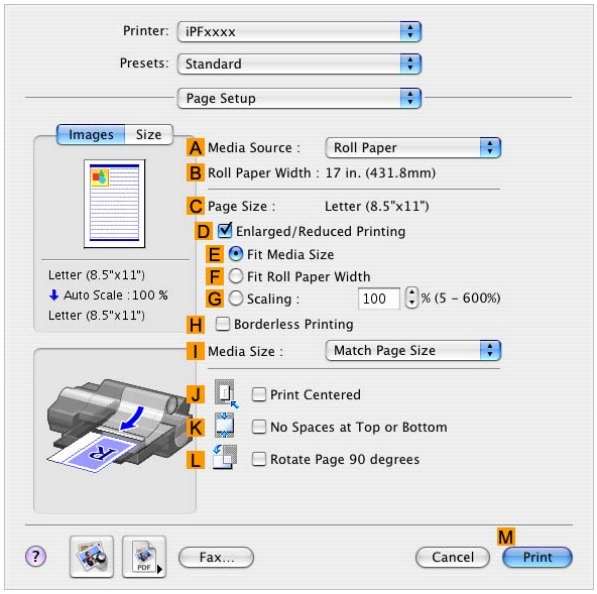


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

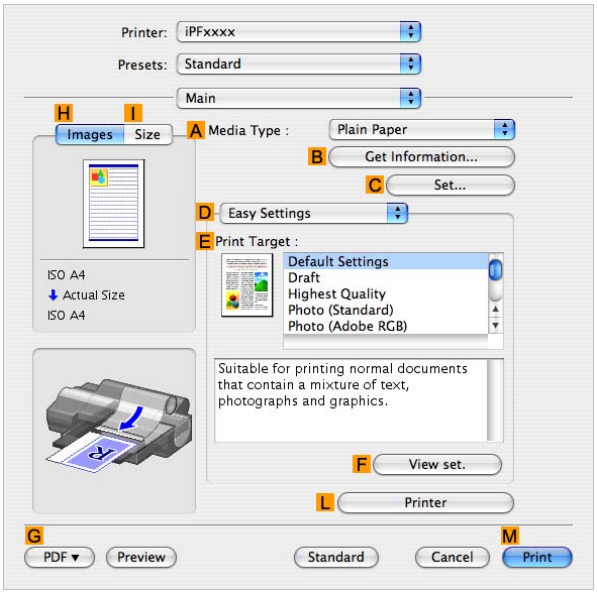


9. In the **A Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

10. If you have selected **Cut Sheet** or **Manual** in **A Media Source**, make sure the size as selected in **Page Setup** is displayed in **C Page Size**. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



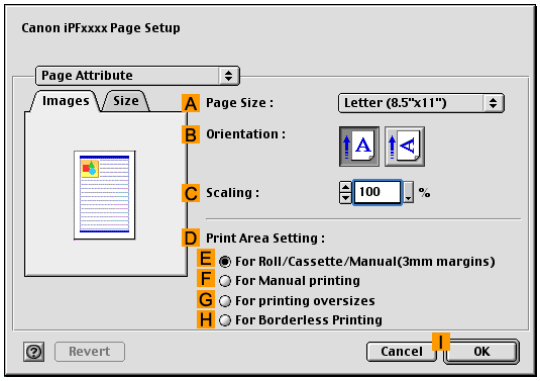
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications.
  For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)

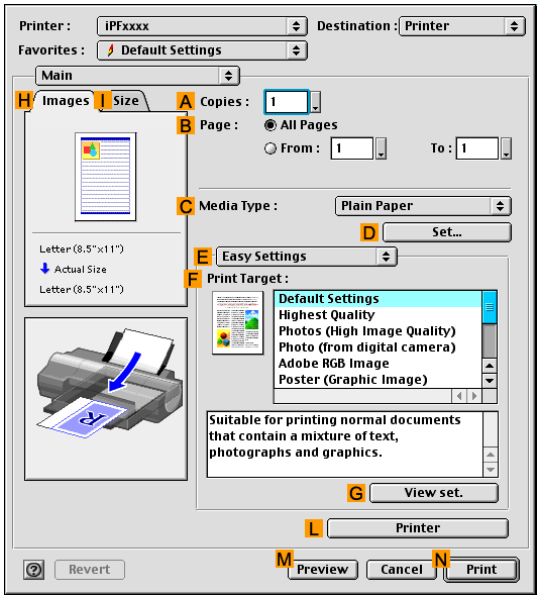
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9)

If you have replaced the paper, you must complete the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

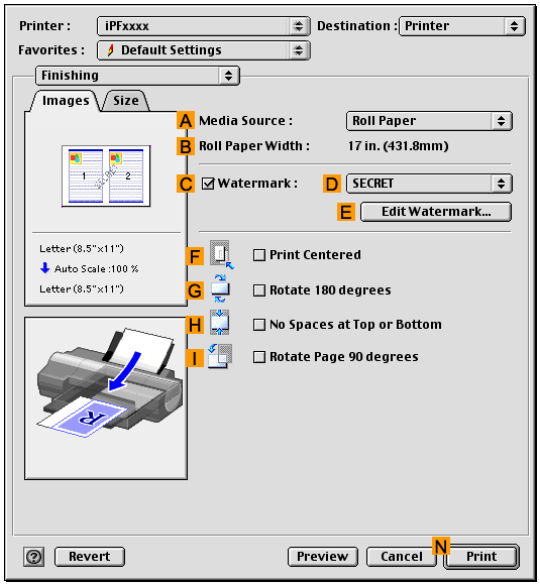


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Access the **Finishing** pane.

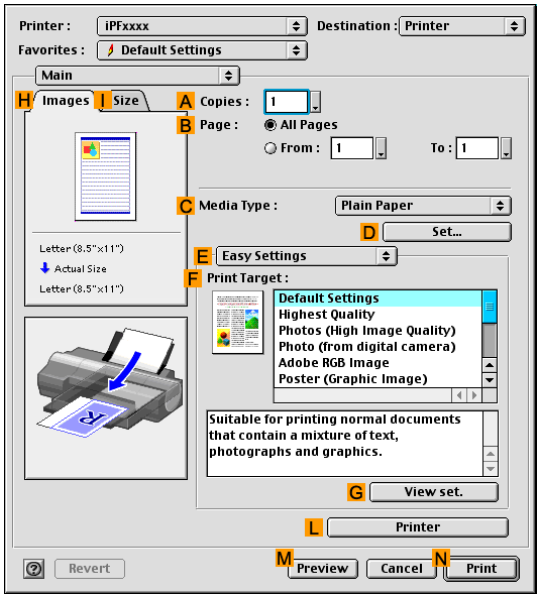


9. In the **A** **Media Source** list, select how paper is supplied.

10. If you have selected **Roll Paper** in **A** **Media Source**, make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



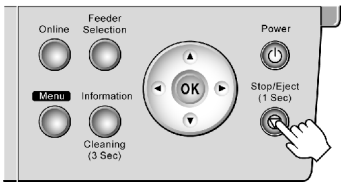
Note

- A variety of settings are available in the printer driver to suit different printing applications. For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)

Canceling print jobs

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel

Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel print jobs or ink drying in progress, and eject the paper when the printer is online, offline, or in menu mode.

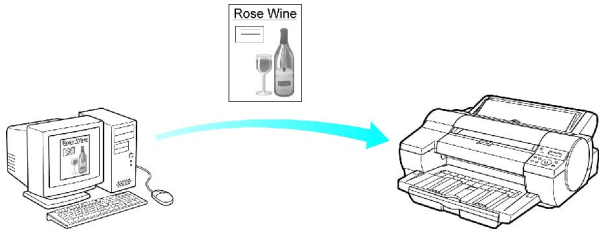


Printer operation varies depending on the condition when you hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more during printing.

- If you press the **Stop/Eject** button before printing starts

  Holding down for a second or more the **Stop/Eject** button before printing cancels the print job and brings the printer online.

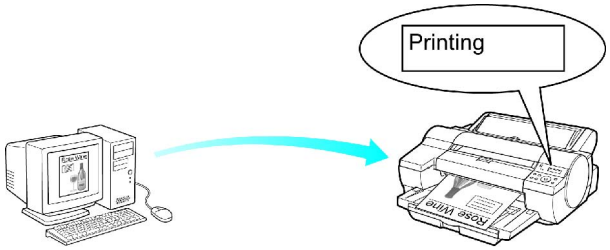
  If you are using a roll, the paper is fed before the printer goes online.



The printer goes online without printing

- If you press the **Stop/Eject** button during printing

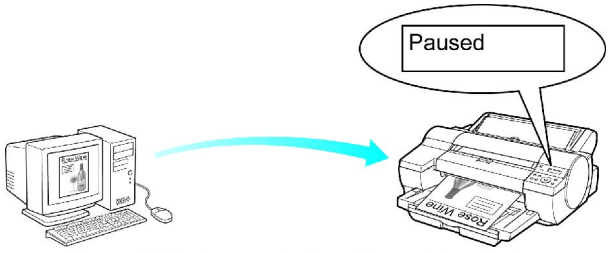
  Holding down for a second or more the **Stop/Eject** button during printing stops printing immediately.



The printer stops immediately

- If you press the **Stop/Eject** button when printing is paused

  Holding down for a second or more the **Stop/Eject** button when printing is paused cancels the print job and ejects the paper.



The print job is canceled and the printer ejects paper.

Canceling Print Jobs from Windows

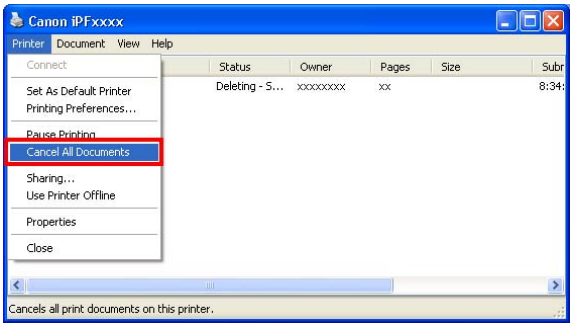
You can cancel print jobs in the printer window.

1. Click the printer icon in the taskbar to display the printer window.

Note

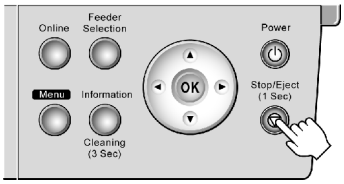
- You can also display this window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) folder, accessible through the Windows **start** menu.

2. Choose **Cancel All Documents** in the **Printer** menu to stop the print processing.



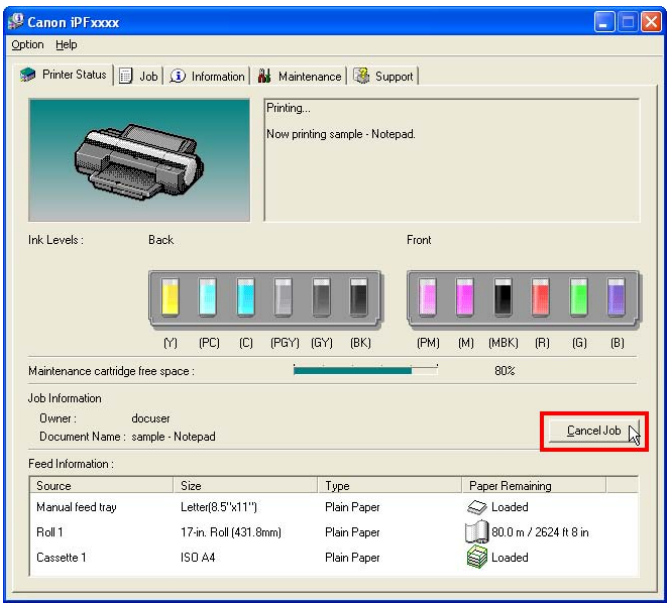
To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Do the following if no print jobs are shown in the printer window (because they have already been sent to the printer).

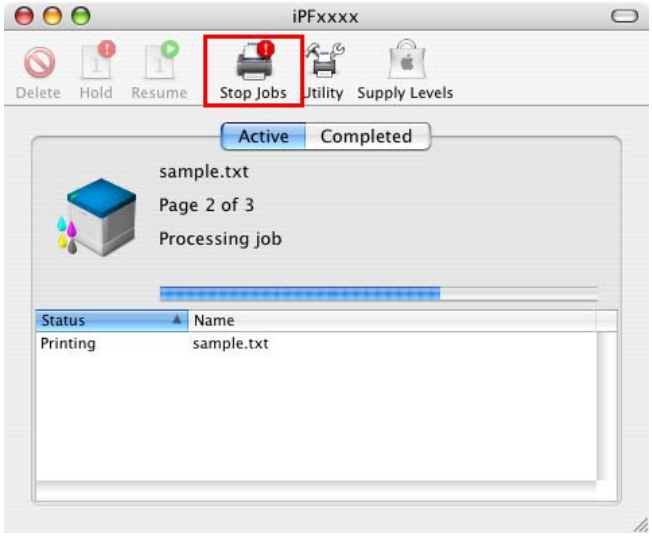
1. Double-click the taskbar icon to access the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.
2. On the **Printer Status** sheet, click **Cancel Job**.



Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X

You can cancel print jobs in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.

1. Click the printer icon in the **Dock** to display the printer window.
2. Click **Stop Jobs** to stop printing.

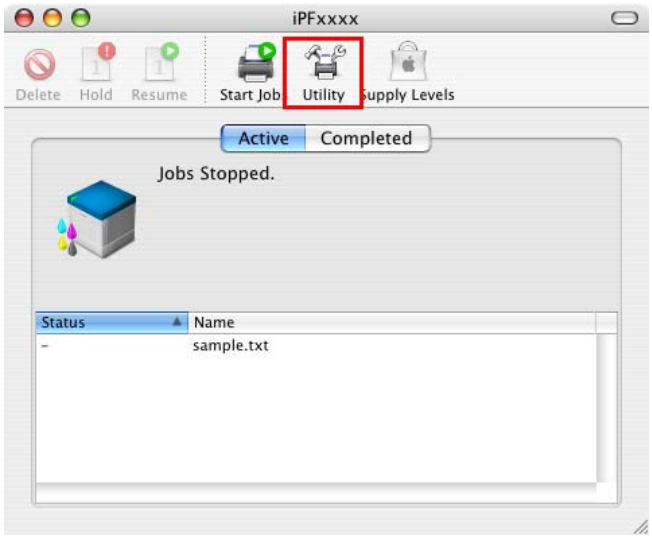


In this window, you can cancel jobs sent to the printer.

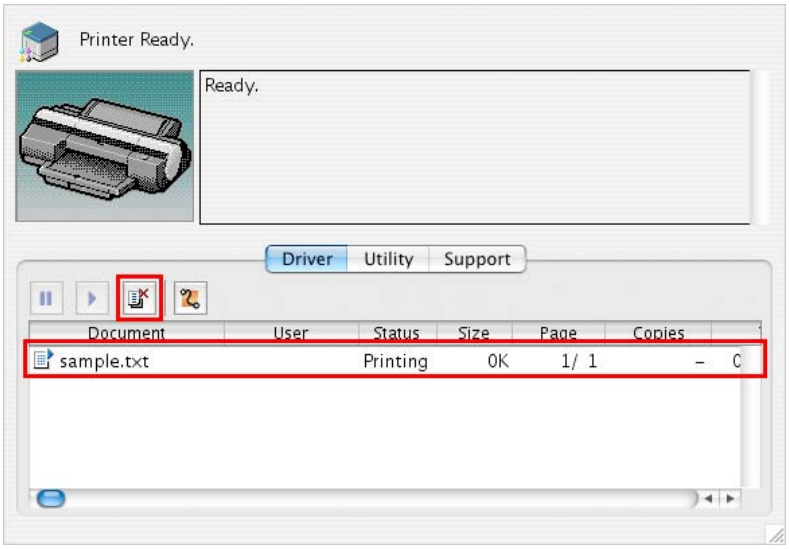
Note

- The print job is displayed on the printer's screen during the transmission of print data from the computer. When the transmission is completed, the job is not displayed even during printing.

3. Click **Utility** to display **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.



4. Select the print job to cancel and click the **Cancel Job** button to remove the print job.



The job sent to the printer is canceled.

Note

- The print job is displayed on the **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** window while the printer receives the print data from the computer. It is not displayed before transmission of print data to the printer, even if the computer has started the process of the data.

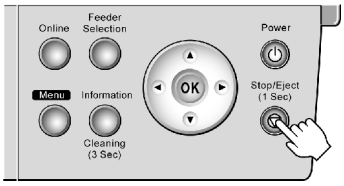
5. Exit **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**. In the printer window, click **Start Jobs**.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart job processing, the next job cannot be printed.

To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9

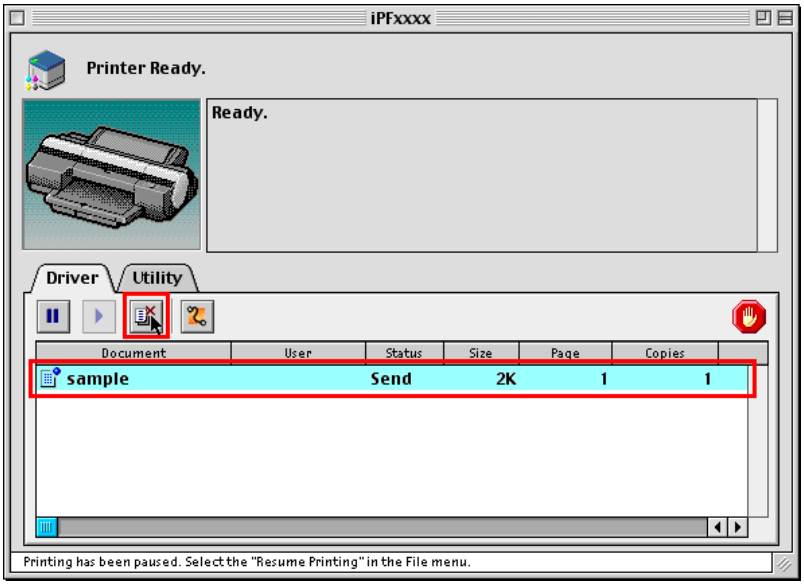
How to cancel print jobs varies depending on whether you are printing in the foreground or background.

Canceling background print jobs

1. Open the **Garo Printer Extra** folder, which was installed on the hard disk at the same time as the printer driver.
2. Open **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**.
3. Choose **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to stop print processing.

The job status changes from **Sending** to **Send**.

4. Select the print job to cancel and click the **Cancel Job** button to remove the print job.



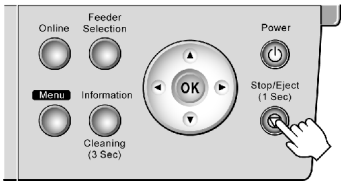
5. Choose **Resume Printing** in the **File** menu.

Important

- Always follow these steps if you cancel print jobs. If you do not restart the print queue, the next job cannot be printed.

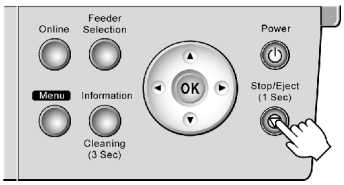
To cancel print jobs from the Control Panel, follow these steps.

1. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Canceling foreground print jobs

1. When the progress indicator is displayed, hold down the Command key and press the period (.) key to cancel print jobs.
2. If the Display Screen of the Control Panel still indicates that the job is in progress and the **Data lamp** continues flashing, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to stop printing.



Handling Paper

Paper

Paper

The printer supports the following types of paper.

Paper Type

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Paper Size

Roll	Paper width	203 to 432 mm (8.0 to 17.0 in)
	Outer diameter	Up to 150 mm (6 in)
	Inner diameter of paper core	2 or 3 inches
	Printing surface	Top (outside)
Sheets		203 × 279 mm to 432 × 1,600 mm (8.0 × 11.0 in to 17.0 × 63.0 in)

Note

- Paper quality varies among manufacturers. Before buying paper, contact the Canon dealer where you purchased the printer.

Types of Paper

For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . This guide identifies supported plain paper, coated paper, photo paper (such as glossy photo paper), proofing paper, CAD paper, and other types of paper. The Paper Reference Guide identifies types and specifications of paper, as well as information on printer driver settings and tips on handling paper.
You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide , on the printer Control Panel, and in the printer driver by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website.

Note

- The media types with "†" marked in the product name are those specified as genuine Canon media. For other media, please contact the respective media manufacturer after reading the instruction manuals supplied with the media.

Viewing the Paper Reference Guide

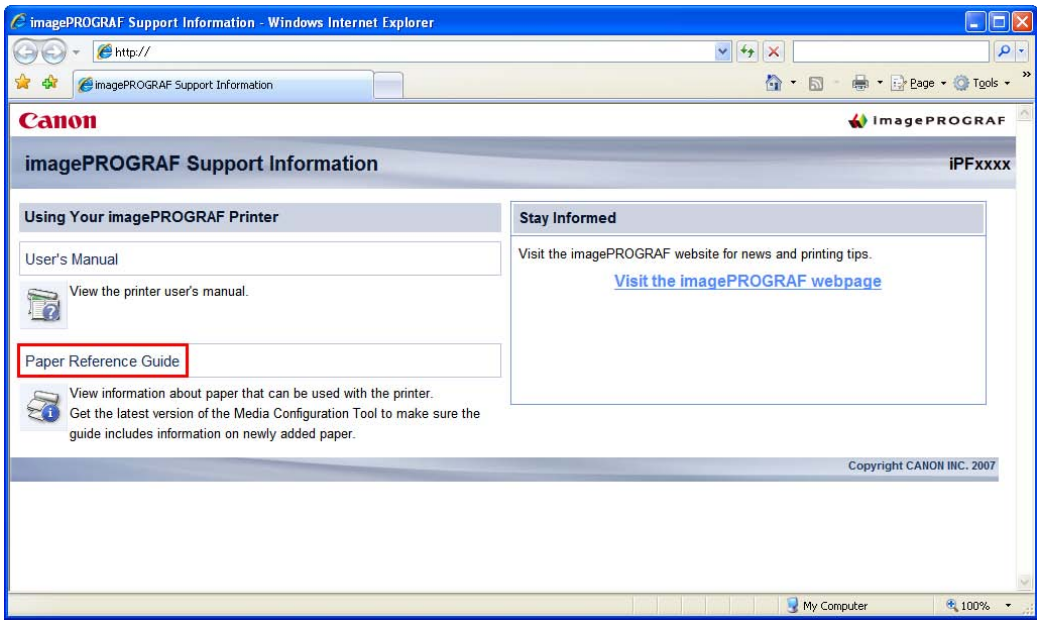
You can access the Paper Reference Guide as follows. Follow the steps for your particular operating system.

- Windows

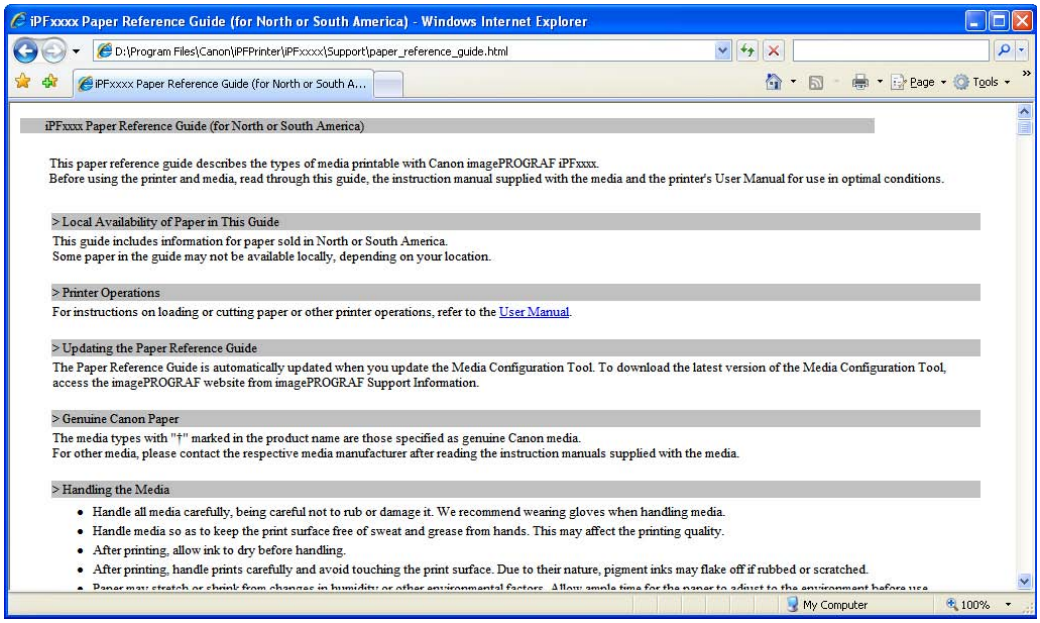
1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.



The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.

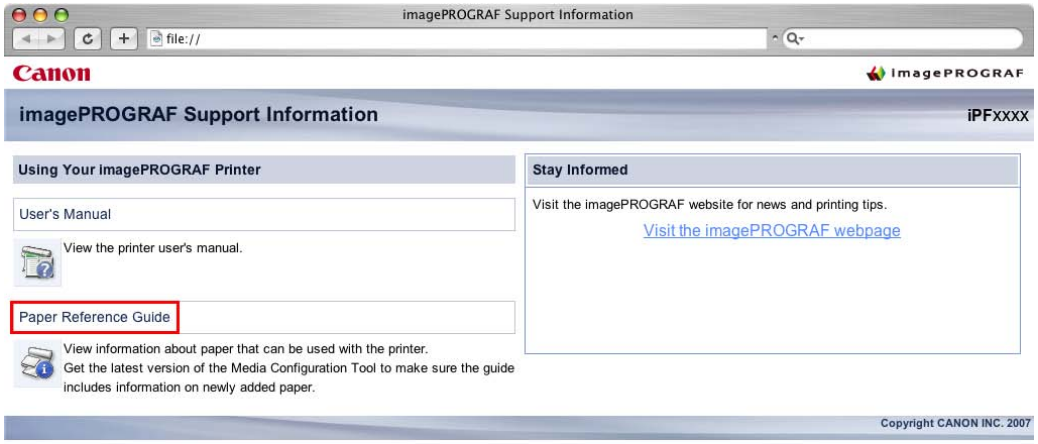


- Mac OS X

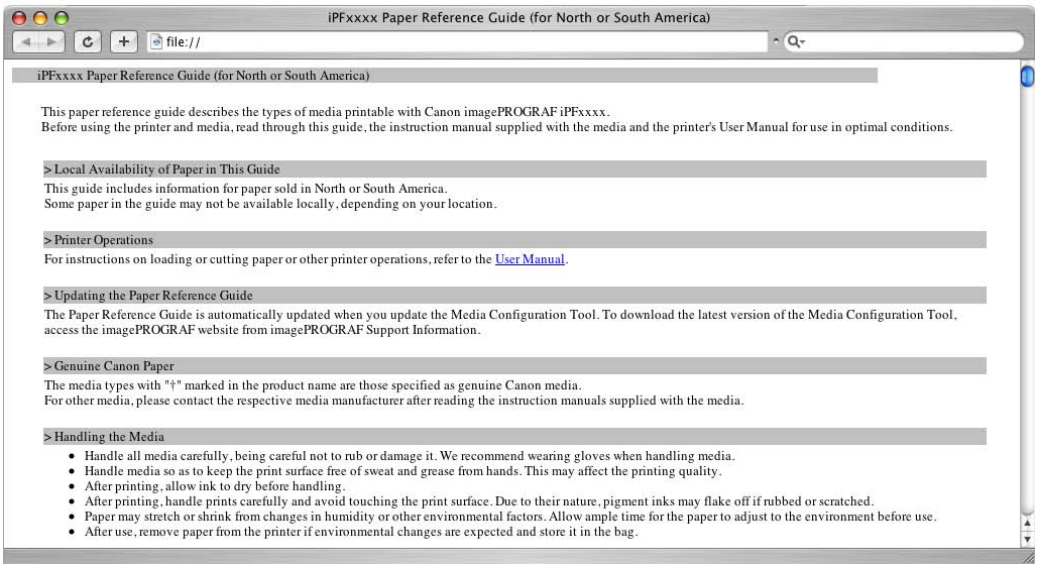
1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

The online support window is displayed.

2. Select **Paper Reference Guide**.



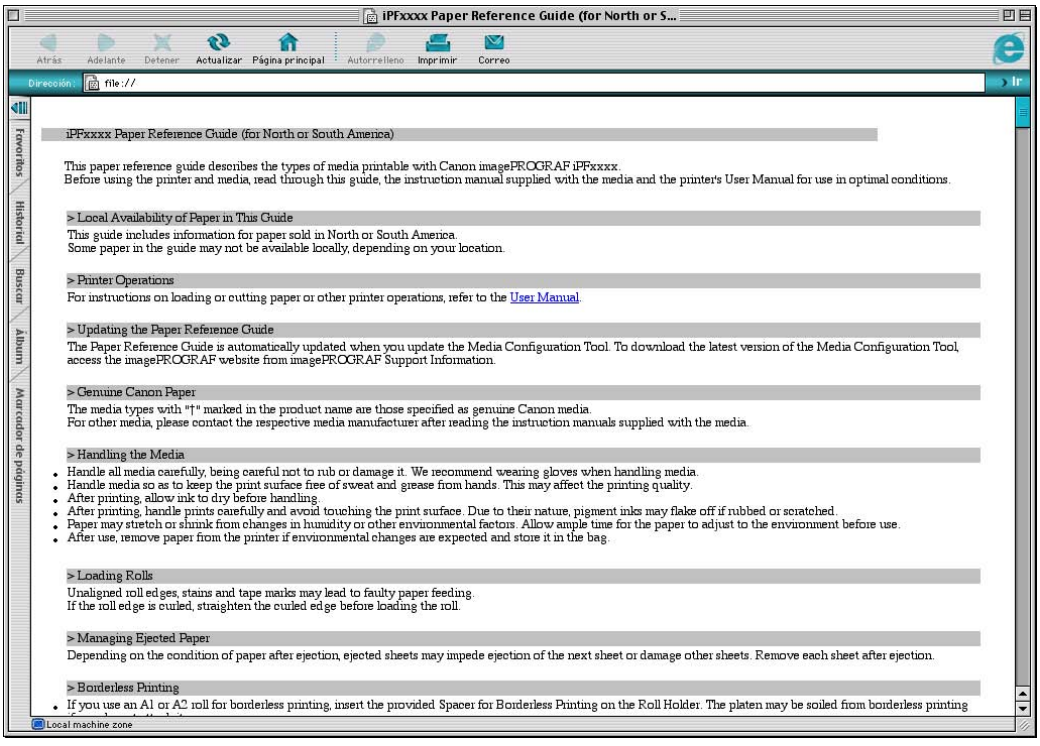
The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



- Mac OS 9

  1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Paper Reference Guide** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

The Paper Reference Guide is displayed.



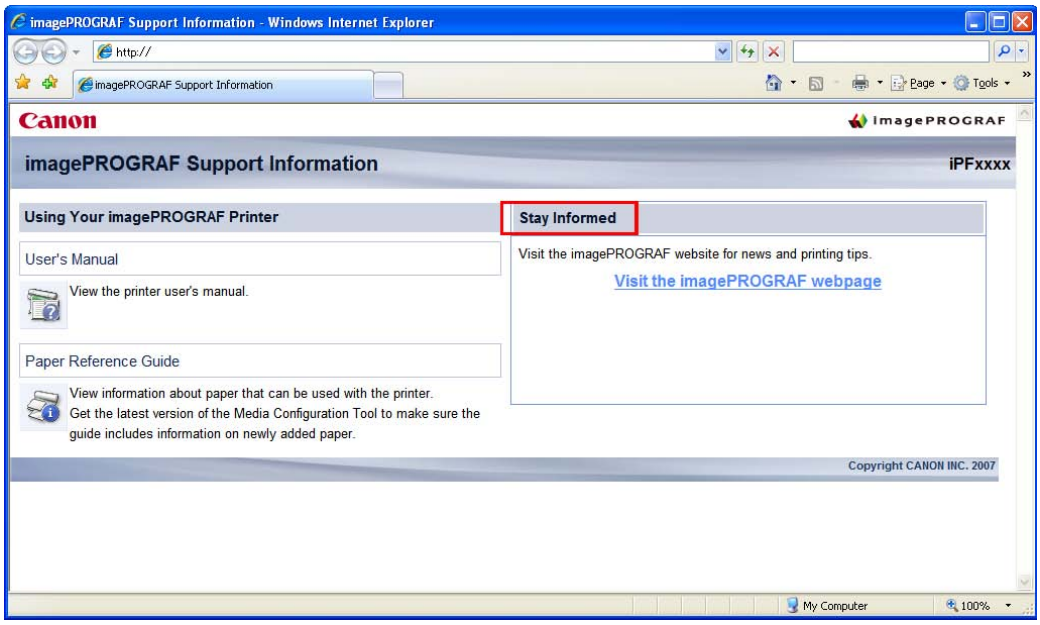
Updating paper information

You can update paper information in the Paper Reference Guide and on the printer by downloading the latest version of the Media Configuration Tool from the imagePROGRAF website. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
Follow these steps to access the imagePROGRAF website.

Important

- When you update paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool, the paper type setting on the Control Panel, in the printer driver, and in related software is updated.
- Windows
  1. Double-click the **iPFxxxx Support** icon on the desktop. (Here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model.)

  The online support window is displayed.
  2. Select **Stay Informed**.



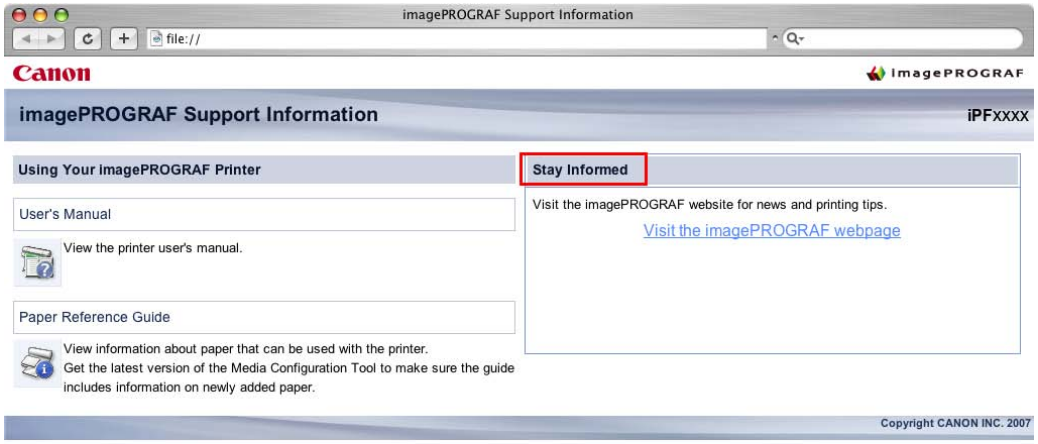
  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

- Mac OS X

  1. Click the **iPF Support** icon in the **Dock**.

  The online support window is displayed.

  2. Select **Stay Informed**.



  The default browser is started, and the imagePROGRAF webpage is displayed.

Note

- In Windows, you can also access the imagePROGRAF webpage by clicking the **start** menu, selecting **Programs** > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool to start the Media Configuration Tool, and clicking Extra Information.
- On a Macintosh computer, you can also access the imagePROGRAF website from the Finder by selecting Applications (in Mac OS X or OS 9) > Canon Utilities > iPFxxxx Media Configuration Tool (here, iPFxxxx represents the printer model) > MCTxxxx to start the Media Configuration Tool and then clicking Extra Information.

Paper Sizes

You can use the following sizes of paper.

Sheets

You can use sheets in the following sizes, up to 432 mm (17 in) wide.

Paper Size	Dimensions	Feeding from Cassette
ISO A2	420 × 594 mm (16.5 × 23 in)	Yes
ISO A2+	432 × 610 mm (17 × 24 in)	No
ISO A3	297 × 420 mm (12 × 17 in)	Yes
ISO A3+	329 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)	Yes
ISO A4	210 × 297 mm (8 × 12 in)	Yes
ISO B3	353 × 500 mm (14 × 20 in)	No
ISO B4	250 × 353 mm (10 × 14 in)	No
JIS B3	364 × 515 mm (14 × 20 in)	Yes
JIS B4	257 × 364 mm (10 × 14 in)	Yes
17"x22"(ANSI C)	432 × 559 mm (17 × 22 in)	Yes
11"x17" (Ledger)	279 × 432 mm (11 × 17 in)	Yes
13"x19" (Super B)	330 × 483 mm (13 × 19 in)	Yes
Letter (8.5"x11")	216 × 279 mm (8.5 × 11 in)	Yes
Legal (8.5"x14")	216 × 356 mm (8.5 × 14 in)	Yes
12"x18" (ARCH B)	305 × 457 mm (12 × 18 in)	Yes
9"x12" (ARCH A)	229 × 305 mm (9 × 12 in)	No
DIN C3	324 × 458 mm (13 × 18 in)	No
DIN C4	229 × 324 mm (9 × 13 in)	No
14"x17"	355 × 432 mm (14 × 17 in)	Yes
12"x16"	304 × 406 mm (12 × 16 in)	Yes
10"x12"	254 × 305 mm (10 × 12 in)	Yes
10"x15"	254 × 381 mm (10 × 15 in)	Yes
US Photo 16"x20"	406 × 508 mm (16 × 20 in)	Yes
13"x22"	329 × 558 mm (13 × 22 in)	Yes
Poster 300x900mm	300 × 900 mm (12 × 35 in)	No
Custom Media Size	• Tray (top) 203 × 279 mm (8 × 11 in) - 432 × 610 mm (17 × 24 in) • Tray (front) 203 × 520 mm (8 × 21 in) - 432 × 610 mm (17 × 24 in)	No

Roll

If the Roll Feed Unit is installed, rolls that meet the conditions below are supported.

- Outer diameter: up to 150 mm (6 in)
- Inner diameter of paper core: 2 or 3 inches
- Printing side out

Roll Paper Width Settings in Printer Driver (*1)	Borderless Printing (*1)
17-in. Roll (432mm)	Yes
ISO A2/A3 Roll (420mm)	Yes (*2)
16-in. Roll (407mm)	Yes
14-in. Roll (356mm)	Yes
A3+ Roll (329mm)	Yes
300mm Roll (300mm)	No
ISO A3/A4 Roll (297mm)	No
JIS B4 Roll (257mm)	Yes
10-in. Roll (254mm)	Yes
8-in. Roll (203mm)	No

*1: For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, see the Paper Reference Guide (→P.107)

*2: Requires the Spacer for Borderless Printing.

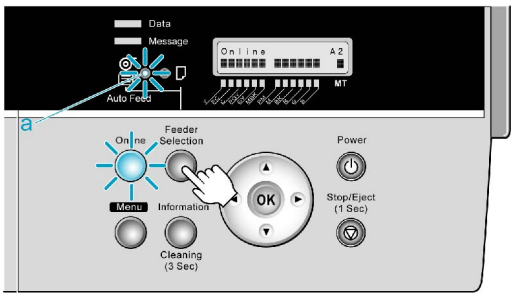
Note

- In the printer driver, paper sizes are categorized into groups based on the “size system” such as ISO A or JIS. In Windows and Mac OS 9, some size systems are not available by default.
- In addition to the preceding sizes, the printer also supports printing on paper in a range of 203×279 mm to 432×610 mm. For details on non-standard paper sizes, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes”. (→P.359)
- Borderless printing is not supported on sheets.

Handling rolls

Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.
You must specify auto feed when using rolls. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Auto Feed lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source.

Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.729)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the operation is finished.
  - When in the process of loading paper
    Finish loading the paper before selecting the paper source.
  - When in the process of replacing Ink Tanks
    Finish replacing the Ink Tanks before selecting the paper source.
  - If the Top Cover is open
    Close the Top Cover before selecting the paper source.

At this point, load the roll. (→P.118)

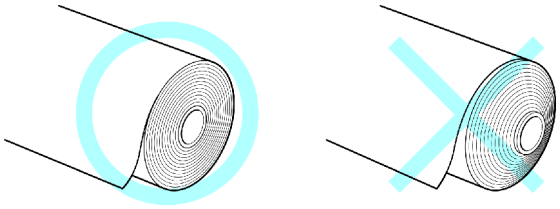
Note

- If any paper is loaded that will not be used, remove it before loading the roll.
  (→P.122)
  (→P.172)
- When printing on rolls after printing on sheets, make sure that no printed documents are left on the Output Tray and that the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If you print without checking this, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.726)

Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder

Note

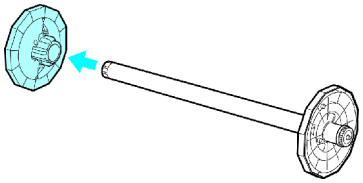
- For details on supported sizes and types of the roll that can be loaded, see Paper Sizes (→P.112) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- Align the edges of the paper on both ends of the roll.



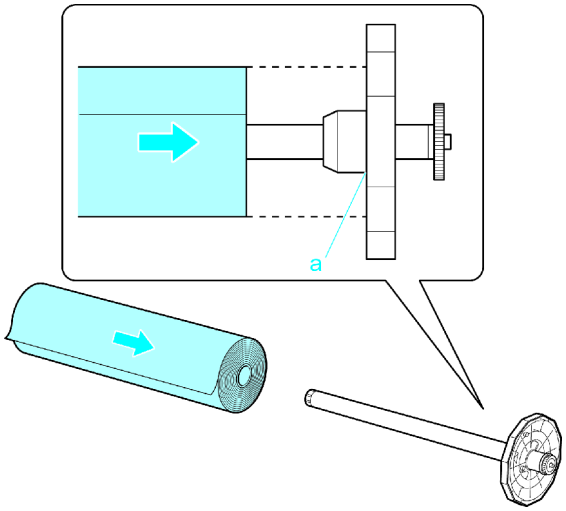
- If the edge of the roll is bent or soiled, use the **Paper Cutting** operation of the printer to cut the edge of the paper manually. (→P.130)
- If the paper is badly creased or bent, cut the edge of the roll with scissors before loading the roll in the printer, and then cut the edge of the paper manually using the **Paper Cutting** operation of the printer. (→P.130)
- To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the roll holder and attach the 3-Inch Paper Core Holder Stopper. (→P.144)
- If you use a roll A2 or larger for **Borderless Printing**, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

Follow the steps 3 and 4 below.

1. Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.



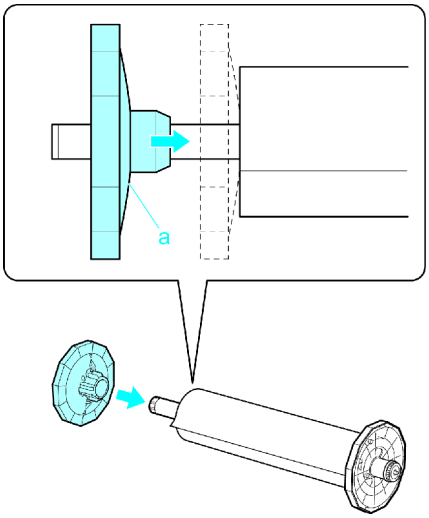
2. With the Roll Holder sideways and the edge of the roll paper facing forward as shown, insert the roll in the Roll Holder from the left. Insert the roll firmly until it touches the flange (a) of the Roll Holder.



Important

- Always put the Roll Holder sideways when loading rolls. If you accidentally load a roll when the Roll Holder is upright, it may damage the Roll Holder.
- Set the roll on a table or other flat surface so that it does not roll or fall. Rolls are heavy, and dropping a roll may cause injury.

3. Insert the Holder Stopper from the left in the Roll Holder as shown, pushing it firmly in until the flange (a) of the Holder Stopper touches the roll.

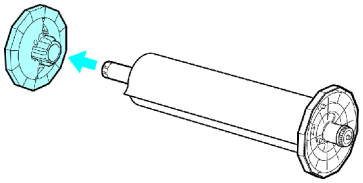


Important

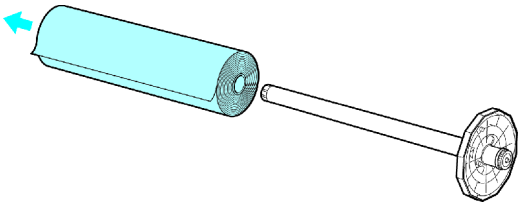
- Insert the roll firmly until it touches the Holder Stopper. If it does not touch the stopper, feeding problems may occur.

Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder

1. Remove the Holder Stopper from the Roll Holder.



2. Remove the roll from the Roll Holder.



Important

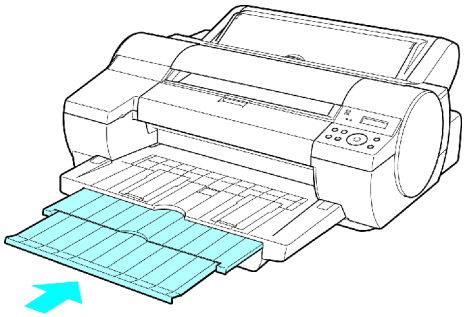
- After removal, store the roll in the original bag or box, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight. If paper is not stored properly, the printing surface may become scratched, which may affect the printing quality when you use it again.

Note

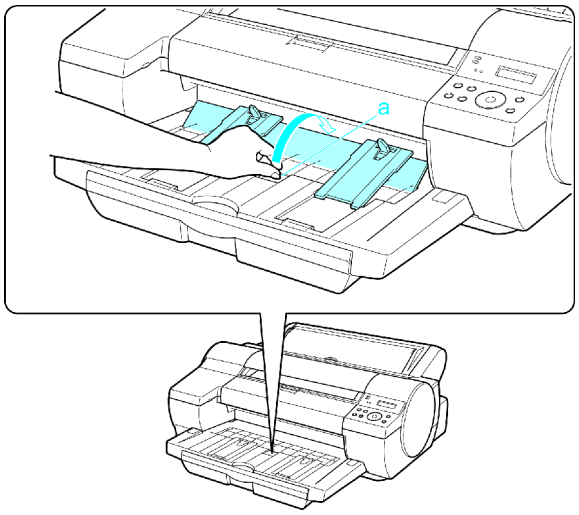
- How to remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment : (→P.144)
- How to remove the Spacer for Borderless Printing : (→P.144)

Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit

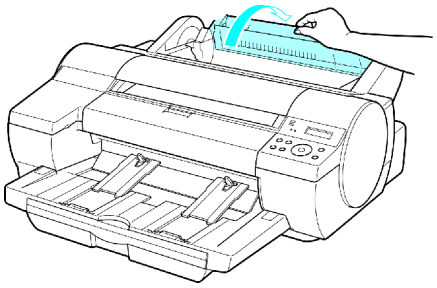
1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



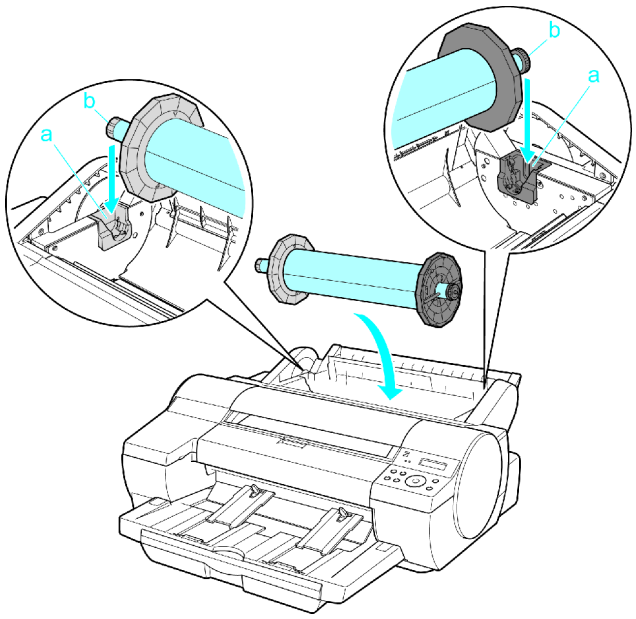
2. Insert your fingers under the Vertical Paper Guides on the Output Tray at the positions shown (a) and lift the guides.



3. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.



4. With the edge of the roll paper facing up toward you, insert the Roll Holder shaft into the guide grooves (a) of the Roll Holder Slot on both sides. Make sure that the colors of the Roll Holder shaft ends (b) and the guide grooves match.



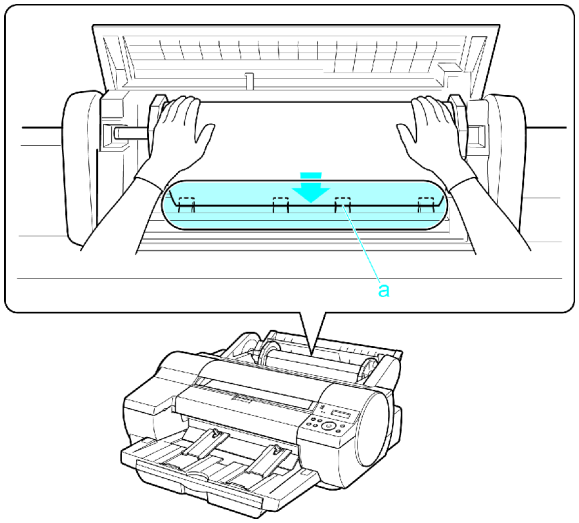
Caution

- Be careful not to pinch your fingers between the guide grooves (a) and the Roll Holder shaft (b) when loading rolls.

Note

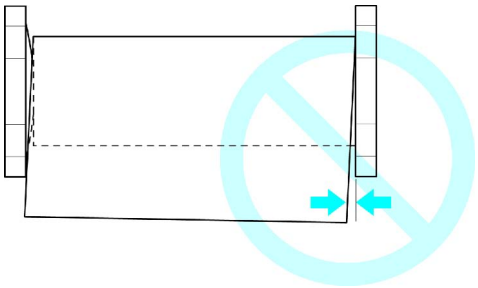
- If it is difficult to load rolls from the front, load them from behind the printer.

5. Insert the edge of the roll paper into the Paper Feed Slot (a) and feed it manually until you hear the paper feed tone.



Important

- Be careful not to soil the printing surface of roll paper as you pull it out. This may affect the printing quality. We recommend wearing clean cloth gloves when handling rolls to protect the printing surface.
- If the paper is wrinkled or warped, straighten it out before loading it.
- Load paper straight so it is not fed askew.



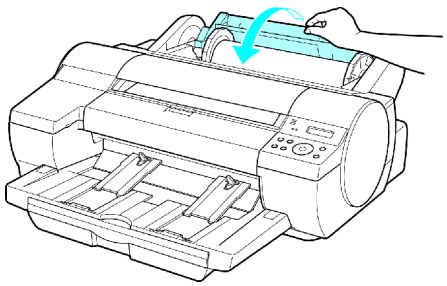
The printer now starts advancing the paper.

6. Specify the type and length of the paper.

How the printer operates after the paper is fed varies depending on the setting for automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, as well as the barcode printed on rolls.

Automatic Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper	Barcodes	Printer Operation After the Paper is Fed
On	Printed	The type and amount of paper left is automatically detected based on the barcode printed on the roll. There is no need to specify the type and length of the paper.
	Not printed	You must specify the type and length of the paper. A menu for selection of the paper type and length is automatically shown on the Display Screen . (→P.124) (→P.125)
Off	Printed	You must specify the type of paper. (→P.124)
	Not printed	

7. Close the Roll Paper Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.



8. If the edge of the roll is bent or soiled, cut the edge of the paper.

1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline.

2. After confirming **Offline / FeedPaper** ↑↓, press ▲ or ▼ to feed the roll paper to the position for cutting.

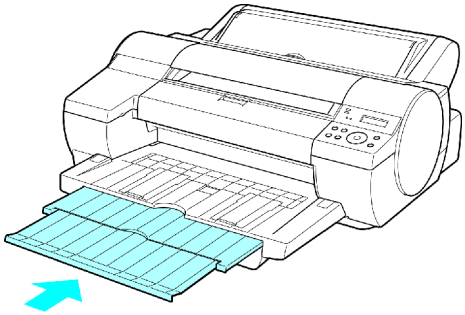
3. Select **Yes** in **Paper Cut** on Printer Menu, and then press the **OK** button. (→P.130)

Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit

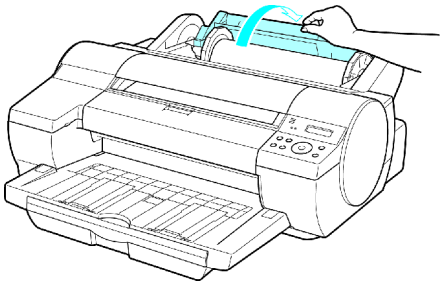
Important

- When a roll has been advanced, do not pull it out by force. This will prevent the paper from being advanced.
  If you accidentally pull out the paper, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button to enable feeding.

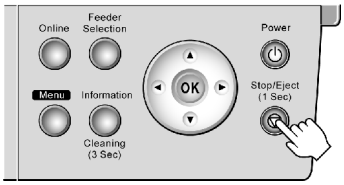
1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



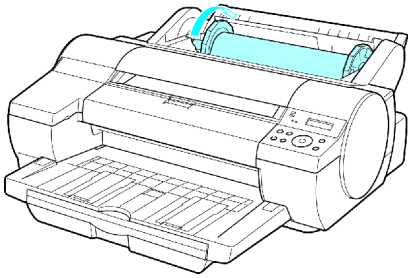
2. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover with one hand, as shown.



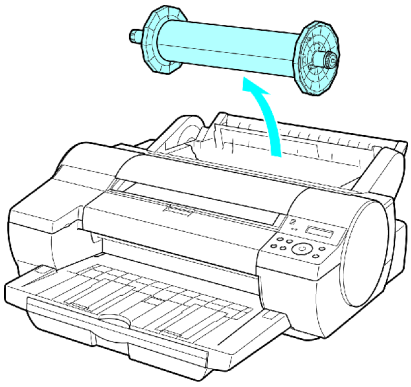
3. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to rewind the roll.



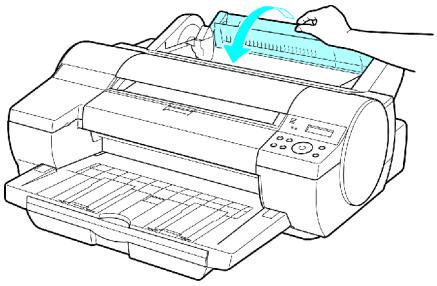
4. Using both hands, rotate the Roll Holder toward the back to rewind the roll.



5. Remove the Roll Holder from the Roll Holder Slot.



6. Close the Roll Paper Unit Cover.



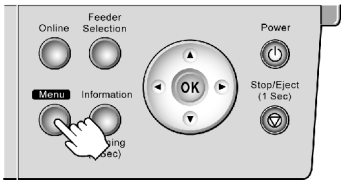
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you load the roll, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper.
- Select the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.125)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Roll Media Type**, and then press ▼.

```
Paper Settings
Roll Media Type ↓
```

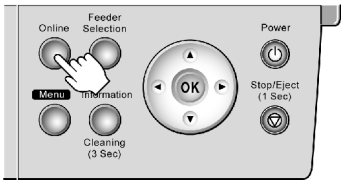
4. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Roll Media Type
= Plain Paper
```

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



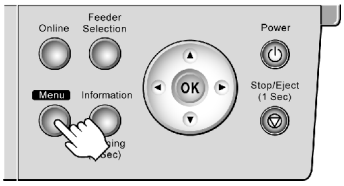
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)

When changing the length of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the length as follows.

Note

- When you specify the roll length in the printer menu, **Chk Remain.Roll** must be set to **On**. If it is **Off**, the **Roll Length Set** menu is not shown.
- After you load a roll and specify the roll type, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the roll length on the Display Screen if no barcode has been printed on the roll and you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper. In this case, follow step 4. The printer will automatically go online.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

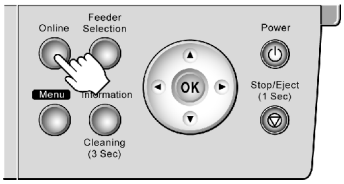
3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Roll Length Set**, and then press ▼.

```
Paper Settings
Roll Length Set ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper length, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

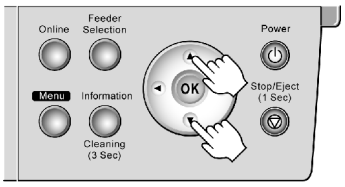
```
Roll Length Set
=30.0 m
```

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Feeding Roll Paper Manually

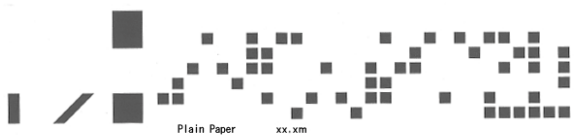
When the printer is offline and roll paper is selected as the paper source, you can feed or retract the roll paper by pressing ▲ or ▼.



Press ▲ to retract the roll paper manually.
Press ▼ to feed the roll paper manually.
If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for less than a second, the roll paper will move about 1 mm (0.04 in).
If you hold down ▲ or ▼ for more than a second, the paper will move until you release the button. Release the button if **Feed Limit..** is shown on the Display Screen.

Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper

If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, when the roll is ejected, a barcode with text is printed on the roll paper that identifies the type of paper and amount left. If this function is activated and barcodes are printed on the roll paper, the type of paper and amount left are automatically detected when you load a roll. The barcode will be cut off after it has been read.



Note

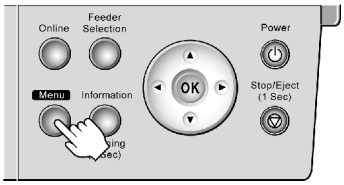
- If the document is not cut but kept in the printer, only the text message is printed. This is also the case when printing on 8-inch rolls or clear film.

Important

- If the barcode on the roll is not detected, enter the type and length of paper on the Control Panel.

Follow these steps to activate detection of the remaining roll paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press the ▼ button.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Chk Remain.Roll**, and then press the ▼ button.

```
Paper Settings
Chk Remain.Roll ↓
```

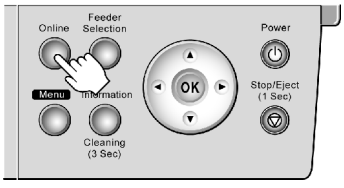
4. Press ◄ or ► to select the **On**, and then press the **OK** button.

```
Chk Remain.Roll
On
```

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Chk Remain.Roll
= On
```

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



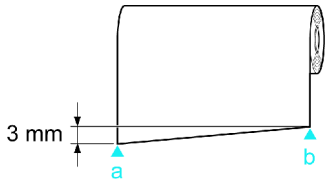
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically

If the leading edge of a roll is crooked or warped, it may cause an error message or printing problems. In this case, set **Trim Edge First** to **Automatic** or **On** on the Control Panel to have the printer cut the leading edge to make the edge straight after you load a roll.

Trim Edge First offers the following options.

- **Automatic**

  If the left and right side of the leading edge of the roll ((a) and (b)) are uneven by 3 mm (0.12 in) or more when you load the roll, the edge is cut an amount relative to the slant to ensure a straight edge, and scraps are removed. The edge is not cut if the unevenness is less than 3 mm.

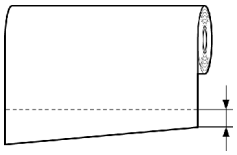


- **Off**

  The edge is not cut and scraps are not removed. This setting is **Off** for most types of paper, by default. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

- **On**

  The leading edge is cut off when you load a roll, and scraps are removed. The amount of paper cut off from the leading edge varies depending on the paper type. For more information, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

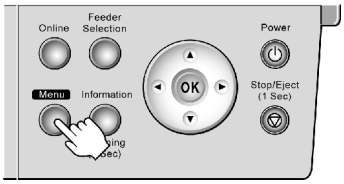


Note

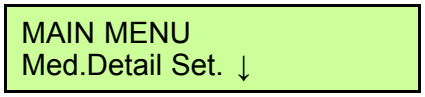
- If you print on paper that has an irregular width, set **Skew Check Lv.** to **Loose** for a higher skew detection threshold or to **Off** to disable skew detection. However, if paper is loaded askew when detection is **Off**, note that paper jams or Platen soiling may occur.

Follow these steps to change the **Trim Edge First** setting.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press ▼.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the ▼ button.

```
Med.Detail Set.
= Plain Paper ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Trim Edge First**, and then press the ▼ button.

```
Plain Paper
Trim Edge First ↓
```

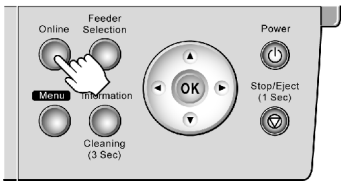
5. Press ◄ or ► to select the desired setting option, and then press the **OK** button.

```
Trim Edge First
On
```

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Trim Edge First
= On
```

6. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls

How a roll is cut after ejection varies depending on the printer settings.

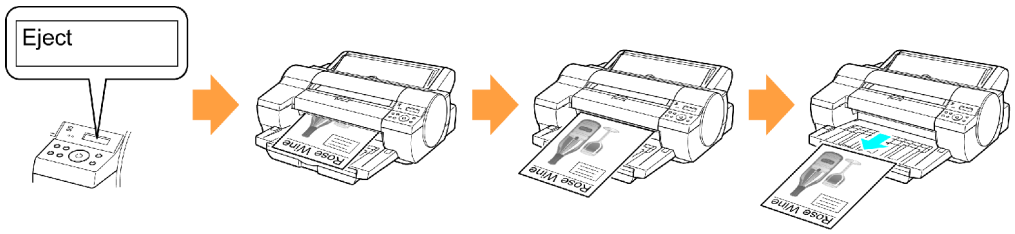
Cutting Method		Menu Settings		Driver Setting	
Automatic	Rolls are automatically cut by the Cutter Unit .	**Cutting Mode**	**Automatic**	**Auto Cut**	**Yes**
Eject (→P.131)	Choose this setting if you prefer not to have documents dropped immediately after printing, as when waiting for ink to dry. To cut the roll paper using the Cutter Unit , hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more.		**Eject**		**Yes**
Manual (→P.132)	Choose this setting when using paper or media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit . Cut each page from the roll using scissors. For continuous printing (if you will cut each page later), in **Auto Cut** , select **Yes** , or select **Print Cut Guideline** . (→P.447)		**Manual**		**No Yes Print Cut Guideline**
Paper Cutting (→P.133)	Choose this option if you want to cut pages by pressing Cutter Unit buttons for manual cutting after printing when the printer driver is configured to **Auto Cut** > **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** . Otherwise choose this option if you want to cut the roll edge after loading a roll.	**Paper Cut**	**Yes**		**No Print Cut Guideline**

Note

- Automatic and Eject are valid only when you have specified **Auto Cut** > **Yes** in the printer driver.
- With Eject, printing does not resume after a series of jobs have been printed continuously until the roll is cut.

Cut roll paper manually in the following cases:

Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing)

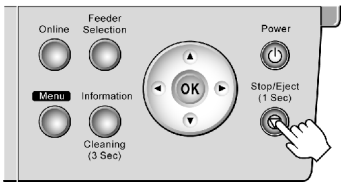


Select **Eject** | Print | Stopped automatically at the cut position | Cut by pressing the **Stop/Eject** button

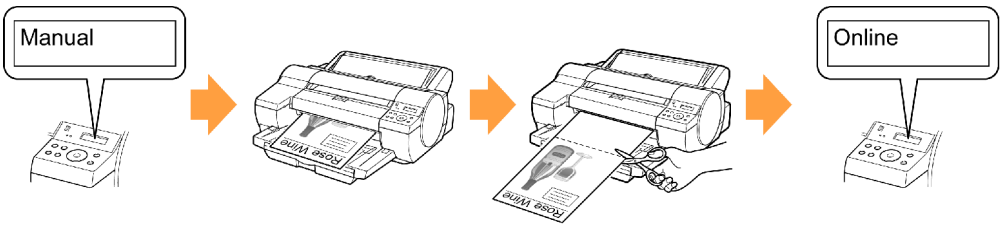
1. Select **Eject** as the **Cutting Mode** in the printer menu, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Cutting Mode = Eject

2. Starts printing.
   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
3. To cut the roll paper, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more.



Manual (when using paper or media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit)

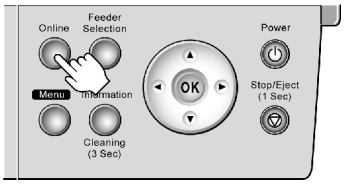


Select **Manual** | Print | Feed paper to the cut position and cut manually | Rewind paper by pressing the **Online** button

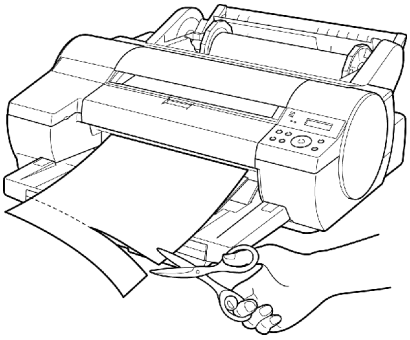
1. Select **Manual** as the **Cutting Mode** in the printer menu, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Cutting Mode = Manual

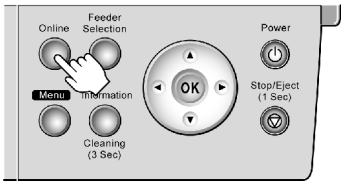
2. Starts printing.
   Complete the print settings.
3. Press the **Online** button.



   Roll paper is fed to the specified cut position and then automatically stopped.
4. Use scissors to cut the roll paper along the cut line.

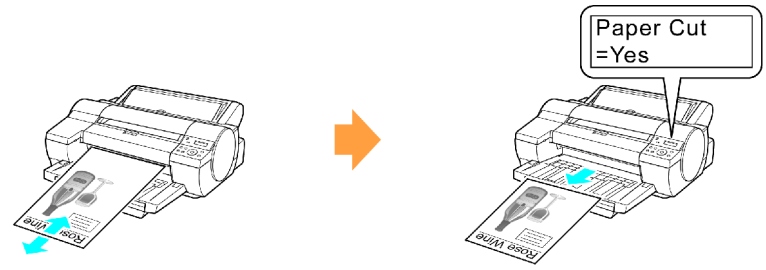


5. Press the **Online** button.



   After the roll is rewound, it stops automatically.

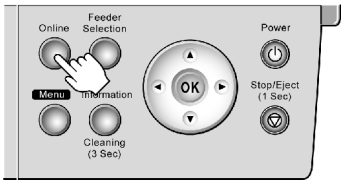
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)



Feed paper the cutting position by pressing ▲ or ▼

Paper Cut

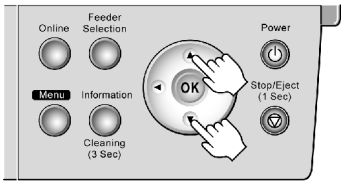
1. If the printer stops operating after printing, press the **Online** button.



The printer goes offline, and the following screen is displayed.

Offline FeedPaper ↑↓

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to feed the roll paper to the position for cutting.



3. Select **Yes** as the **Paper Cut** in the printer menu, and then press **OK**.
The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Paper Cut = Yes

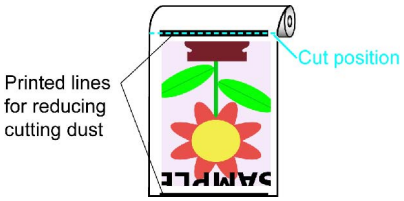
After the roll paper is cut, it is rewound automatically.

Caution

- If paper would be short when cut at a particular position, the roll may automatically be advanced in some cases before cutting.

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls

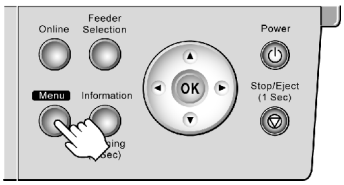
The printer is equipped with a function to reduce cutting dust for media such as Backlit Film that are more likely to generate debris when cut. This may improve printing quality and help prevent Printhead damage. You can set up this function to be activated for some types of paper.
When this function is activated, black lines are printed at the leading and trailing edges of documents.



Important

- Do not activate the function to reduce cutting dust for paper that wrinkles easily, such as Plain Paper or lightweight paper. This may impair cutting and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing is not available when this function is activated. Deactivate this function before borderless printing.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Med.Detail Set. ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press ▼.

Med.Detail Set. Backlit Film ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **CutDustReduct.**, and then press ▼.

Backlit Film CutDustReduct. ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **On**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

CutDustReduct. = On

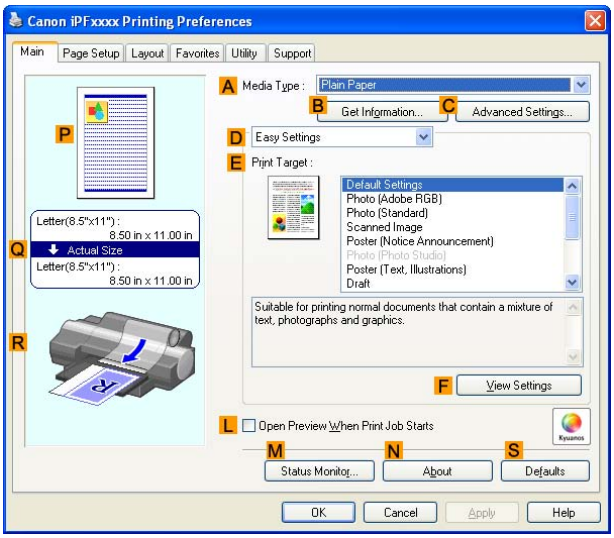
   The function to reduce cutting dust is now activated.

Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls

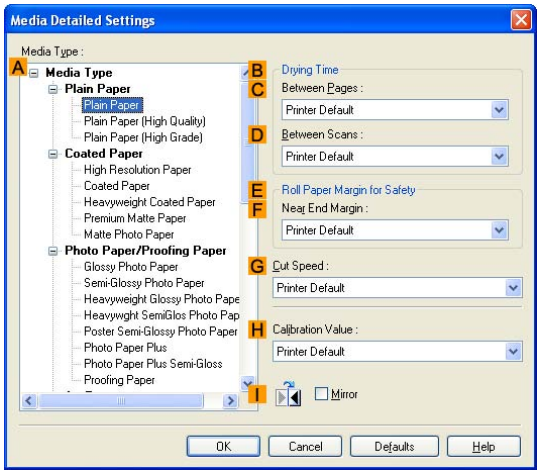
When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere, if the Cutter touches printed surfaces that are still wet, it may damage the paper or cause rough cut edges. Also, ink may be transferred onto the paper surface during ejection, soiling it. You can prevent problems by adjusting the drying time after printing before the paper is cut.

Windows

1. Display the printer driver dialog box.
   (→P.499)
2. Select the **Main** sheet and click **C Advanced Settings** in **A Media Type**.

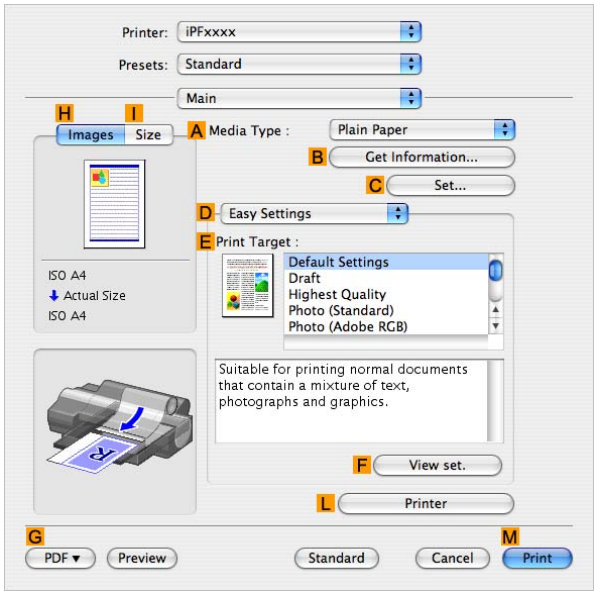


3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
   (→P.151)

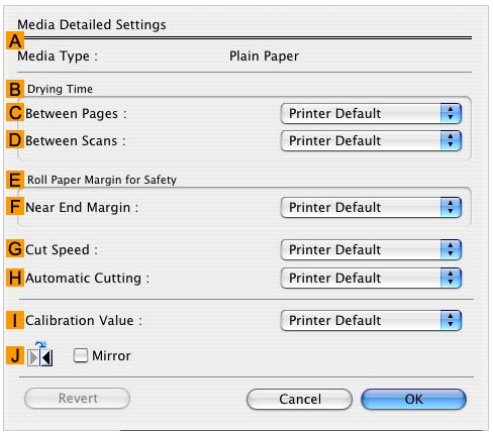


Mac OS X

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **C Settings** in **A Media Type**.

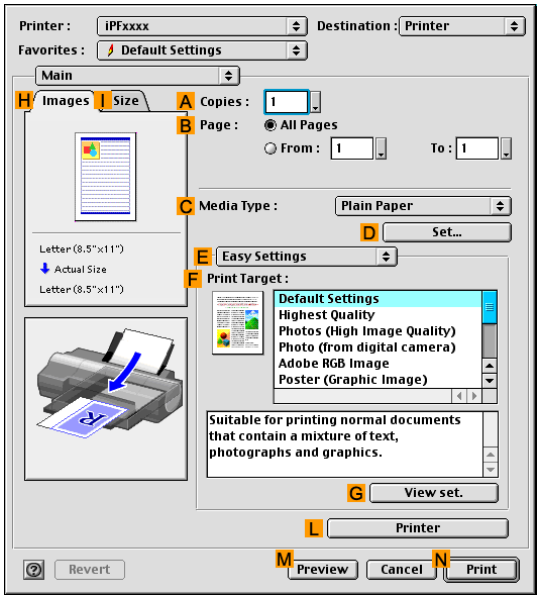


3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.152)

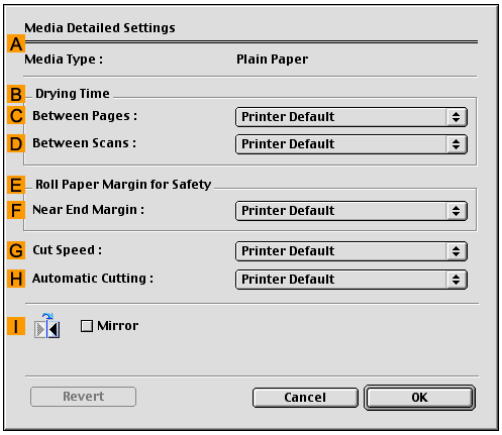


Mac OS 9

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the **Main** pane and click **D Settings** in **A Media Type**.



3. In the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box displayed next, select **C Between Pages** and **D Between Scans** in **B Drying Time**, and then click **OK**.
(→P.153)



Note

- By factory default, **Drying Time** is deactivated (**Off**) for all paper types.
- To have the printer wait for ink to dry immediately after printing without releasing paper, set **Cutting Mode** to **Eject** in the printer menu.
(→P.130)

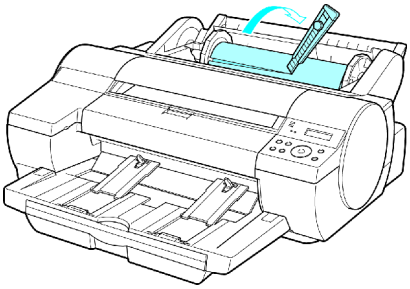
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

Note

- For instructions on removing a paper jam from a roll if the scrap of paper remains in the Paper Feed Slot, see “Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)”. (→P.142)

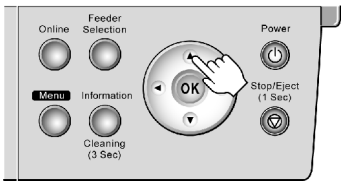
1. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover. Use a store-bought cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

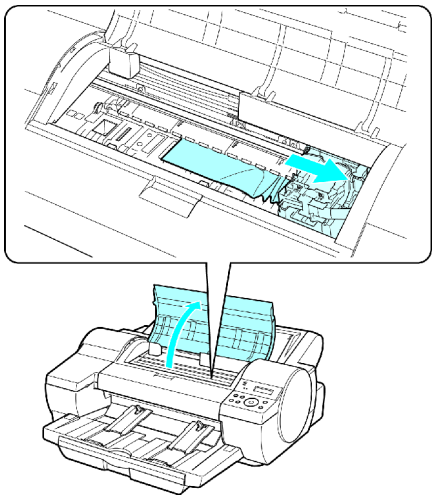
2. Press ▲ button.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

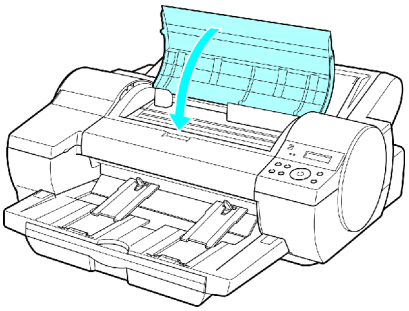
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



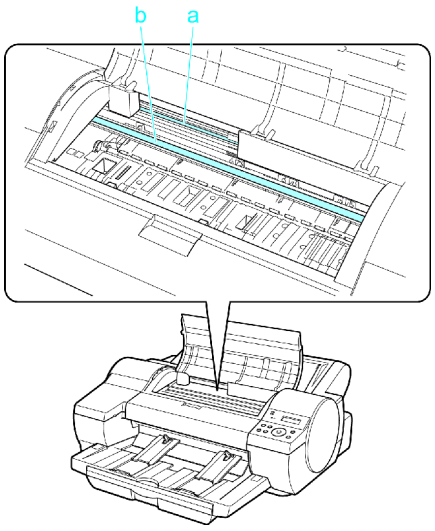
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



Important

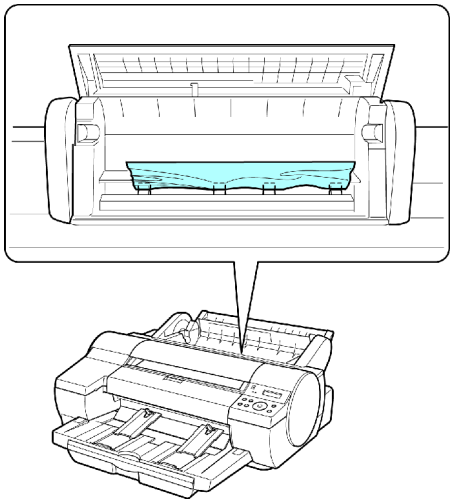
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



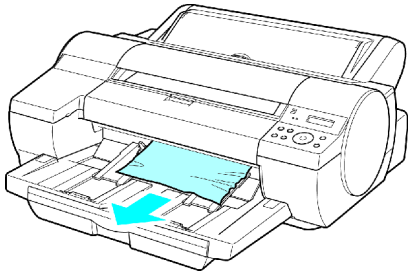
- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot

  1. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover.

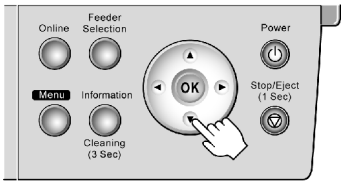
  2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.141), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

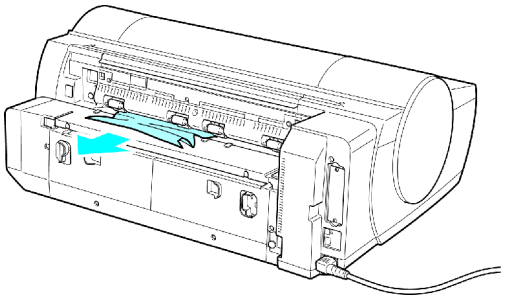


4. Press ▼.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer. (→P.147)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again. (→P.148)

Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

1. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Paper Tray lamp.
2. Press ◄ or ► to select **POP Board**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Type = POP Board

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **ISO A2**, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Size = ISO A2

   A confirmation message is displayed notifying you that the printer is changing the media source.

Please Wait..

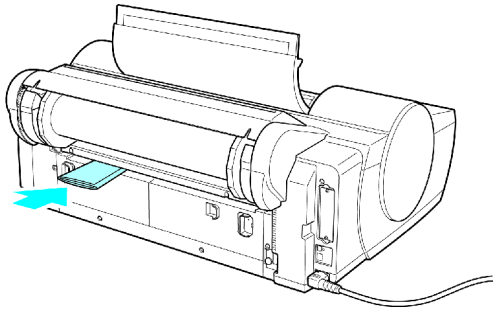
4. After the following message is displayed, press the **OK** button.

Chk Back Space Press OK

5. After the following message is displayed, open the Top Cover.

Open UpperCover

6. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Back Cover. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

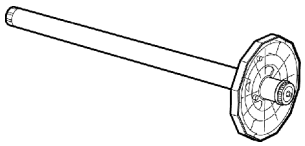


7. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
8. If any scraps remain inside the Paper Feed Slot, repeat steps 6 and 7.
9. Close the Top Cover.
10. Turn the printer off. (→P.20)

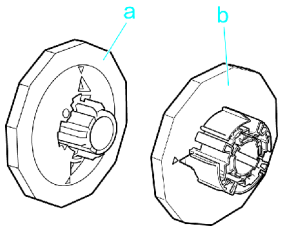
Roll Holder Set

A set of parts including a Roll Holder, Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores), 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment, and Spacer for Borderless Printing (used for both 2- and 3-inch paper cores).
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder and attach the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores. If you use an A2 (420 mm [16.5 in]) roll for borderless printing, insert the Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

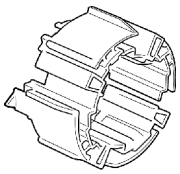
- Roll Holder Set RH2-11
  - Roll Holder



  - Holder Stopper (for 2- and 3-inch paper cores (a) and (b))



  - 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment



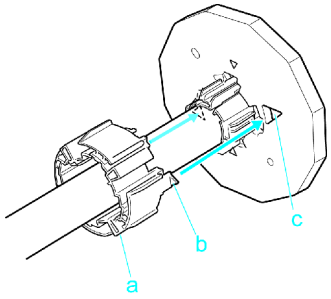
  - Spacer for Borderless Printing

For instructions on installing these parts, see “Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder”. (→P.144)

Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder

Mounting the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment

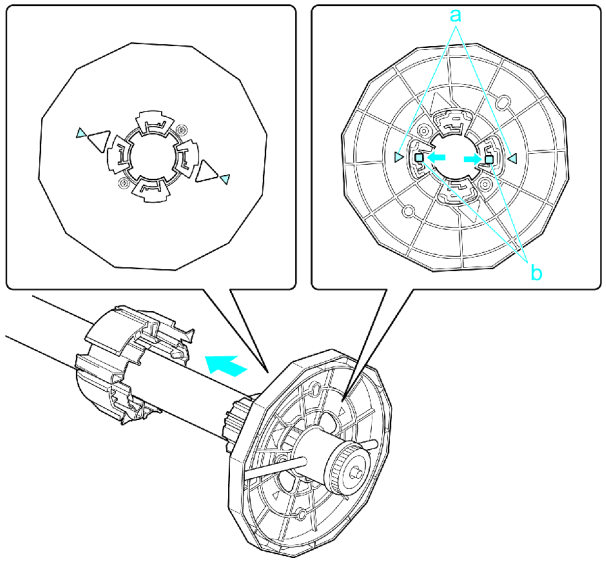
To load a roll with a 3-inch paper core, insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment on the Roll Holder.
Align the triangular part (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment (a) with the triangular groove (c) of the Roll Holder as shown, and insert the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment into the Roll Holder.



Use the Holder Stopper for 3-inch paper cores.

Removing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment

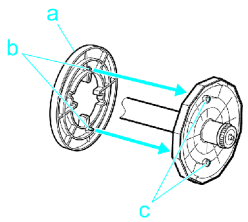
Spread the tips (b) of the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment that protrude by the triangular label (a) of the Roll Holder as shown, and remove the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment.



Attaching the Spacer for Borderless Printing

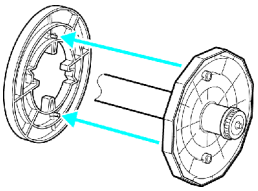
If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder.

Insert the protrusions (b) of the Spacer for Borderless Printing (a) into the holes (c) of the Roll Holder, as shown.



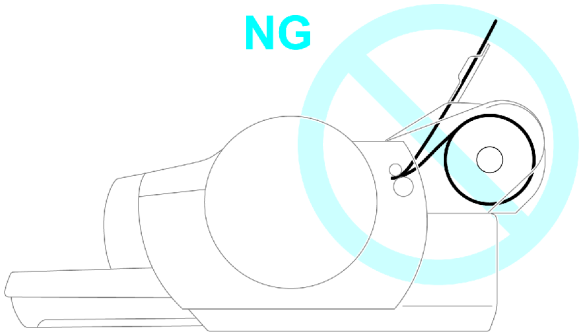
Removing the Spacer for Borderless Printing

Pull out the Spacer for Borderless Printing from the Roll Holder, as shown.



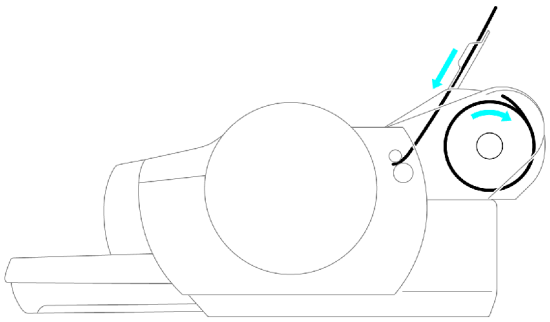
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit

The Paper Feed Slot used to feed roll paper is the same as the Paper Feed Slot used by the Tray, so both methods of feeding paper cannot be used at the same time.



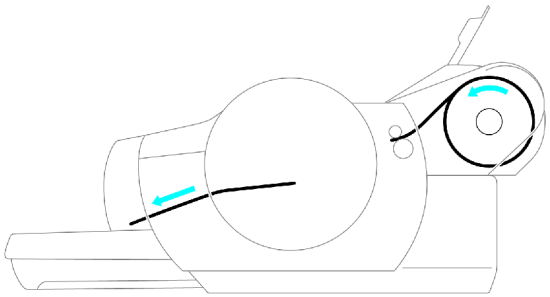
Thus, if a roll has been advanced when you wish to print from the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot, change the paper source.

1. Select the tray as the paper source. (→P.155)
2. After **Remove RllMedia?** is displayed, press the **OK** button.
   The roll is rewound automatically.



Similarly, if a sheet is in the Top Paper Feed Slot or Front Paper Feed Slot when you wish to print on a roll, you will need to remove the sheet from the slot and reinsert the roll paper (which has been rewound) in the Paper Feed Slot.

1. Select the roll as the paper source. (→P.114)
2. After **Remove CutSheet?** is displayed, press the **OK** button.
   The sheet is ejected automatically.

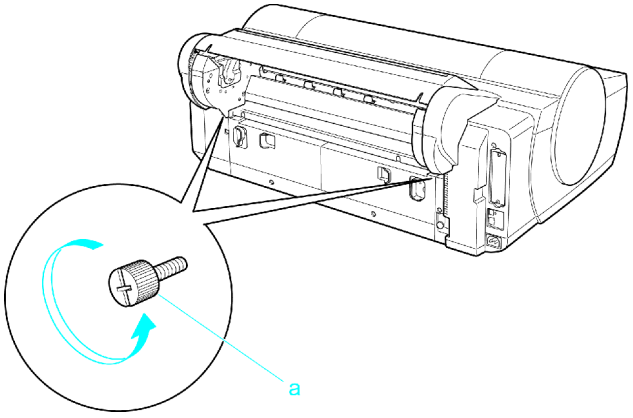


Removing the Roll Feed Unit

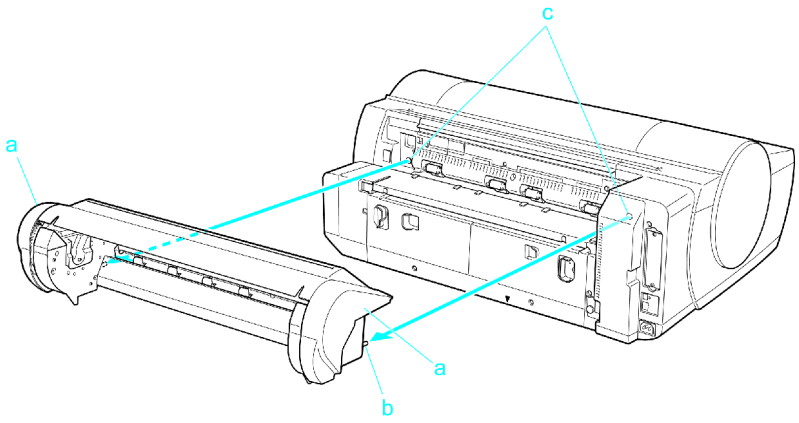
Important

- Always make sure the printer is off before removing the Roll Feed Unit.

1. Remove any rolls in the Roll Feed Unit. (→P.122)
2. Use a coin to loosen the screws on both sides of the back of the Roll Feed Unit (a) and remove the unit from the printer.

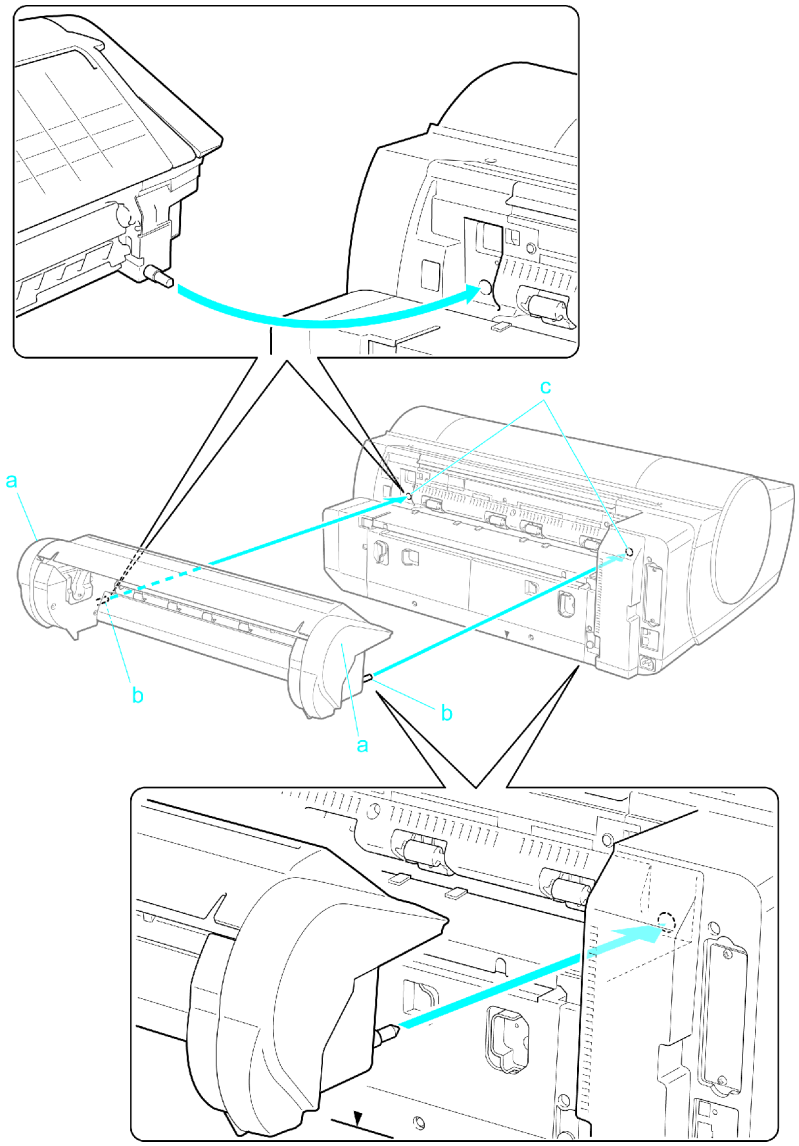


3. Hold the Roll Feed Unit by the Carrying handles (a) as you remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.

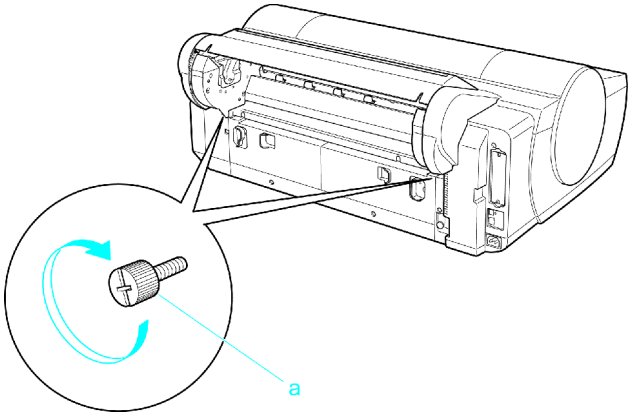


Installing the Roll Feed Unit

1. Holding the Roll Feed Unit by the Carrying handles (a), insert the two pins of the Roll Feed Unit (b) into the each hole on the back of the printer (c).

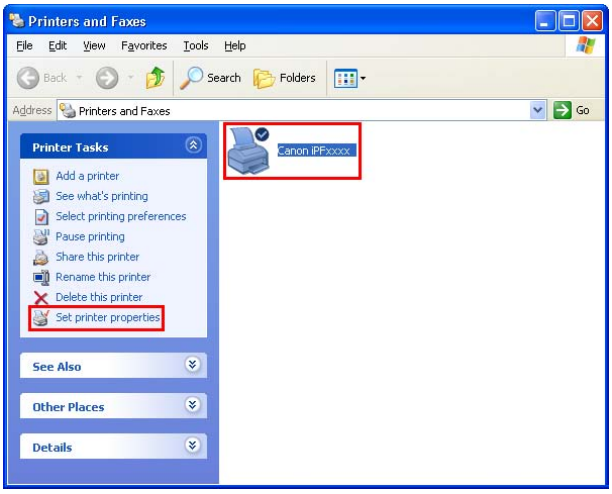


2. Use a coin to tighten the two screws on the back of the Roll Feed Unit (a) to secure it to the printer.

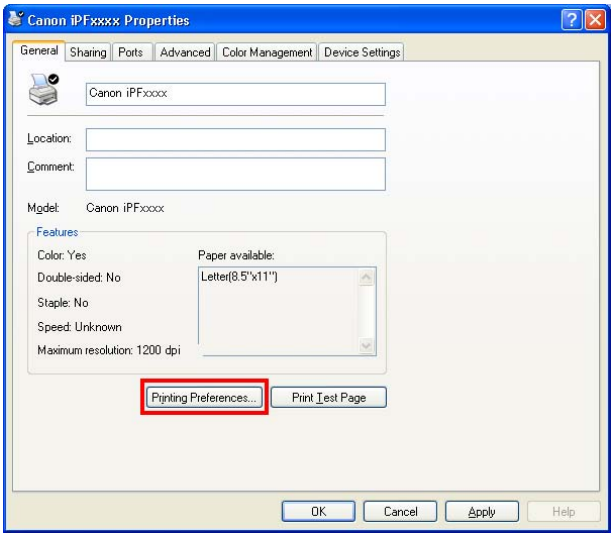


Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



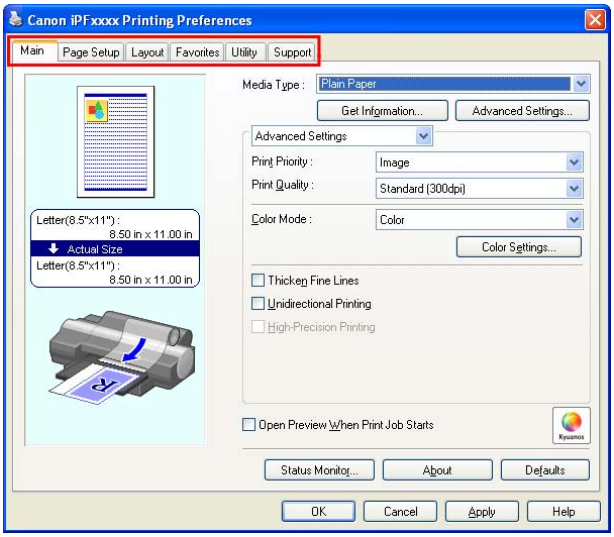
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.486)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.

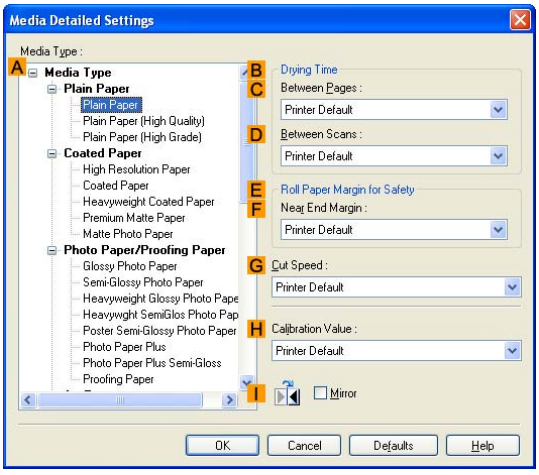


Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.497)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



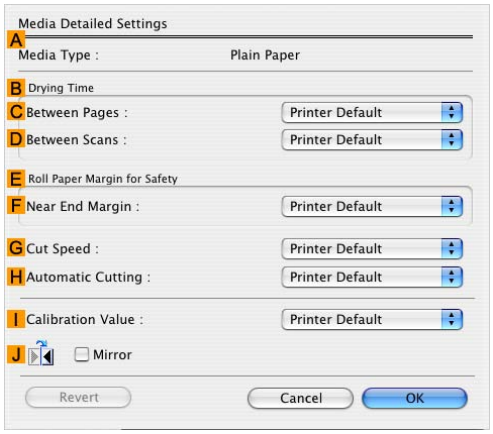
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



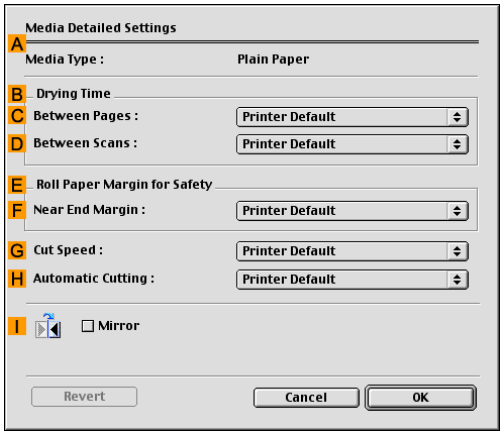
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B **Drying Time**		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C **Between Pages**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D **Between Scans**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F **Near End Margin**	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G **Cut Speed**		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H **Automatic Cutting**		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes** , **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline** .
I **Calibration Value**		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
J **Mirror**		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Note

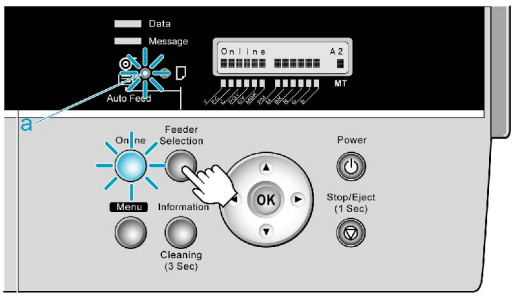
- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Automatic Cutting		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** .
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Handling sheets

Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.
You must specify auto feed when using paper from the Cassette. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Auto Feed lamp (a).

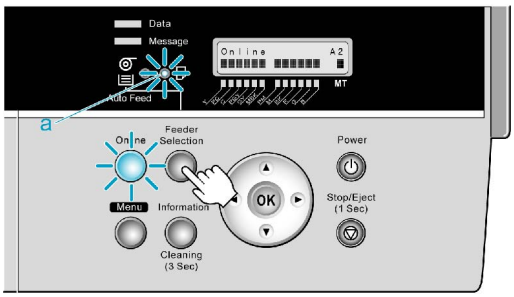


Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.729)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the operation is finished.

Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.
When loading paper in the tray, you must specify manual feed. Press **Feeder Selection** to activate the Paper Tray lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source. If you insert the edge of a roll in the Paper Feed Slot after you have selected sheets as the type of paper in the media source on the Control Panel and specified the type and size of paper, the printer will prepare to print on the roll. If you print under these conditions, an error will occur when the roll is ejected. (→P.747)

Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.729)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the operation is finished.

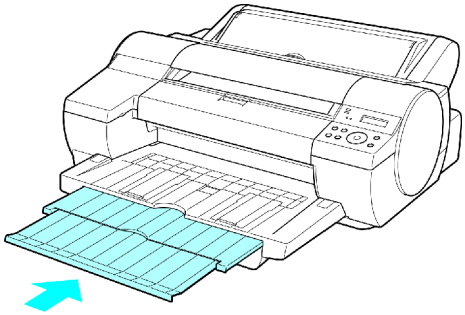
After the Paper Tray lamp is lit, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.
And then specify the paper type. (→P.168)

Loading Sheets in the Cassette

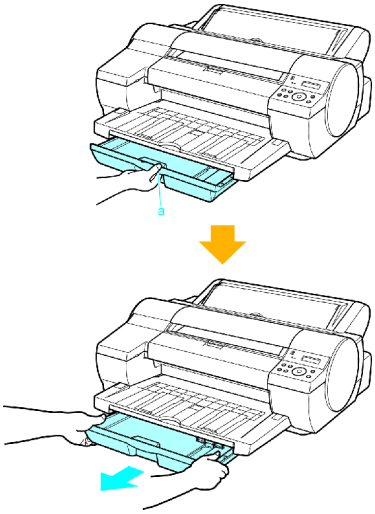
Note

- Load the paper, making sure not to exceed the Maximum Capacity Line of the Cassette. (→P.19)
- For details on the paper capacity, see Specifications (→P.72) or the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper skewed will cause an error.

1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



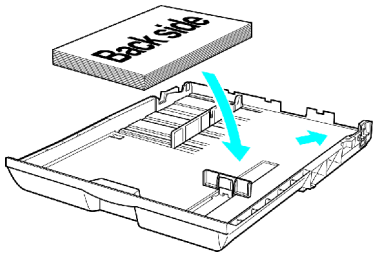
2. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



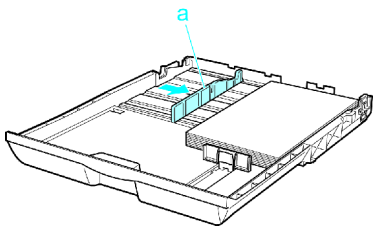
Caution

- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

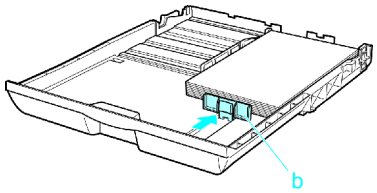
3. Fan the stack before loading. Load the stack printing-side down and aligned lengthwise against the far right corner of the Cassette.



4. Squeeze the Guide Lever of the Width Guide (a) and slide it to the right until it touches the edge of the paper lightly.



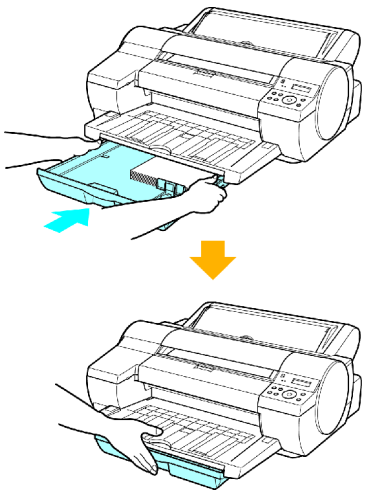
5. Similarly, squeeze the Guide Lever of the Length Guide (b) and slide it back until it touches the edge of the paper lightly.



Important

- Do not set the Width Guide and Length Guide away from the paper or too tight against it. This may cause feeding problems.

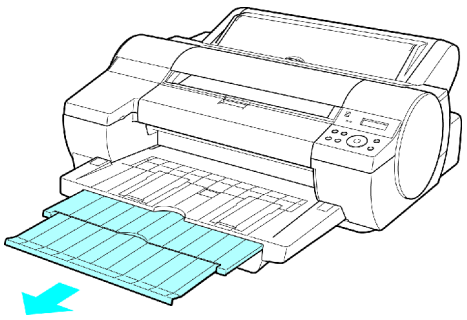
6. Holding the Cassette in the middle on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



Caution

- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

7. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When changing the type or size of paper, select the new type or size in the menu on the Control Panel.
  - Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.167)
  - Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) (→P.170)

Loading Sheets Manually

When using the tray, load the paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (→P.159) However, if you have specified **POP Board**, insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.162)

Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot

Note

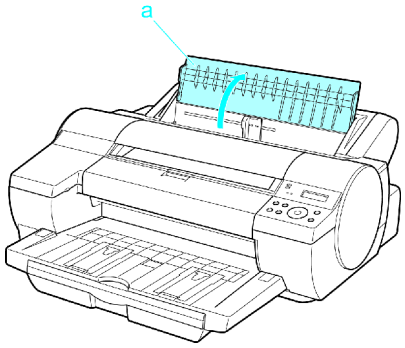
- You can load only one sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Paper Tray Cover . The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure. (→P.146)

1. If you send a print job specifying a paper other than **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen.

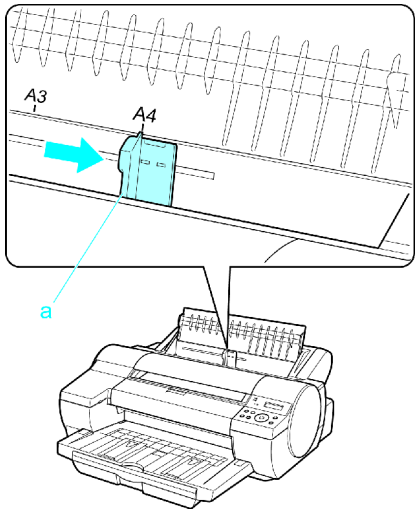
Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp. A screen is displayed for selection of the paper type. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper size. Press ◄ or ► to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

2. Open the Paper Tray Cover.

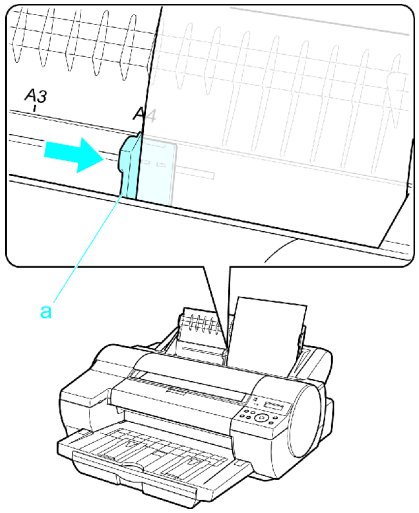


3. Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.



4. Load the paper in the Tray with the printing side face-up.
Insert the paper until its edge touches the far end of the tray lightly.

5. Move the Width Guide (a) to match the size of paper loaded.
Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.



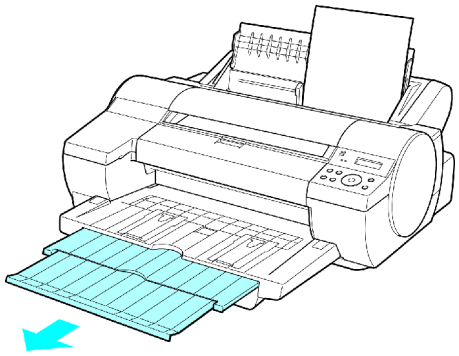
6. Press the **OK** button to start feeding the paper.

Load Top Tray Press OK

After the paper is advanced and the printer goes online, printing starts automatically.

If no print job was received beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

7. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot, always make sure the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If the Vertical Paper Guides are up and a printed document is left in the Output Tray, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.726)

Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot

Important

- Before loading heavyweight paper, change the media type setting to **POP Board**. When **POP Board** is selected as the type of paper, Front Paper Feed Slot is automatically selected.
- Always load a **POP Board** in the Front Paper Feed Slot. Loading it another way may damage the printer or cause malfunction.

Note

- You can load only one sheet of paper at a time.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- If the paper is warped, straighten it before loading it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- After loading the paper, you cannot move it laterally to reposition it. Be sure to load the paper straight.

1. If you send a print job specifying **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen.

Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp. A screen is displayed for selection of the paper type. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper size. Press ◄ or ► to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the type of paper loaded, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

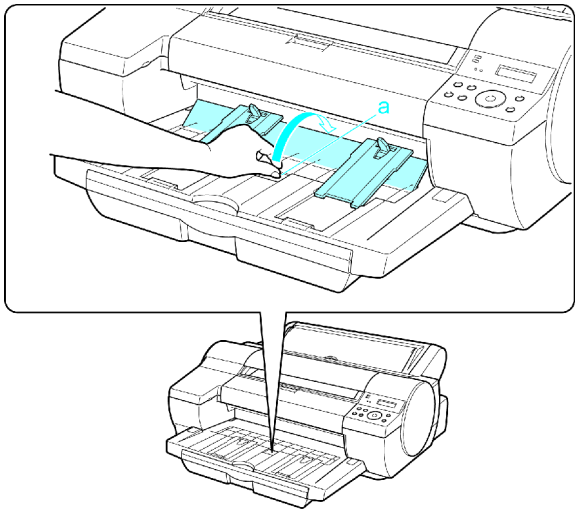
2. Check the space behind the printer when the following message is displayed, and then press the **OK** button.

```
Chk Back Space
Press OK
```

Note

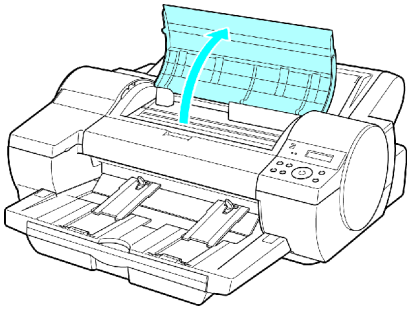
- Sufficient space behind the printer is required when loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot. For details on the space required for installation, see “Specifications”. (→P.72)

3. Push the knob (a) of the Vertical Paper Guides back to lift the Vertical Paper Guides.

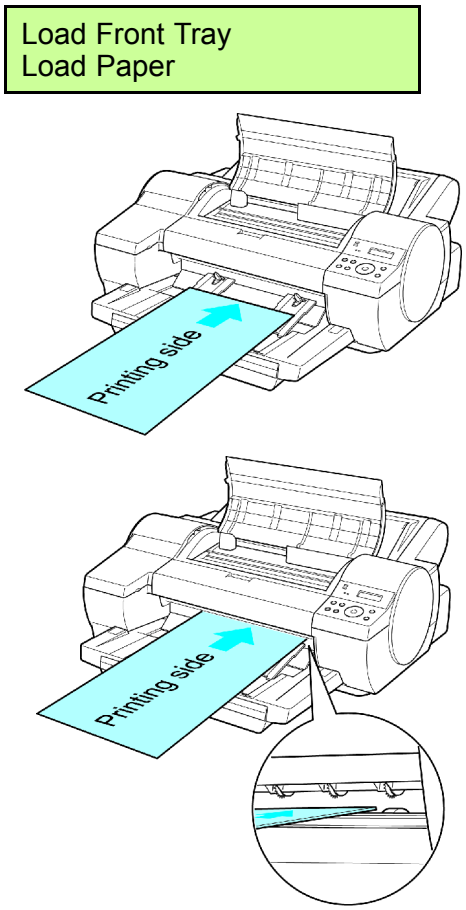


4. After the following message is displayed, open the Top Cover.

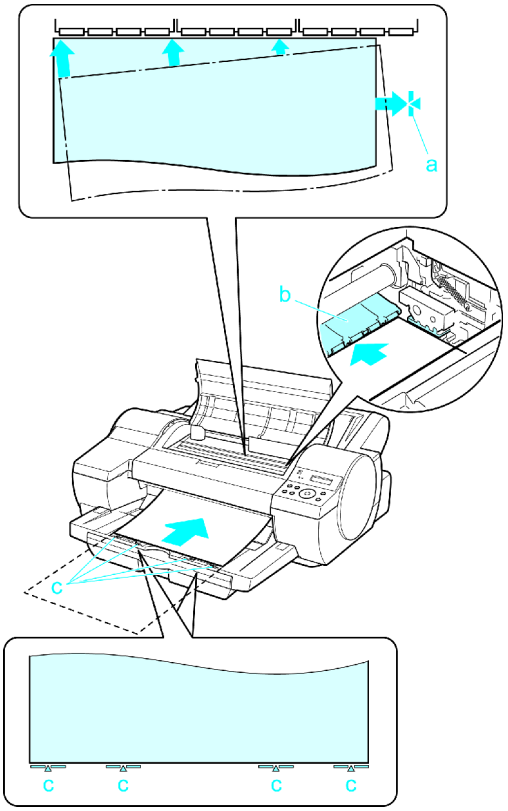
Open UpperCover



5. When the following message is displayed, place the paper printing-side up on the Vertical Paper Guides and insert the paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot keeping it flat against the Vertical Paper Guides.

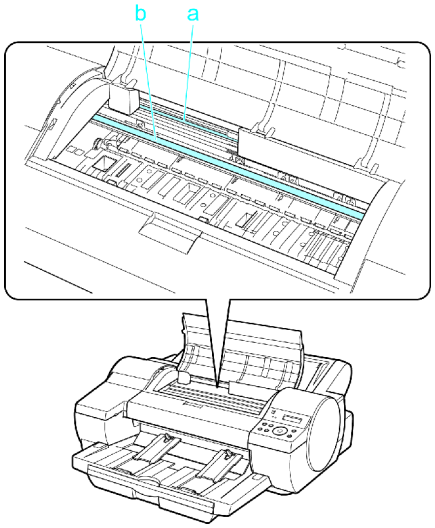


6. As you look in the Top Cover, align the right edge of the paper with the left edge of the Paper Alignment Line (a) on the Platen. Insert the leading edge of the paper between the Platen and Paper Retainer (b), keeping it parallel to the Paper Retainer (b), and align the paper with the Paper Alignment Line (c) of the Output Tray.

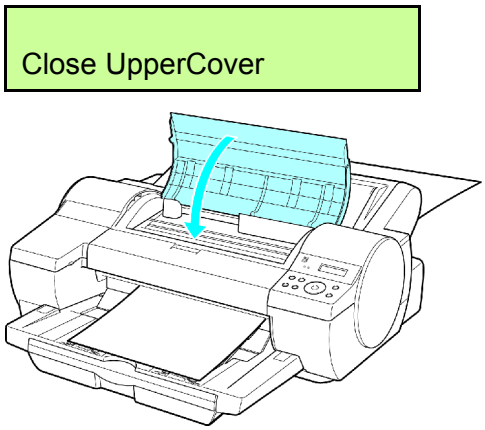


Important

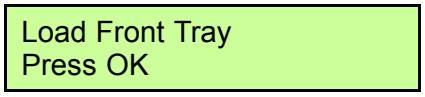
- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



7. After the following message is displayed, close the Top Cover.



8. After the following message is displayed, press the **OK** button.

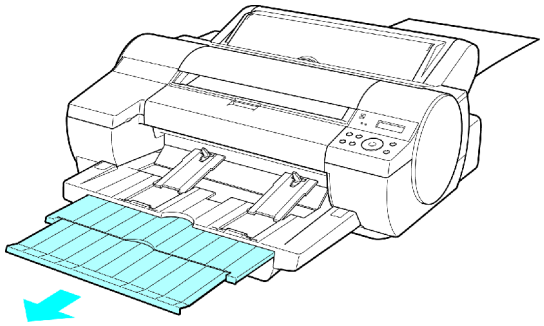


The paper is held between the Platen and Back Cover as it is fed.

After the paper is advanced, the printer automatically goes online and starts printing.

If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

9. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



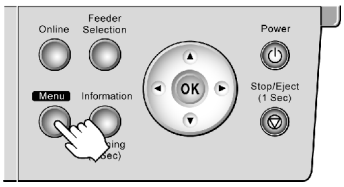
10. After printing, the printer will temporarily stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the ▲ button to release the sheet. After pulling it straight out, press the ▼ button. (→P.196)

Note

- Remove the printed document on the Output Tray after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot. If you print while a document is still there, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.726)

Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Cas Paper Type**, and then press ▼.

```
Paper Settings
Cas Paper Type ↓
```

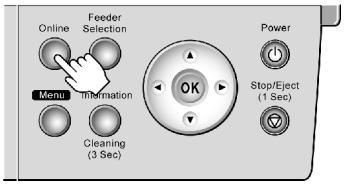
4. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

```
Cas Paper Type
= Plain Paper
```

Note

- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
  By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



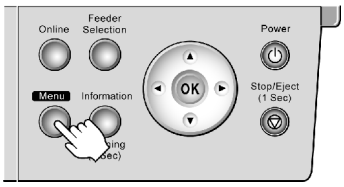
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper type.
  Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button to display a screen for selection of the paper size. (→P.193)
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Paper Settings ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Manual Pap.Type**, and then press ▼.

Paper Settings Manual Pap.Type ↓

Note

- **Manual Pap.Type** is not displayed unless paper is loaded in the Tray.

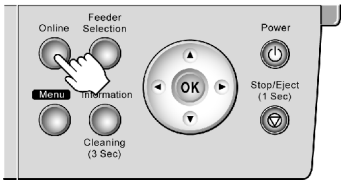
4. Check the paper type.
   To use this type of paper without changing it, press the **OK** button. To change the paper type, press ◄ or ► to select another type, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Type = Plain Paper

Note

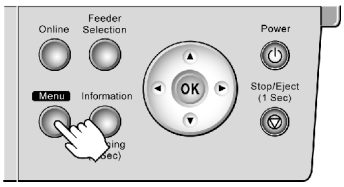
- Select **POP Board** when loading heavyweight paper.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette)

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Cas Paper Size**, and then press ▼.

```
Paper Settings
Cas Paper Size ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper size, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Cas Paper Size
= ISO A4
```

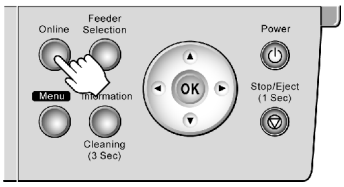
Important

- When printing originals centered on the paper, specify the correct size of the paper actually loaded in the printer menu and printer driver.
  If the size setting does not match the size of paper actually loaded, the original will not be printed correctly in the center.

Note

- For details on paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.

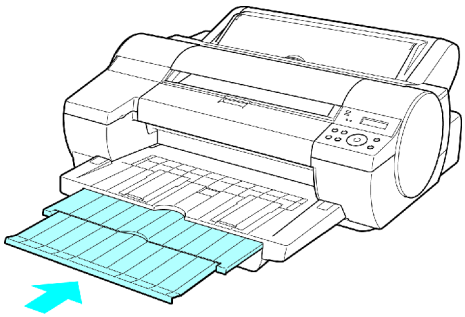


Removing Paper from the Cassette

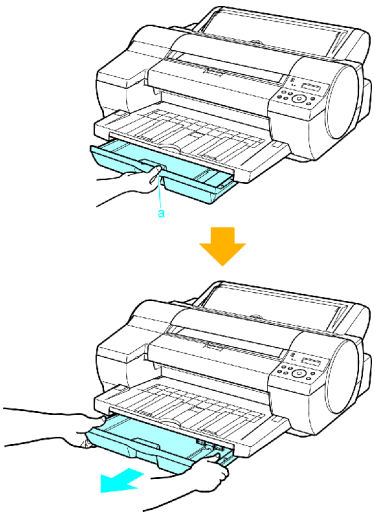
Caution

- When printing from the Cassette, do not remove the Cassette. This also may cause paper jams.
- When printing from the Cassette, do not remove the Back Cover. This also may cause paper jams.

1. Push in the Output Tray Extension.



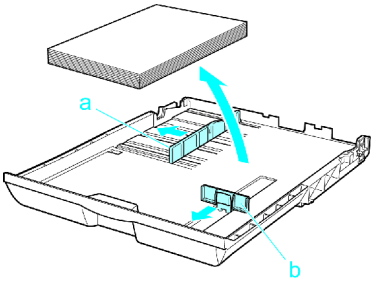
2. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



Caution

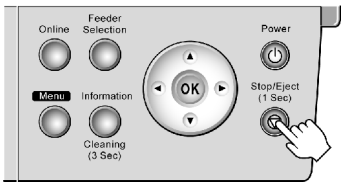
- When removing the Cassette, do not drag it on the table. This may damage the table.

3. Squeeze the Guide Lever of the paper Width Guide (a) and slide it to the left. Similarly, squeeze the Guide Lever of the paper Length Guide (b) and slide it toward you. You can now remove the paper.



Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot

Press the **Stop/Eject** button to eject the sheet.



Note

- Before ejecting paper during print jobs or while ink is still drying, press the **Stop/Eject** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette

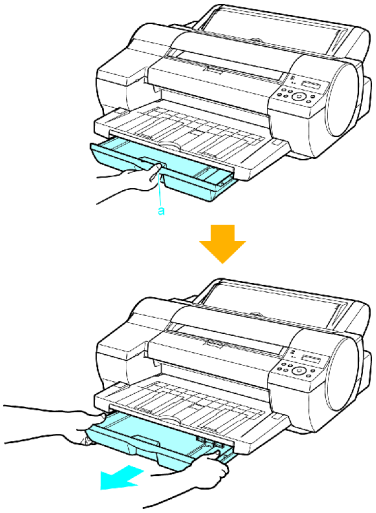
If paper from the Cassette becomes jammed, the following messages are shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. How to clear the paper jam varies depending on the message.

- **Can't DetectPapr / Remove Paper** (→P.173)
- **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** (→P.176)

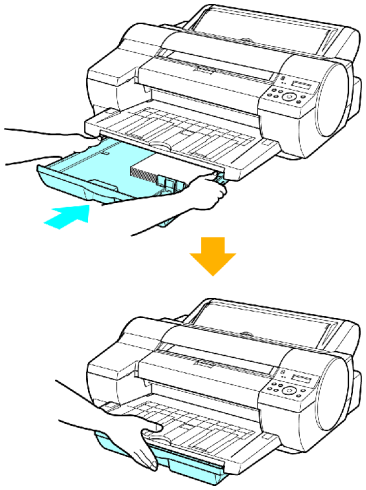
If Can't DetectPapr / Remove Paper is displayed

If paper is jammed in the paper feed slot of the cassette

1. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.

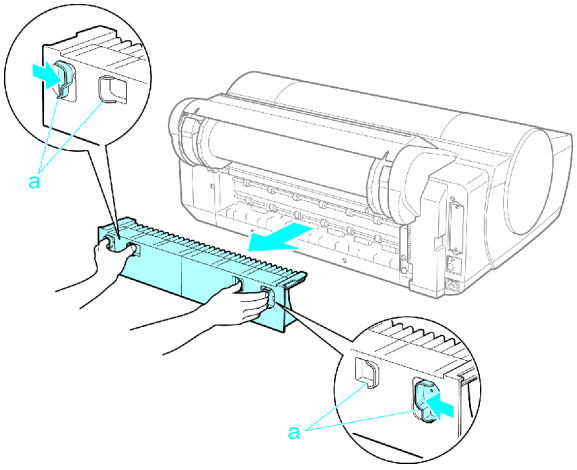


2. Clear any jammed paper from the paper feed slot of the Cassette.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

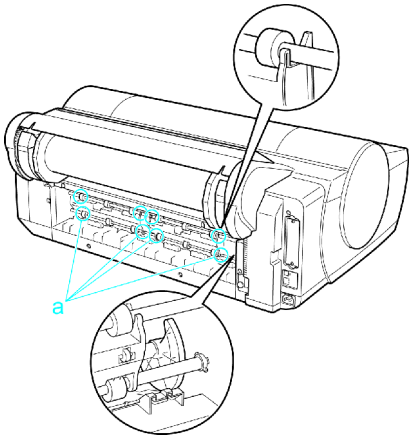
1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the Back Cover from the printer.



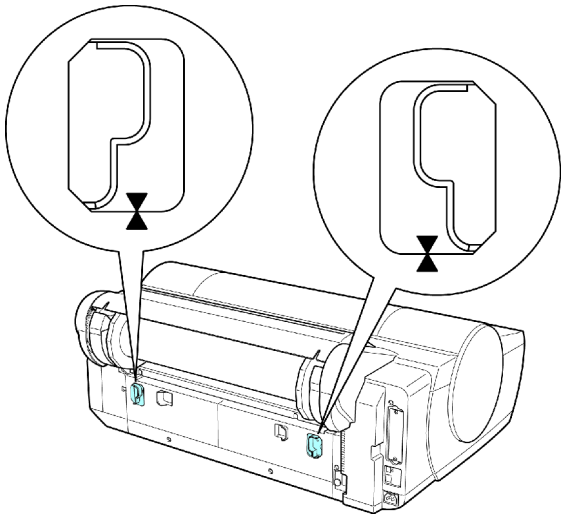
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

Caution

- Do not touch the areas in the printer indicated by (a). If the grease that coats these parts is accidentally wiped away, it may cause feeding problems.

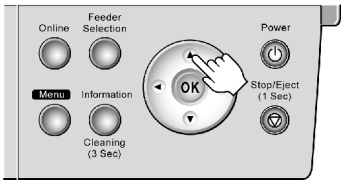


3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



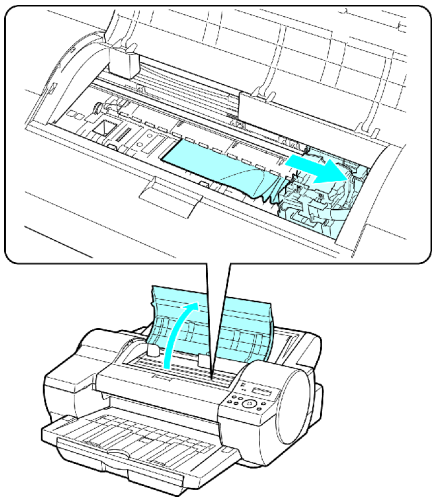
If Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key is displayed

1. Press ▲.

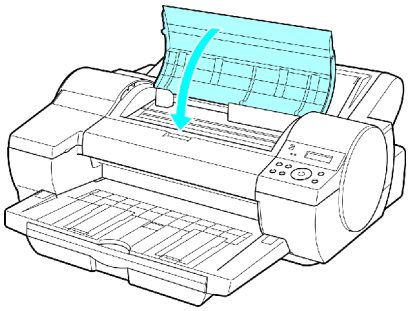


2. Remove the jammed paper.
   - If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

   1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.

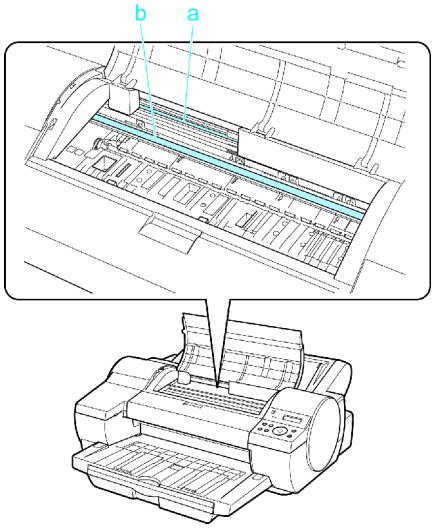


   2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
      After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
   3. Close the Top Cover.



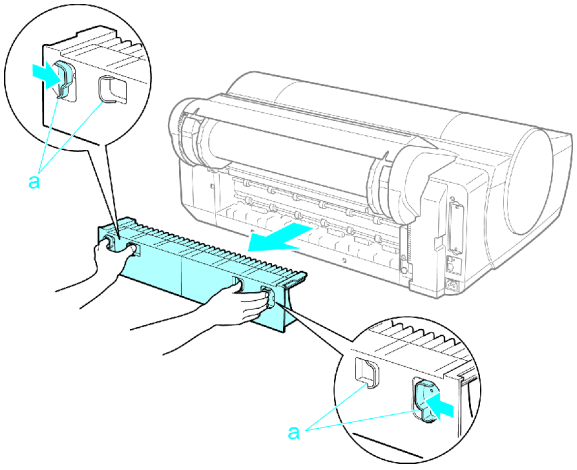
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



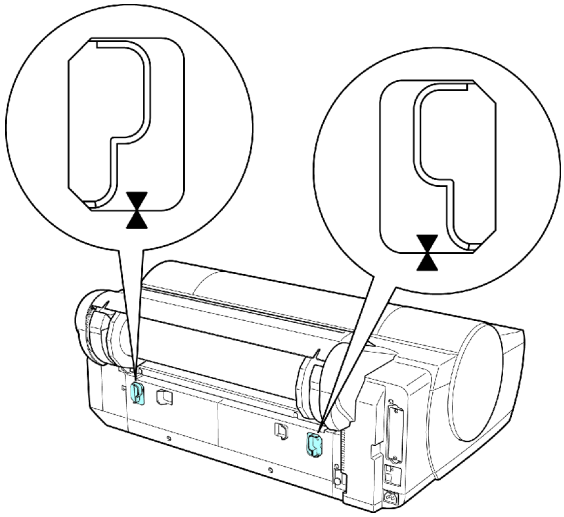
- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the cover from the printer.



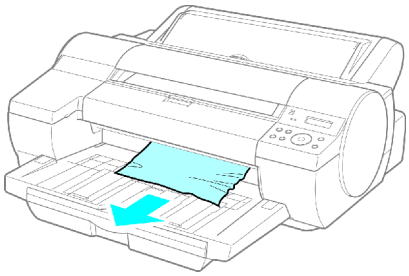
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.

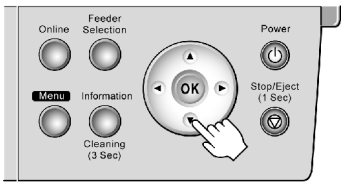


- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray.

1. Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



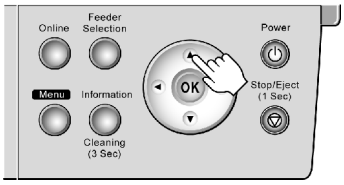
3. Press ▼.



Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

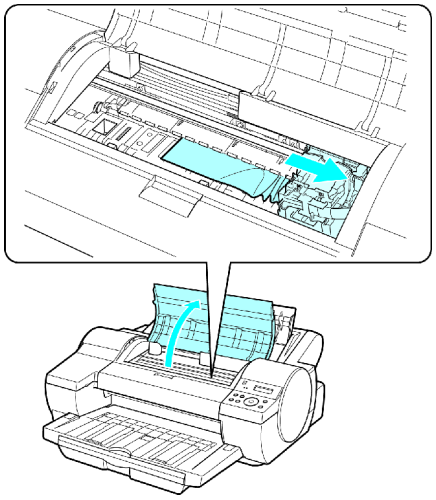
1. Press ▲.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

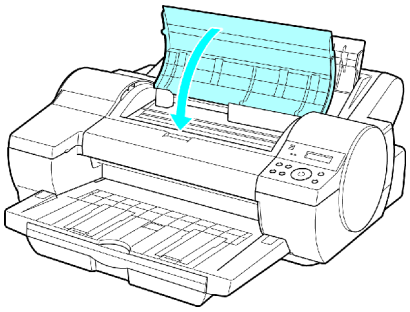
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



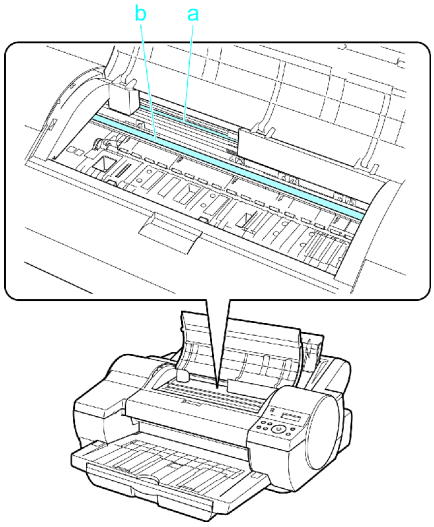
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.

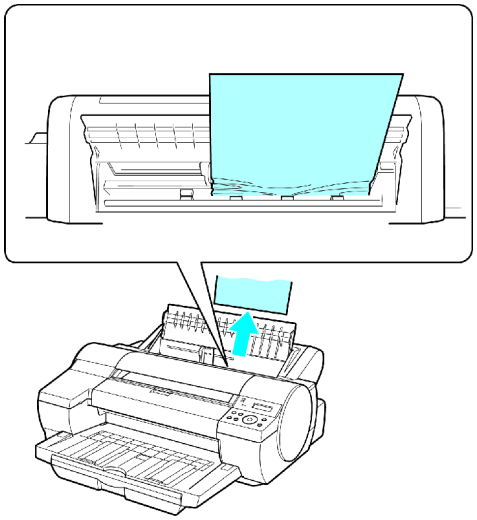


Important

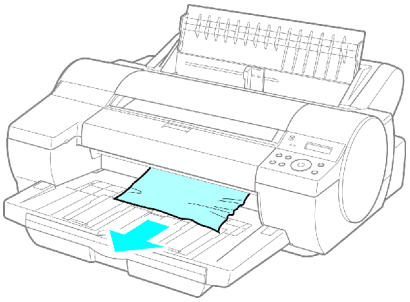
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



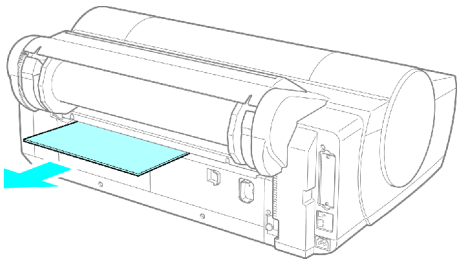
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.181), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



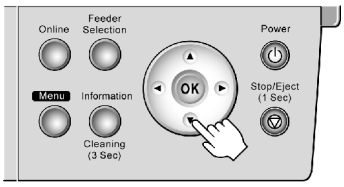
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray Output Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
  Remove the jammed paper from the back.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



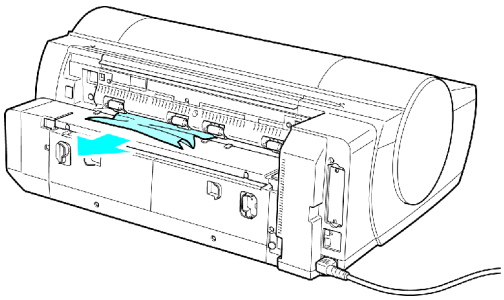
3. Press ▼.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
(→P.147)

2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



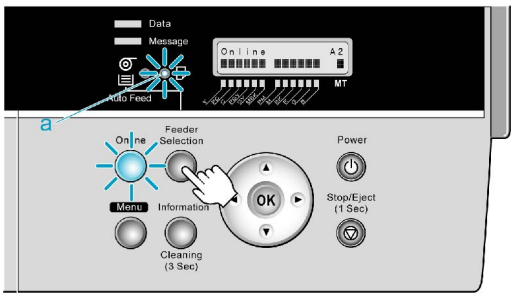
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer.
(→P.148)

Handling sheets for paper feed slots

Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source

You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. The Auto Feed lamp is lit when feeding paper automatically, and the Paper Tray lamp is lit when feeding paper manually.
When loading paper in the tray, you must specify manual feed. Press **Feeder Selection** to activate the Paper Tray lamp (a).



Caution

- Paper jams may occur if you load paper other than the paper specified in the paper settings for the media source. If you insert the edge of a roll in the Paper Feed Slot after you have selected sheets as the type of paper in the media source on the Control Panel and specified the type and size of paper, the printer will prepare to print on the roll. If you print under these conditions, an error will occur when the roll is ejected. (→P.747)

Note

- You cannot switch the paper source in the following situations:
  - If the **Message lamp** is flashing
    Check the message on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. (→P.729)
  - If the **Data lamp** is flashing
    Select the paper source after printing is finished.
  - If a printer menu operation is in progress
    Select the paper source after the operation is finished.

After the Paper Tray lamp is lit, the printer automatically shows a menu for selection of the paper type on the Display Screen.
And then specify the paper type. (→P.168)

Loading Sheets Manually

When using the tray, load the paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot. (→P.183) However, if you have specified **POP Board**, insert the sheet in the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.186)

Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot

Note

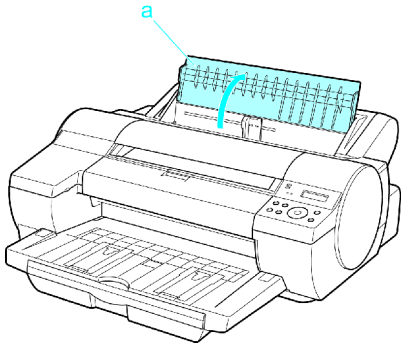
- You can load only one sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot. Do not load more than one sheet at a time. This may cause paper jams.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- Paper that is wrinkled or warped may jam. If necessary, straighten the paper and reload it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- Before feeding paper or printing, make sure the sheet is flat against the Paper Tray Cover . The sheet may jam if it curls before feeding or printing and the trailing edge drops toward the front.
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure. (→P.146)

1. If you send a print job specifying a paper other than **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen.

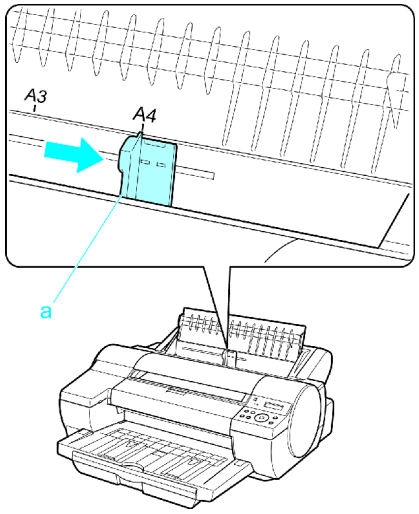
Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp. A screen is displayed for selection of the paper type. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper size. Press ◄ or ► to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

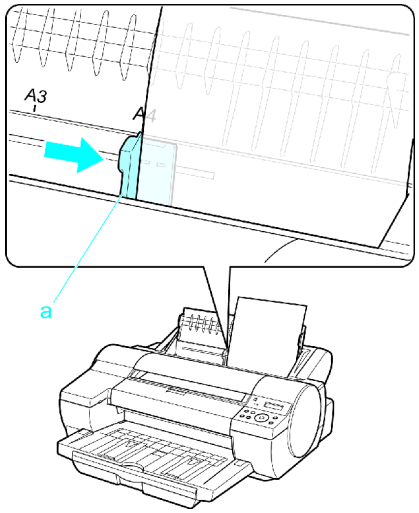
2. Open the Paper Tray Cover.



3. Slide the Width Guide (a) to align it with the mark for the size of paper you will load.



4. Load the paper in the Tray with the printing side face-up.
   Insert the paper until its edge touches the far end of the tray lightly.
5. Move the Width Guide (a) to match the size of paper loaded.
   Set the Width Guide against the edge of the paper to prevent the paper from becoming crooked or wrinkled.



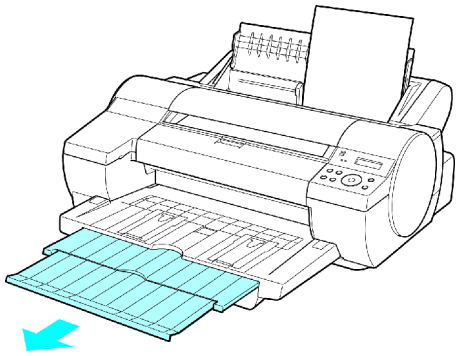
6. Press the **OK** button to start feeding the paper.

Load Top Tray Press OK

After the paper is advanced and the printer goes online, printing starts automatically.

If no print job was received beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

7. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



Note

- When printing from the Top Paper Feed Slot, always make sure the Vertical Paper Guides are stored out of the way. If the Vertical Paper Guides are up and a printed document is left in the Output Tray, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.726)

Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot

Important

- Before loading heavyweight paper, change the media type setting to **POP Board**. When **POP Board** is selected as the type of paper, Front Paper Feed Slot is automatically selected.
- Always load a **POP Board** in the Front Paper Feed Slot. Loading it another way may damage the printer or cause malfunction.

Note

- You can load only one sheet of paper at a time.
- Store unused paper in the original package, away from high temperature, humidity, and direct sunlight.
- If the paper is warped, straighten it before loading it.
- Load the paper straight. Loading paper askew will cause an error.
- After loading the paper, you cannot move it laterally to reposition it. Be sure to load the paper straight.

1. If you send a print job specifying **POP Board** from a computer beforehand, the type and size of paper are shown on the Display Screen.

Note

- If you will load paper before sending a print job, press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp. A screen is displayed for selection of the paper type. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper size. Press ◄ or ► to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button.
- For details on types of paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the type of paper loaded, it may cause feed errors and affect the printing quality.

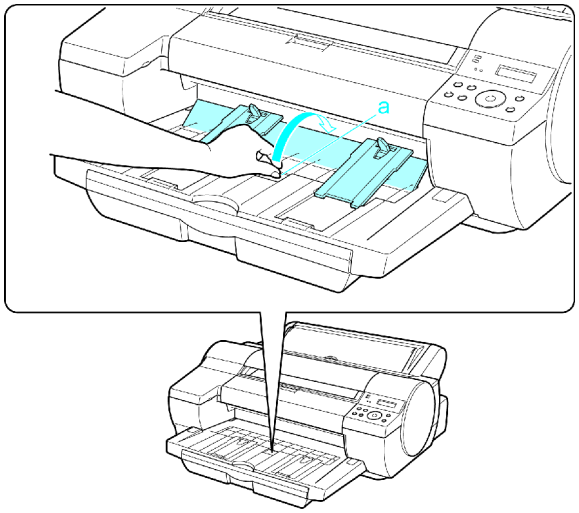
2. Check the space behind the printer when the following message is displayed, and then press the **OK** button.

```
Chk Back Space
Press OK
```

Note

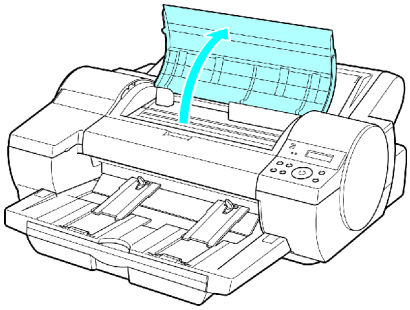
- Sufficient space behind the printer is required when loading paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot. For details on the space required for installation, see “Specifications”. (→P.72)

3. Push the knob (a) of the Vertical Paper Guides back to lift the Vertical Paper Guides.

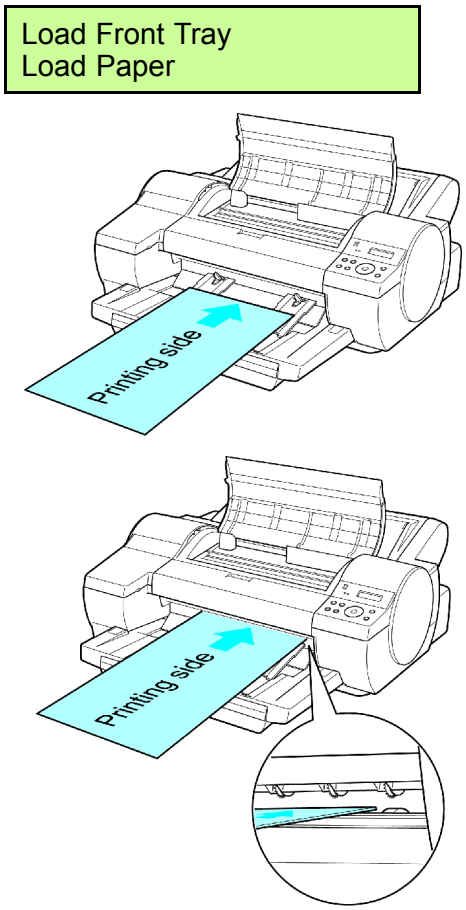


4. After the following message is displayed, open the Top Cover.

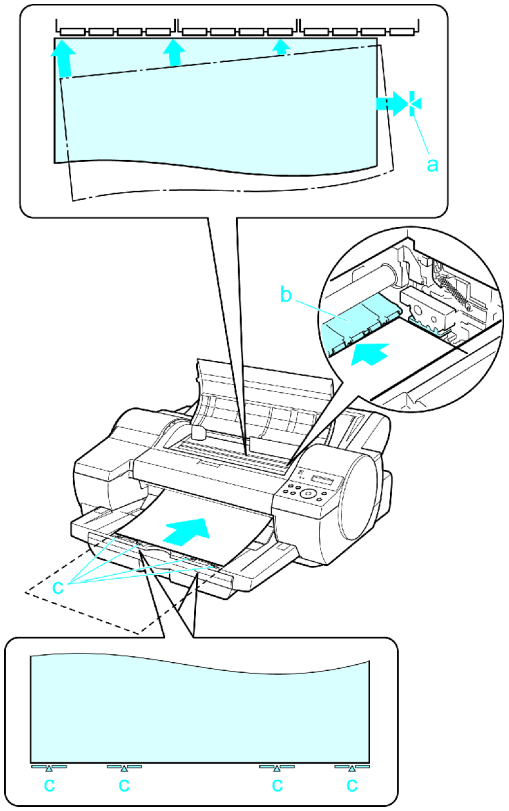
Open UpperCover



5. When the following message is displayed, place the paper printing-side up on the Vertical Paper Guides and insert the paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot keeping it flat against the Vertical Paper Guides.

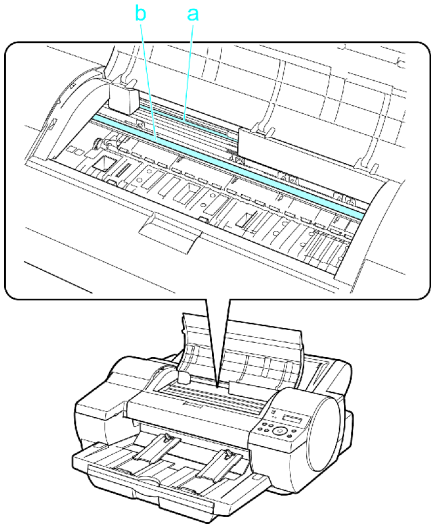


6. As you look in the Top Cover, align the right edge of the paper with the left edge of the Paper Alignment Line (a) on the Platen. Insert the leading edge of the paper between the Platen and Paper Retainer (b), keeping it parallel to the Paper Retainer (b), and align the paper with the Paper Alignment Line (c) of the Output Tray.



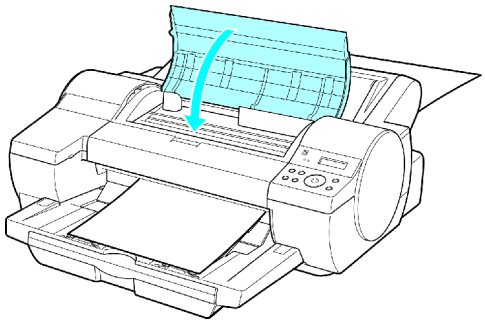
Important

- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



7. After the following message is displayed, close the Top Cover.

```
Close UpperCover
```



8. After the following message is displayed, press the **OK** button.

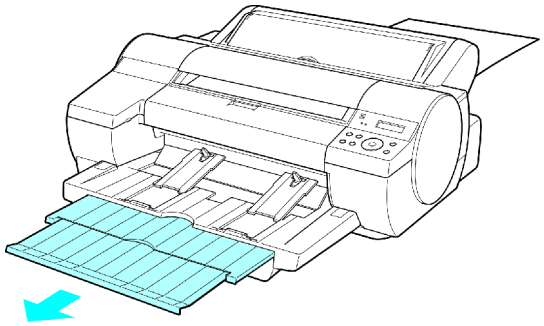
```
Load Front Tray
Press OK
```

The paper is held between the Platen and Back Cover as it is fed.

```
Offline
Loading..
```

After the paper is advanced, the printer automatically goes online and starts printing.
If no print job has been received from the computer beforehand, the printer enters Standby mode.

9. Pull out the Output Tray Extension.



10. After printing, the printer will temporarily stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the ▲ button to release the sheet. After pulling it straight out, press the ▼ button. (→P.196)

Note

- Remove the printed document on the Output Tray after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot. If you print while a document is still there, the Front Tray Guides may become caught inside the Front Paper Feed Slot. (→P.726)

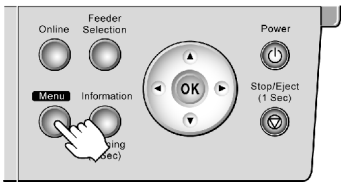
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray)

When changing the type of paper after the paper has been advanced, specify the type of paper as follows.

Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper type.
  Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the **OK** button to display a screen for selection of the paper size. (→P.193)
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Paper Settings ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Manual Pap.Type**, and then press ▼.

Paper Settings Manual Pap.Type ↓

Note

- **Manual Pap.Type** is not displayed unless paper is loaded in the Tray.

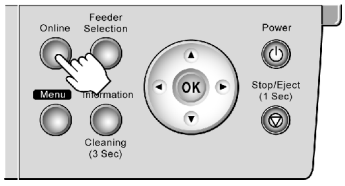
4. Check the paper type.
   To use this type of paper without changing it, press the **OK** button. To change the paper type, press ◄ or ► to select another type, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Type = Plain Paper

Note

- Select **POP Board** when loading heavyweight paper.
- For details on paper types, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) By factory default, **Plain Paper** is selected.
- Be sure to select the correct paper type. If this setting does not match the loaded paper, it may cause feed errors and affect printing quality.

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



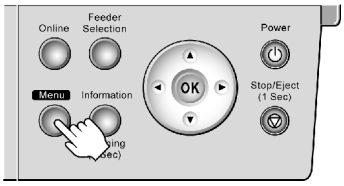
Selecting the Paper Size (Tray)

To change the paper size after paper has been advanced, select the paper size as follows.

Note

- After you press the **Feeder Selection** button to illuminate the Paper Tray lamp, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper type. Press ◄ or ► to select the paper type, and then press the **OK** button. Next, a screen is displayed for selection of the paper size. Press ◄ or ► to select the size of paper, and then press the **OK** button. The printer is now ready to advance the paper.
- If you have sent the print job from a computer beforehand, the screen for paper type and size selection is not displayed. Printing will start after the paper is advanced.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Paper Settings**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Paper Settings ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Manual Pap.Size**, and then press ▼.

```
Paper Settings
Manual Pap.Size ↓
```

Note

- **Manual Pap.Size** is not displayed unless paper is loaded in the Tray.

4. Check the paper size.

To use the paper size without changing it, press the **OK** button. To change the paper size, press ◄ or ► to select another size, and then press the **OK** button.

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Manual Pap.Size
= ISO A4
```

If you selected **Manual Input** in **Manual Pap.Size**, enter the paper size and press the **OK** button.

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Manual Input
=297.0 mm
```

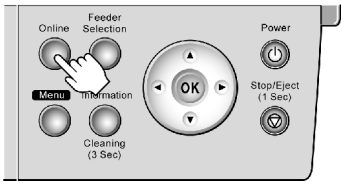
Important

- When centering originals on the paper and during HP-GL/2 printing, always specify the same type and size of paper in the printer menu and printer driver.
  Jobs will not be printed correctly if the type and size do not match.

Note

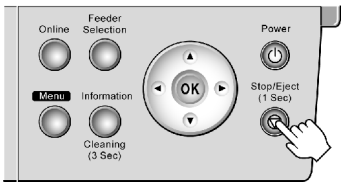
- For details on paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.



Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot

Press the **Stop/Eject** button to eject the sheet.



Note

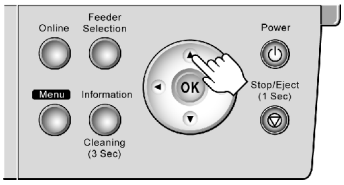
- Before ejecting paper during print jobs or while ink is still drying, press the **Stop/Eject** button to cancel printing, print job processing, or ink drying.

The paper is ejected from the front of the printer.

Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot

If you are printing heavyweight paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot, the printer will stop advancing the paper while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. In this case, remove the paper as follows.

1. Press the ▲ button.



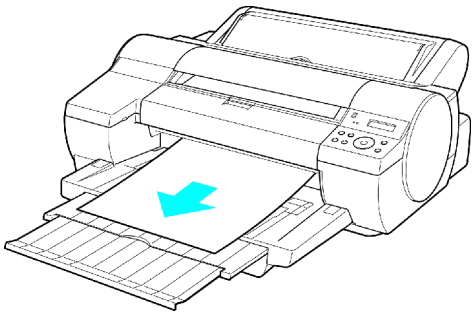
Note

- If you load paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot but press the ▲ button without printing, the printer will eject the paper and stop advancing it momentarily while the trailing edge is still in the rollers to prevent the sheet from dropping. Press the ▲ button again when you are ready to remove the paper.

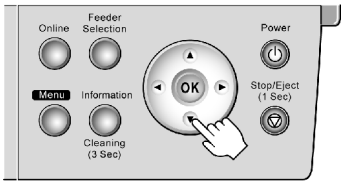
2. Pull the sheet straight forward to remove it.

Note

- If you do not remove **POP Board** by pulling it straight forward, the printed surface may become scratched.



3. Press the ▼ button.



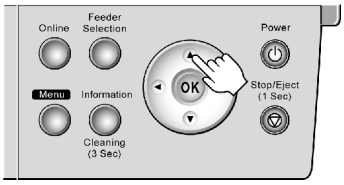
Caution

- After removal, press the ▼ button. If you do not remove the paper before doing subsequent operations, the sheet may go back inside the printer, leaving roller marks across the trailing edge of paper.

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

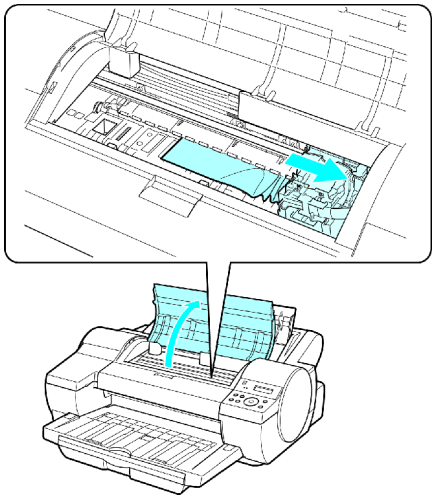
1. Press ▲.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

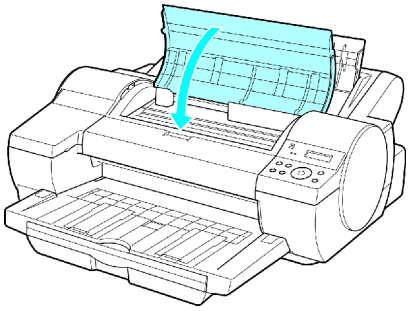
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



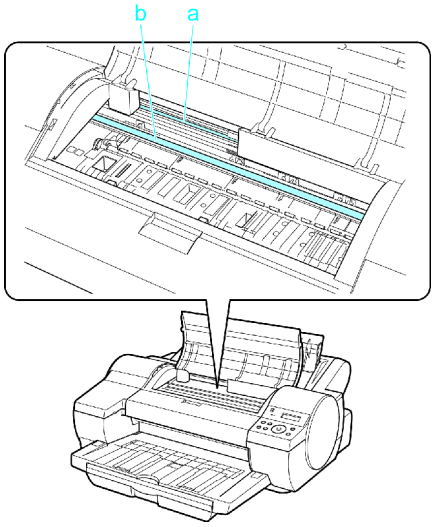
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.

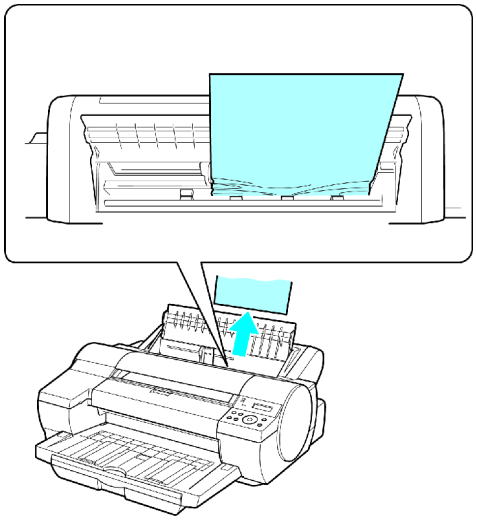


Important

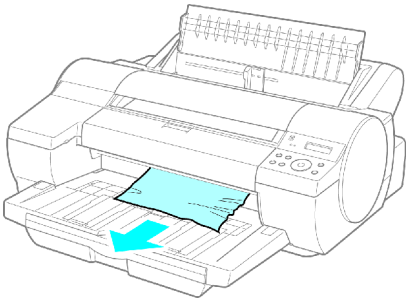
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



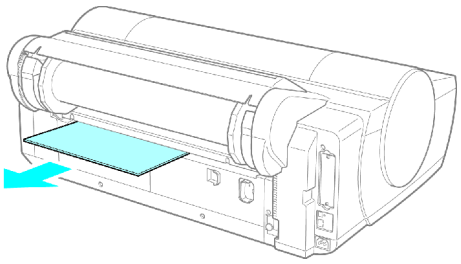
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.199), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



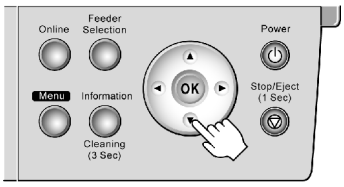
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray Output Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
  Remove the jammed paper from the back.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



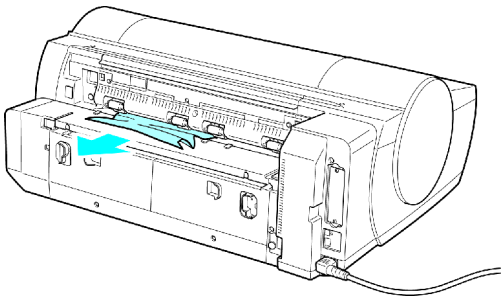
3. Press ▼.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
(→P.147)

2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

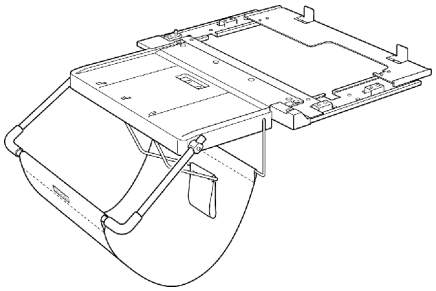
3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer.
(→P.148)

Output Stacker

Desktop Stacker

The printer can be used with the following Desktop Stacker. (Optional)

- Desktop Stacker BU-02

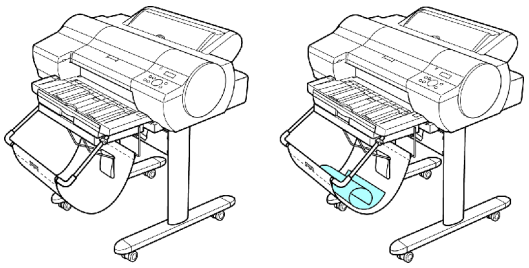


Note

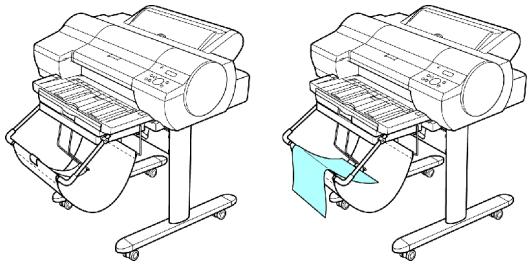
- For Desktop Stacker installation instructions, refer to the instructions provided with the Desktop Stacker.

Using the Output Stacker

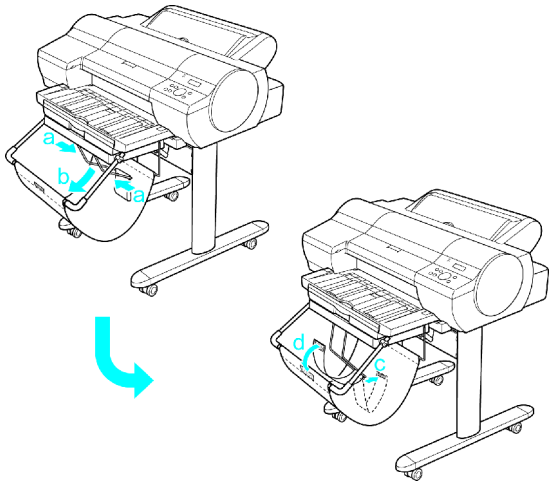
The Output Stacker can be used in two positions, as shown.
Regular position



Extended position



Use the Output Stacker in the normal position.
For some types of media, you can use the stacker in the extended position. Squeeze the wires of Basket Wire #2 (a) and pull them toward the front (b). Peel off the Velcro Tape (c) of the Basket Band and fasten it in the middle of Basket Rod #2 (d) to put the stacker in the extended position. This position enables printed documents to be removed more easily.



For information on the position for easy removal, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Important

- The Output Stacker can hold one sheet. When printing multiple pages, remove each sheet after it is printed.

Enhanced Printing Options

Print quality and color settings

Choosing a Paper for Printing

Choosing the right paper for your particular printing application will give you the best printing results.

Media type

The printer and printer driver offer print settings optimized for various paper characteristics.

Note

- For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. For information about the Media Configuration Tool, see the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- An error message is displayed on the printer Control Panel if the paper type as specified in the printer driver does not match the type specified on the printer. Although you can print under these conditions, the printing results may not be suitable.

If the paper type is not listed for selection

If the type of paper loaded cannot be selected, try specifying glossy paper or proofing paper as a special paper (Special 1 to Special 5, in this order). BK (Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Try specifying other types of paper as Special 6 to Special 10. MBK (Matte Black Ink) is used as the black ink. Note that higher numbers in this setting enable more vivid colors but may also cause colors to run together.
For instructions on specifying the paper type before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.124)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.168)
- Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.167)

Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing

You can specify detailed print settings as desired for the quality level, colors, and other criteria.

Advanced Settings

For printing results that appear just as expected for your original, you can specify which graphic elements and colors to prioritize for printing.

Note

- **Easy Settings** are also available, providing convenient presets. To use the presets, simply choose the printing application.
  For details on **Easy Settings**, refer to the following topics.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.207)
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.209)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.211)
  - Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.212)
  - Printing Office Documents (→P.213)

Print Priority

Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing.

Print Priority (*1)	Description
Image	A setting for posters or other documents made up mainly of photos or images, or for emphasizing photos or images in printed documents.
Line Drawing/Text	Choose this setting for CAD drawings made up mainly of intricate lines, or wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text. Suitable for emphasizing detailed text in printed documents. However, the quality may not be sufficient when printing photos or images that require a lot of color coverage. In this case, choose “Image” instead.
Office Document	Choose this setting for better legibility of documents combining text and graphics, such as documents and presentation material created with typical office applications.

*1: Options suitable for the selected paper type are listed under Print Priority.

Print Quality

Choose the print quality.
The printing mode is determined by a combination of the print quality and resolution.

Print Quality (*1)	Description	Print Priority
Highest	A setting for printing at the highest resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in other modes, but this mode offers superior printing quality.	**Image**
High	Choose this setting to print at high resolution when quality is most important. Printing takes longer and consumes more ink than in “Standard” or “Draft” modes, but this mode offers exceptional printing quality.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**
Standard	Choose this setting to print at standard resolution when quality and speed are both important. Printing takes less time than in “Highest” or “High” mode.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text** **Office Document**
Draft	Choose this setting to print faster. Printing in draft mode can help you work more efficiently when checking layouts.	**Image** **Line Drawing/Text**

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Print Quality.

Color Settings

Setting Item	Options	Description
Color Mode (*1)	**Color** **Monochrome (Photo)** **Monochrome**	Choose whether to print in color or monochrome. (→P.214)
Color Adjustment (Images) **Color Adjustment** (Graphics) **Color Adjustment** (Text)	**Cyan** **Magenta** **Yellow** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Saturation** **Gray Tone Adjustment**	You can adjust the levels of cyan, magenta, and yellow as well as the brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray tone separately for images, graphics, and text documents. If you choose **Monochrome** in **Color Mode** only **Brightness** and **Contrast** can be adjusted.
Gray Adjustment	**Color Balance** **Brightness** **Contrast** **Highlight** **Shadow**	Choose the gray tone color balance (**Cool Black** or **Warm Black**) and adjust levels of brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow as desired. These levels can be adjusted when **Monochrome (Photo)** is selected in **Color Mode** .
Color-Matching Modes	**Driver Matching Mode** **ICC Matching Mode** **Off**	Choose the color-matching mode. Other color-matching modes may be provided by the computer operating system, such as ICM and ColorSync.
Color-Matching Method (*2)	**Auto** **Perceptual** **Perceptual (People, Dark Areas)** **Saturation** **Colorimetric** Others	Choose the color-matching method. The available options vary depending on your selection in “Color-Matching Mode.”
Color Space (*3)	**sRGB** **Adobe RGB**	Choose a standard color space (**sRGB**) or an expanded color space (**Adobe RGB**).

*1: Options suitable for the selected Print Priority are listed under Color Mode.
*2: The order of options displayed varies depending on the operating system.
*3: **Adobe RGB** is not available if an incompatible combination of the paper type and print quality is selected.

Enhancing Printing Quality

Setting Item	Description
Thicken Fine Lines (*1)	Choose this option to make fine lines clearer in CAD drawings or similar documents.
Unidirectional Printing	Choosing unidirectional printing can improve printing results if lines are printed crooked or images are uneven. However, it takes more time than regular printing.
High-Precision Printing	Enables printing at the highest level of quality. However, this requires more time than usual for printing.

*1: Displayed in Windows and Mac OS 9.

Note

- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in **Print Quality**, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.
- For instructions on specifying the print quality and color settings before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) (→P.220)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X) (→P.222)
  - Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) (→P.225)

Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

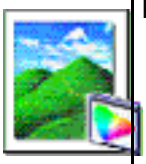
Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Setting optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Draft	Setting optimized for high-speed draft printing.
	Photo (Photo Studio)	For printing with an effect similar to that produced by photo studios. In subdued, dark photos, images of people and dark scenes are printed attractively.
	Photo (Standard)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Photo (Adobe RGB)	Setting optimized for printing in colors matching those of images created using the Adobe RGB color space.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Setting optimized for printing monochrome photos in the neutral black image tone of conventional film photographs.
	Poster (Photos)	Suitable for printing posters composed mainly of photographs.

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Text, Illustrations)	Setting optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.
	Scanned Image	Setting optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.257)
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.259)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the print target.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for photos and images

	Print Target	Description
	Highest Quality	Settings optimized for printing at the highest level of quality.
	Photos (High Image Quality)	Setting optimized for printing photographic images at a higher level of quality.
	Photo (from digital camera)	Settings optimized for printing photographic images from digital cameras.
	Photo (Monochrome)	Setting optimized for printing monochrome photos in the neutral black image tone of conventional film photographs.
	Adobe RGB Images	Settings optimized for printing in colors matching those of images created using the Adobe RGB color space.
	Poster (Graphic Image)	Settings optimized for printing posters mainly composed of photos and images.
	POP Ad	Settings optimized for printing vivid, eye-catching store posters combining images and text.

	Print Target	Description
	Scanned Image	Settings optimized for printing scanned images with accurate color reproduction to match the original images.
	Draft	Settings optimized for high-speed draft printing.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)
- For instructions on printing photos and images, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.
  - Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.209)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D CAD, GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.245)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.247)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for line drawings and text

	Print Target	Description
	Poster (Notice Announcement)	Settings optimized for printing announcements such as wall newspapers and other notices with a large amount of text.
	3D-CAD/GIS	Settings optimized for printing 3D CAD drawings, perspective drawings, and maps, including GIS maps.
	CAD (Line Drawing)	Settings optimized to print intricate lines in CAD drawings clearly.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing line drawings and text, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.212)

Printing Office Documents

Printing is easy when you simply choose the type of original to print.

Easy Settings

Simply choose the printing application in the list for optimal printing results.

Print Target

Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed.

Print targets for office documents

	Print Target	Description
	Office Document	Settings optimized for clear printing of office documents such as handouts.

Note

- You can check the settings values for each print target by clicking **View Settings**.
- You can also fine-tune these values as needed. (Advanced Settings)
  For details on Advanced Settings, see “Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing”. (→P.203)

For instructions on printing office documents, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Office Documents (Windows) (→P.251)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) (→P.253)
- Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) (→P.255)

Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver

Color settings specified in the application for your documents are essentially given priority over other settings for each print job, but further color adjustment is possible in the printer driver.

Color Mode

Choose how the printer driver processes color, as desired.
The available options vary depending on the color mode.

Color Mode	Description	Color Adjustment
Color	Print in color.	You can adjust the color balance and color-matching method.
Monochrome (Photo)	Grayscale printing optimized for monochrome photos.	You can adjust the color balance in ways tailored to monochrome photos.
Monochrome	Print in grayscale.	You can adjust the color balance.

Color Adjustment

You can adjust colors separately for images, graphics, and text documents.

Adjustment Item	Description
Cyan	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Saturation	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjust the grayscale, in a range from cool, blue tones to warm, red tones.

Matching

You can choose the color-matching mode and method.
By adjusting the color-matching mode and method, you can make printed colors match the colors of on-screen images more closely.

Matching Mode	Description	Notes
Driver Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on the original color profile of the printer driver	This is the default color-matching method. Normally, use **Driver Matching Mode** .
ICC Matching Mode	Color adjustment based on ICC color profiles (an international standard) using the printer driver	You can select the printer profile in the **Printer Profile Settings** list.
Driver ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. The printer driver adjusts the colors.	Available when using Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista
Host ICM Mode	Color adjustment based on the standard Windows ICM function. Windows adjusts the colors.	
ColorSync	Color adjustment based on the standard Mac OS ColorSync function. Mac OS adjusts the colors.	Available when using the Mac OS
Off (No Correction)	No color-matching	Choose this option for color-matching by the software application or with your own color profile, when you want to disable color-matching by the printer driver.

Matching Method	Description	Notes
Auto	Color-matching optimized for images, graphics, or text	The available options and their display order varies depending on your selection in Color-Matching Mode, as well as the operating system.
Perceptual	Color-matching optimized for photos. Print images with smooth gradations and colors closer to those as displayed on the screen.	
Perceptual (People, Dark Areas)	Color matching optimized for printing skin tone and dark areas attractively in subdued, dark photos. For printing indoor shots of people or evening scenes attractively.	
Colorimetric	Color-matching with adjustment to remove color from white area. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white area.	
Colorimetric (No Wht-pnt Corr)	Color-matching without white adjustment to reflect the profile of original data. Without white adjustment, colors are added to white area.	
Saturation	Color-matching optimized for graphics. This option emphasizes color saturation.	

Gray Tone Adjustment

The following settings can be adjusted if “Monochrome (Photo)” is selected in Color Mode.

Gray Adjustment Items	Description
Color Balance	Enables you to adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
Highlight	Adjust levels of image highlight areas.
Shadow	Adjust levels of image shadow areas.

Note

- Be sure to calibrate your monitor colors correctly if you adjust the colors for printing. If monitor colors are not calibrated correctly, you may not obtain the desired printing results. For instructions on monitor calibration, refer to the documentation for your monitor and operating system.

For instructions on color adjustment, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) (→P.228)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X) (→P.231)
- Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.234)

Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment

You can print in the colors that look best when viewed under the light where the printed image will be displayed. There are two ways to adjust the color tone for the ambient light, as follows.

By selecting color tones on Charts before printing

On the printed **Chart**, note the number of the set of colors with the desired color tone and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on selecting color tones on **Charts** before printing, refer to the following topic:

- By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows) (→P.632)

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on measuring light levels before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (→P.636)

Printing Photos in Monochrome

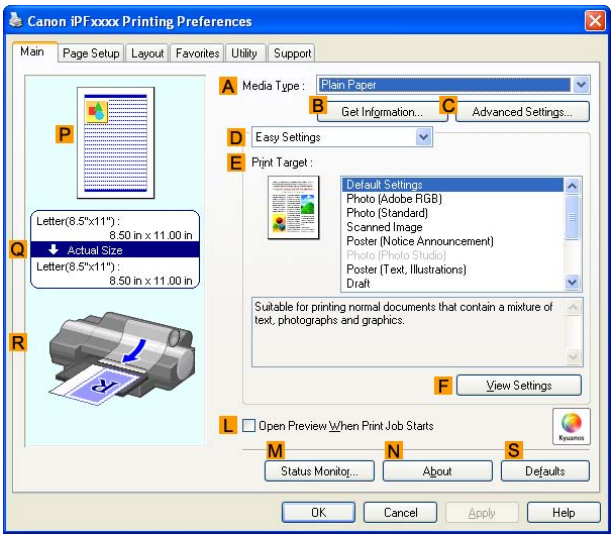
The following settings are available for monochrome printing.

Main	**Easy Settings**	**Print Target**	**Photo (Monochrome)**	A mode optimized for printing monochrome images with maximum expressiveness through simple operations. Choosing **Photo (Monochrome)** in **Easy Settings** applies image processing to keep color ink use to an absolute minimum, suppressing color shift and achieving consistent gray balance. • **Photo (Monochrome)** is not available for all types of paper. • Printing that matches the pure neutral black of conventional photos (silver-halide prints) is possible. Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows) (→P.265) Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.267) Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9) (→P.270)
	Advanced Settings	**Color Mode**	**Monochrome (Photo)**	A mode for printing monochrome images with maximum expressiveness by specifying detailed settings. In these settings, you can specify to apply image processing to keep color ink use to an absolute minimum, suppress color shift, and achieve consistent gray balance. You can also fine-tune the color balance by selecting “Warm Black,” “Cool Black”, and so on. • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the **Color Adjustment** sheet. • **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.237) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.239) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) (→P.242)
			Monochrome	Deactivates color printing so that images are printed in monochrome, with continuous-tone color data printed using gray midtones. Use this mode to print office documents or graphics in monochrome, or if the paper is not compatible with the **Monochrome (Photo)** setting. • Even more detailed adjustment is possible on the **Color Adjustment** sheet. • If the paper is not compatible with the **Monochrome (Photo)** setting, choose **Monochrome** . • Because color ink is used to produce gray continuous-tone images, the gray may appear to have a tinge of color. Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) (→P.237) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) (→P.239) Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9) (→P.242)

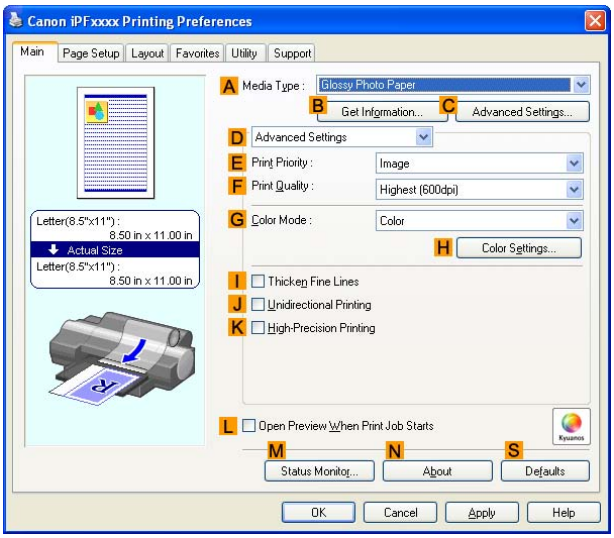
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Line Drawing/Text** in the E **Print Priority** list.
7. Click **Standard (600dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

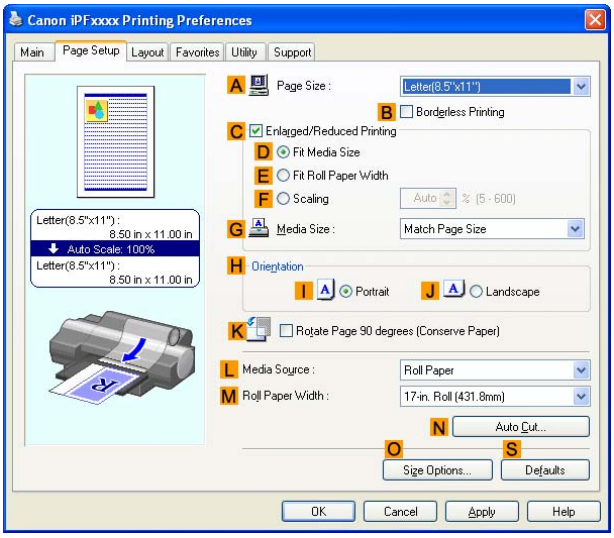
- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Monochrome** in the G **Color Mode** list.
9. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click H **Color Settings**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Media Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

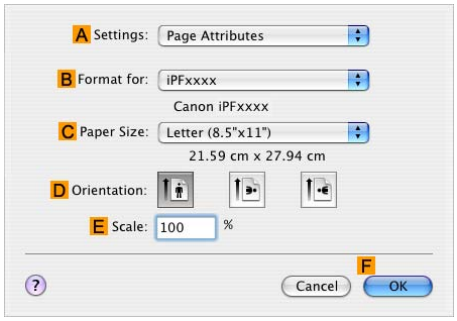
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

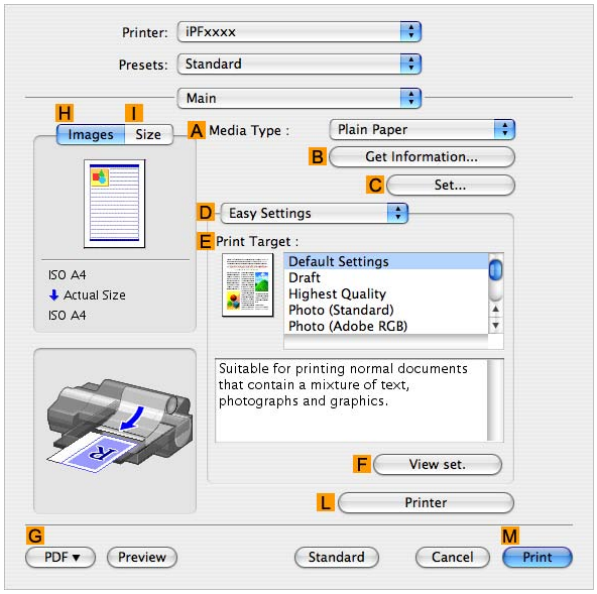
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

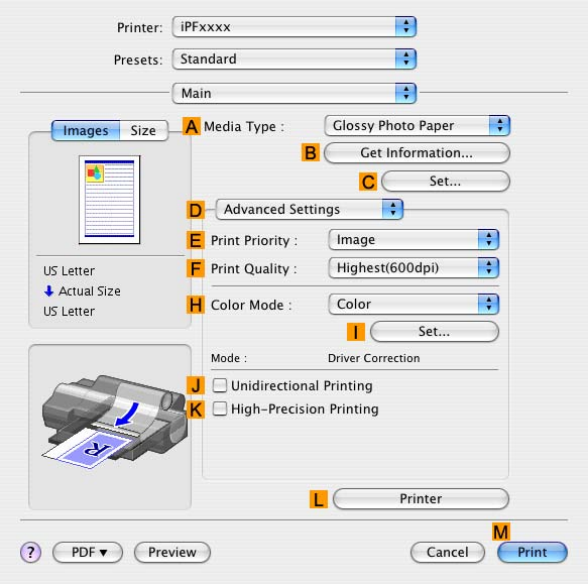


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the E **Print Priority** list.
10. Click **Standard(600dpi)** in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

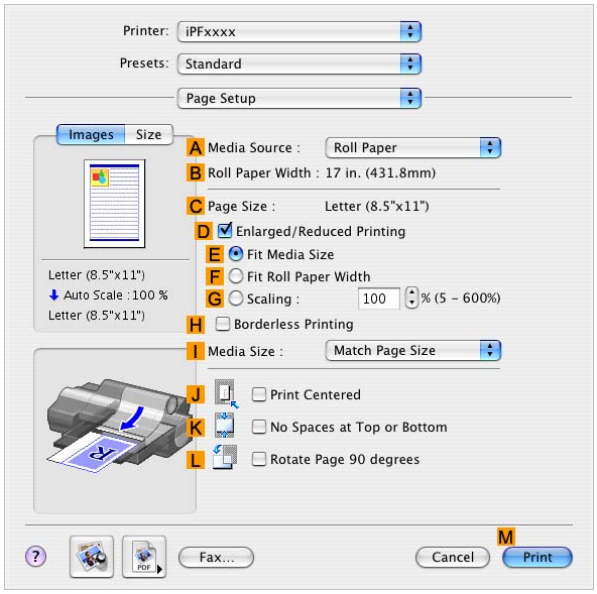
- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust the brightness and contrast, click I **Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

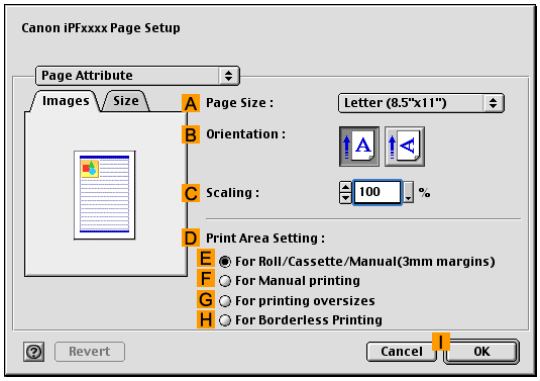
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

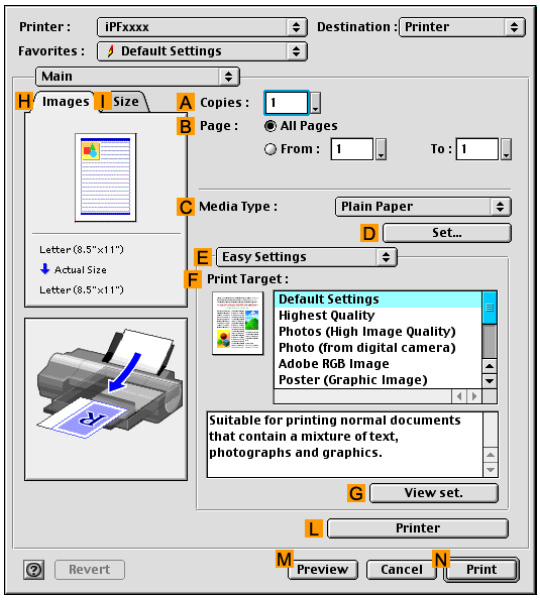
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to print CAD drawings in monochrome.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

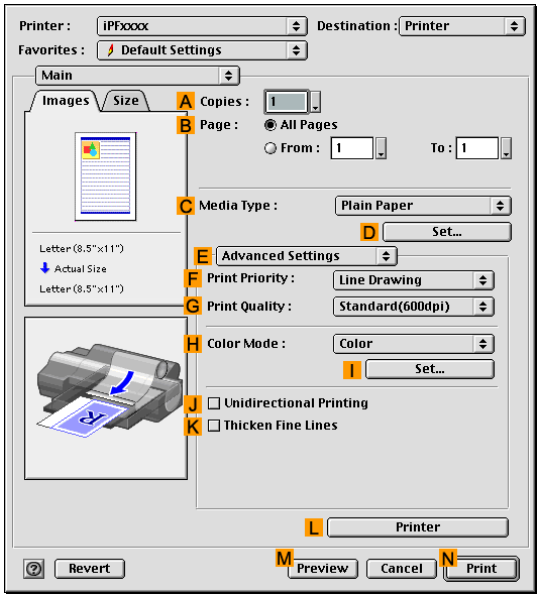


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click E **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Line Drawing** in the F **Print Priority** list.
10. Click **Standard(600dpi)** in the G **Print Quality** list.

Note

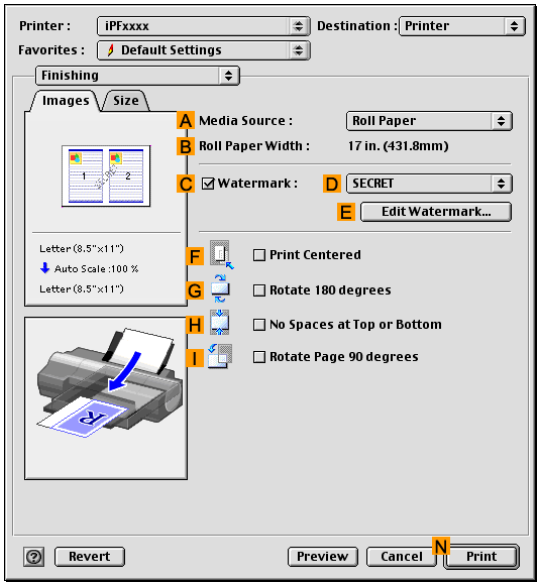
- Options displayed in the G **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

11. Click **Monochrome** in the H **Color Mode** list.
12. To adjust brightness and contrast, click I **Set**.

Note

- For instructions on adjusting brightness and contrast, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

13. Access the **Finishing** pane.



14. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

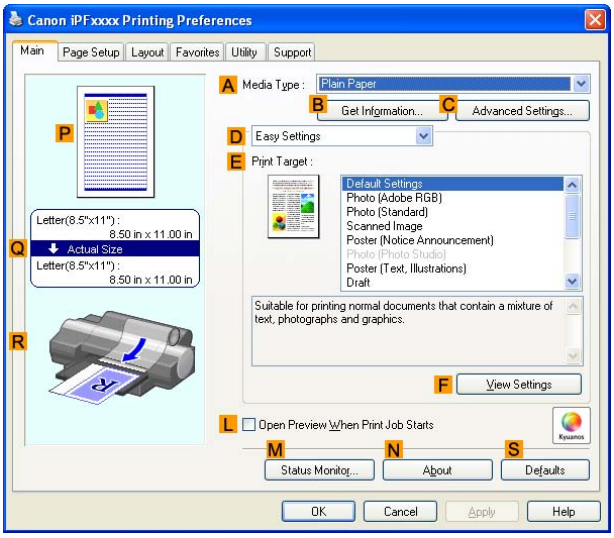
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

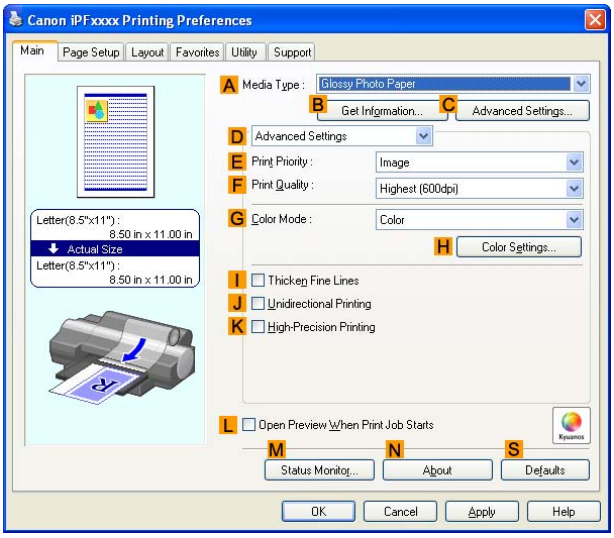
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

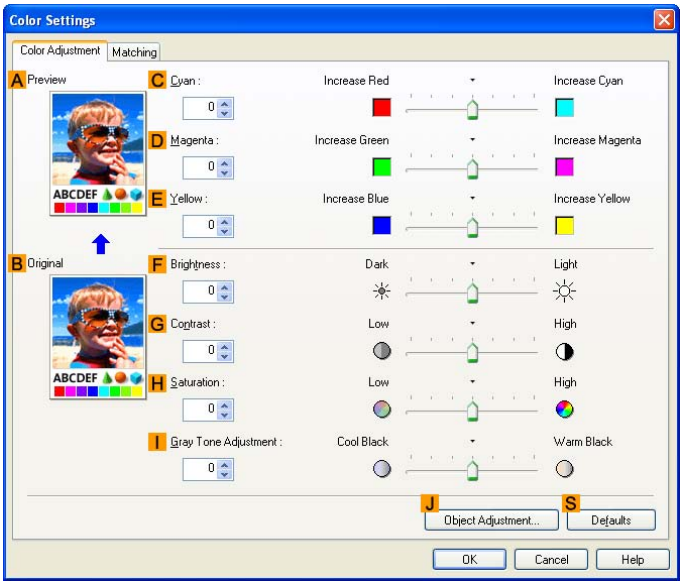


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



6. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

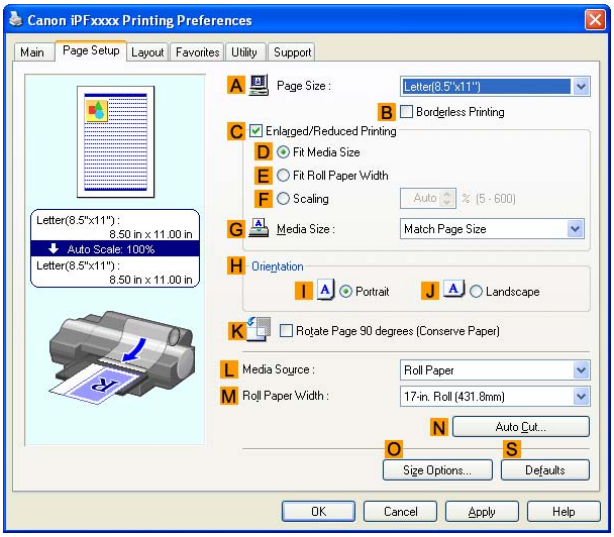


8. On the **Color Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I **Gray Tone Adjustment**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Media Source**, and so on.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

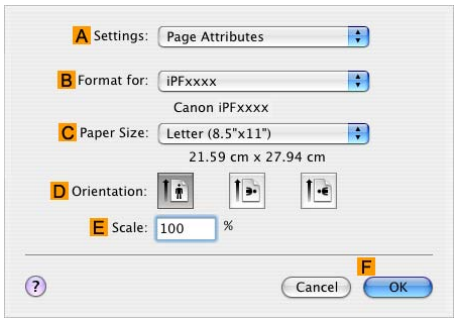
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

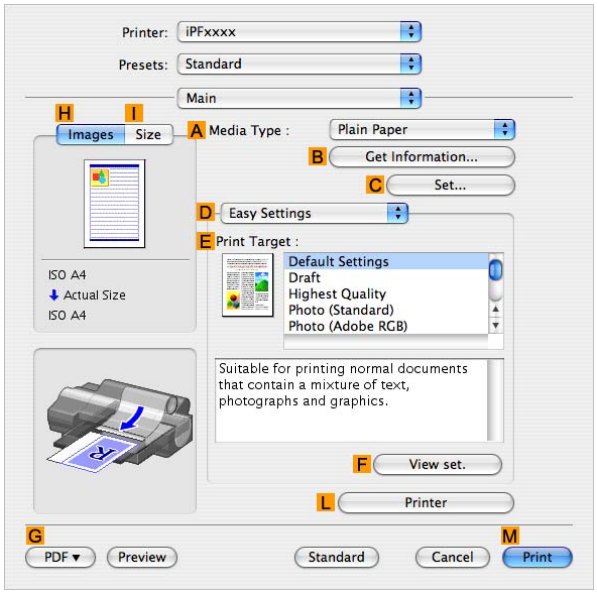
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

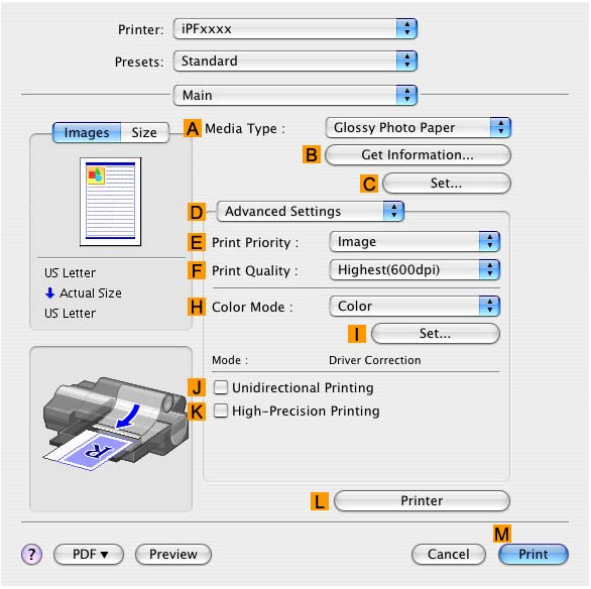


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

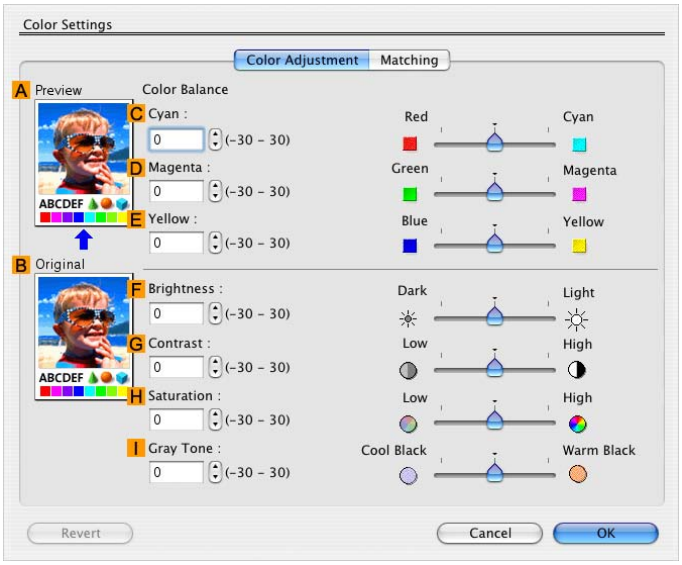


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

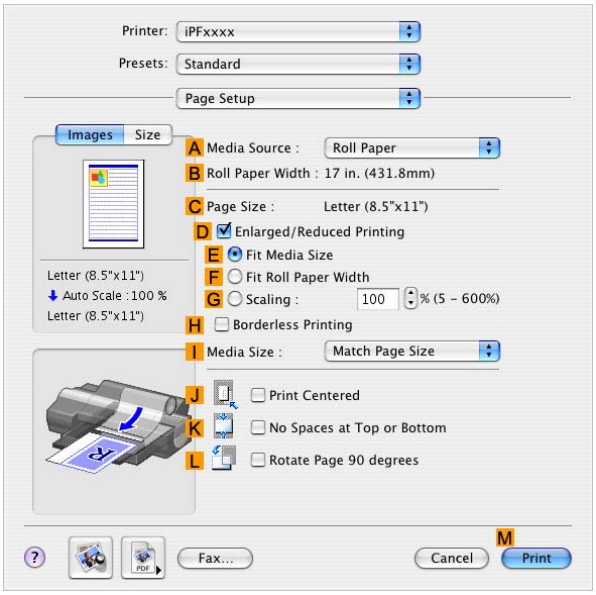


11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

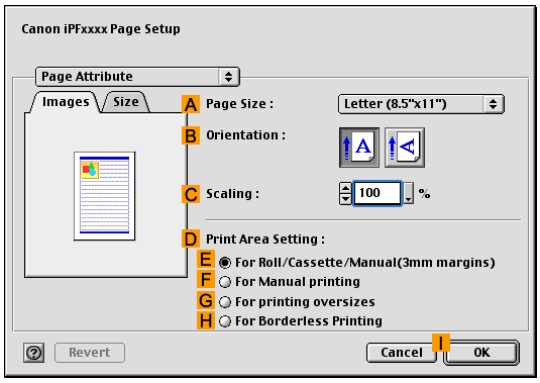
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

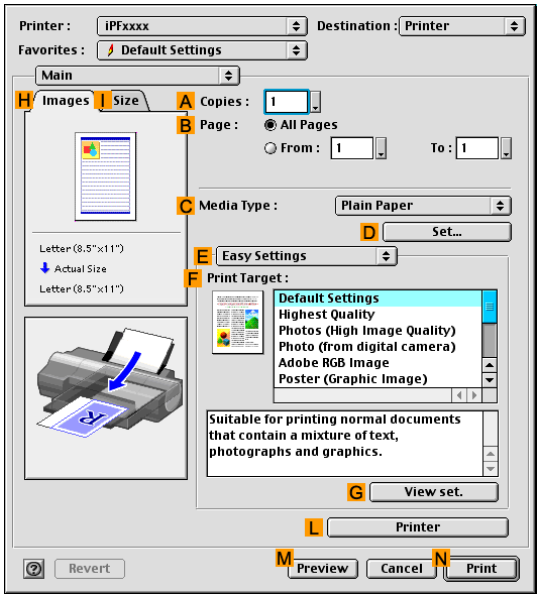
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune the color tone of photos before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

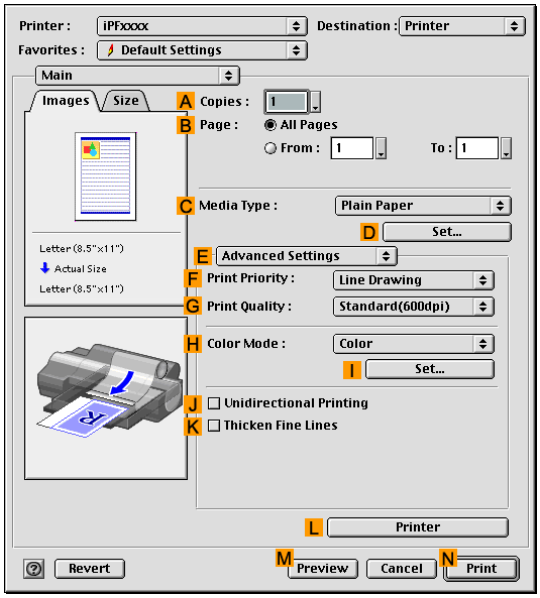


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

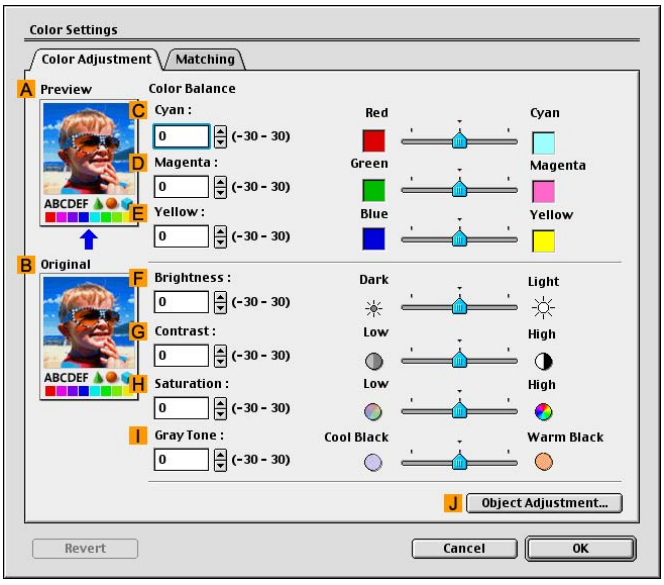


7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click E **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Color** in the H **Color Mode** list.
10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings**dialog box.

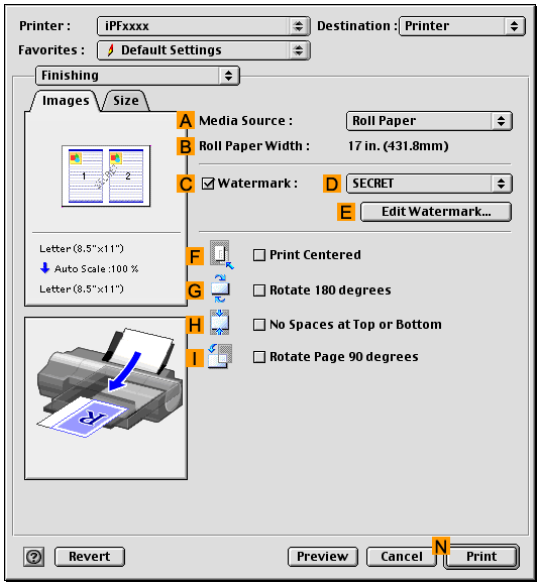


11. On the **Color Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

Adjustment Item	Description
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of Cyan , Magenta , and Yellow .
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the brightness of printed images while keeping the darkest and lightest portions intact.
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other. For soft gradation, decrease the contrast. For hard gradation, increase the contrast.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the level of color saturation, in a range from subdued to vivid.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the gray tone to suit the images of monochrome photos. Choose cool black (tinged with blue), pure black (neutral), warm black (tinged with red), and so on. Select the color tone in the color region or from the list.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Finishing** pane.



14. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

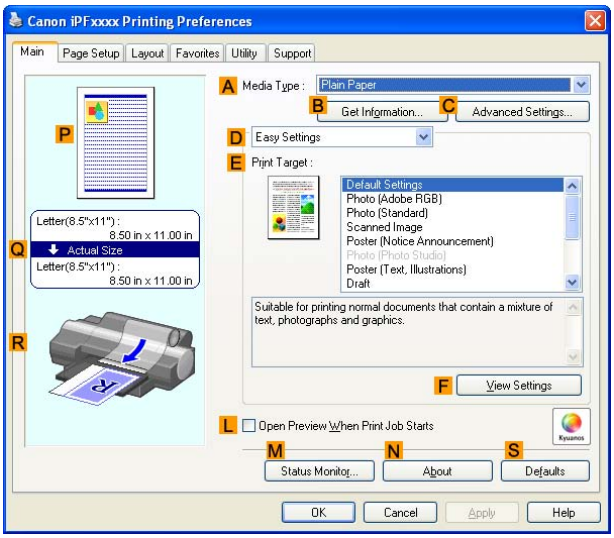
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

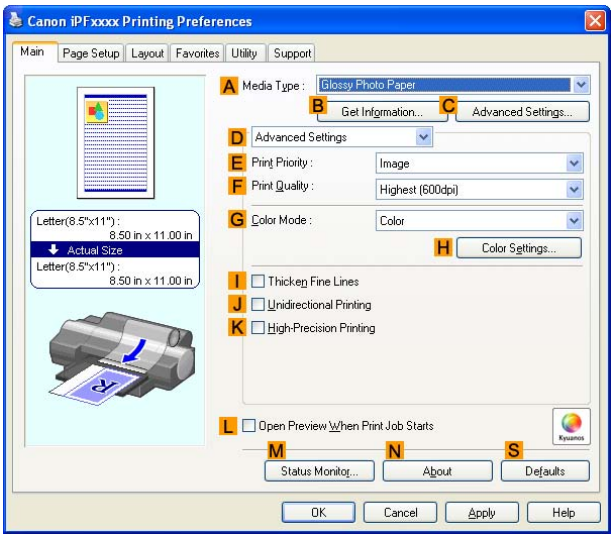
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

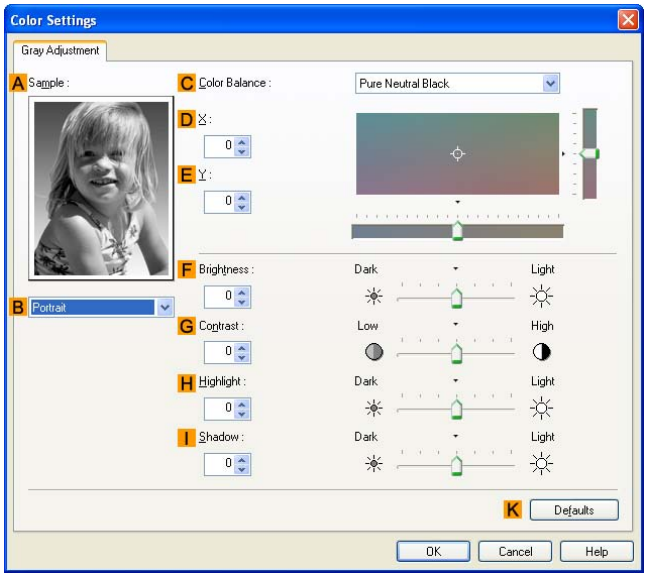


6. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the G **Color Mode** list.

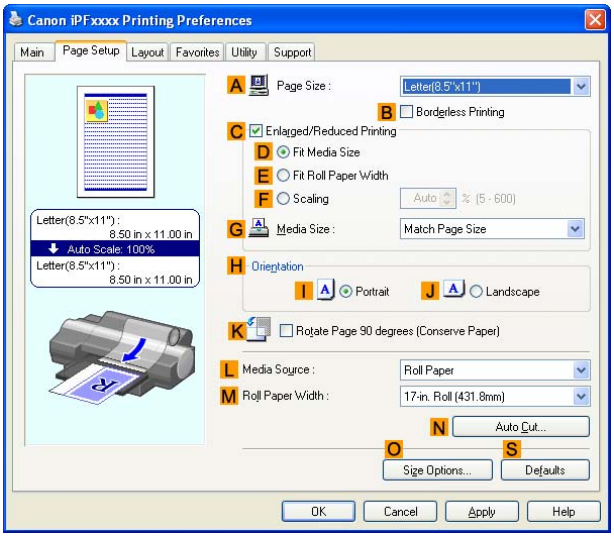
Note

- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

7. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



8. On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.
9. Close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



11. Confirm the settings of A **Page Size**, L **Media Source**, and so on.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

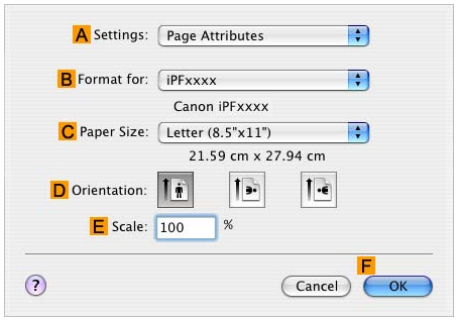
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

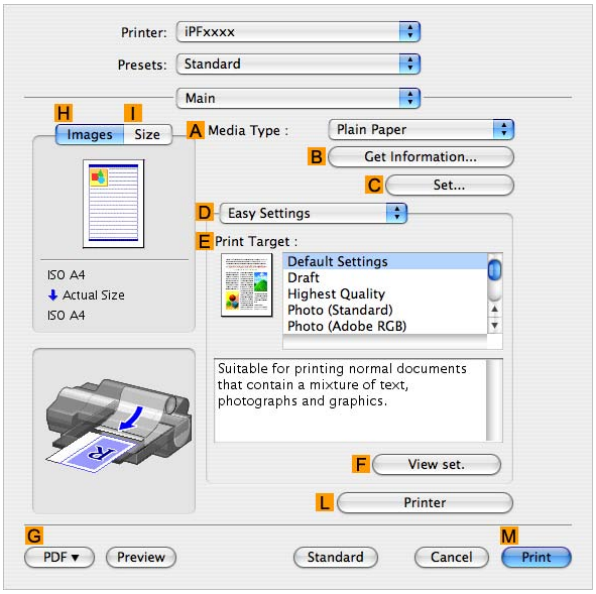
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

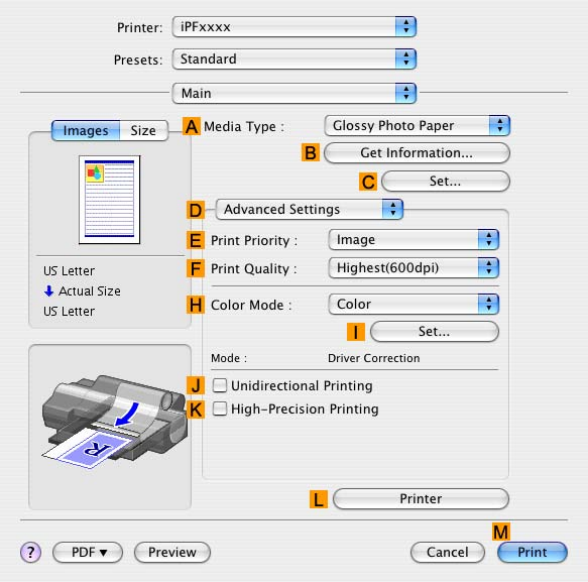


2. Select the print target in the **B Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the **C Paper Size** list.
4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the **A Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.



9. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the H **Color Mode** list.

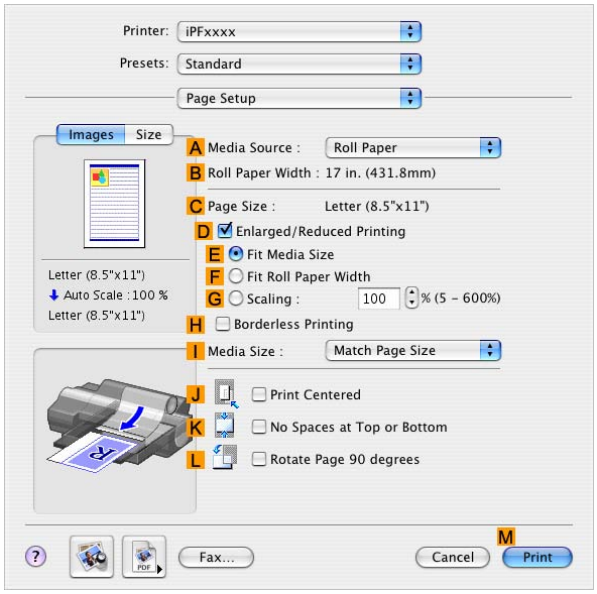
Note

- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.

11. On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Confirm the settings of A **Media Source** and C **Page Size**.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

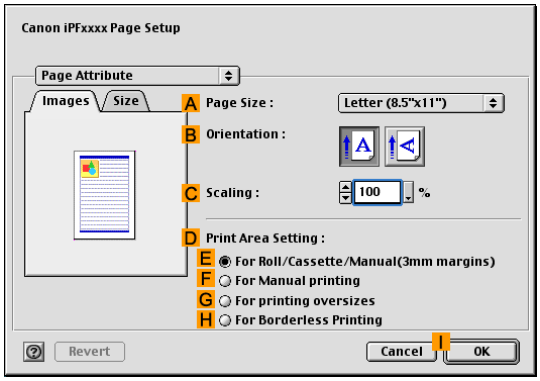
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

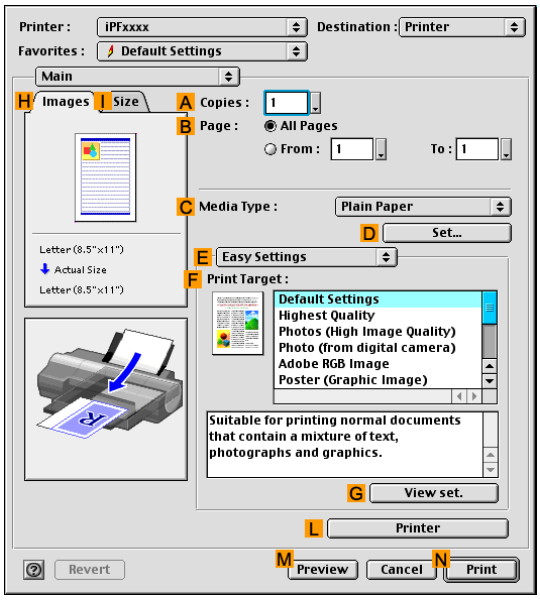
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)

You can specify your own print settings instead of using the **Print Target** presets. This topic describes how to fine-tune monochrome settings before printing.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

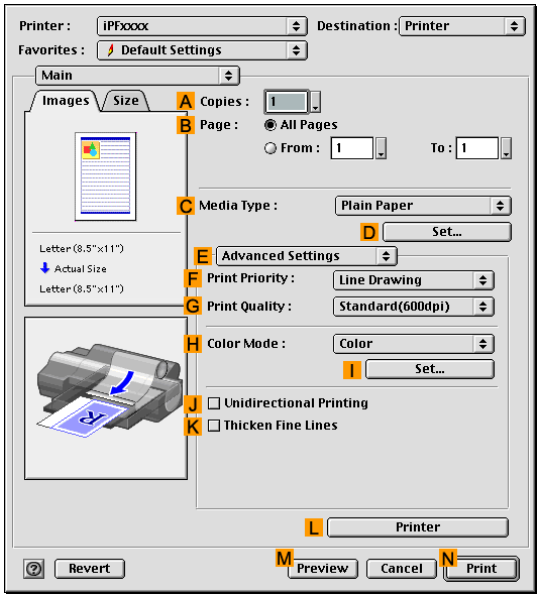


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.

8. Click E **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

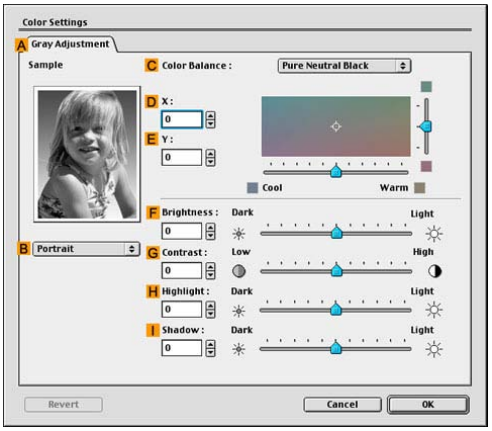


9. Click **Monochrome (Photo)** in the H **Color Mode** list.

Note

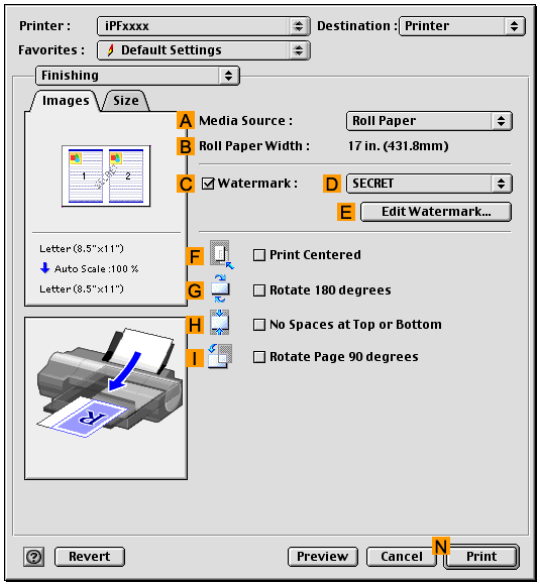
- **Monochrome (Photo)** may not be available for all types of paper.

10. Click I **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.



11. On the **Gray Tone Adjustment** pane, adjust the color tones, brightness, and so on as desired.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Confirm the selection in A **Media Source**.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

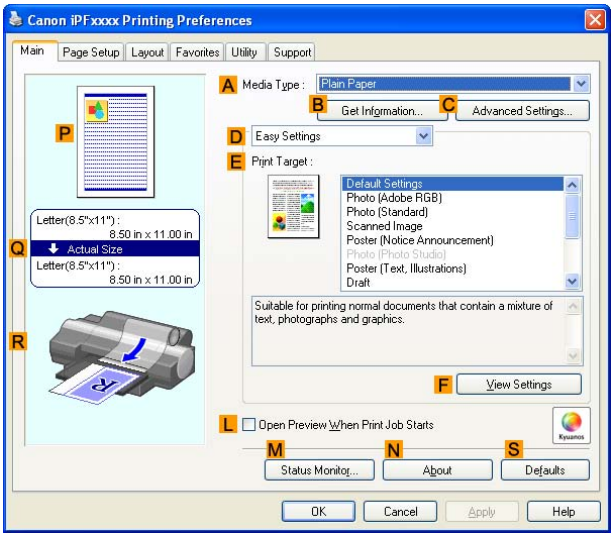
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

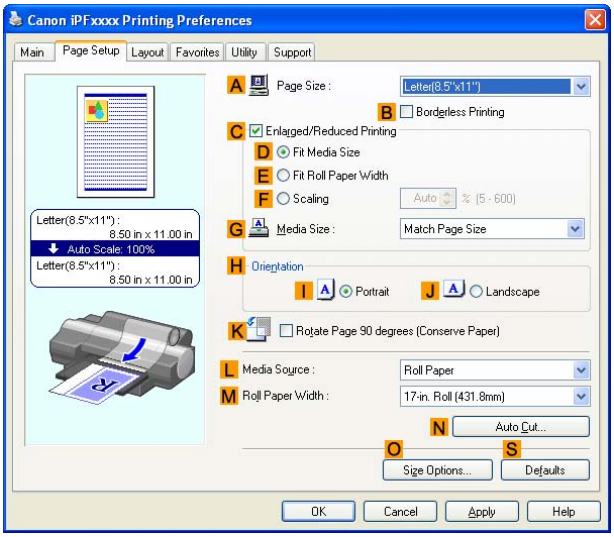


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

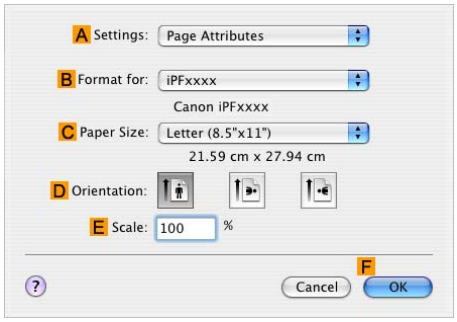
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

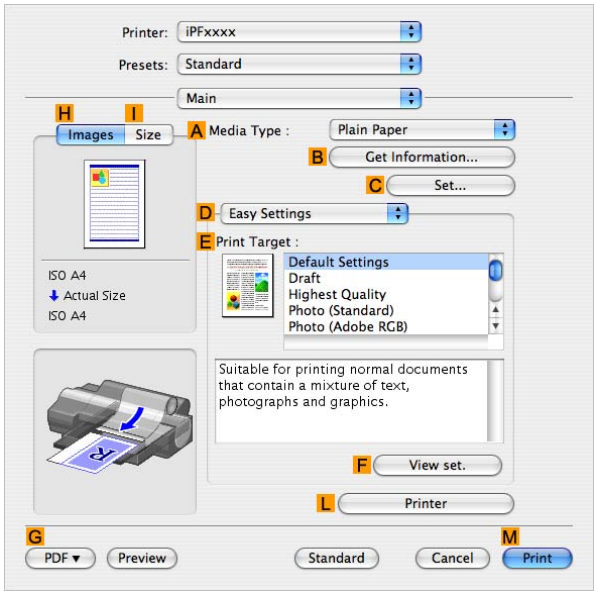
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



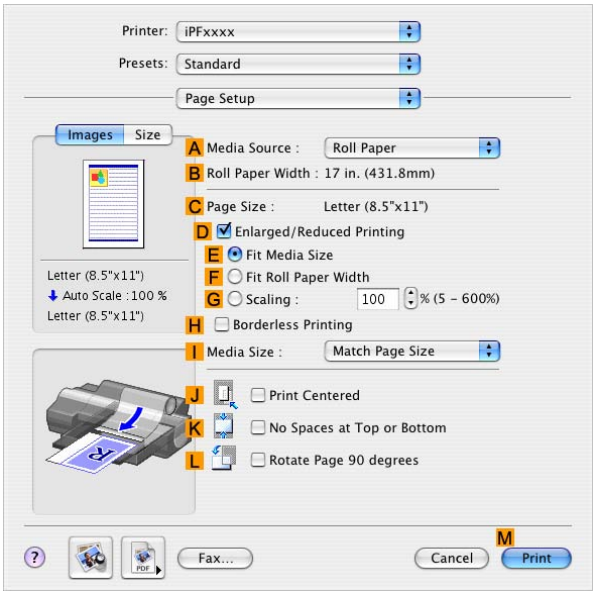
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

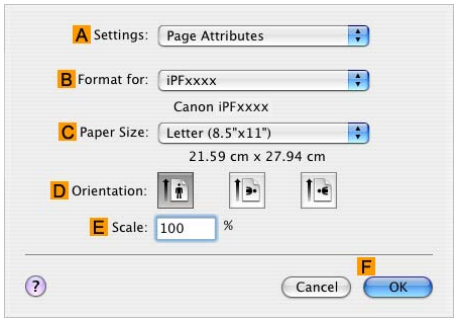
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

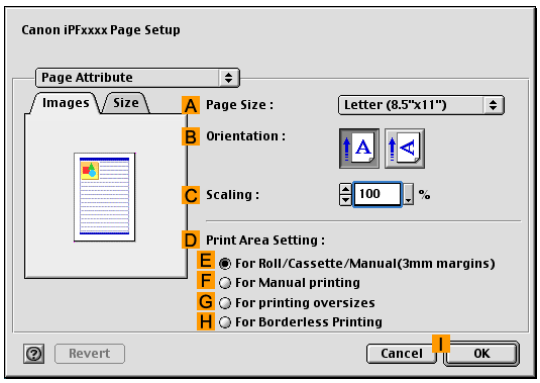
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

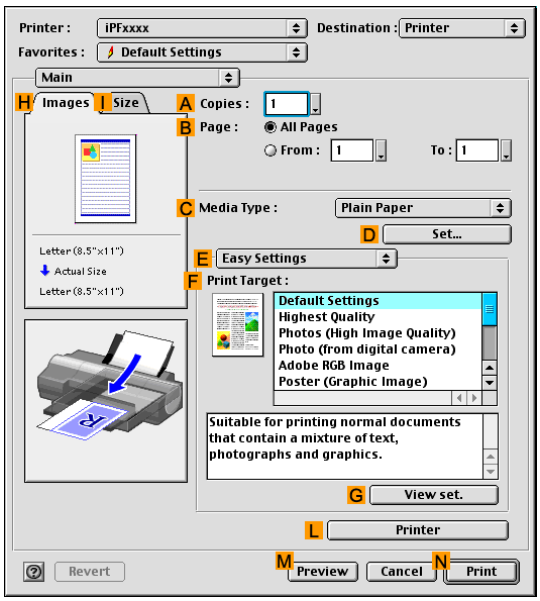
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



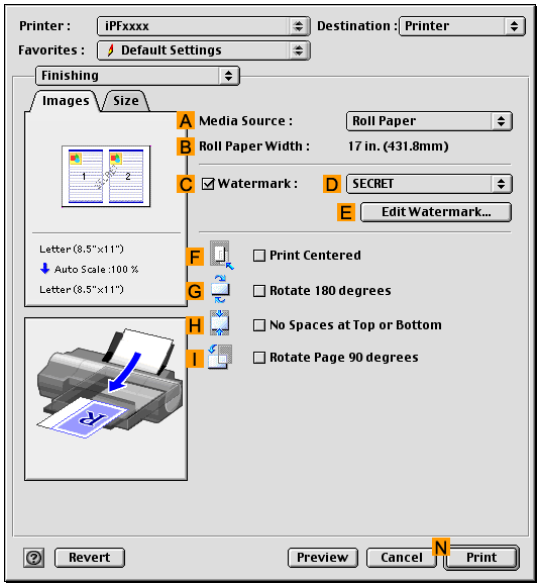
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

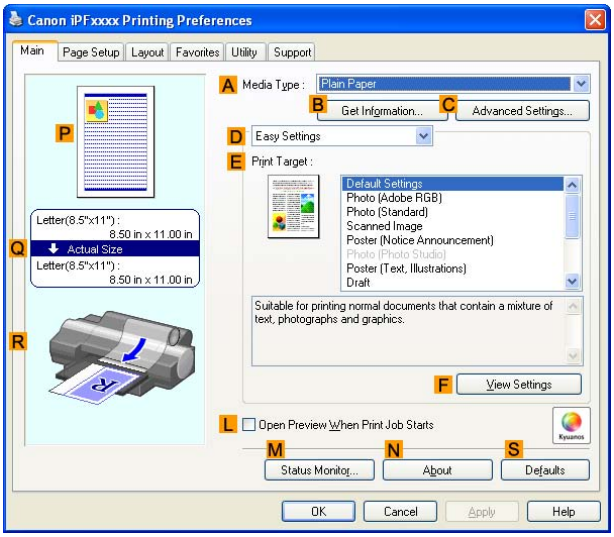
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Office Documents (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

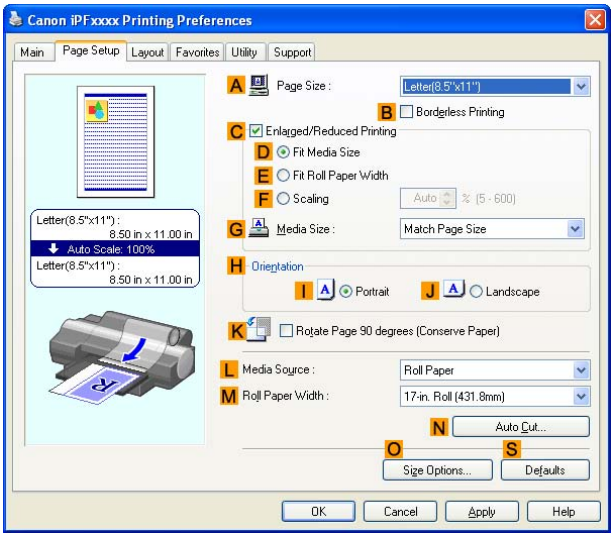


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup**sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Caution

- Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.

Note

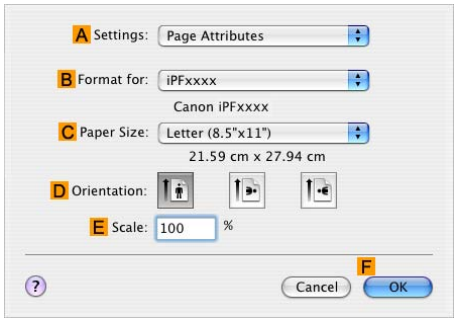
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X)

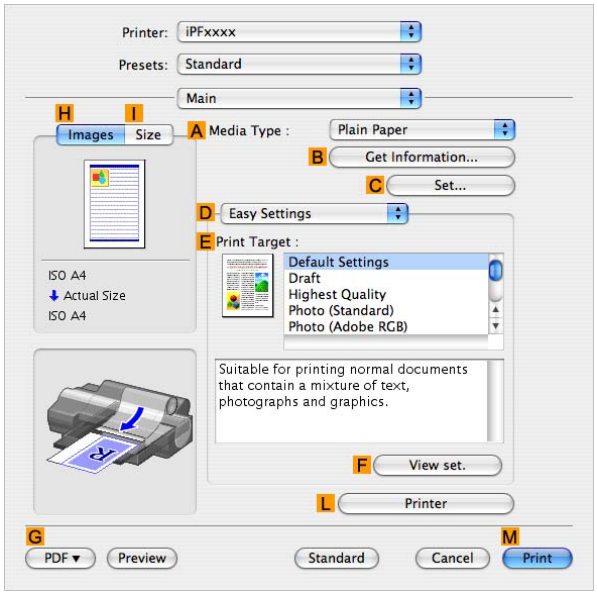
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



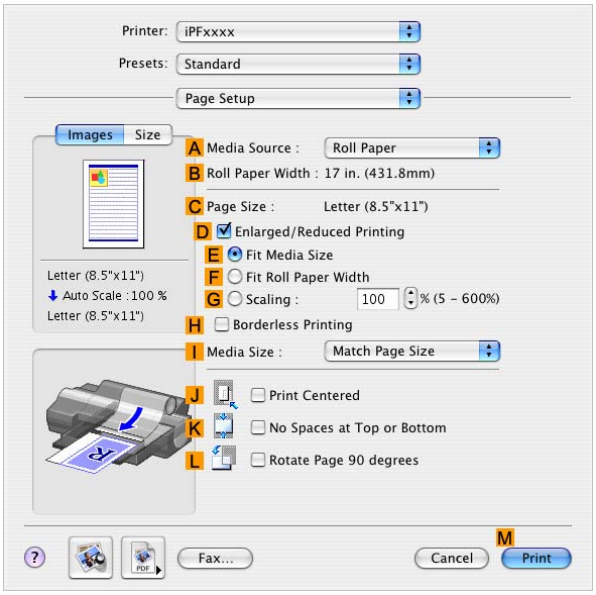
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

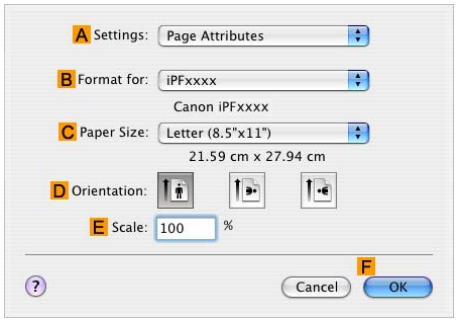
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

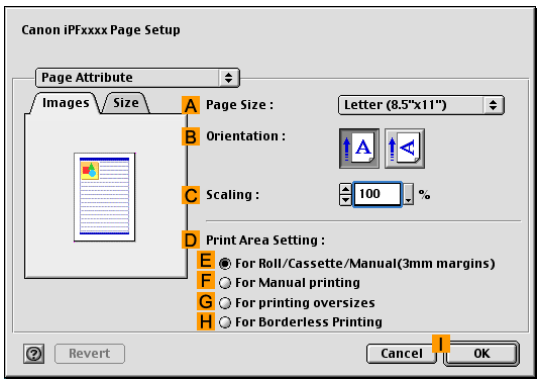
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9)

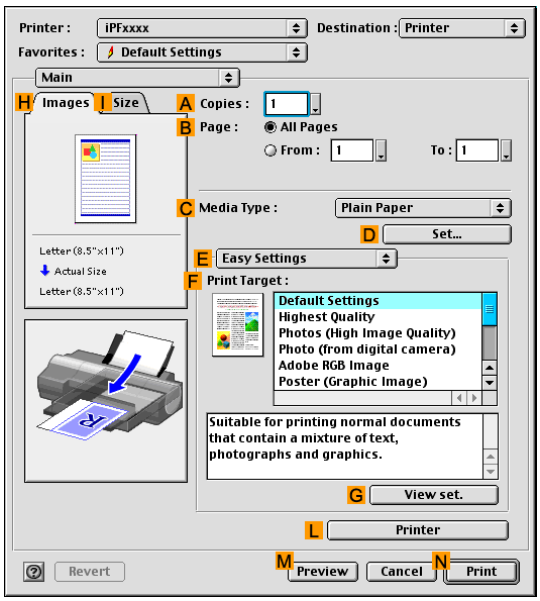
This topic describes how to print office documents based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



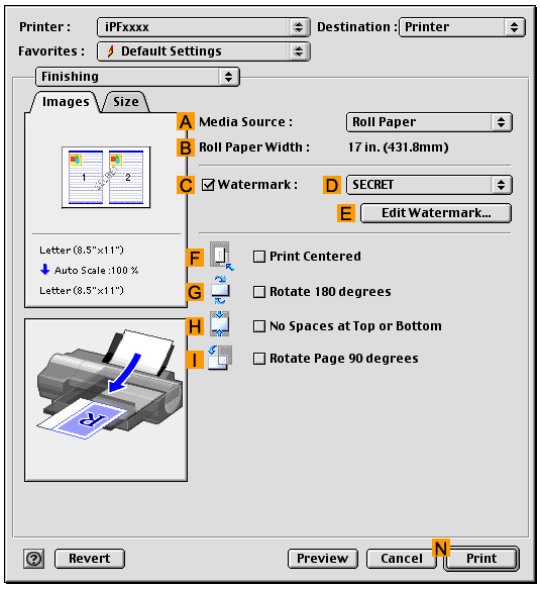
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

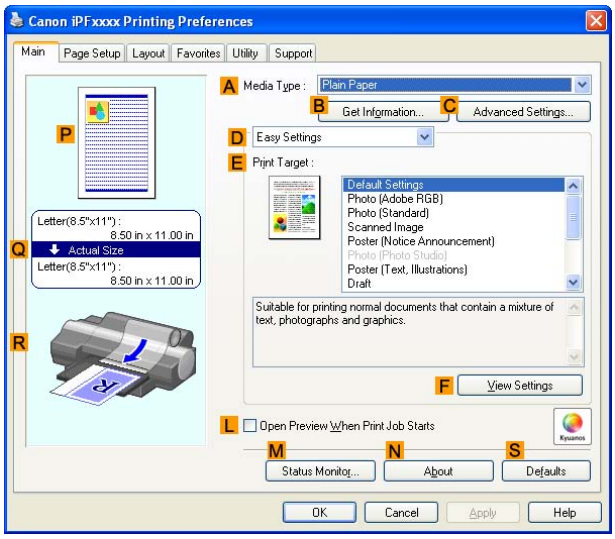
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Photos and Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



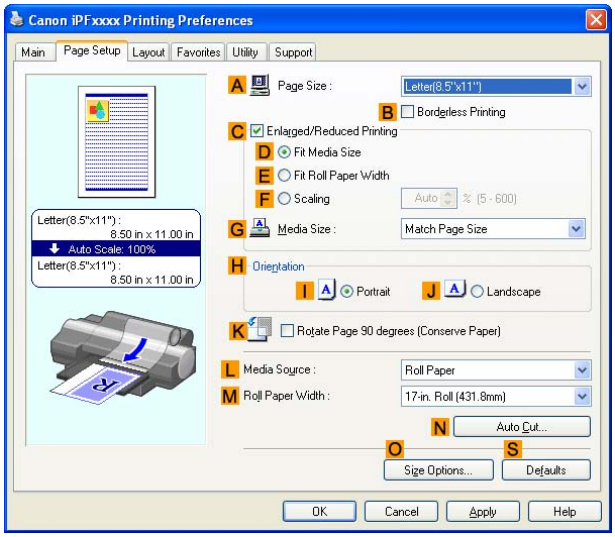
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In the A **Media Type**, choose the type of paper used for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

   Note
   - The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Standard)** or **Photo (Photo Studio)** in the E **Print Target** list.

   Note
   - For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)”. (→P.207)
   - You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

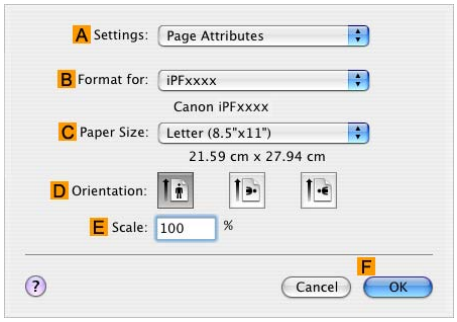
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X)

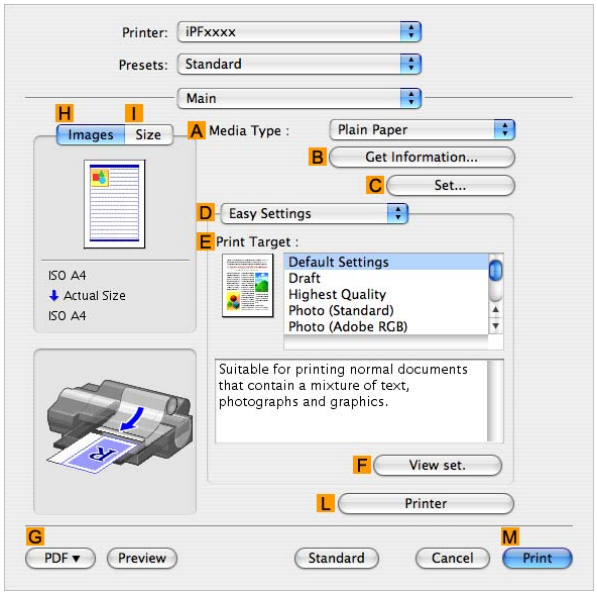
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper Type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper Width: 10 inches (254 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

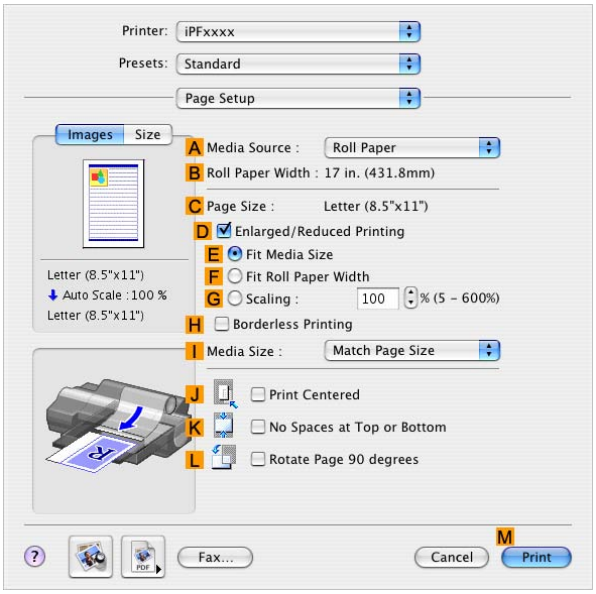
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Standard)** or **Photo (Photo Studio)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- For information on settings optimized for printing photos and images, see “Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X)”. (→P.207)
- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

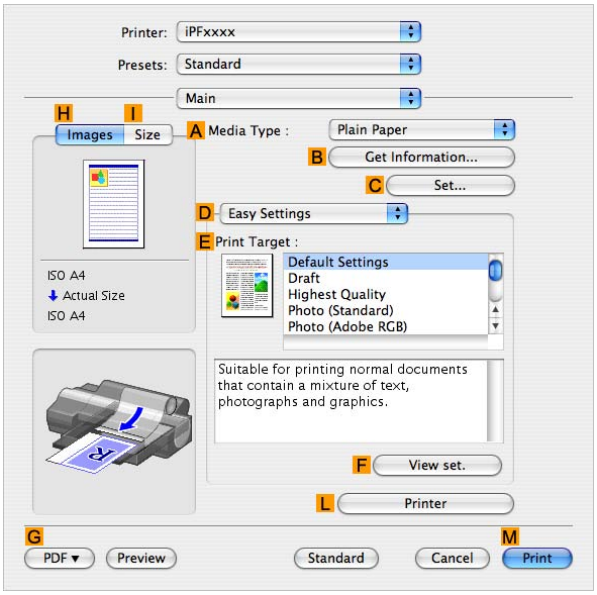


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

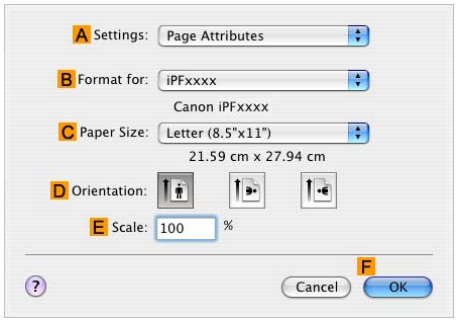
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B** **Roll Paper Width** list in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B** **Roll Paper Width**, click **L** **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C** **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C** **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M** **Print** to start printing.

Note

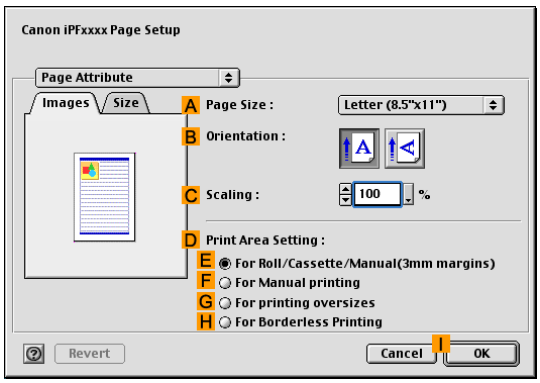
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9)

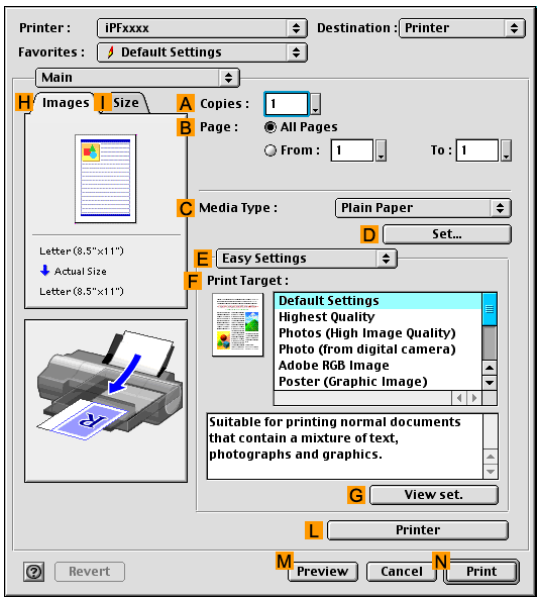
This topic describes how to print photos based on the following example.

- Document: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
In the C **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

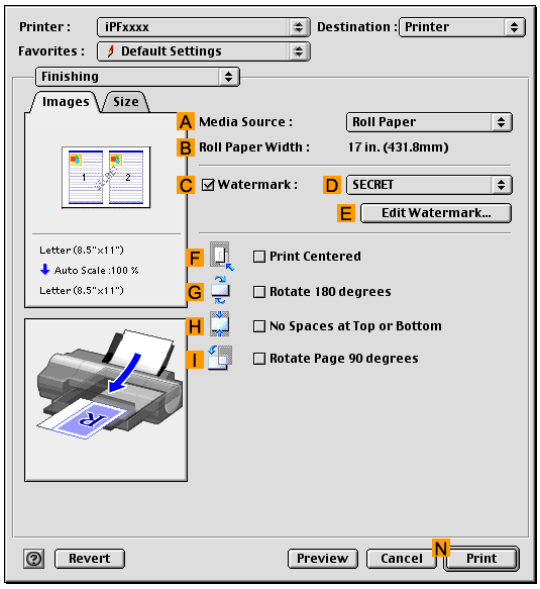
- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (from digital camera)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

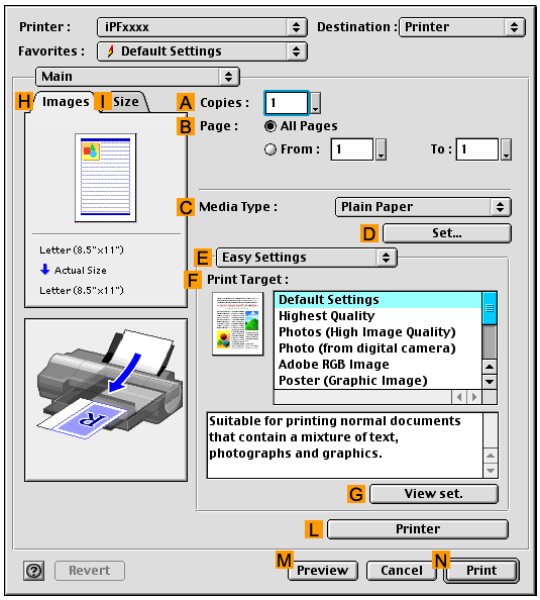


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

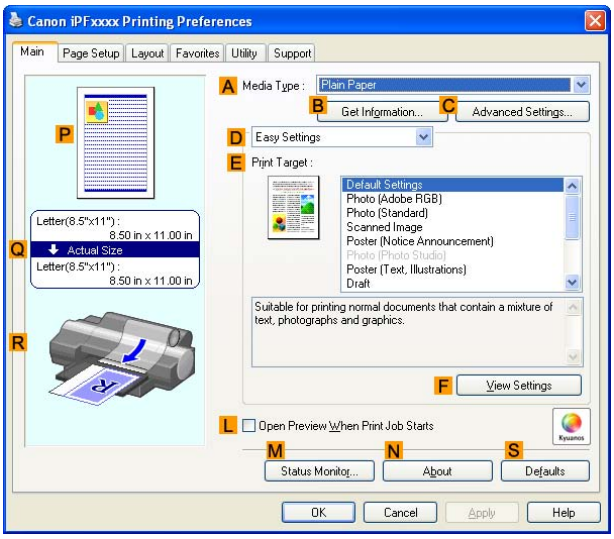
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows)

This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
   In the A **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the E **Print Target** list.

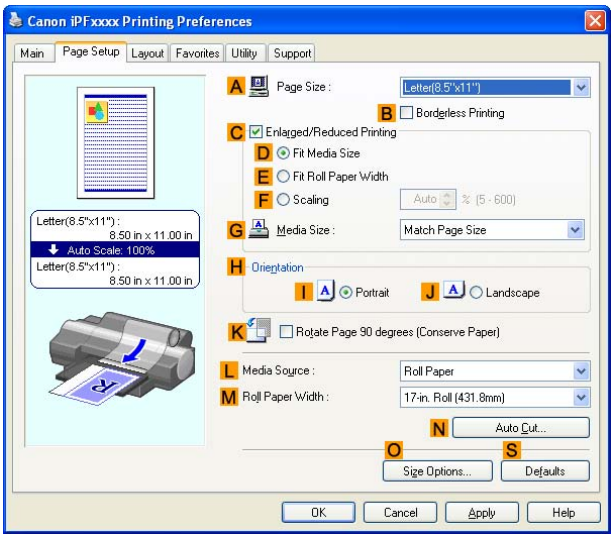
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
10. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

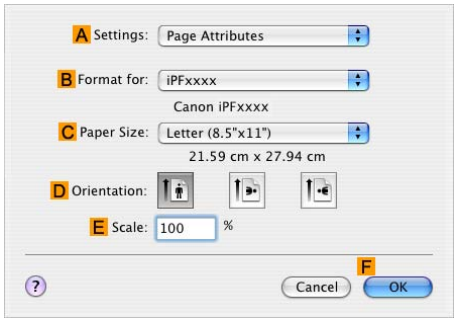
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X)

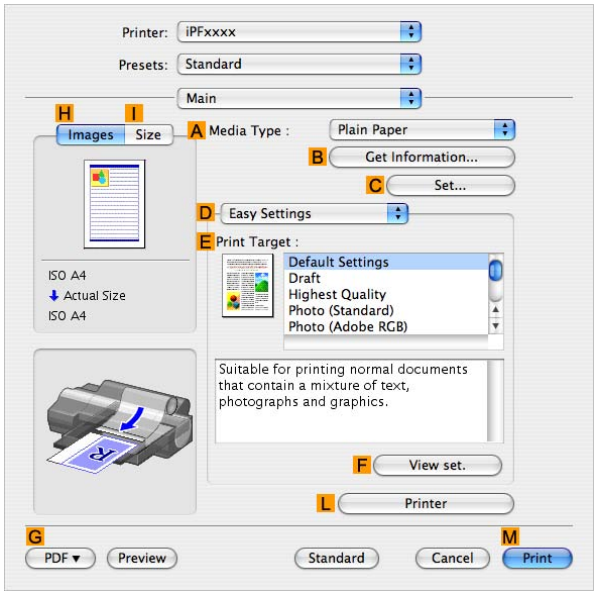
This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
In the A **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the E **Print Target** list.

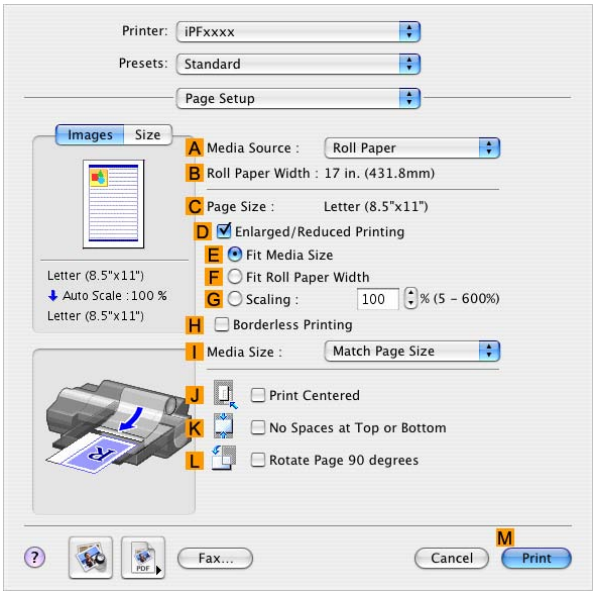
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

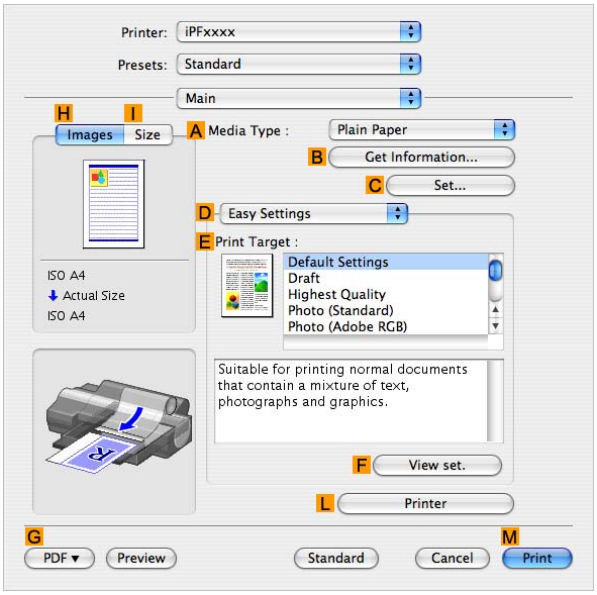


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

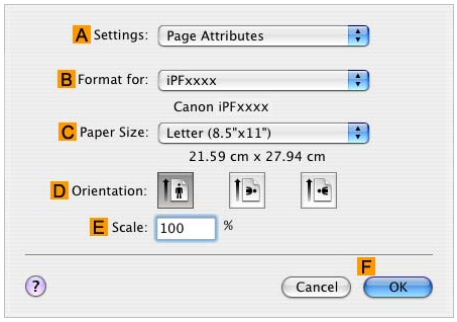
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer Information** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Make sure **C Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in **C Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



13. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **M Print** to start printing.

Note

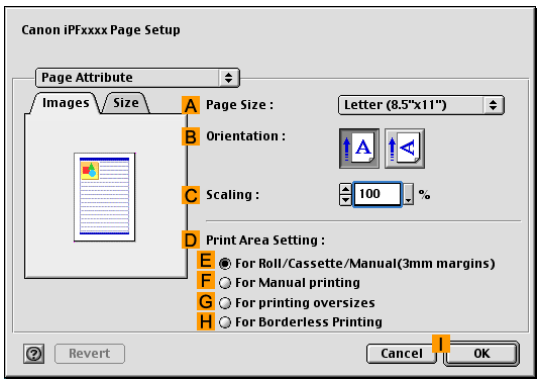
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9)

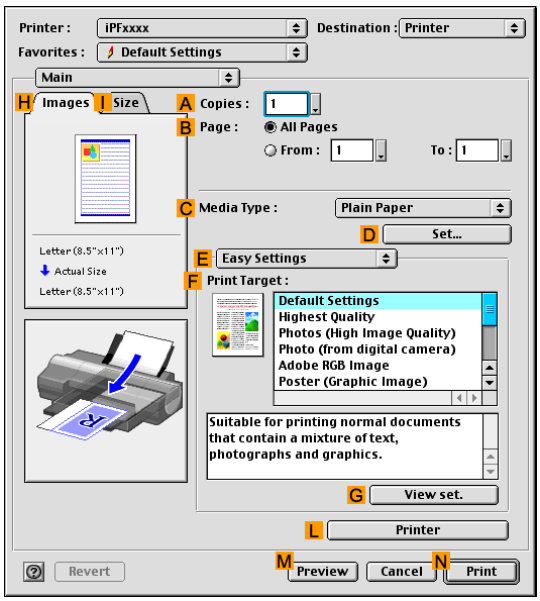
This topic describes how to print photos in monochrome based on the following example.

- Original: Photo image from a digital camera
- Page size: 10×12 inches
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.
In the C **Media Type** setting, choose the type of paper for printing, such as Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, and so on. Make sure the paper you select is loaded in the printer.

Note

- The paper type setting in the printer driver and related software (as well as on the Control Panel) is updated when you install the Media Configuration Tool from the User Software CD-ROM or if you change paper information by using the Media Configuration Tool. (See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).)

8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Photo (Monochrome)** in the F **Print Target** list.

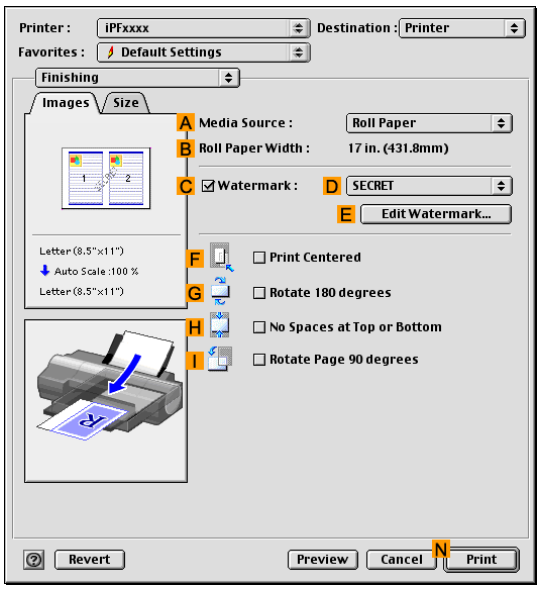
Caution

- **Photo (Monochrome)** may not be available for all types of paper.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

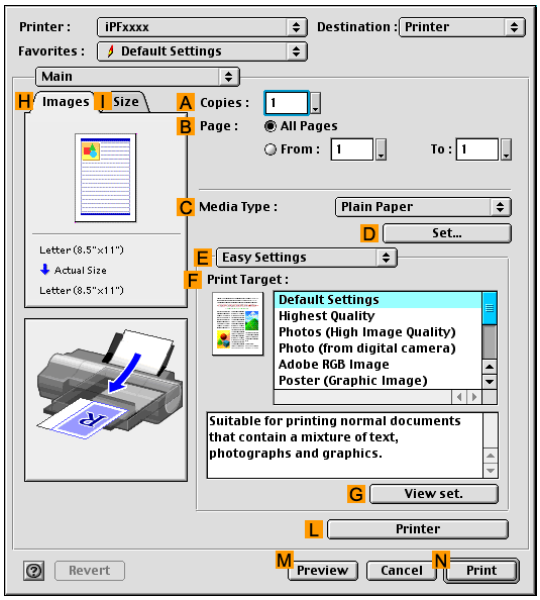


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing enlargements or reductions

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size

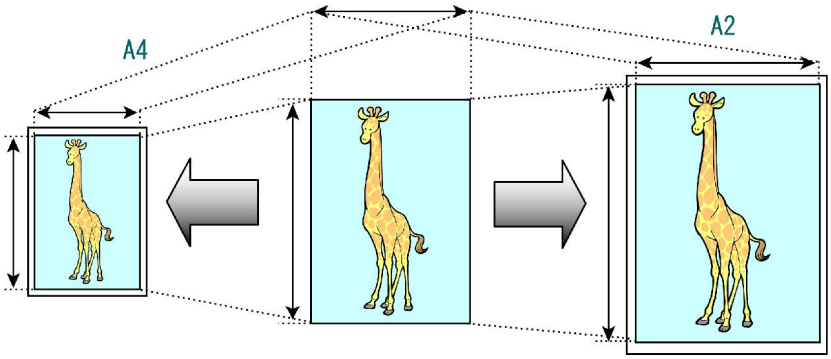
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.298)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.300)
- Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.302)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

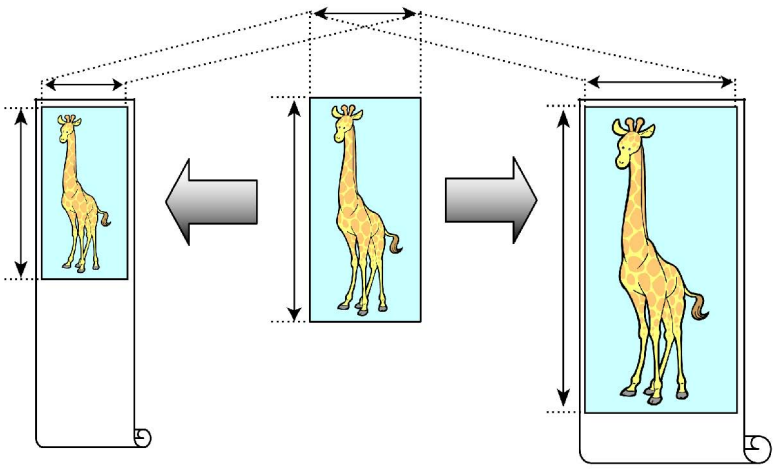
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width, as desired.



For instructions on resizing originals to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.290)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.292)
- Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) (→P.295)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value

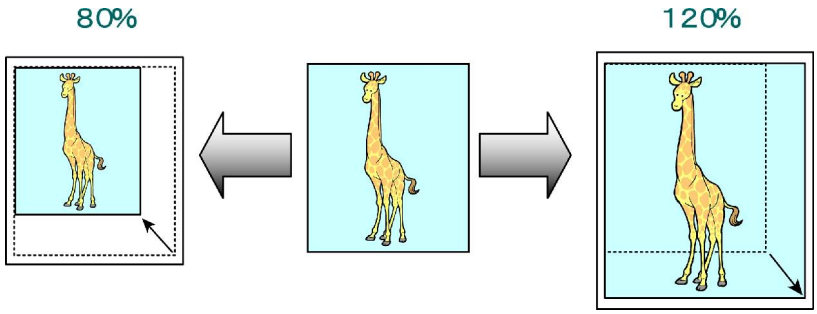
You can freely adjust the size of originals by enlarging or reducing them as desired.

Enlarged/Reduced Printing

Enlarge or reduce the original in the printer driver, as desired.

Scaling

Enlarge or reduce originals by a particular amount, as desired.



For instructions on entering a scaling value to resize originals, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) (→P.281)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) (→P.283)
- Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) (→P.286)

Note

- For better printing results when enlarging photos from a digital camera in TIFF or JPEG format, use an image-editing application software such as Adobe Photoshop to specify an image resolution of 150 dpi or more at actual size.

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
For instructions on printing enlargements of scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER, refer to the following topic.

- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.277)
- Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X) (→P.279)

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

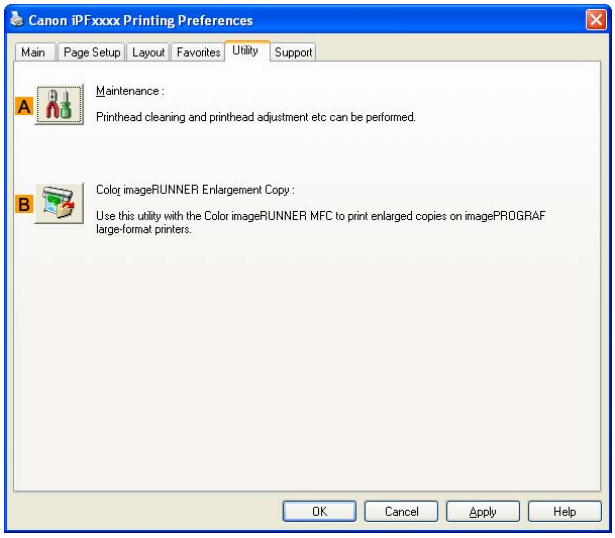
1. Register a hot folder on your computer
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.499)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically enlarged according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

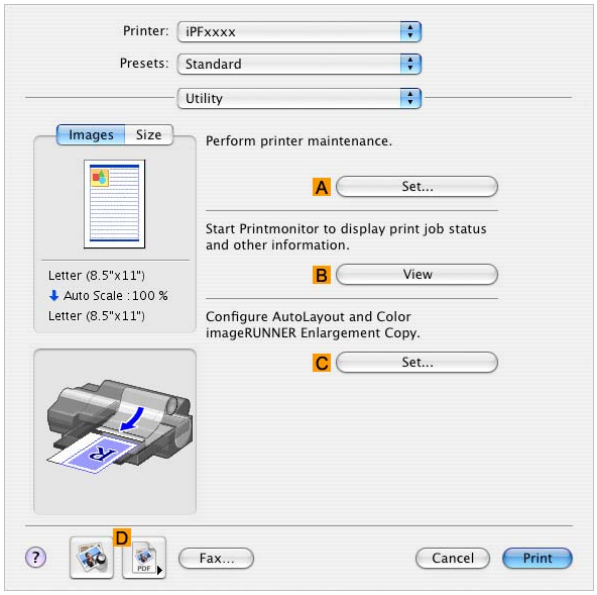
1. Register a hot folder on your computer.
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. To display the **GARO ExtraKit** dialog box, either double-click the **GARO ExtraKit** icon after navigating to **Applications** - **Canon Utilities** - **imagePROGRAF**, or click C **Set** on the **Utility** pane.



2. In **Enlarged Copy Settings**, click **Add** or **Edit** and either create or modify the hot folder.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the **GARO ExtraKit** utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning and sending settings to the **Favorites** button, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer.
For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows)

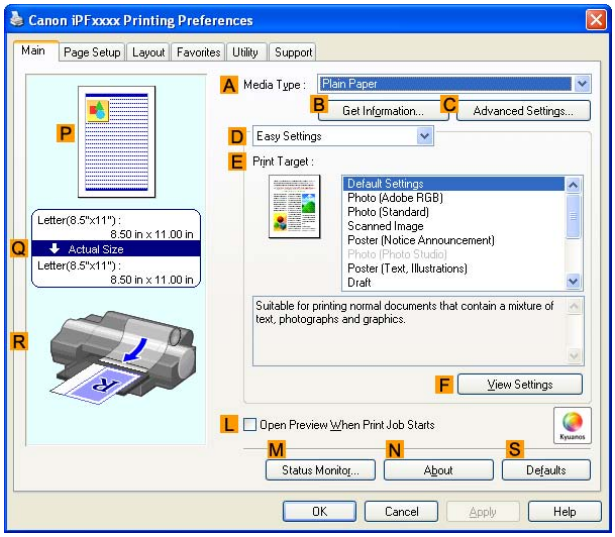
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paperr width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

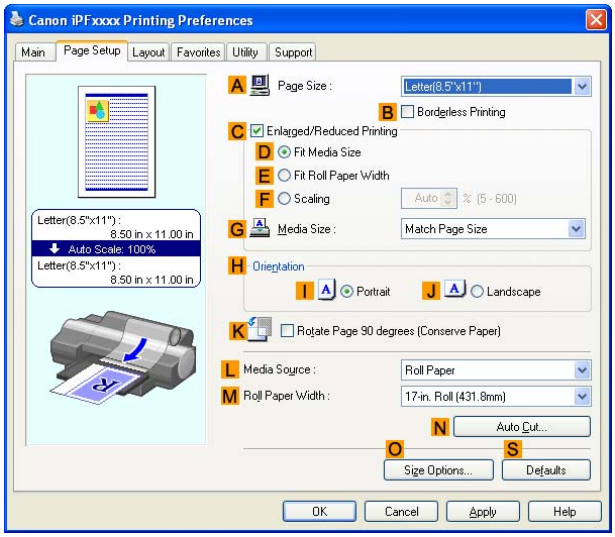
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



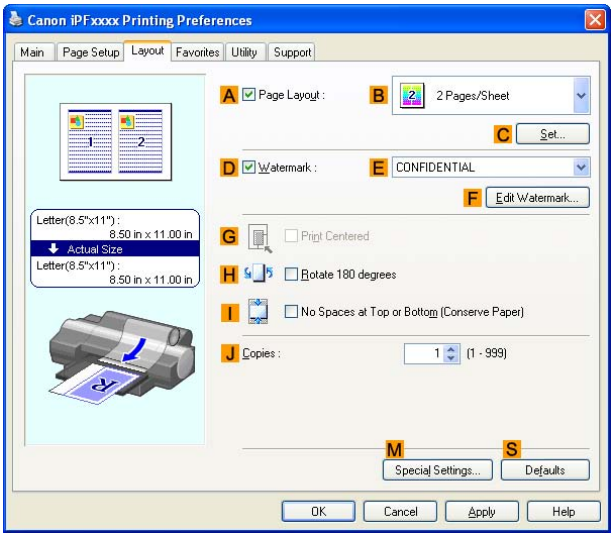
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
9. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
10. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **ISO A4** in the G **Media Size** list.
12. Click F **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting G **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet.



13. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X)

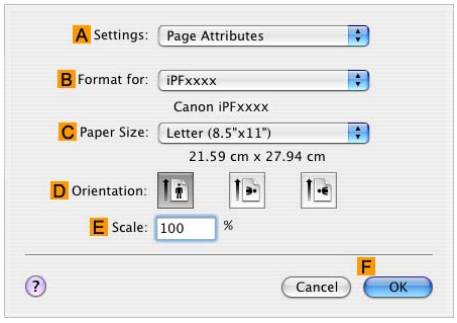
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

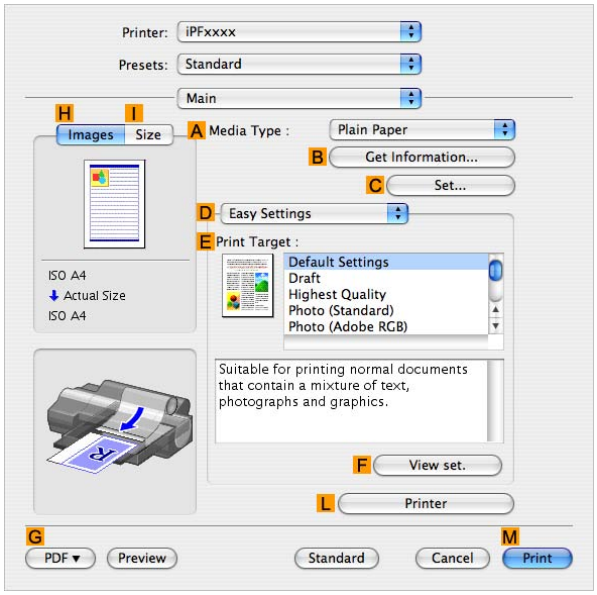
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

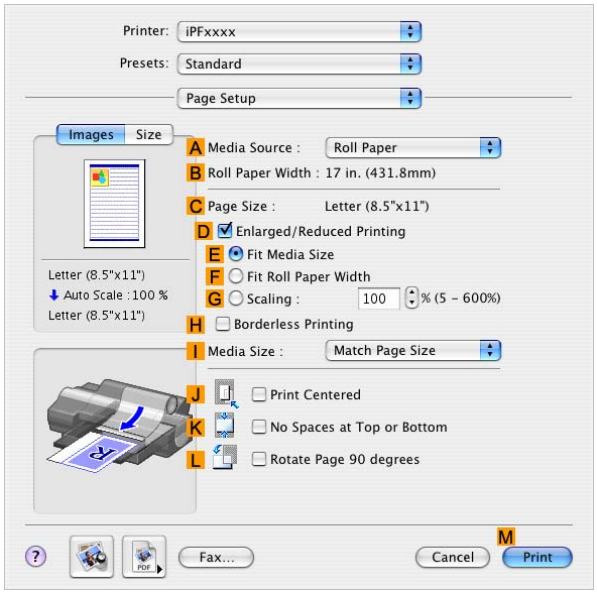
1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



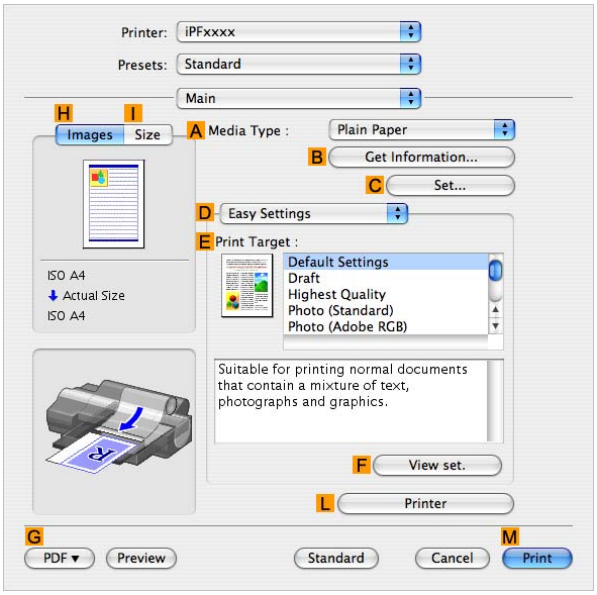
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



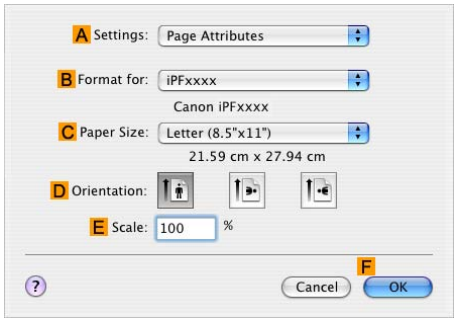
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

14. Click G **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting the J **Print Centered** check box.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9)

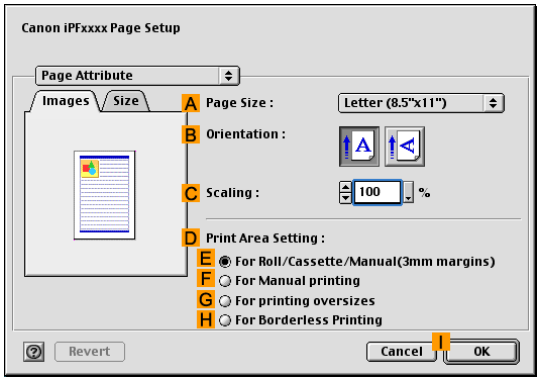
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing by entering a scaling value, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

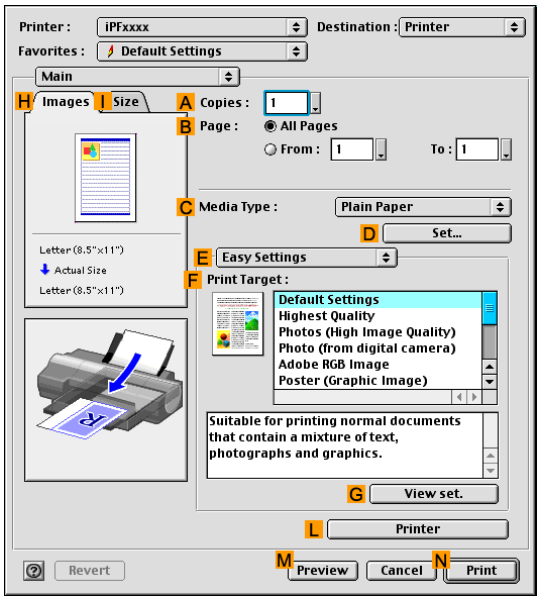
Important

- In borderless printing, you cannot resize originals by entering a scaling value.

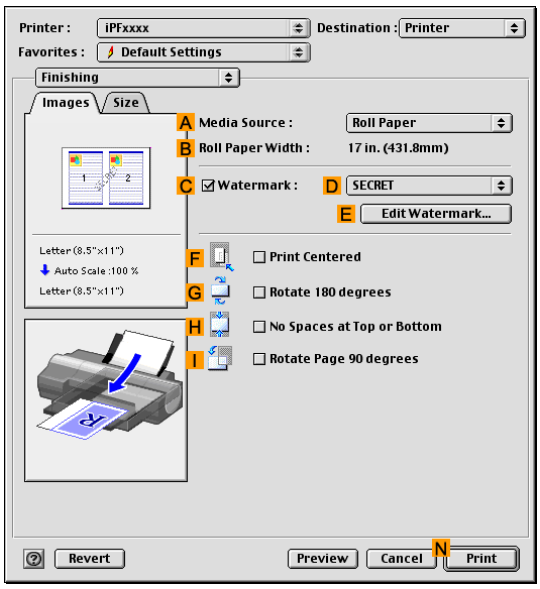
1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



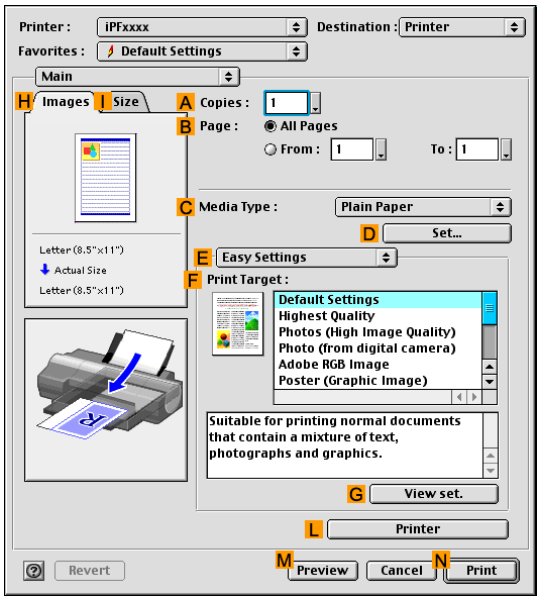
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



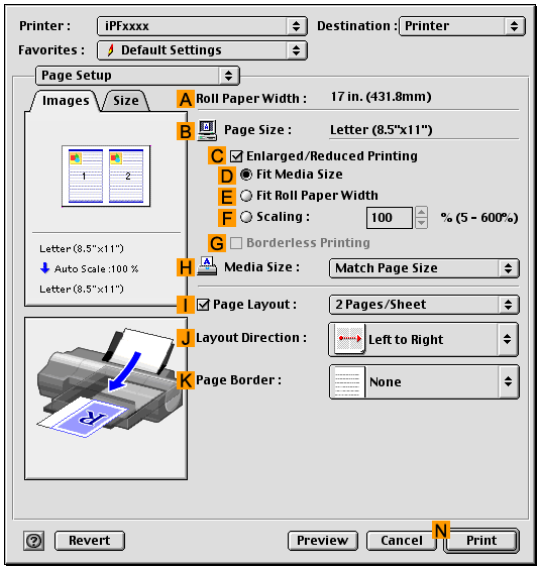
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

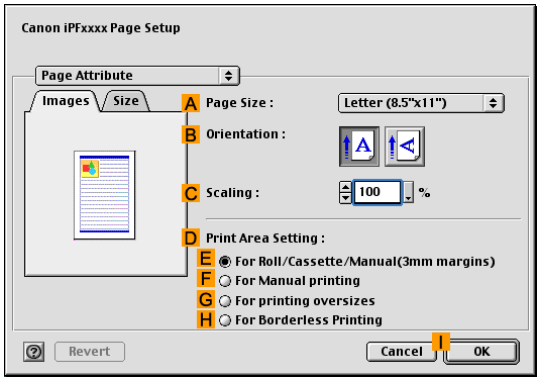
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.

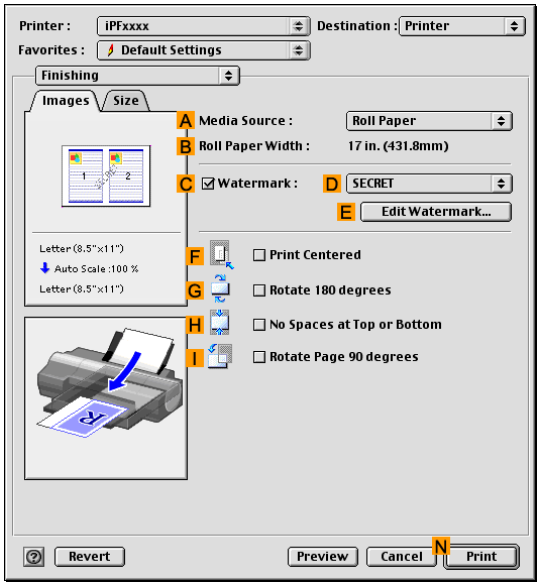


14. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Click F **Scaling** and enter “120.”

Note

- You can specify enlargement that exceeds the paper size, but in this case, the portion off the edge of the paper will not be printed.
- If the original size after enlargement or reduction is smaller than the paper size, the original is printed in the upper-left corner. In this case, you can center originals by selecting F **Print Centered** on the **Finishing** pane.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

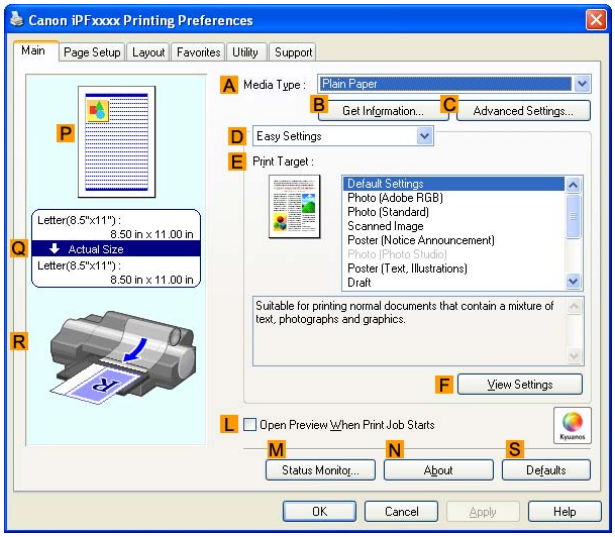
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

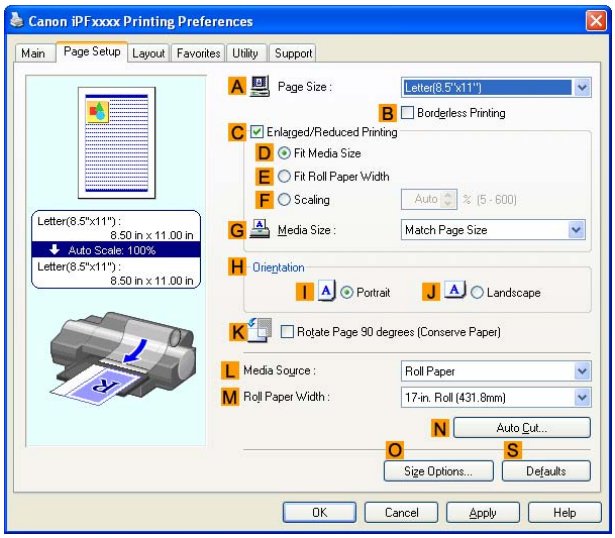
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



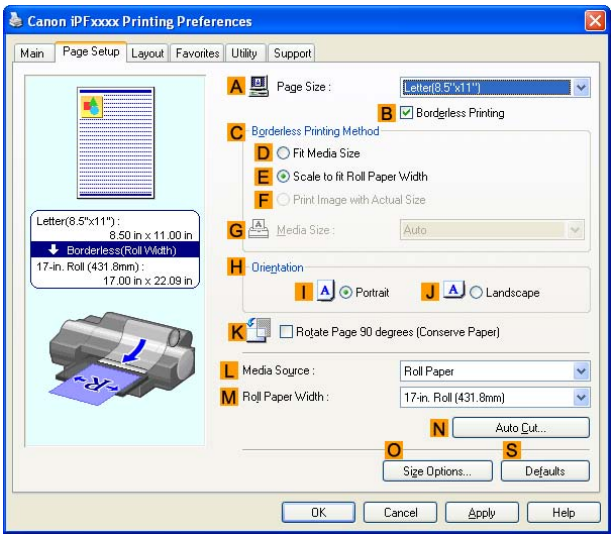
4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Roll Paper** in the **L Media Source** list.
8. In the **A Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the **B Borderless Printing** check box.



10. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.

Note

- After you click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list and click **OK**.
- Make sure the roll paper width you specify matches the width of the loaded roll.

11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

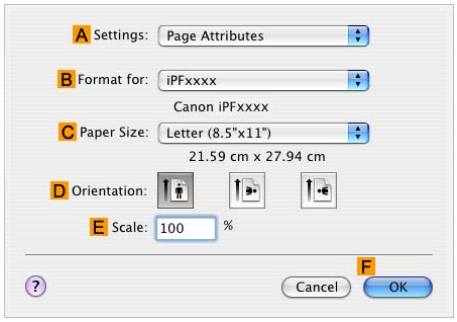
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

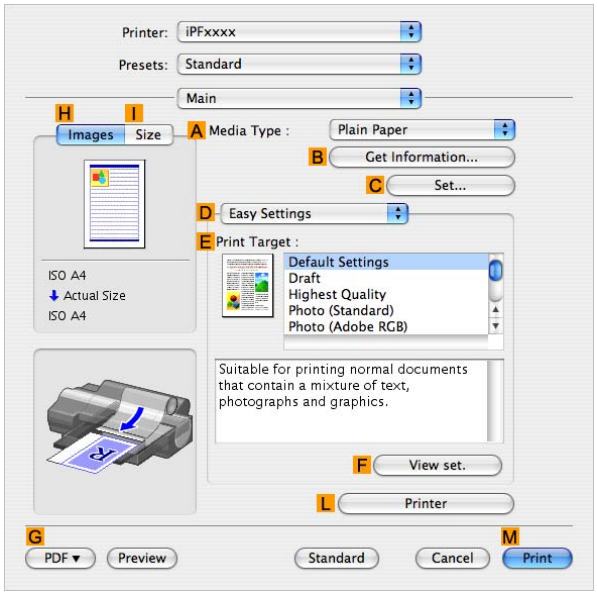
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

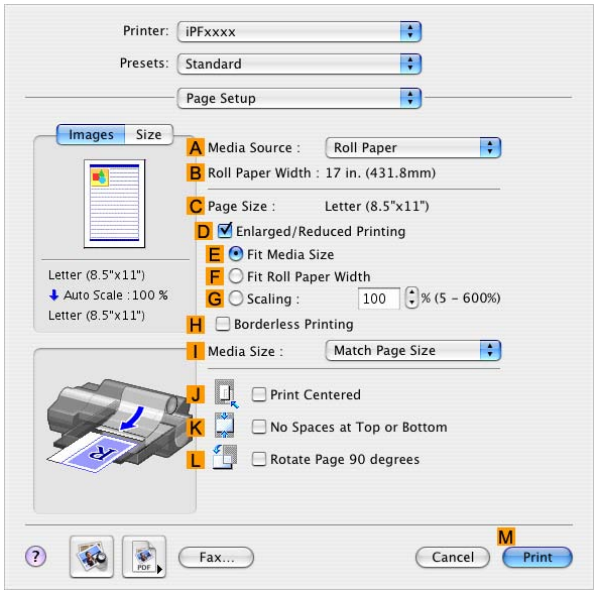
1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



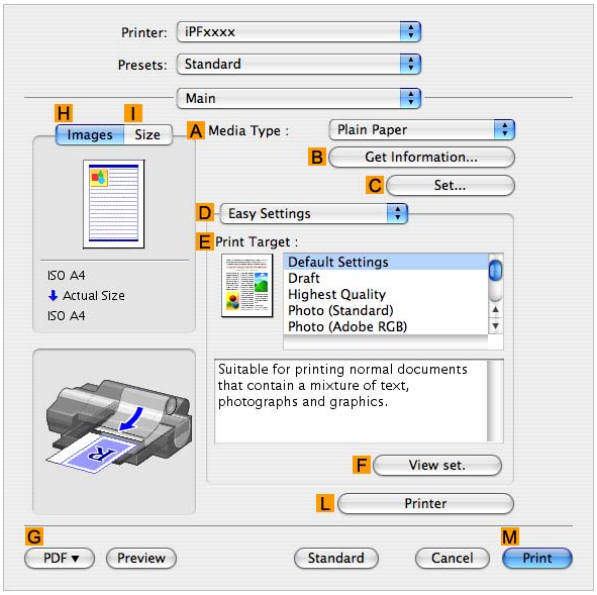
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



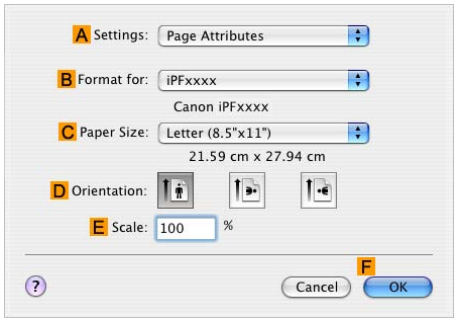
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

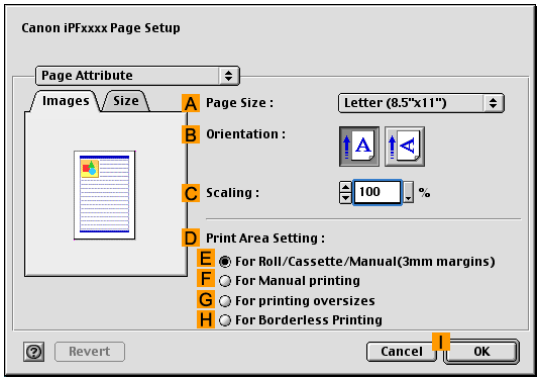
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

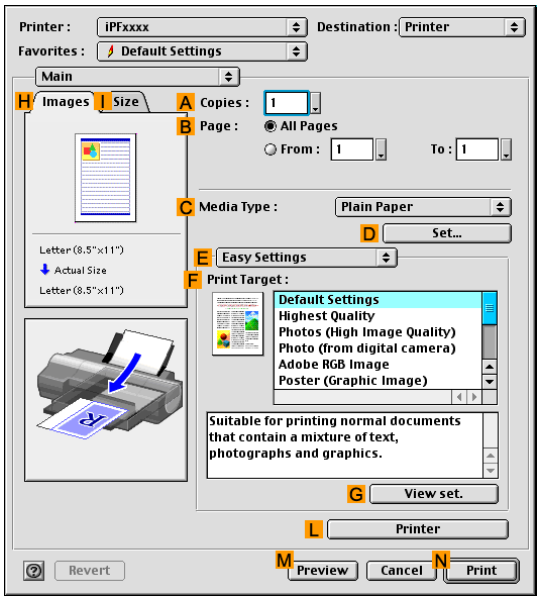
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll paper width, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

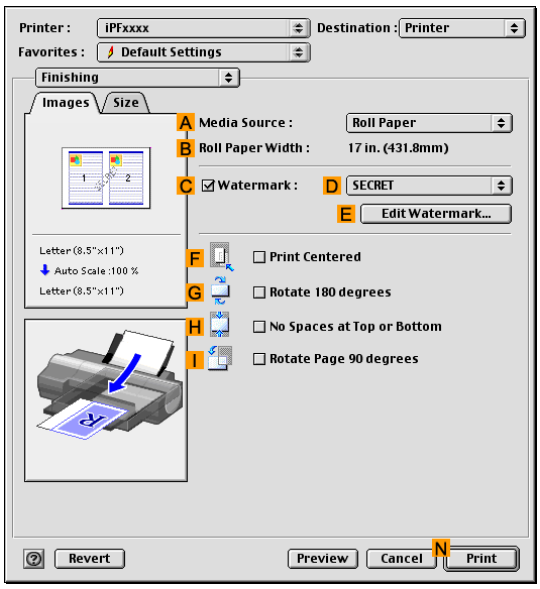
1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



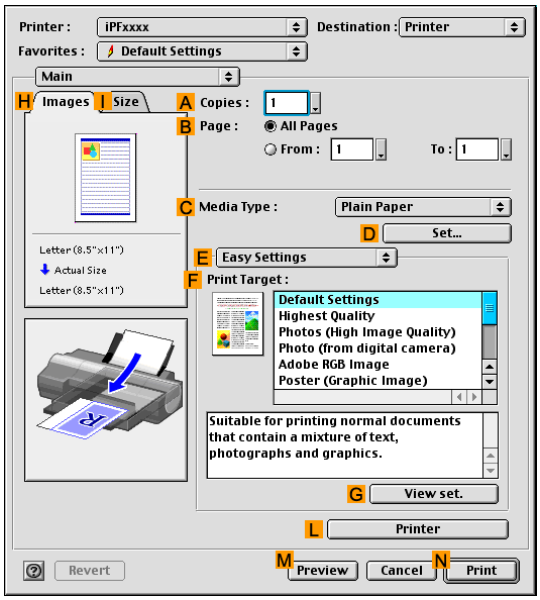
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



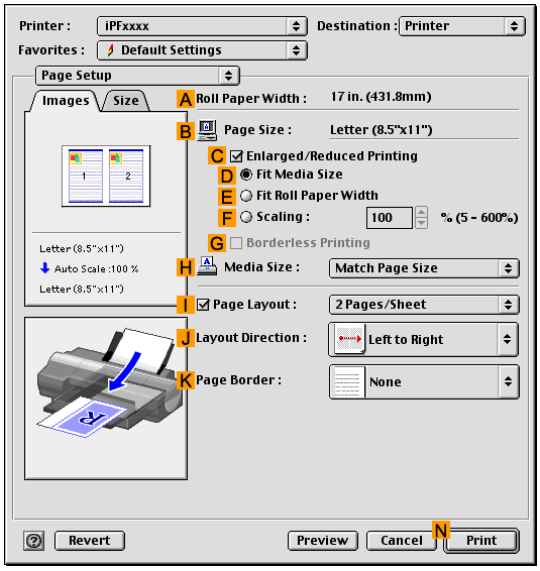
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

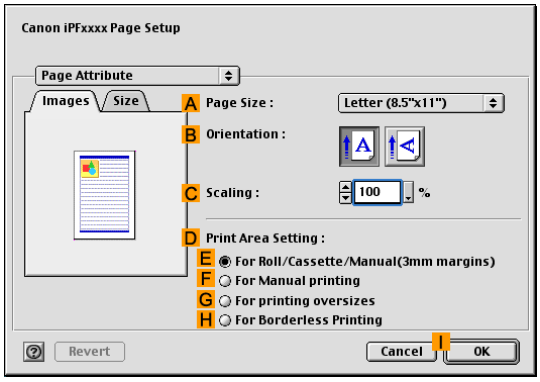
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



13. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the **C** **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

15. Click **E** **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

16. Confirm the print settings, and click **N** **Print** to start printing.

Note

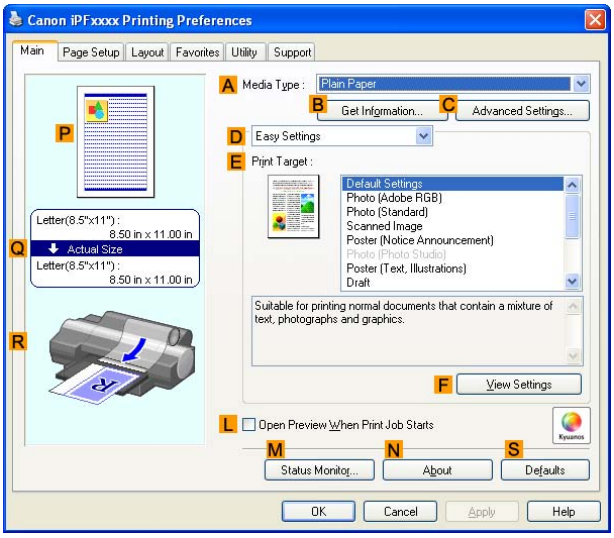
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

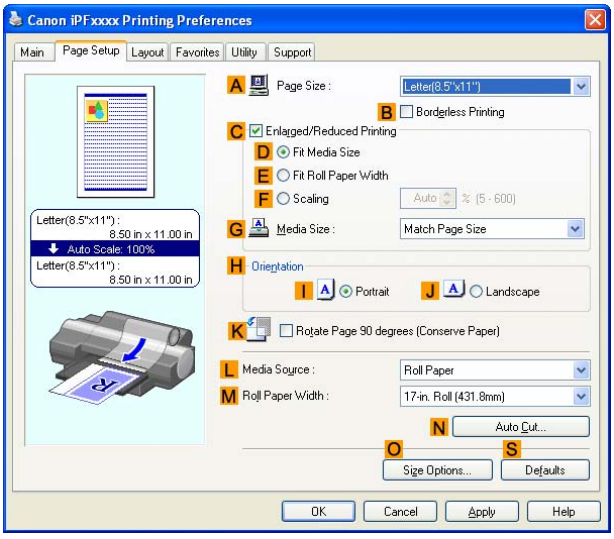
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm [10.1 × 14.3 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **JIS B4**.
9. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click D **Fit Media Size**.
11. Click **ISO A3** in the G **Media Size** list.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

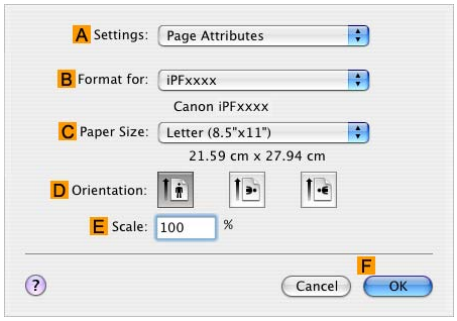
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

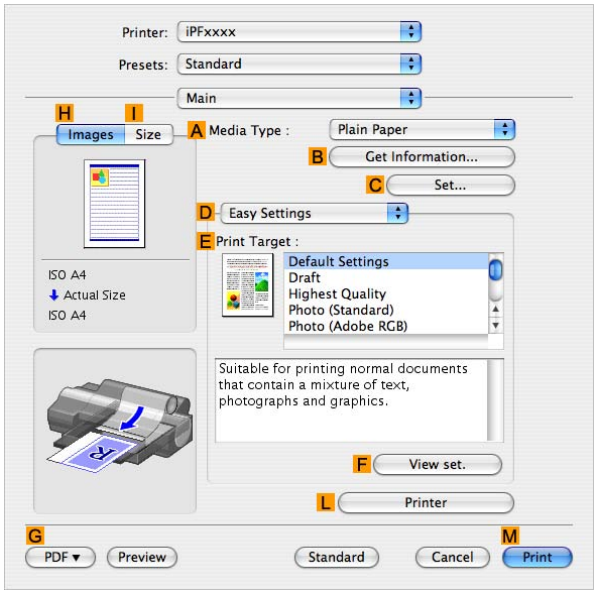
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm) [10.1 × 14.3 in]
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm) [11.7 × 16.5 in]

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

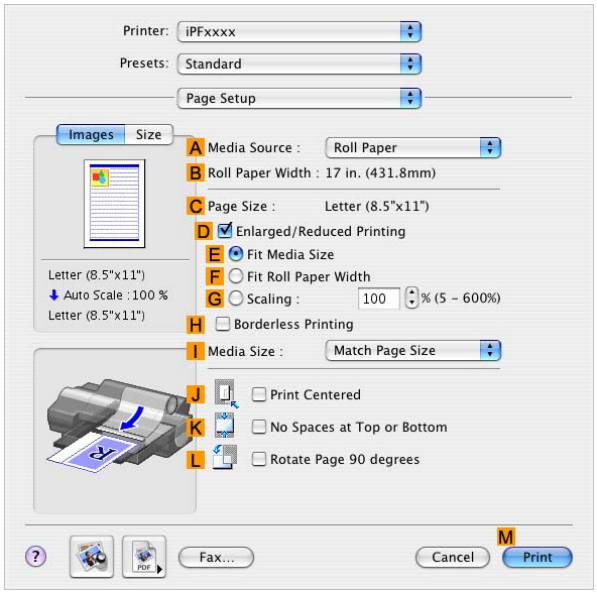


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **JIS B4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



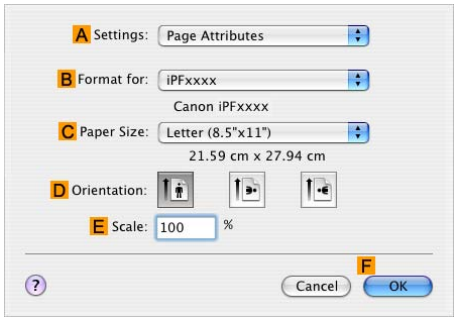
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **JIS B4**.



12. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

13. Make sure E **Fit Media Size** is selected.

14. Click **ISO A3** in the I **Media Size** list.

15. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

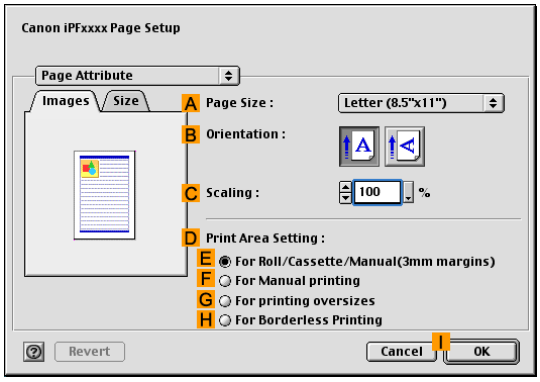
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

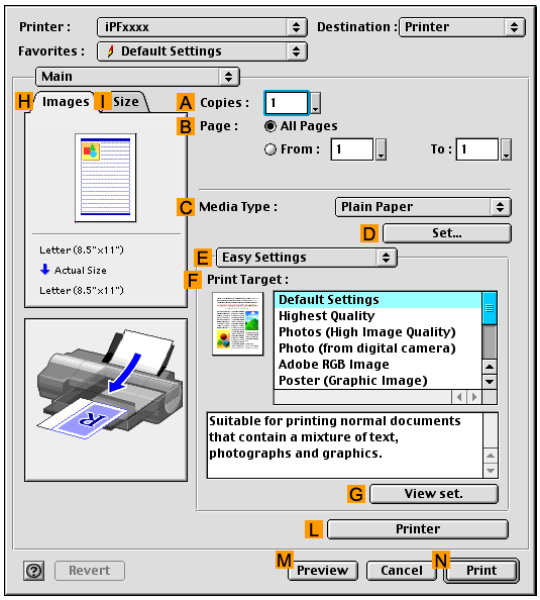
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: B4 (257.0×364.0 mm [10.1×14.3 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7×16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

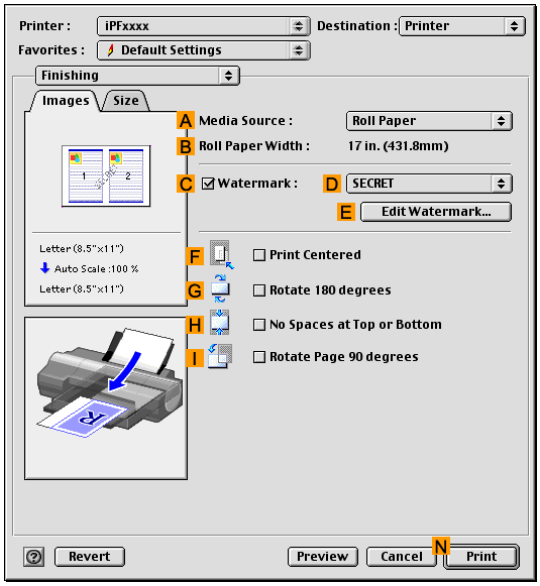


3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **JIS B4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



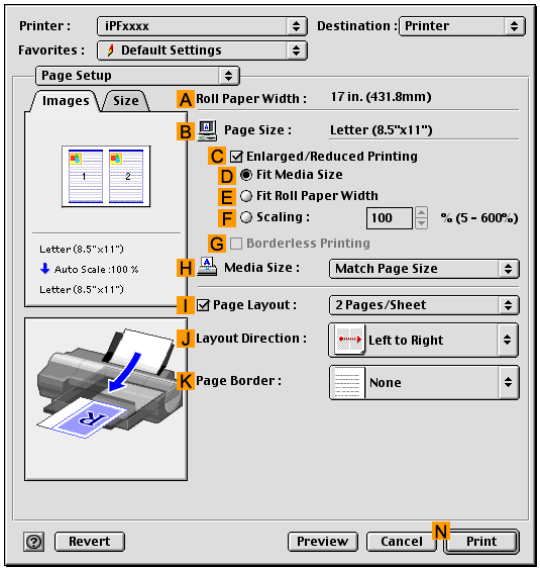
7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.

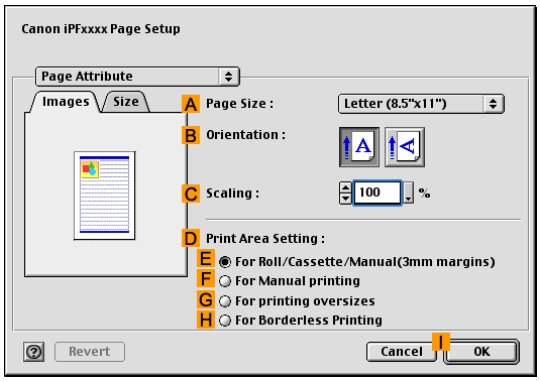


10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12. Make sure the B **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in A **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **JIS B4**.



13. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
14. Make sure D **Fit Media Size** is selected.
15. Click **ISO A4** in the H **Media Size** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing at full size

Printing on Oversized Paper

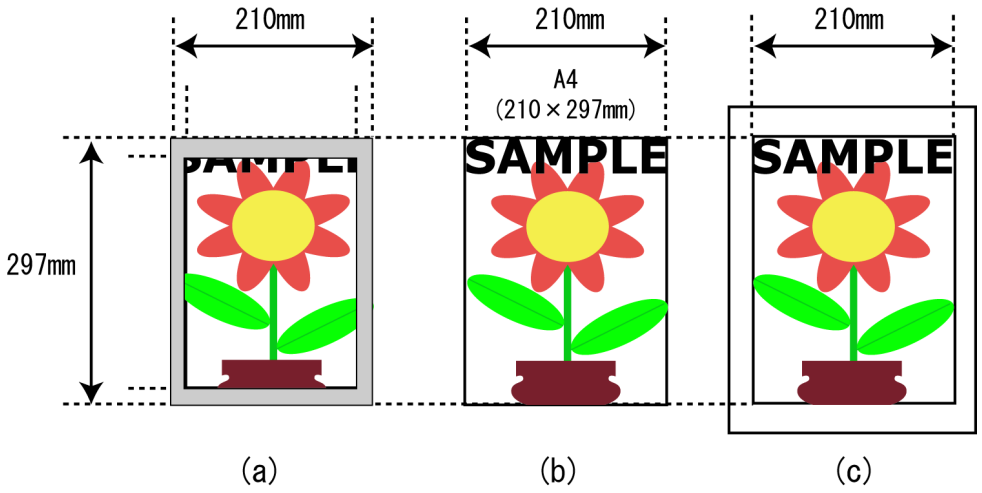
Except in borderless printing, the actual printing area corresponds to your selected paper size minus the space for a margin. (→P.78) To print documents or images you prepare without a margin at actual size, use an oversized paper size.
For example, to print a A4-sized original without a margin at A4 size, print it on paper larger than A4 size and cut away the excess margin.

Note

- If you prepare an original for printing without a margin and print it on paper of regular size, the image near the edge will not be printed.

Oversize

The margin required by the printer is added around the “outside” of a regular paper size. For example, when printing a A4-sized original (210×297 mm), you have the following options.



a. Regular paper size: Gray area not printed
b. Page Size
c. Oversized paper size: Print area matches the page size (b)

Important

- When printing on oversize paper, load paper larger than the page size-a size that includes the margin required by the printer.
  - Sheets: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 26 mm (1 in) higher than the page size
  - Rolls: Load paper that is at least 6 mm (0.24 in) wider and 6 mm (0.24 in) higher than the page size
- Paper larger than the maximum size supported by the printer cannot be used as paper for oversized printing. (→P.112)

Note

- Oversized printing (selecting **Oversize** in **Page Size**) is only available in Windows. For oversized printing on sheets, choose **Cut Sheet** as the media source.
- To perform oversized printing on a Macintosh computer, you must specify a non-standard page size and print on it.
- To specify a non-standard paper size in oversized printing, register the paper size as a **Custom Media Size**. Oversized printing is not available with “Custom Size.” (→P.359)

For instructions on oversized printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing at Full Size (Windows) (→P.318)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X) (→P.320)
- Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.323)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

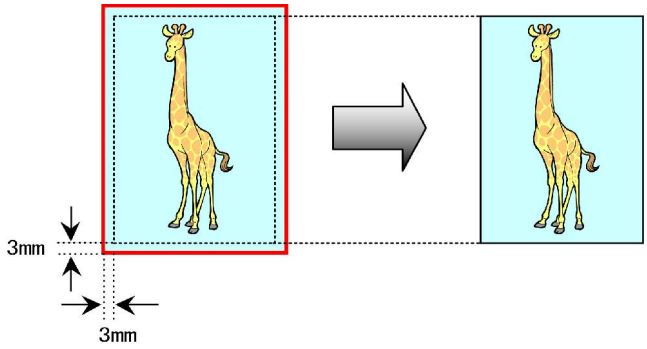
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.309)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.311)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.314)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

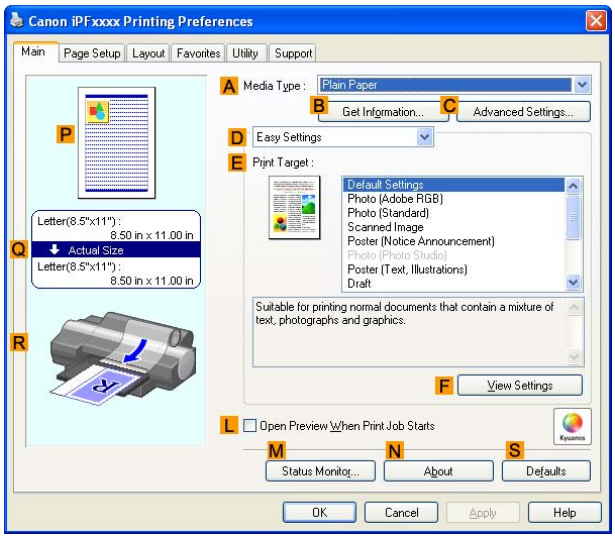
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

Note

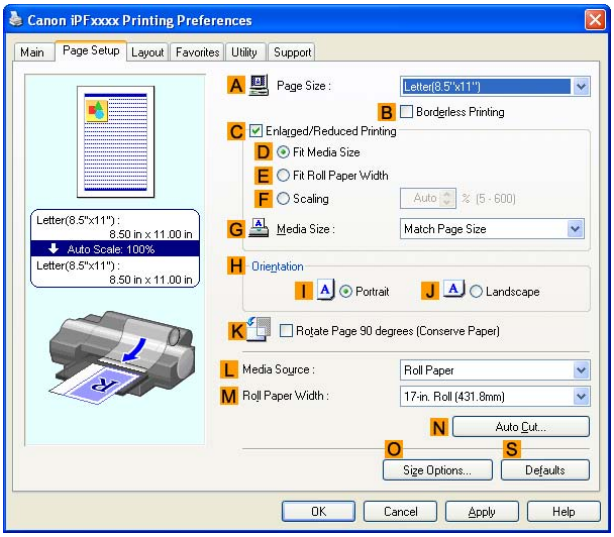
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

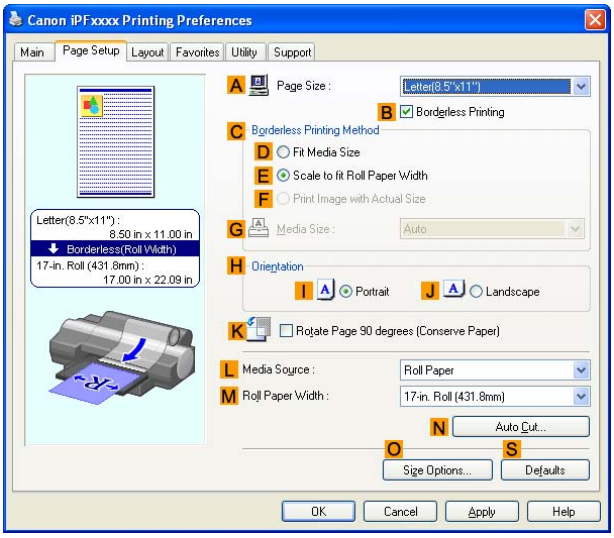


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

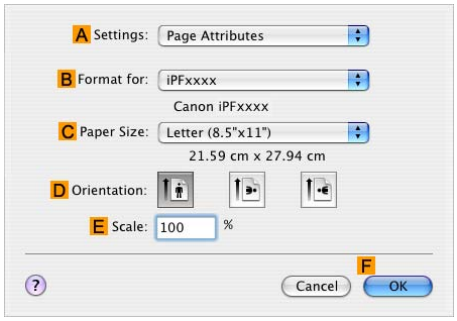
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
The platen may be soiled from borderless printing if you do not attach it.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

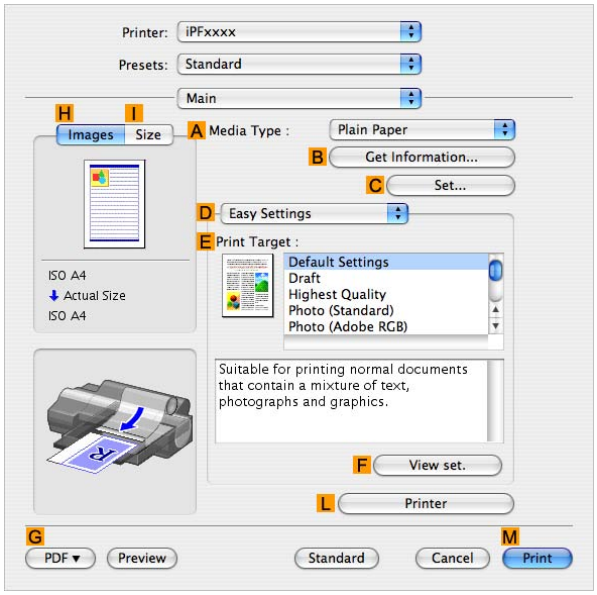


2. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
3. In the **C Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

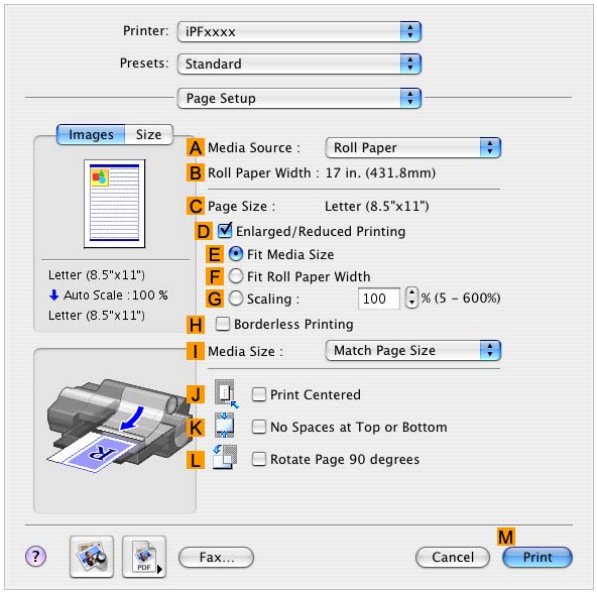
Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click **F OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



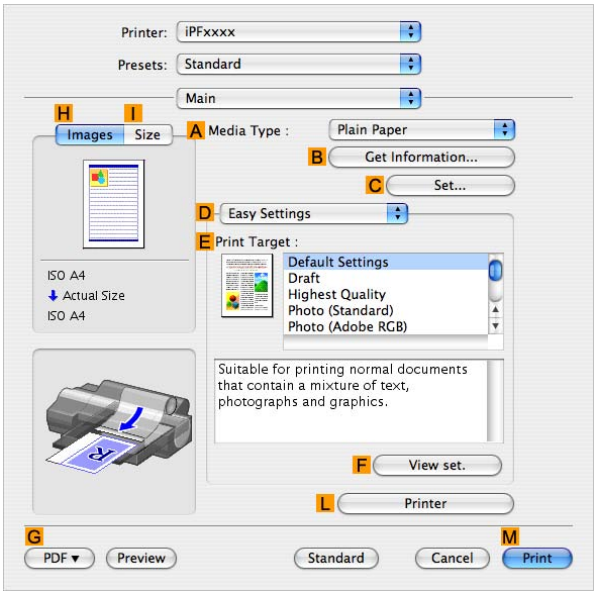
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



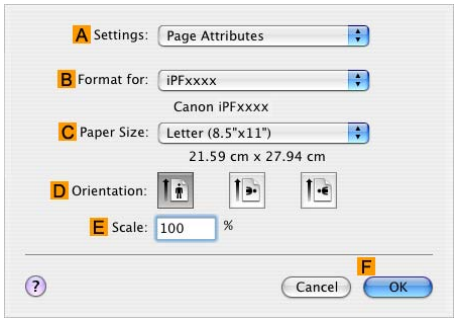
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

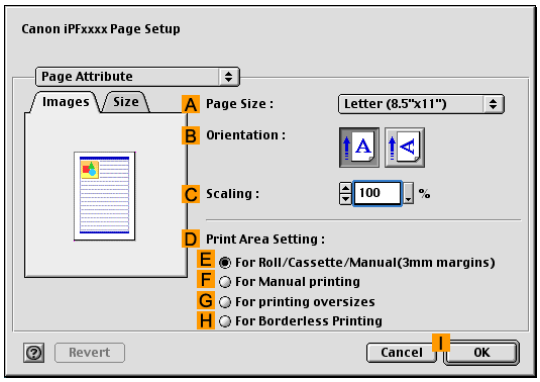
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



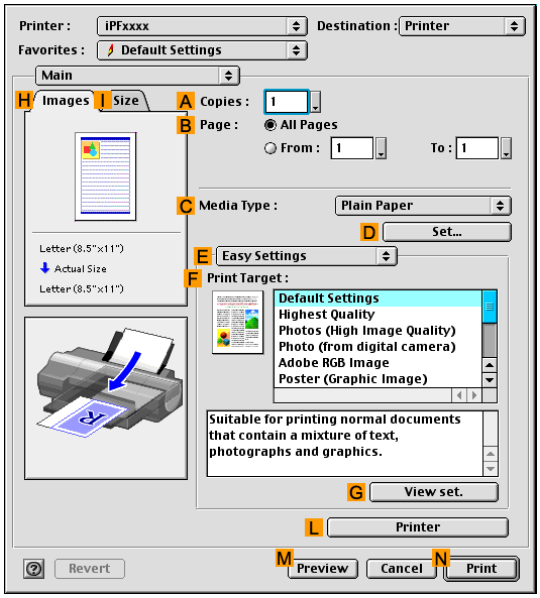
3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click H **For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

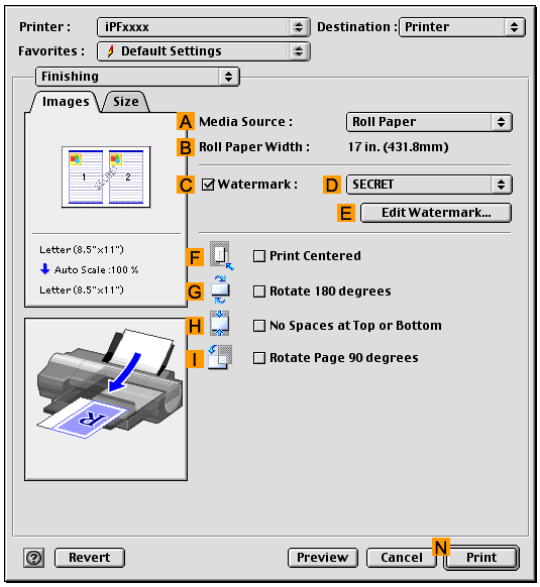
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
10. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



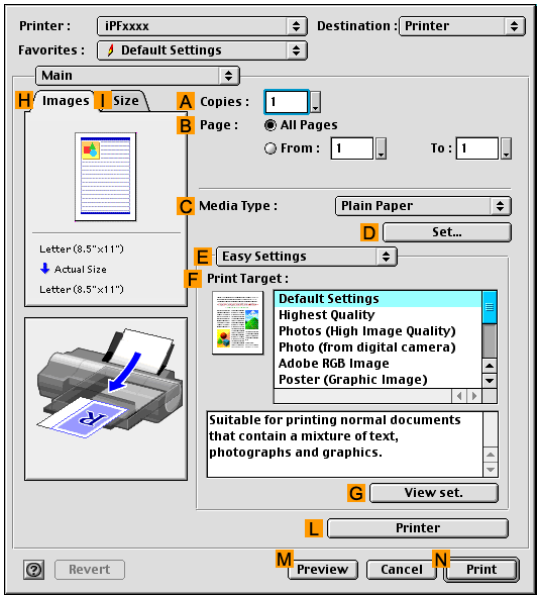
12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

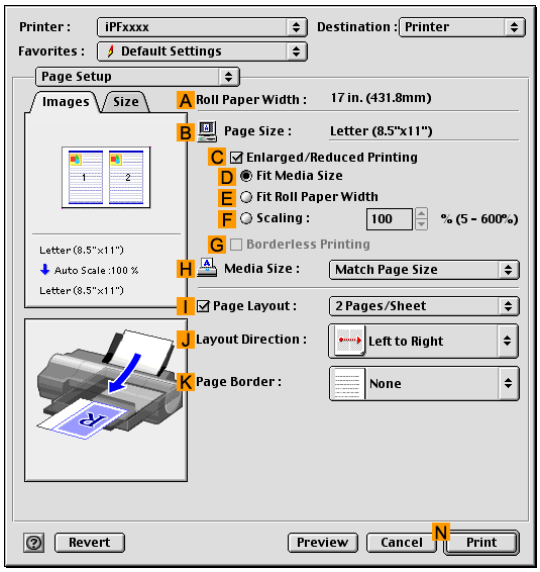
Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

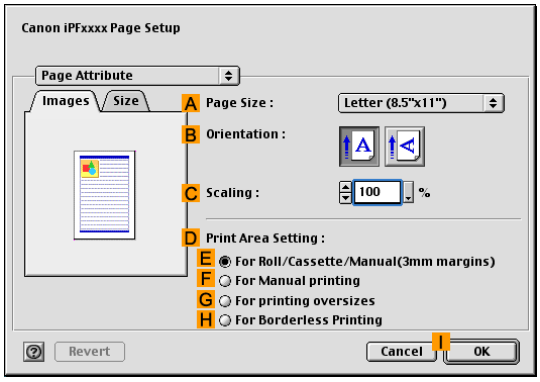
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the B **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in A **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

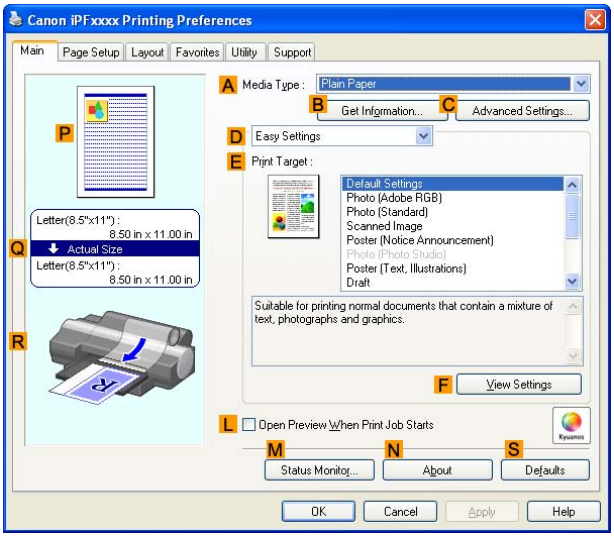
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing at Full Size (Windows)

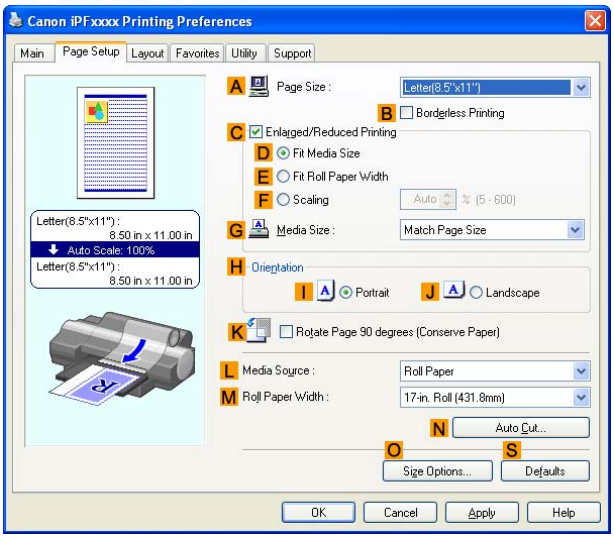
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any Type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
7. In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, select the **Oversize** check box in **Display Series**.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
9. Click **Oversize - ISO A4** in the A **Page Size** list.
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 Roll (420.0mm)**.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Note

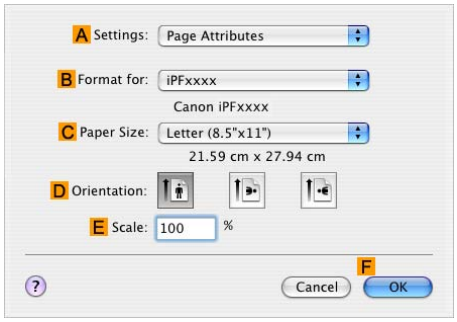
- You can select **Oversize** in **Display Series** to make all oversized versions of paper in the selected **Display Series** available for printing. These sizes are displayed in the **Page Size** list in the format **Oversize - xxxxxx**.

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

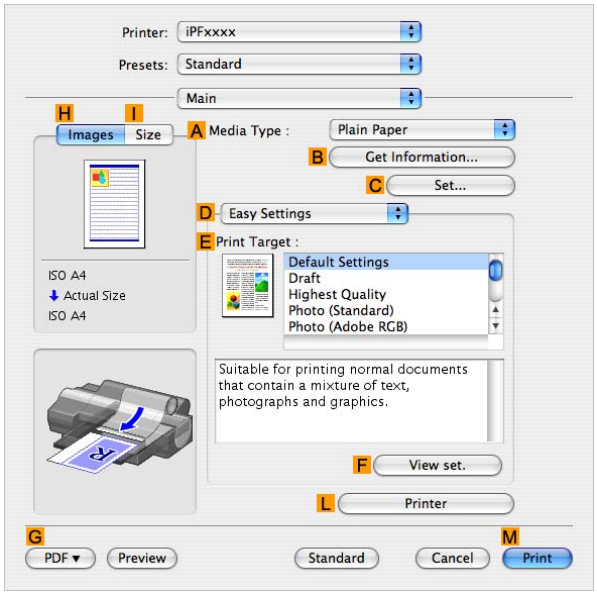


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4 - Oversize**.

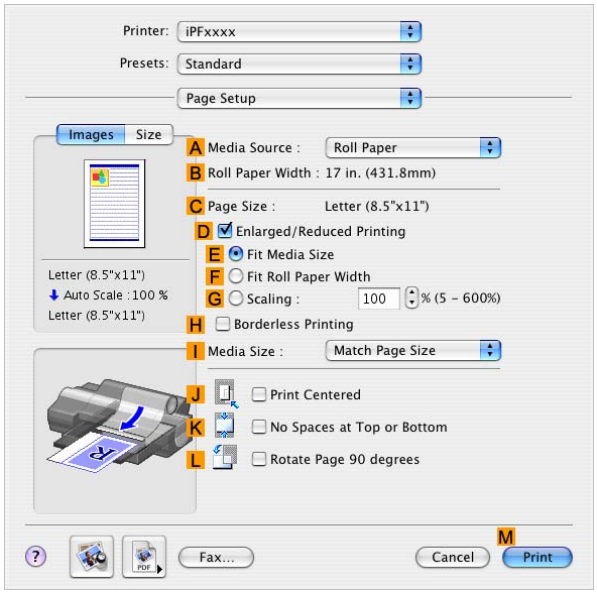
Note

- For oversized printing, choose paper identified by the regular paper name followed by "- Oversize."

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



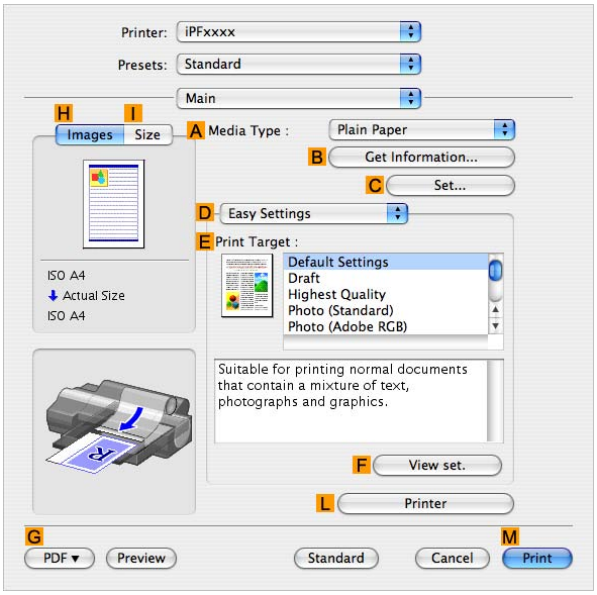
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



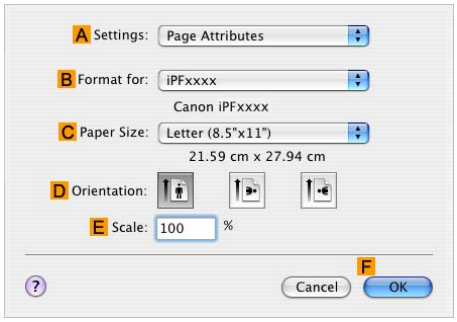
10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4 - Oversize**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

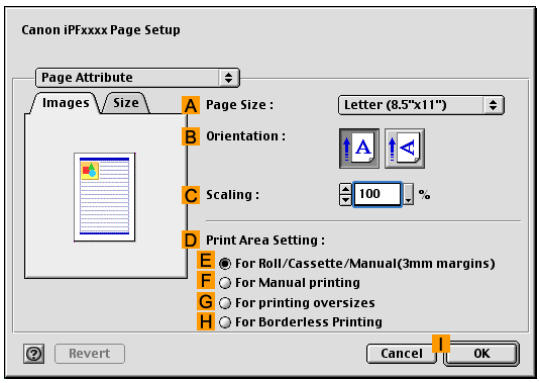
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9)

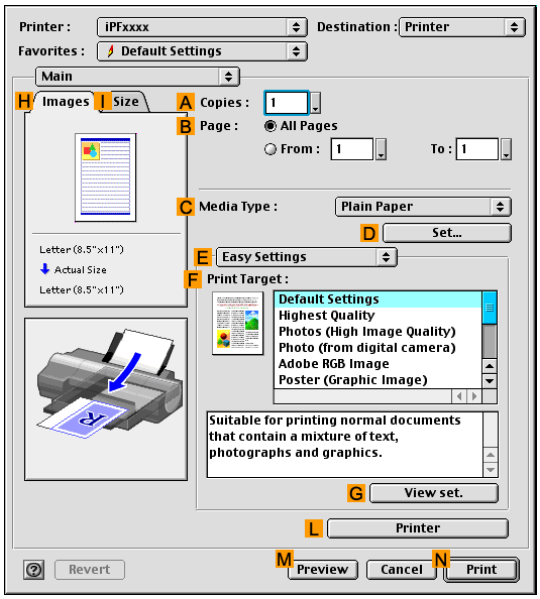
This topic describes how to print at full size based on the following example. (Oversized Printing)

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A2/A3 roll (420.0 mm [16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

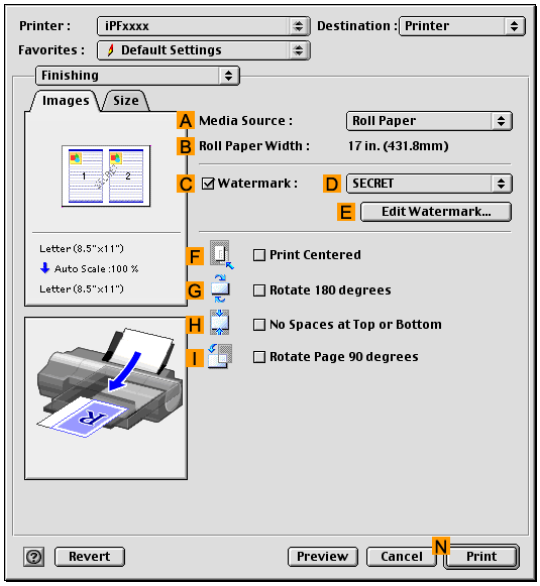


3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click G **For printing oversizes**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

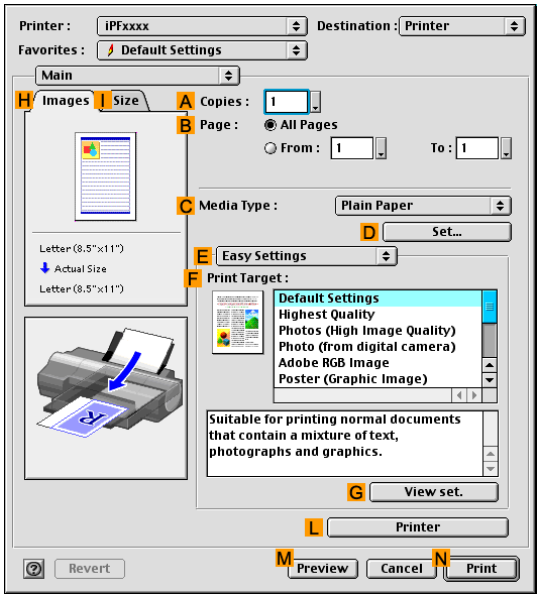


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A2/A3 (420.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Borderless Printing

Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

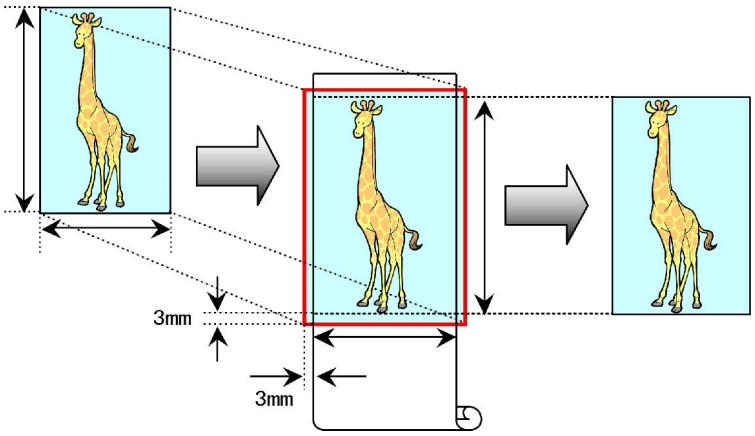
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Fit Media Size

Enlarge or reduce the original to match the size of the paper you are using.



Note

- The printer driver automatically enlarges originals 3 mm (0.12 in) past the dimensions of the paper on each side. The 3 mm portion beyond the edge on each side is not printed.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the paper size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) (→P.349)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) (→P.351)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.354)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

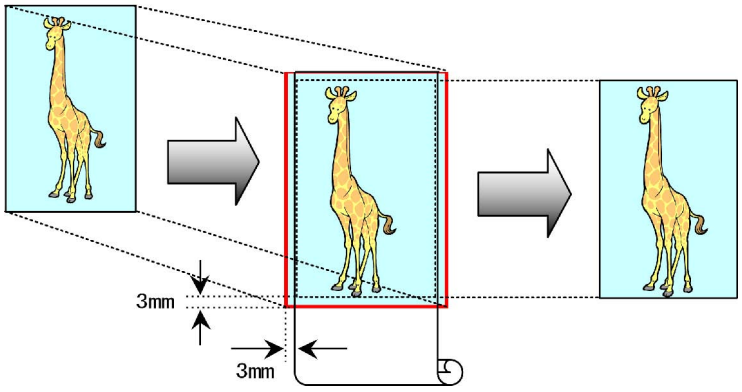
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Scale to fit Roll Paper Width

Enlarge or reduce the original as a whole to match the roll paper width.



Note

- You can combine this function with rotating pages 90 degrees before printing so that the original width (relative to portrait orientation) matches the roll paper width in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos, images, and other documents to match the roll paper width, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) (→P.340)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) (→P.342)
- Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) (→P.345)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size

Take advantage of borderless printing to print documents such as posters (made up mainly of photos or images) without a surrounding margin, or border.

Borderless Printing

In regular printing, a margin required by the printer is added around the original. With borderless printing, you can print documents without the margin, so that the printed image covers the entire surface of the paper.

Important

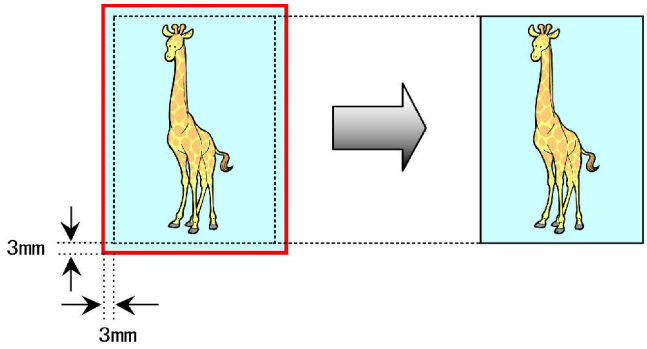
- Borderless printing is only available with rolls.
- Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)
- If you use an A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
  If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.
- Paper incompatible with the printer's auto cut function can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only.
- These features cannot be used in combination with borderless printing: special page layouts, centering originals, and printing cut lines on rolls.
- You cannot have pages rotated 90 degrees to conserve paper if you have set up borderless printing at actual size or in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size.
- When borderless printing is used, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may be uneven at the edges. If you require higher image quality, specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. After ejecting and cutting the printed document, use scissors to cut away the top and bottom edges.
- By factory default, the ink drying time is disabled for all paper. When you are using paper that takes longer for ink to adhere for borderless printing and the Cutter Unit touches printing surfaces that are not dry yet, it may damage the paper or the edge of the document that is cut, depending on frequency of use. In this case, follow these steps to change the ink drying time.
  1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type**.
  2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time**.

Borderless Printing Method

Choose the method of borderless printing that suits the original, as desired.

Print Image with Actual Size

Prints originals at actual size, without enlarging or reducing them. Originals must be prepared in a size that exceeds the dimensions of the paper by 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side.



Note

- Not all page sizes are available.
- Even if you prepare originals of the same size as the paper size, the originals are automatically enlarged when you print borderlessly in combination with resizing originals to match the paper size. This may affect image quality. When image quality is most important, make the original 3 mm longer on each side than the paper size so that the image can be printed at actual size in borderless printing.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows) (→P.309)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X) (→P.311)
- Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9) (→P.314)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

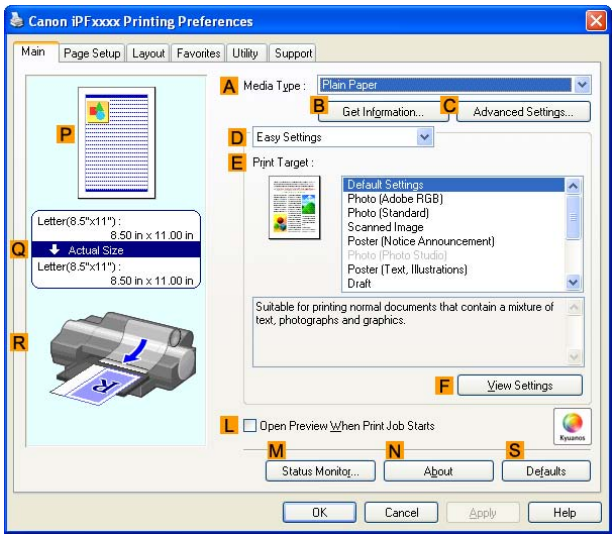
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Create the original in the source application 3 mm (0.12 in) larger on each side than 254.0×304.8 mm (10 × 12 in) -that is, 260.0×310.8 mm (10.2 × 12.2 in)

Note

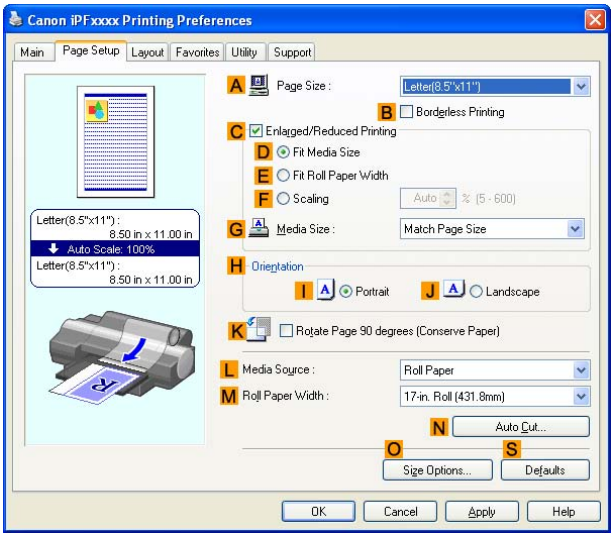
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.
- The extra 3 mm (0.12 in) on each side will not be printed. Create the original so that it fits inside the paper area to be printed on.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

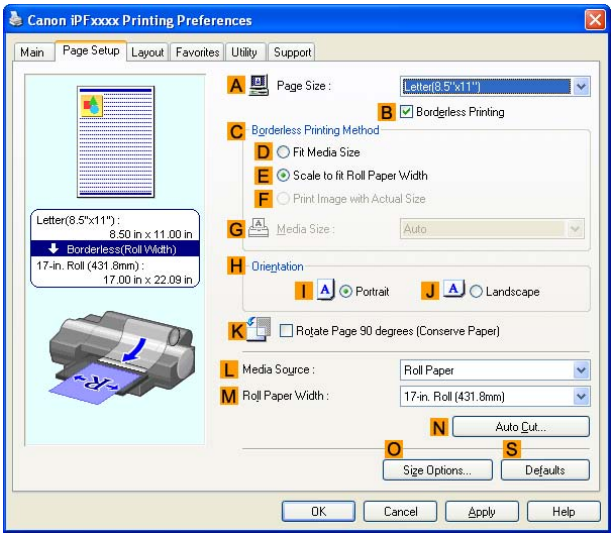


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click F **Print Image with Actual Size**.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

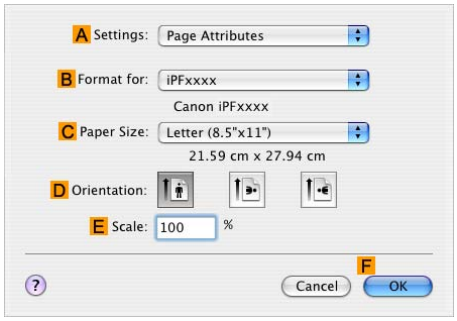
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
The platen may be soiled from borderless printing if you do not attach it.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

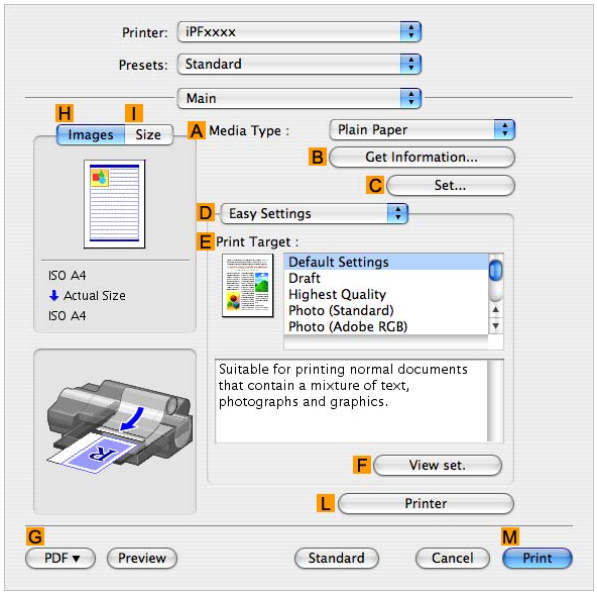


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

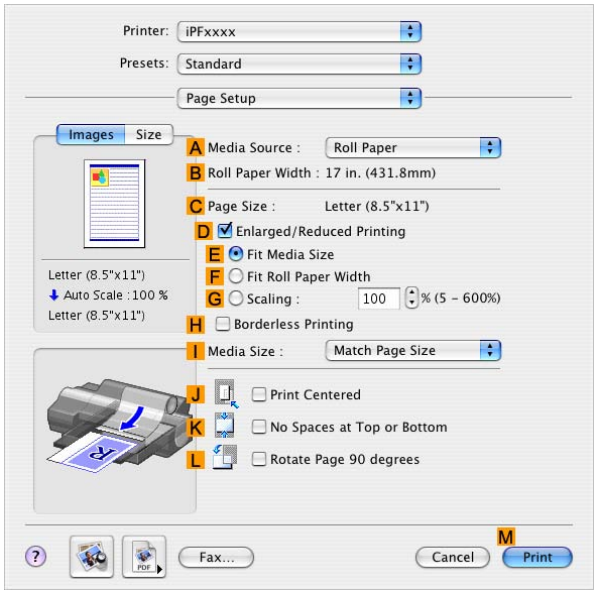
Note

- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



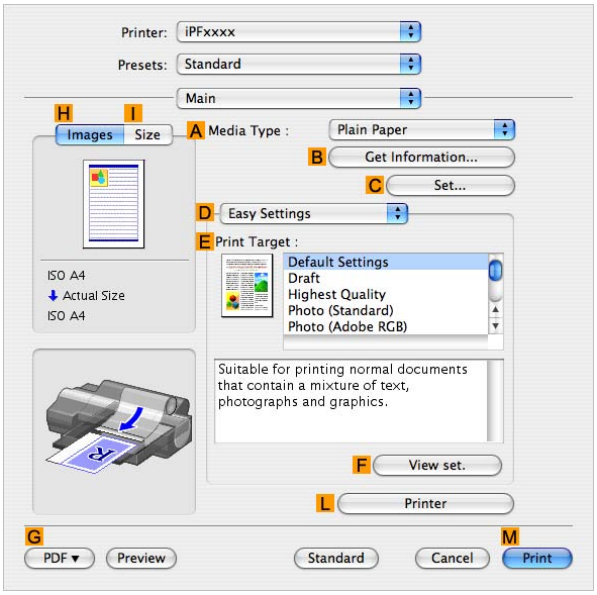
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



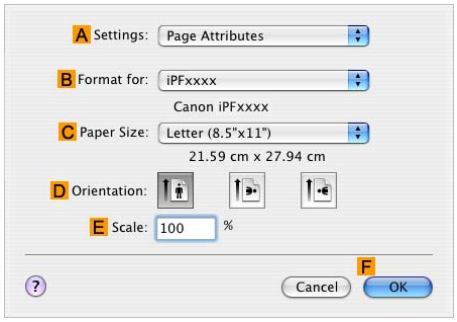
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.
    Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12" - Borderless**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

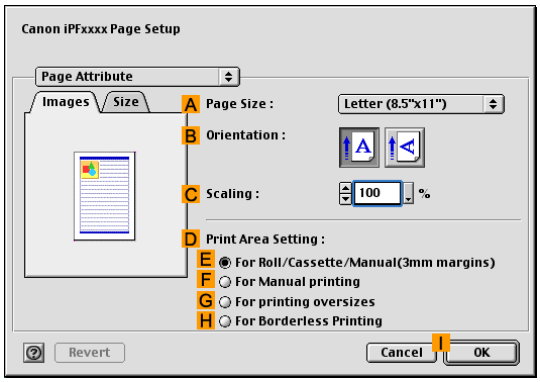
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print borderlessly at actual size based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10 × 12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)-Borderless
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



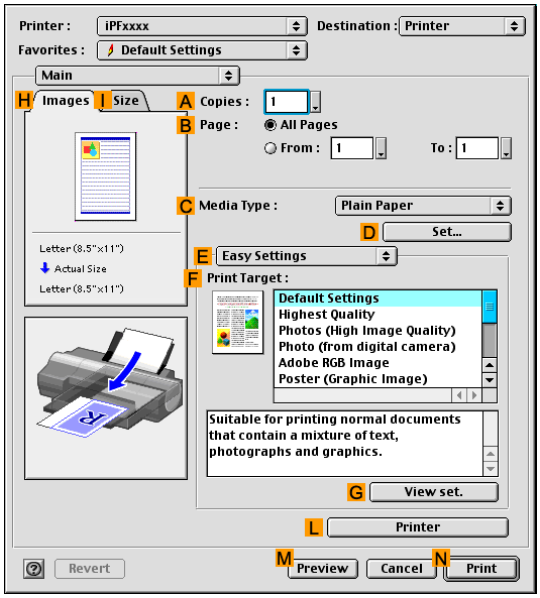
3. In D **Print Area Setting**, click H **For Broderless Printing**.
4. In the A **Page Size** list, choose a paper size supported for borderless printing. Here, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.

Note

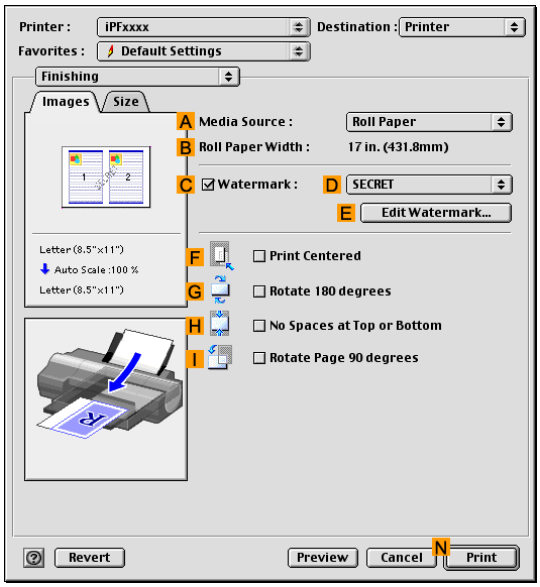
- Paper sizes supported for borderless printing are indicated by “-Borderless.”

5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
7. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

8. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
10. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



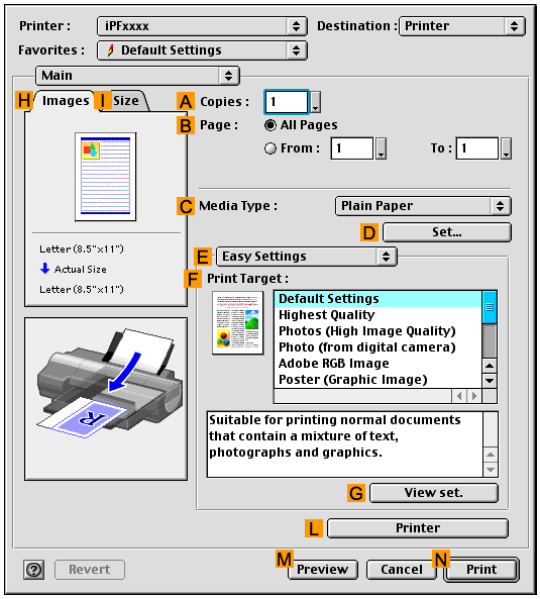
12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

13. Confirm that the roll paper width matches the paper size.

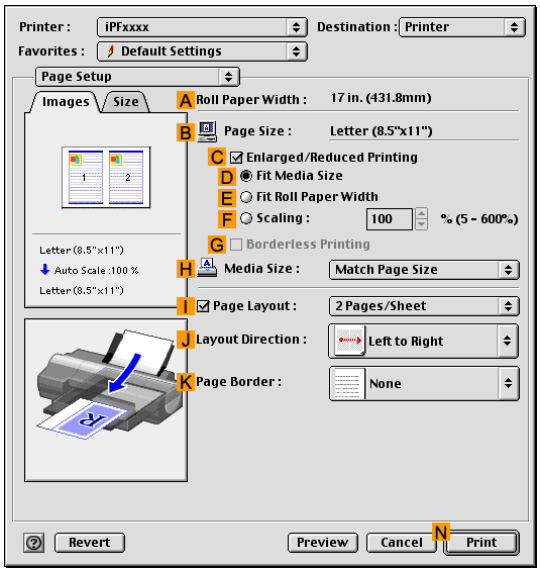
Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

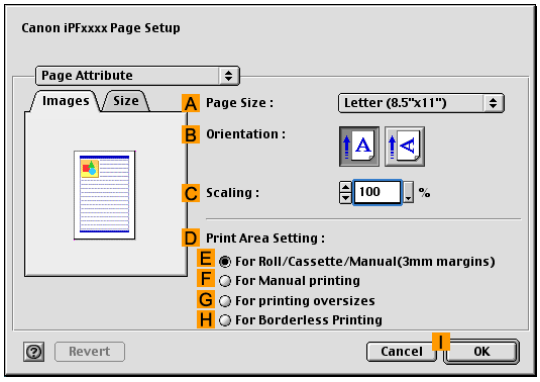
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



15. Make sure the B **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in A **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



16. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.
If you use n A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

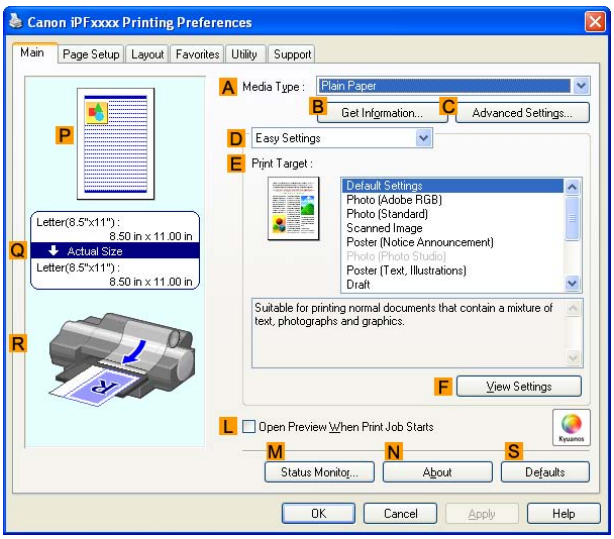
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

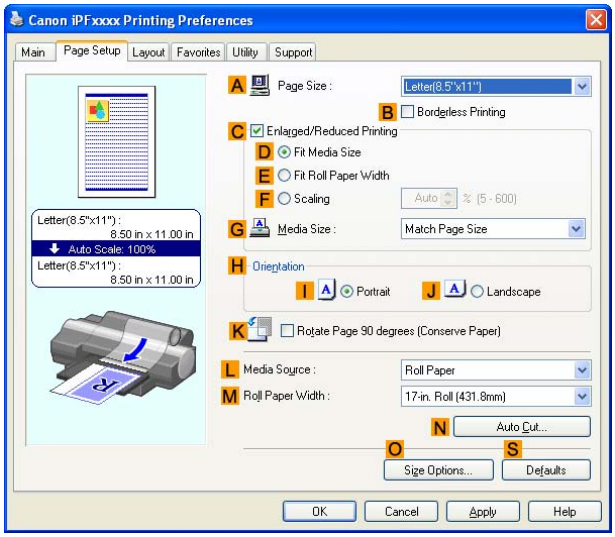
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

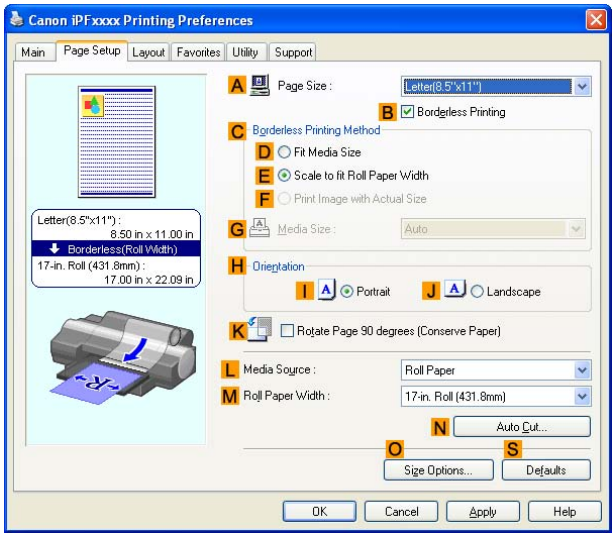


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, make sure E **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** is selected.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

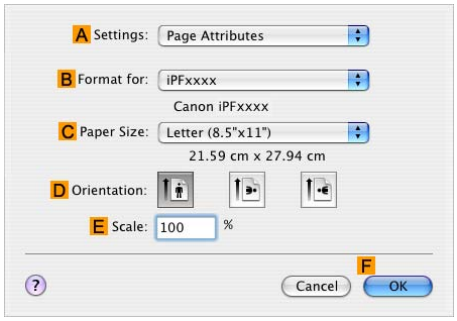
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

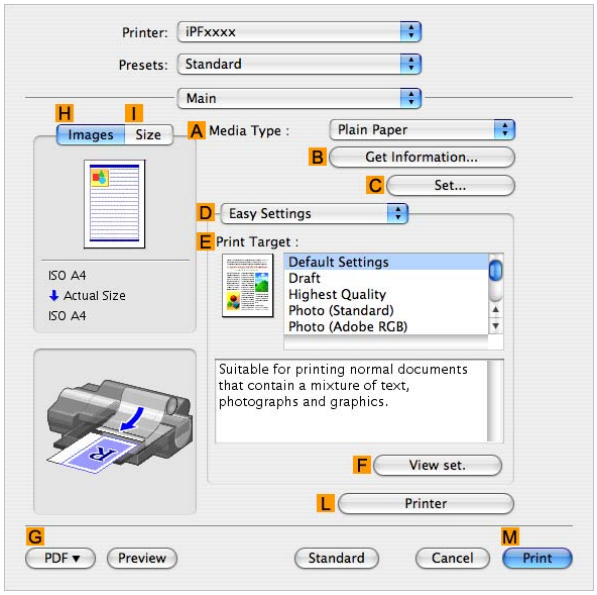


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

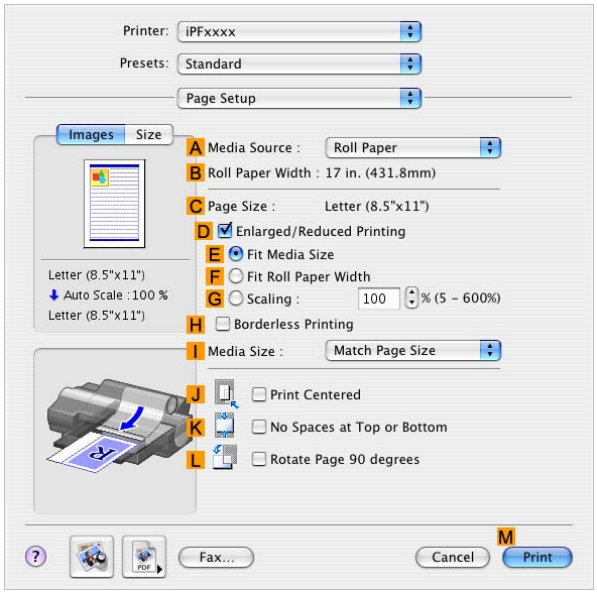
Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



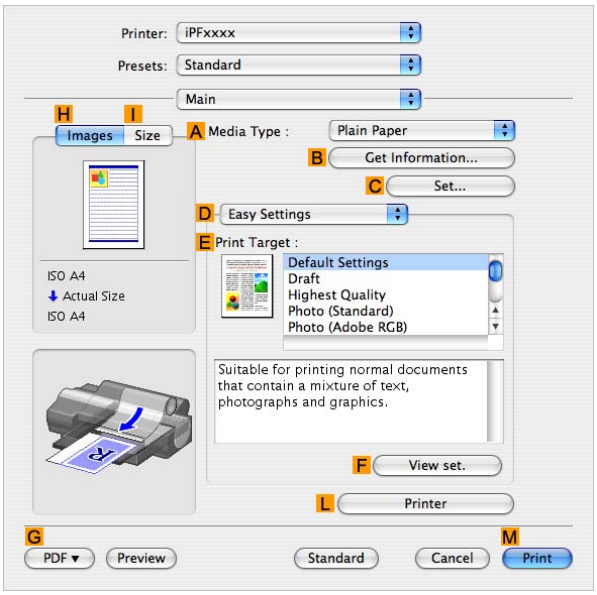
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



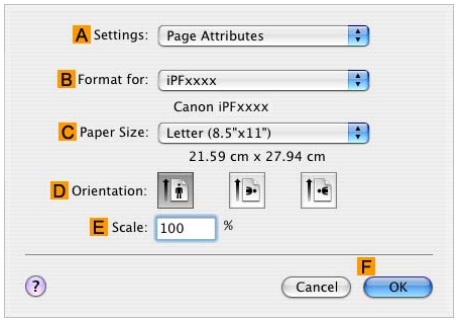
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
    This ensures that F **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

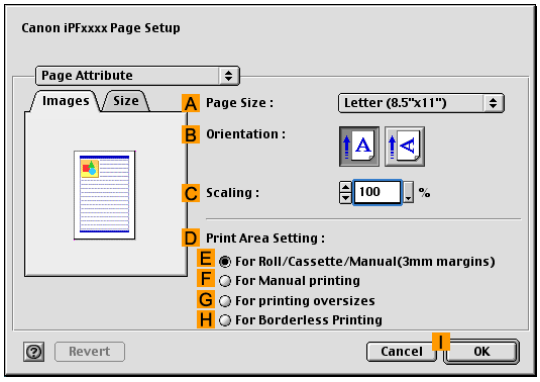
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before printing to match the roll width, based on the following example.
If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)
If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



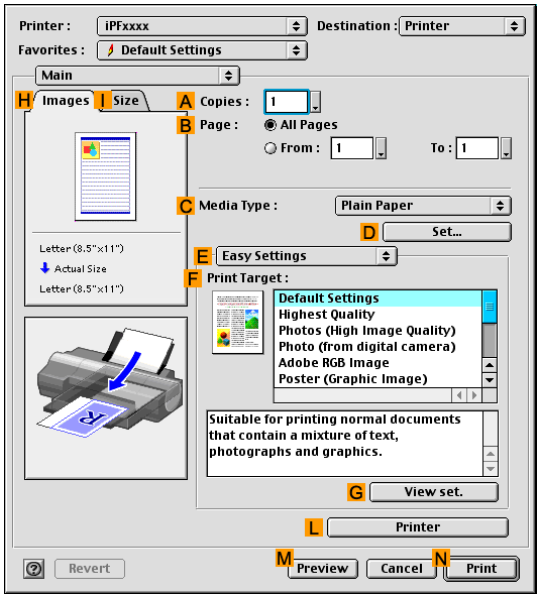
3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.

Note

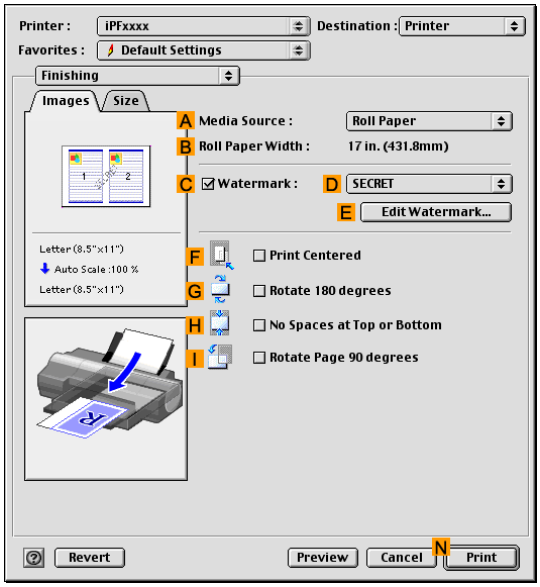
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to fit the roll width.

4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

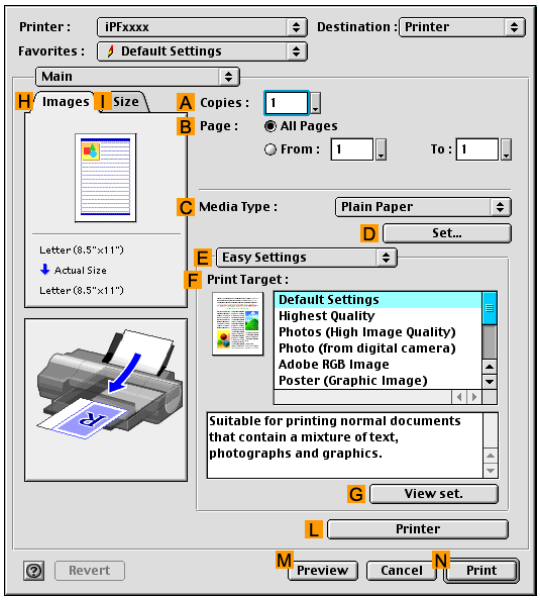


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

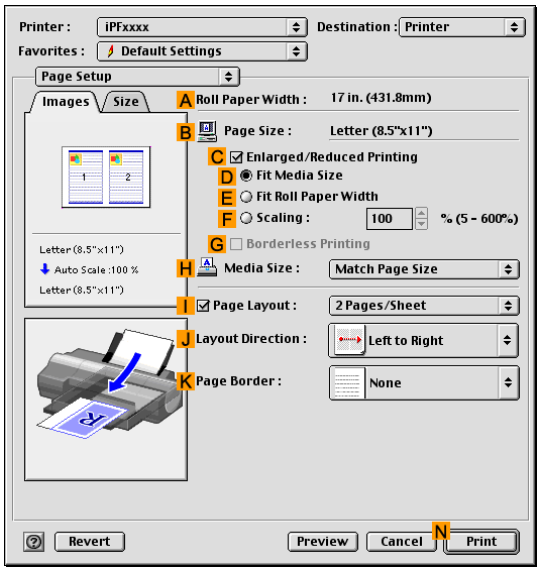
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

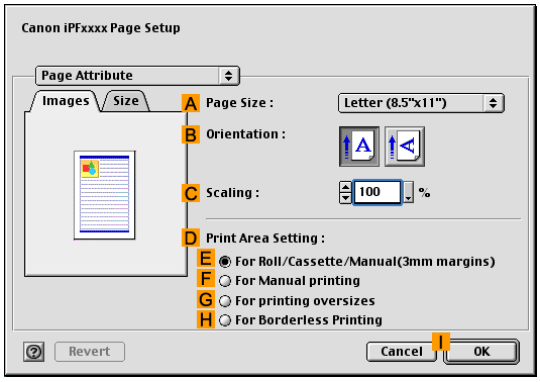
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the B **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in A **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



15. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
16. Select the G **Borderless Printing** check box.
    This ensures that E **Fit Roll Paper Width** is automatically selected in C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)

This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

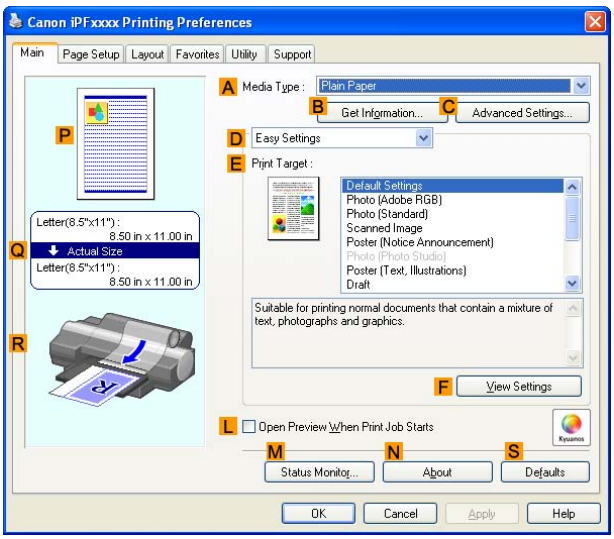
- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.

Note

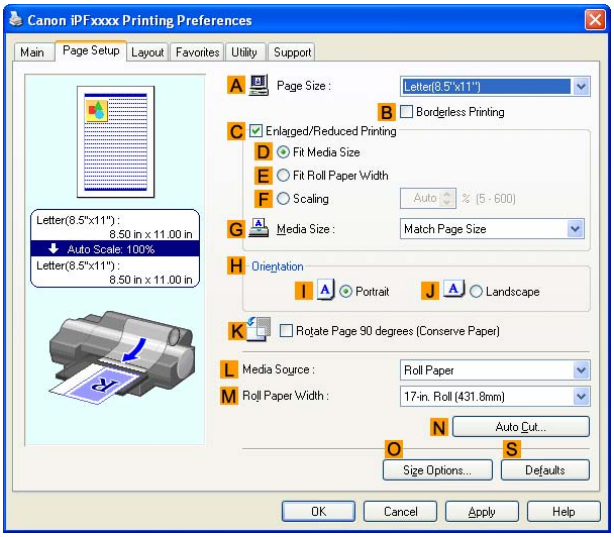
- If you can specify the margin, as in Microsoft Word, set the margin at 0 mm. For instructions on specifying the margin, refer to the software documentation.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

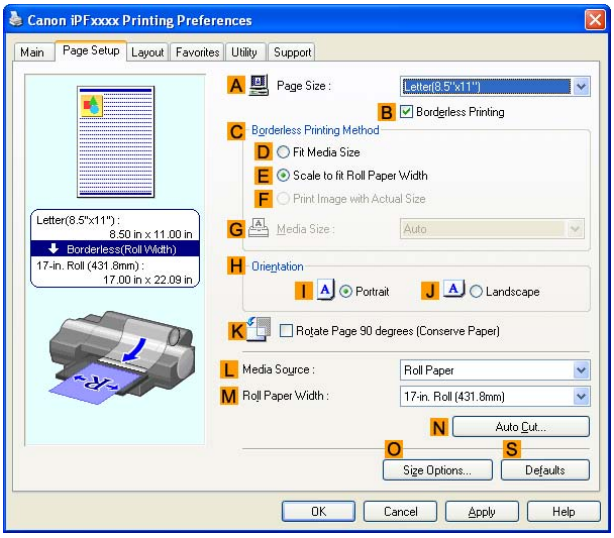


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
6. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Select the B **Borderless Printing** check box to display the **Information** dialog box.



11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.
12. Click **OK** to close the **Information** dialog box.
13. In C **Borderless Printing Method**, click D **Fit Media Size**.
14. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Media Size** list.
15. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)

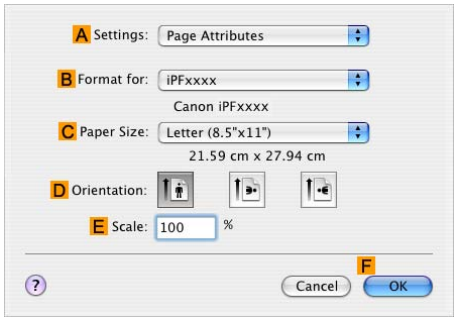
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

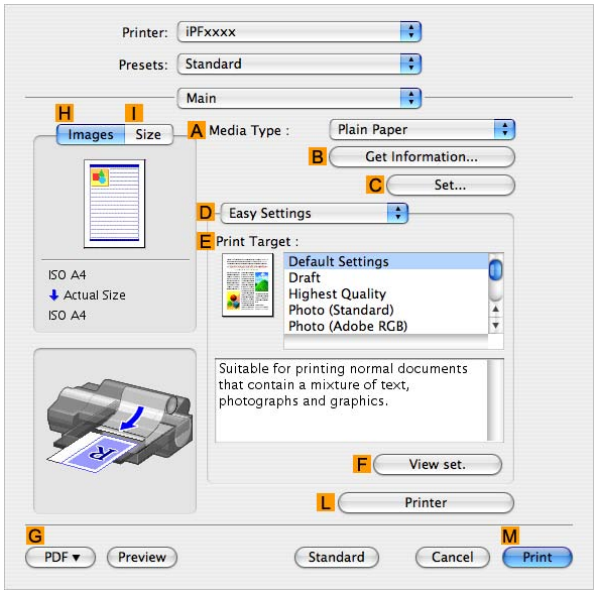


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

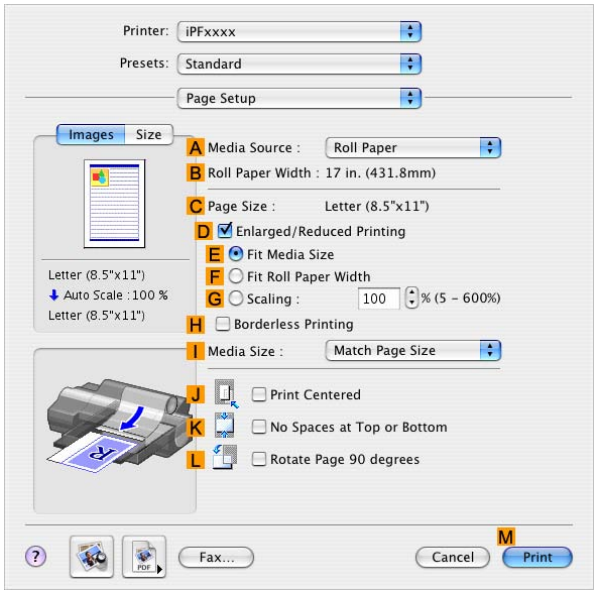
Note

- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



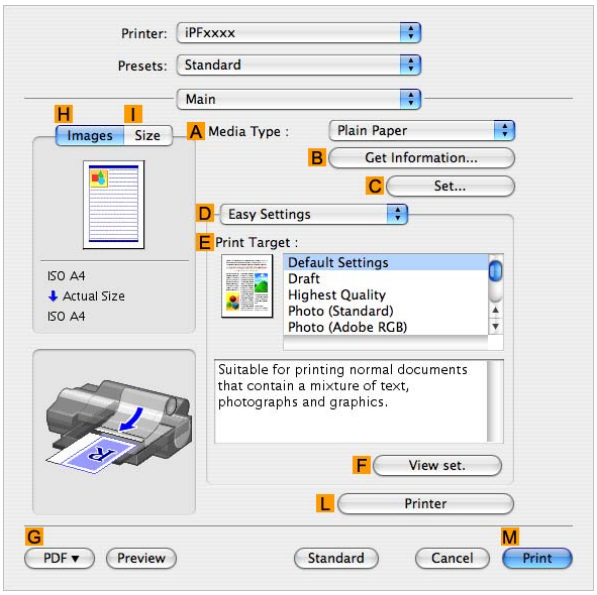
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



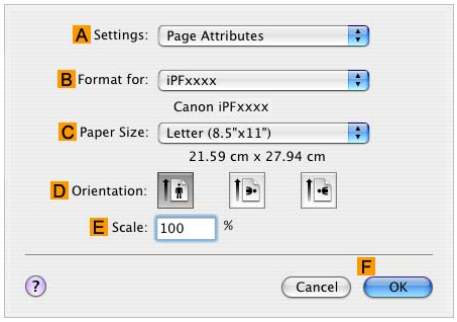
11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



14. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
15. Select the H **Borderless Printing** check box.
16. Click E **Fit Media Size** under D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
17. In I **Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
18. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)

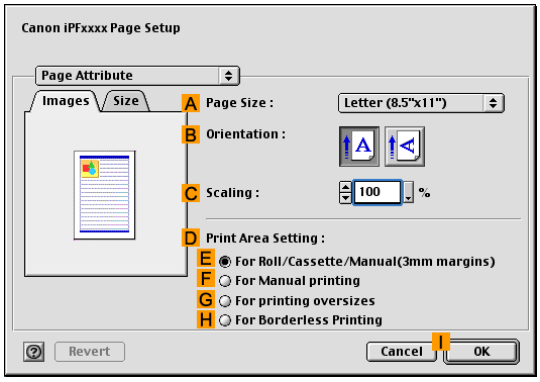
This topic describes how to enlarge originals before borderless printing to match the paper size, based on the following example.

If you use an A1 or A2 roll for borderless printing, insert the provided Spacer for Borderless Printing on the Roll Holder. (→P.144)

If you do not attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing, the Platen may be soiled from borderless printing.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Heavyweight Coated Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



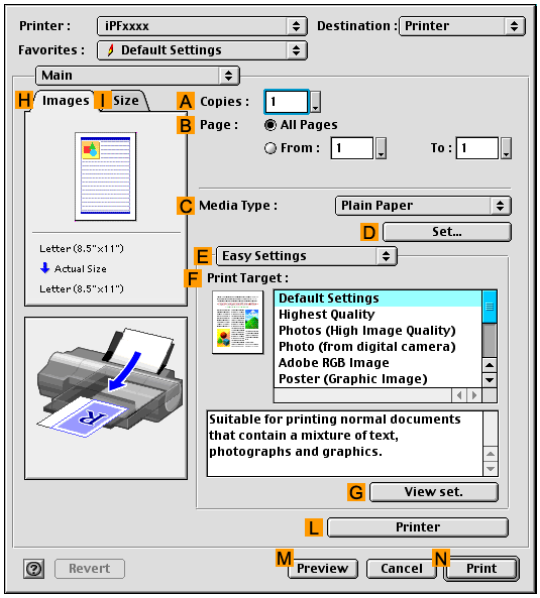
3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

Note

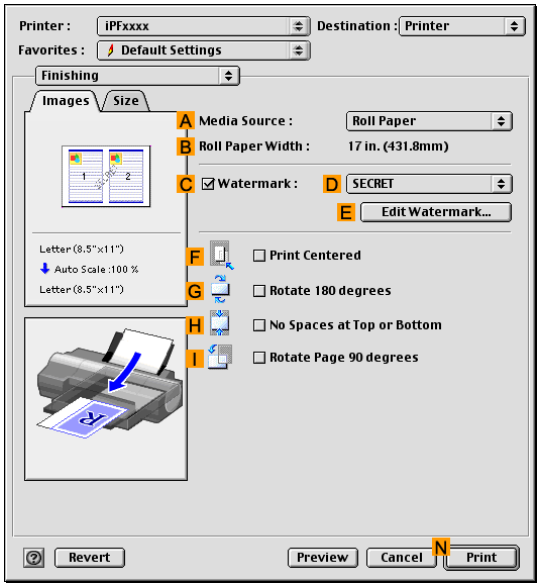
- All sizes are available in borderless printing if you resize originals to match the paper size.

4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application, create an original that takes up the entire space of the paper size.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Heavyweight Coated Paper.
9. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Finishing** pane.

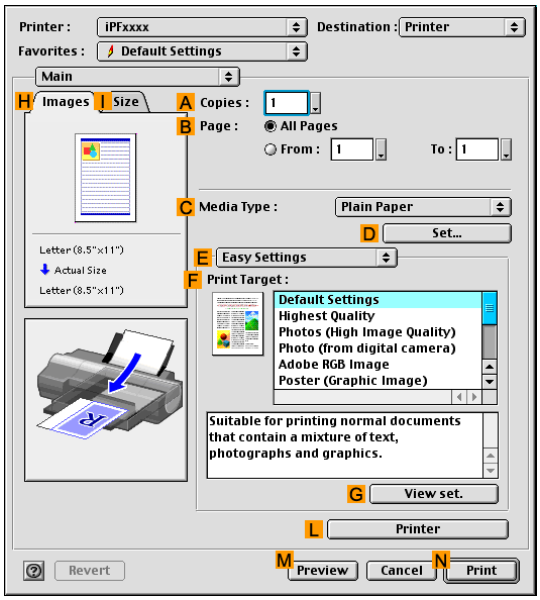


11. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

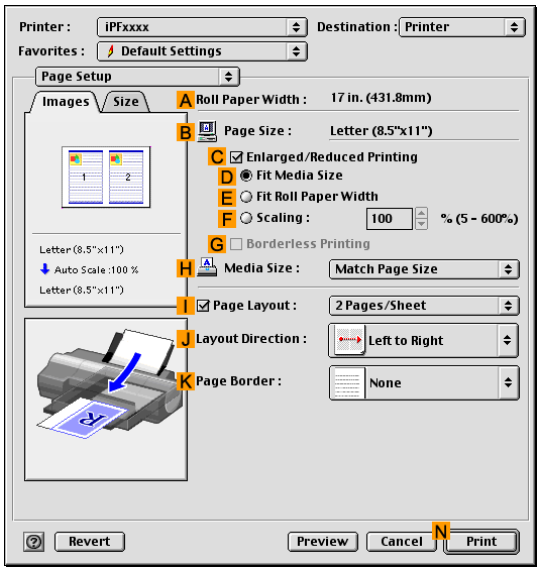
12. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the **B Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

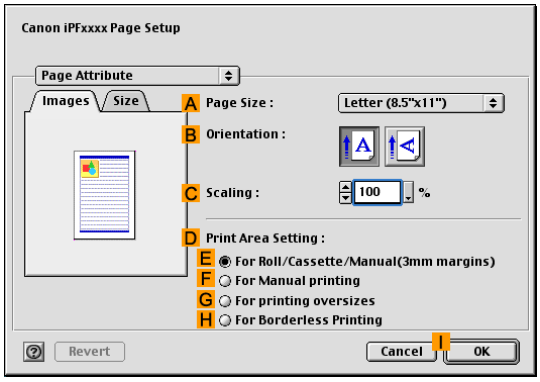
- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in **B Roll Paper Width**, click **L Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



13. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



14. Make sure the B **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in A **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **10"x12"**.



15. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
16. Select the G **Borderless Printing** check box.
17. Click D **Fit Media Size** under C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.
18. In H **Media Size**, click the paper size. In this case, click **10"x12" - Borderless**.
19. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

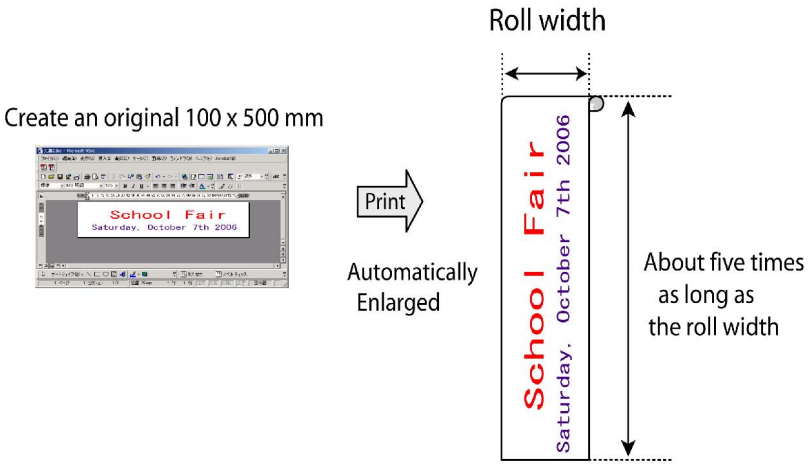
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing)

You can create vertical or horizontal banners by printing originals that are in banner format on rolls. Originals created in Microsoft Word or other applications in your preferred size can be enlarged to fill the width of roll paper by completing simple printer driver settings.



Fit Roll Paper Width

You can easily create vertical or horizontal banners by automatically enlarging or reducing originals to fit the full width of rolls.

Note

- The maximum supported roll length is 18.0 m or 19.7 yd (when printing in Mac OS X).

For instructions on printing vertical or horizontal banners, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) (→P.369)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) (→P.373)
- Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) (→P.376)

Important

- Before printing, check how much of the roll paper is left. If you have activated automatic detection of the remaining roll paper, a warning message is displayed when there is not enough roll paper left.
- If not much ink is left, prepare replacement ink tanks.
- To print at a higher level of quality, in the printer driver, choose **High** or **Highest** in Print Quality, and choose **Unidirectional Printing** as the direction of printing.

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes

By specifying the paper size, you can print on non-standard sizes of paper.
There are two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes, as follows.

Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver

After you register non-standard paper sizes, they are listed with standard sizes so that you can choose them anytime as needed.

Note

- These non-standard paper sizes you register on the printer are called **Custom Media Size** in Windows and Mac OS 9. In Mac OS X, paper sizes you register in the printer driver are called “Custom Sizes.”
- Non-standard sizes cannot be registered on the printer when the media source is set to Cassette.

Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use

Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application. If you want to set up a non-standard paper size so that it will always be available, we recommend registering the paper size in the printer driver.

Note

- These temporary paper sizes you register on the printer are called “Custom Sizes” in Windows.
- Non-standard sizes cannot be registered on the printer when the media source is set to Cassette.

For instructions on specifying non-standard paper sizes for printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) (→P.360)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) (→P.364)
- Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) (→P.366)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)

This topic describes two ways to print on non-standard paper sizes.

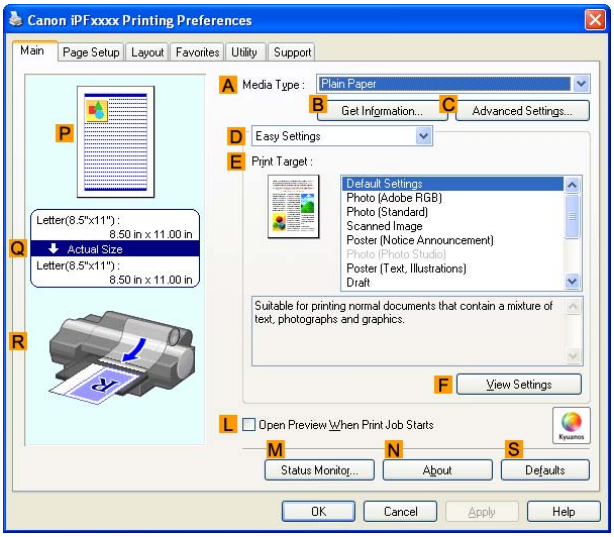
- Printing by using **Custom Size** (→P.360)
- Printing by using **Custom Media Size** (→P.361)

Printing by using Custom Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Size** based on the following example.

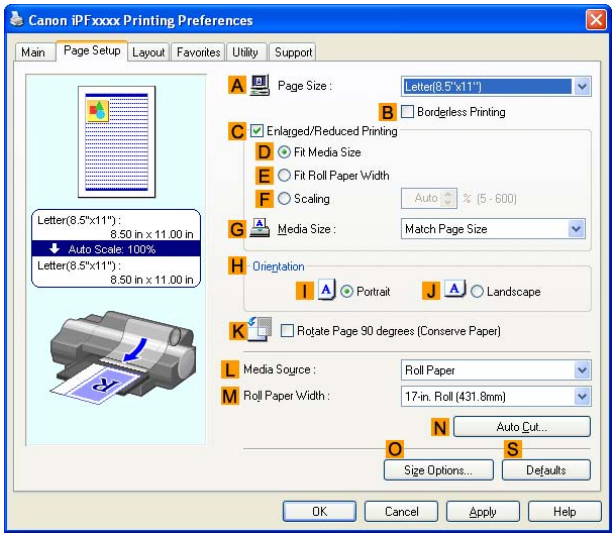
- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: Square of non-standard dimensions (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
2. Choose **Print** in the source application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.

7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **Manual** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click **Custom Size** in the A **Page Size** list to display the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
10. Complete the following settings in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
    1. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
    2. Enter “430” [16.9 in] in both **Width** and **Height**.
11. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

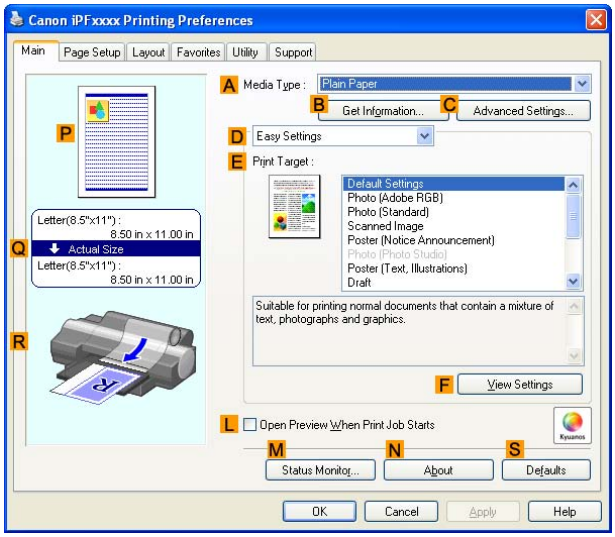
Printing by using Custom Media Size

This section describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. First, register a non-standard paper size called “430 mm Square” as a **Custom Media Size**.

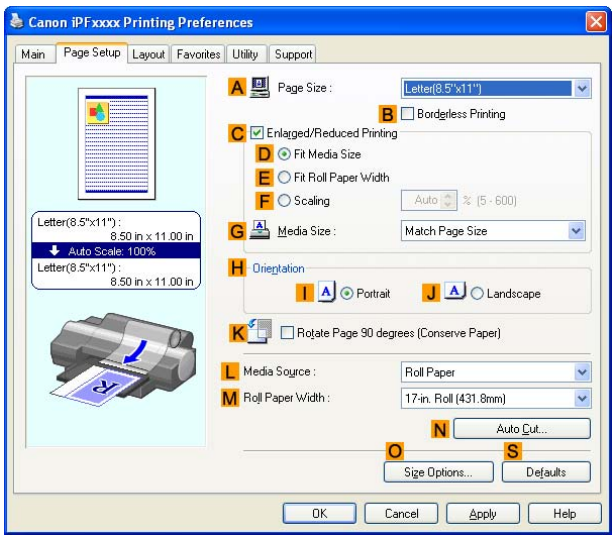
- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

1. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
2. Choose **Print** in the source application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)

4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



5. In the **A** **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
6. After confirming that **D** **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the **E** **Print Target** list.
7. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



8. Click **O** **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
9. Complete the following settings in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
   1. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. “430 mm Square” is used in this example.
   2. Select **mm** or inch in **Units**.
   3. Enter “430” [16.9 in] in both **Width** and **Height**.

Note

- If you select the **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** check box, after you enter a value in either **Width** or **Height**, the other value will be automatically applied based on the original aspect ratio.

10. Click **Add** to register “430 mm Square.”
11. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
12. Click **Manual** in the L **Media Source** list.
13. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added, "430 mm Square."
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X)

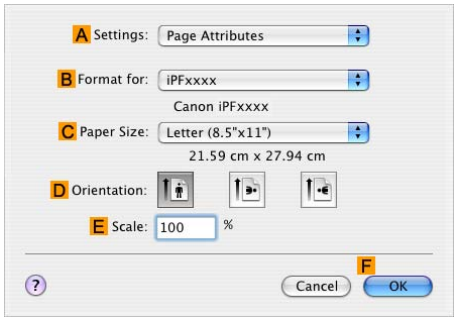
This topic describes how to print after registering “Custom Media Size” based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in “Custom Media Size”.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

Note

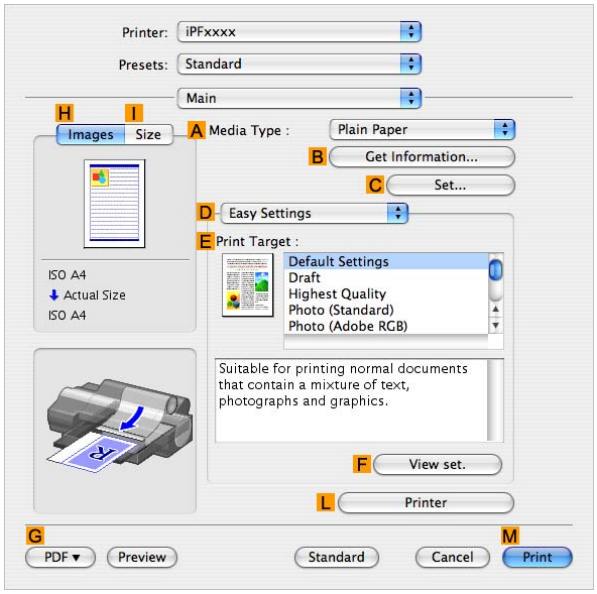
- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
3. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

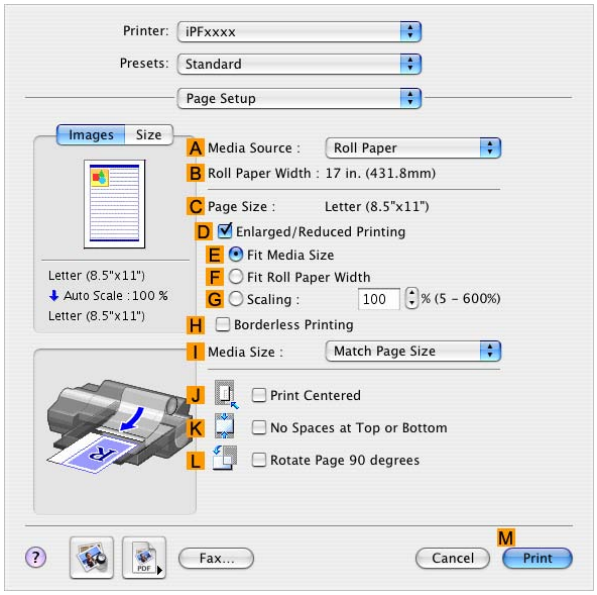


4. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
5. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the C **Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
6. In **Page Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “43.00 cm” in **Height** and **Width**.
7. In **Printer Margins**, enter “0.3” for the top and side margins and “2.3” for the bottom margin. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left in the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box and enter the paper name-in this case, “430*430”.
9. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
10. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
12. Choose **Print** in the application menu.

13. Access the **Main** pane.



14. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
15. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the E **Print Target** list.
16. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



17. Click **Manual** in the A **Media Source** list.
18. In D **Easy Settings**, make sure “430*430” is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
19. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

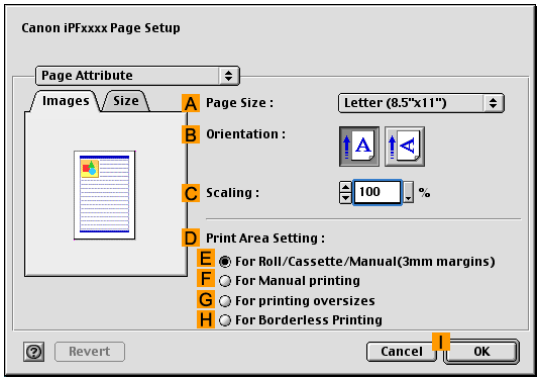
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9)

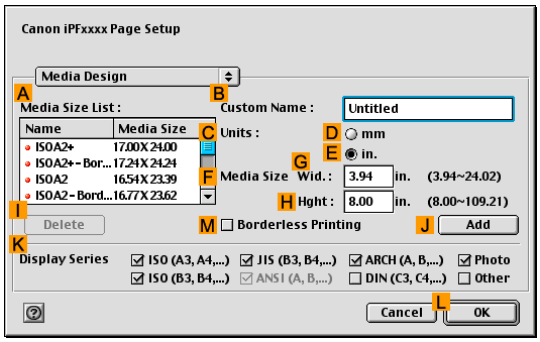
This topic describes how to print using **Custom Media Size** based on the following example. Here, you will register a non-standard paper size named “430*430” in **Custom Media Size**.

- Document: Scanned image
- Page size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A square sheet (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in])

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Load the square paper (430×430 mm [16.9×16.9 in]) in the Top Paper Feed Slot.
3. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
4. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

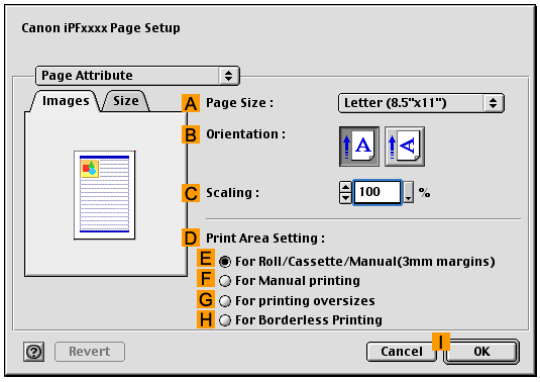


5. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.

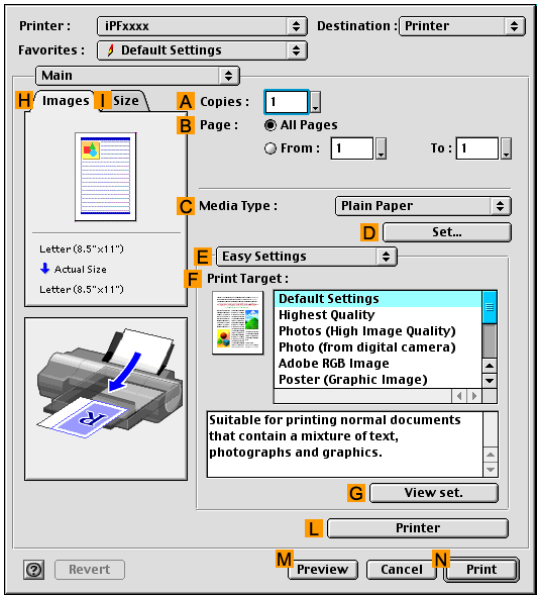


6. Enter a paper name of your choice in **B Custom Name**. “430*430” is used in this example.
7. In **F Media Size**, enter the height and width of the original. Here, enter “430” in **H Hght** and **G Wid.**.
8. Click **J Add** to add the paper size named “430*430”.

9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

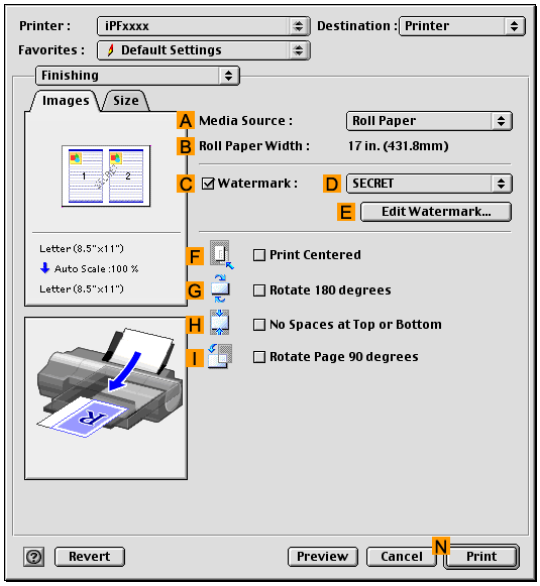


10. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click “430*430”, the size you registered.
11. In D **Print Area Setting**, click F **For Manual printing**.
12. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
13. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
14. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



15. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
16. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Scanned Image** in the F **Print Target** list.

17. Access the **Finishing** pane.



18. Click **Manual** in the A **Media Source** list.

19. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: A horizontal banner created in Microsoft Word
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 in (406.4 mm)

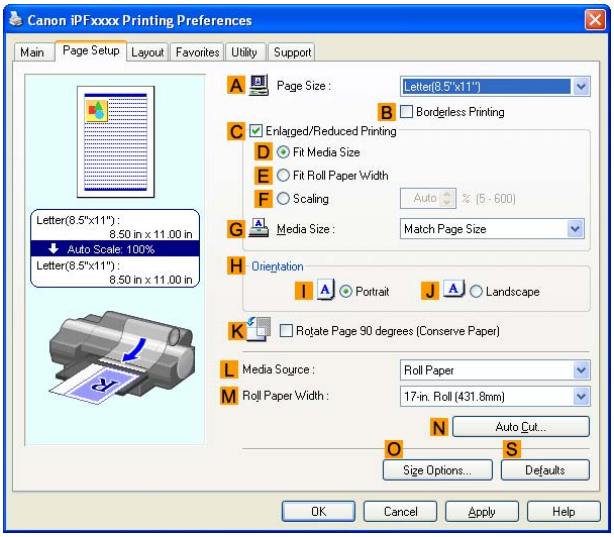
Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Register a **Custom Media Size**.
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
2. In the application, create an original in the size you registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

Registering a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register a paper size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.499)
2. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



3. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
4. Click O **Size Options** to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
5. Enter a desired paper name in **Custom Media Size Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **Units**, click **mm**.
7. Under **Media Size**, enter “100” in **Width** and “500” in **Height**.
8. Click **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”
9. Click **OK** to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

10. Close the printer driver dialog box.

Note

- You can also specify a **Custom Size** as the paper size. Note that **Custom Size** settings are not available after you exit the application.
  For more information, see “Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows)”. (→P.360)

Creating the banner in the application

Follow the steps below to create the banner in Microsoft Word using the **Custom Media Size** you registered.

1. Start Microsoft Word.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to display the **Page Setup** dialog box.
3. Under **Paper Size**, click the **Custom Media Size** you registered-"My Horizontal Banner" in this example.

Important

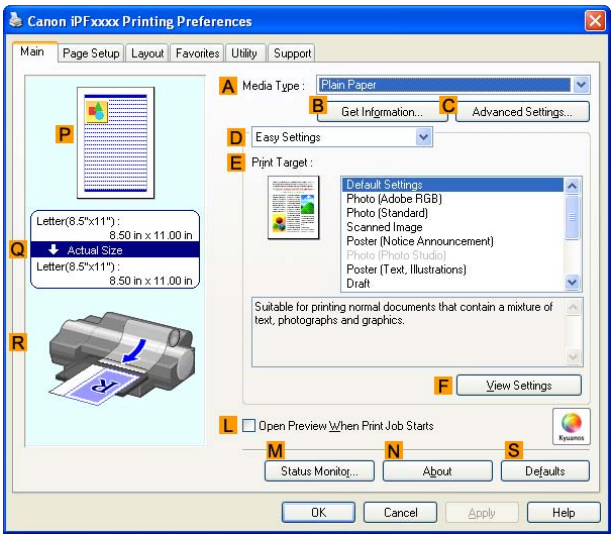
- If "My Horizontal Banner" is not listed, make sure this printer is selected as the printer to use.
- In applications such as Microsoft PowerPoint that do not enable you to choose registered paper sizes, use the custom paper size setting in “Custom” and specify 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in)

4. Set the printing orientation to horizontal
5. Create the banner.

Printing the banner

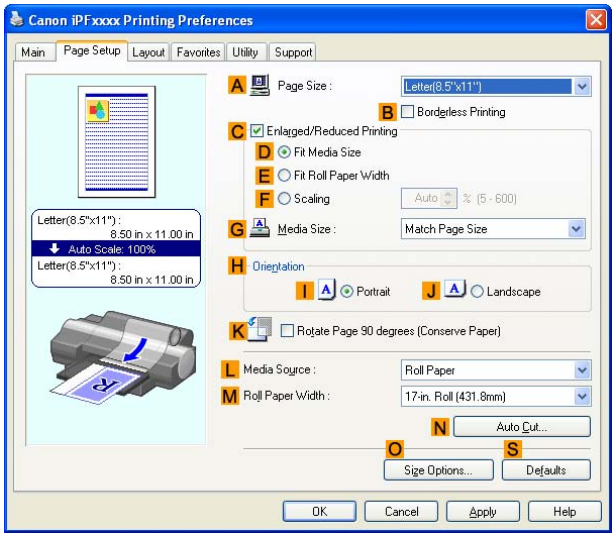
Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the Microsoft Word menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP Ad** in the E **Print Target** list.

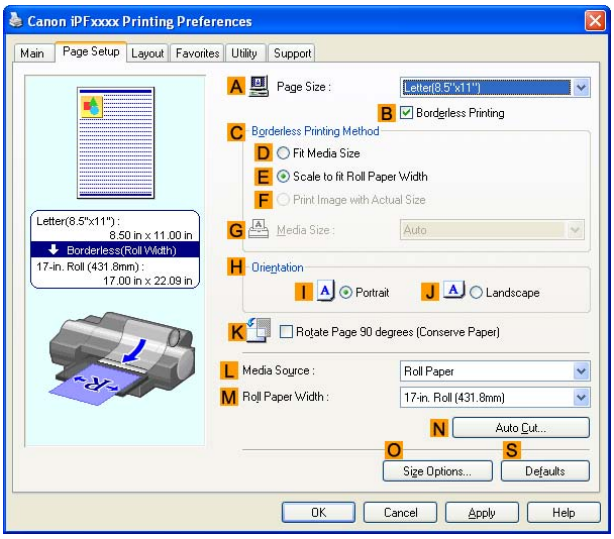
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you registered, "My Horizontal Banner."
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.

Note

- If the **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box is not displayed on the **Page Setup** sheet, clear the B **Borderless Printing** check box.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. After you click E **Fit Roll Paper Width**, the **Information** dialog box is displayed.
11. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **16-in. Roll (406.4mm)**, and then click **OK**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

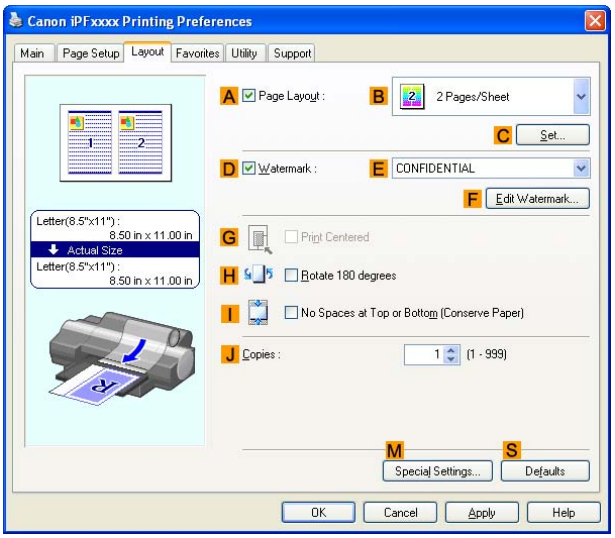
Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Note

- If printing is unsuccessful, you may be able to print after completing the following setting.

1. On the **Layout** sheet, click **M** **Special Settings** to display the **Special Settings** dialog box.



2. In the **FineZoom Settings** list, click **Yes**.

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page Size: Non-standard (100×500 mm [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 16 inches (406.4 mm)

Follow the steps below to print a banner in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a “Custom Page Size.”
   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a “Custom Page Size” in **Page Setup**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

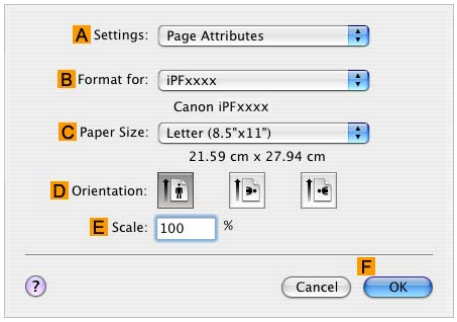
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of setting up non-standard paper sizes varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

Register a Custom Page Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



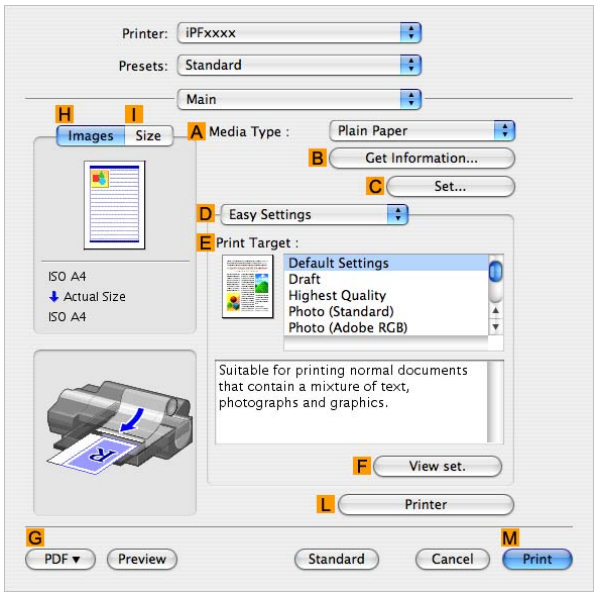
3. Select the printer in the **B Format for** list.
4. Click **Manage Custom Sizes** in the **C Paper Size** list to display the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.
5. Double-click **Untitled** in the list at left, and then enter a name for the page size you want to register. Here, enter “100*500.”
   If the **Untitled** size is not listed at left, click **+** below the list.
6. Under **Page Size**, enter “10” in **Width** and “50” in **Height**. Here, measurements are entered in centimeters.
7. Specify the margins by entering “0.3” in **Printer Margins**. Here, too, measurements are entered in centimeters.
8. Click **OK** to close the **Custom Page Sizes** dialog box.

9. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click "100*500", the size you registered.
10. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
11. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.

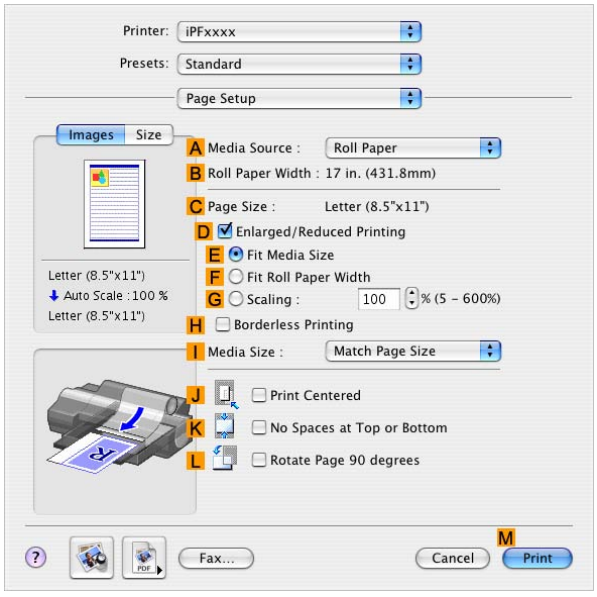
Print the banner

Follow the steps below to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Access the **Main** pane.



3. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the E **Print Target** list.
5. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

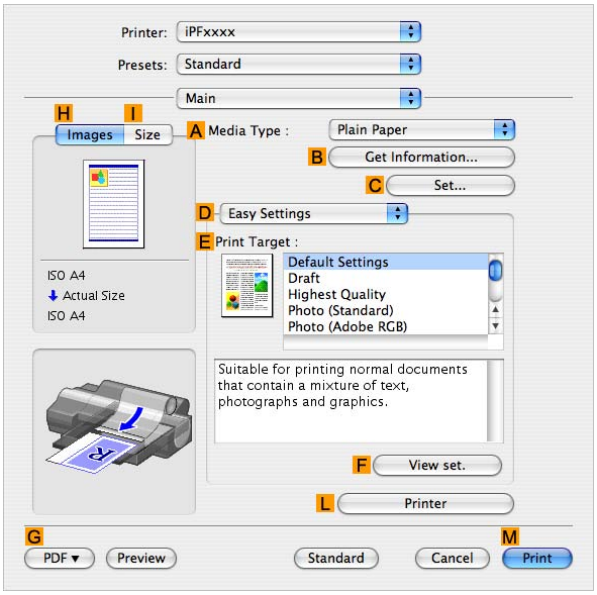


6. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **16 in. (406.4mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. In C **Page Size**, make sure "100*500" is displayed, as registered in **Page Setup**.
9. Select the D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
10. Click F **Fit Roll Paper Width**.
11. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print a banner about five times as long as the roll width based on the following example.

- Document: An original designed for a horizontal banner
- Page size: Non-standard (100×500 mm, [3.9×19.7 in])
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

The steps to print a vertical or horizontal banner are as follows.

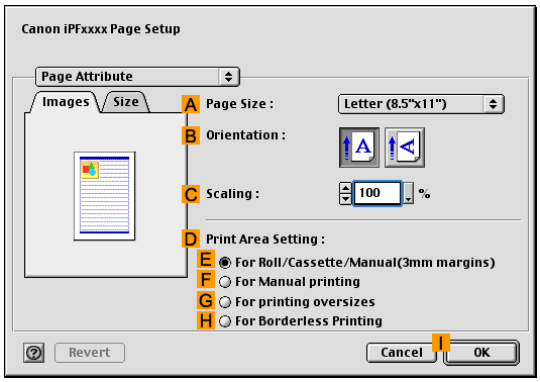
1. In the application, create an original in the format of a horizontal or vertical banner.
2. Register a **Custom Media Size** in **Media Design**.

   Banners tend to be in non-standard sizes, so register a **Custom Media Size**. In this example, 100×500 mm (3.9×19.7 in) is registered.
3. Print the banner, using the settings that correspond to banners.

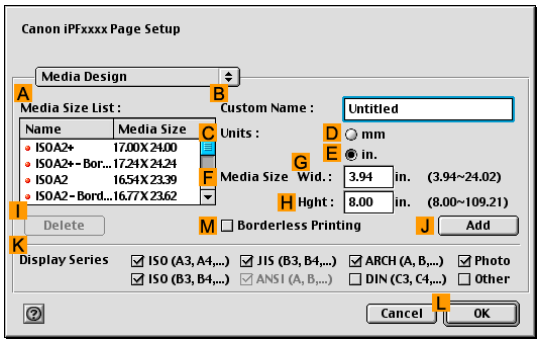
Register a Custom Media Size

This example describes how to register and print using a page size that is horizontally elongated and suitable for banners in either horizontal or vertical format.

1. Create the document in the application.
2. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
3. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

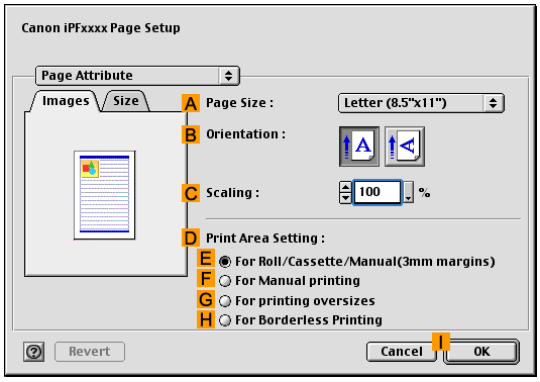


4. Click **Media Design** in the **Page Attribute** list to display the **Media Design** pane.



5. Enter a desired paper name in **B** **Custom Name**. “My Horizontal Banner” is used in this example.
6. In **C** **Units**, click **D** **mm**.
7. Under **F** **Media Size**, enter “100” in **G** **Wid.** and “500” in **H** **Hght**.
8. Click **J** **Add** to add the paper size of “My Horizontal Banner.”

9. Access the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

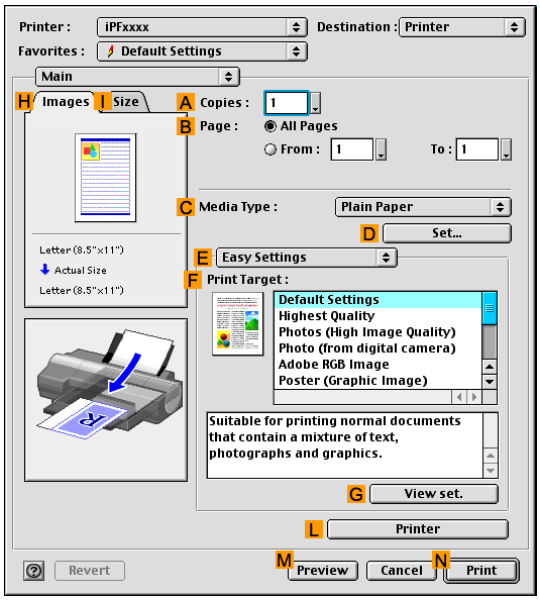


10. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size you added, “My Horizontal Banner.”
11. In B **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
12. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.

Print the banner

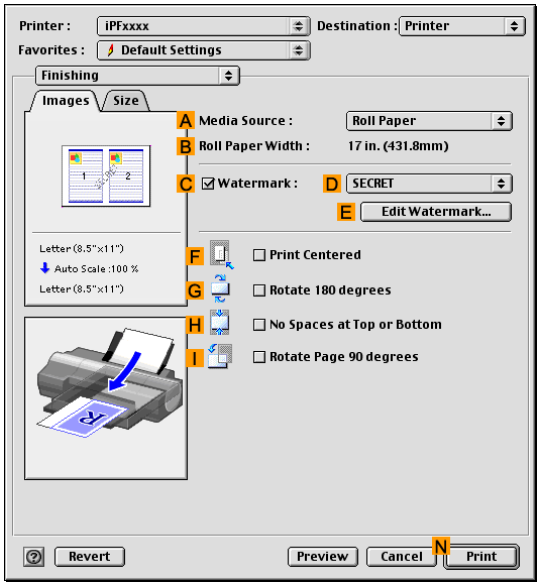
Follow these steps to print the banner using the corresponding banner settings.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



3. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
4. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **POP** in the F **Print Target** list.

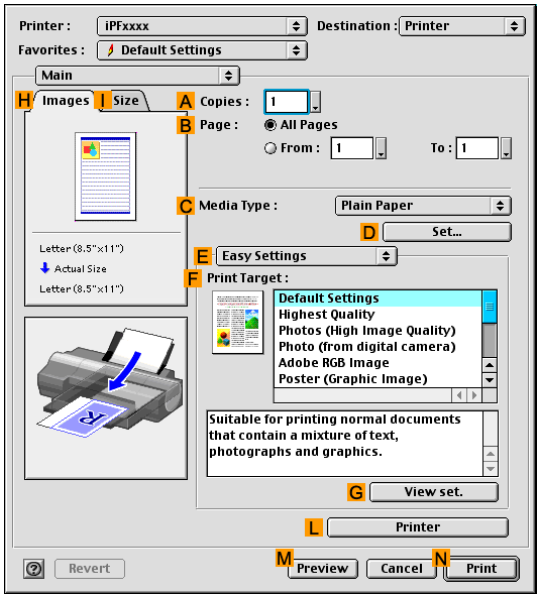
5. Access the **Finishing** pane.



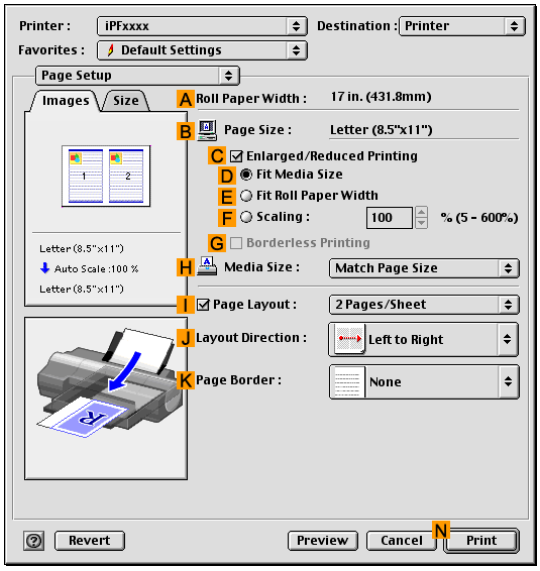
6. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
7. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10 in. (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. In **B Page Size**, make sure “My Horizontal Banner” is displayed, as registered in **Media Design**.
10. Select the **C Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
11. Click **E Fit Roll Paper Width**.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

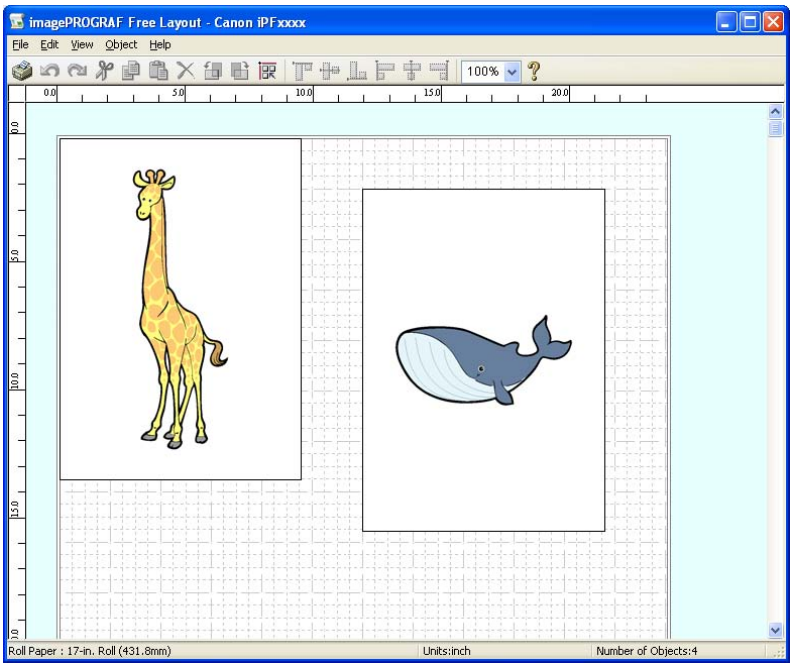
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other

By arranging originals from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or web browser screen shots next to each other on single sheets, you can create highly expressive presentation materials, easy-to-understand meeting materials, and a variety of other printed documents.

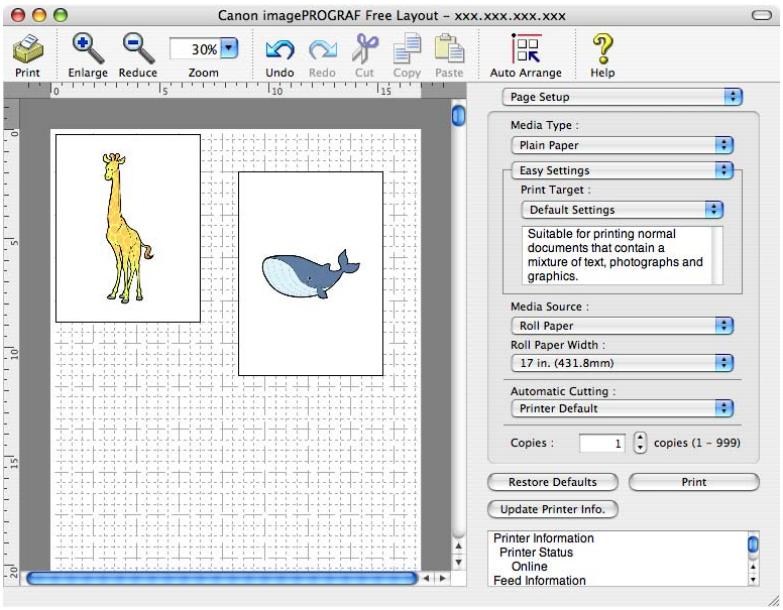
Free Layout (Windows)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh)

Besides combining multiple pages in a single-page layout, you can combine originals from multiple files-even multiple source applications-in a single-page layout.



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

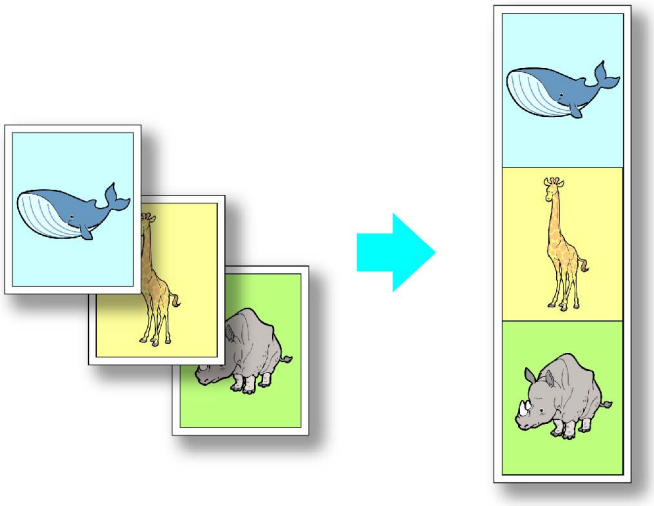
For instructions on arranging originals from multiple applications, refer to the following topics.

- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) (→P.389)
- Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) (→P.391)

Printing Multiple Pages Continuously

You can print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

Roll paper (banner)



Important

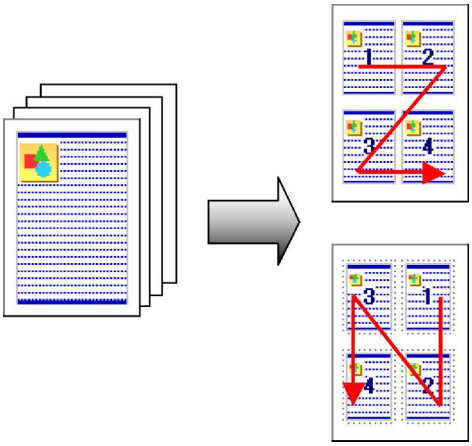
- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

For instructions on borderless printing of photos and images at actual size, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) (→P.393)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) (→P.394)
- Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) (→P.396)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet

To conserve paper, you can print several pages of the original on a single sheet by reducing the original and dividing the sheet into areas for each page.



Page Layout

Specify a number of pages of the original to print on a single sheet, in a layout of multiple pages per sheet.

Note

- You can print up to 16 pages of the original on a single sheet.
- You can also change the page layout order and print page boundary lines, as desired.

Important

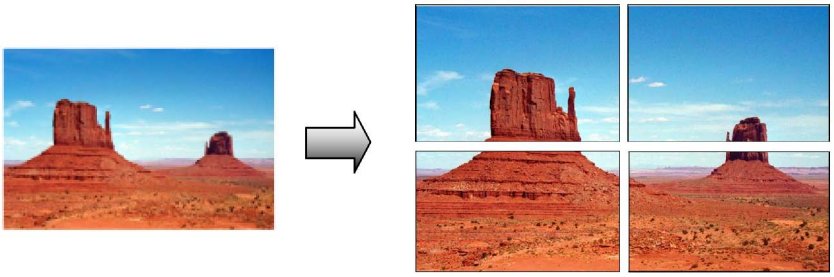
- This function cannot be combined with the following options.
  - Borderless Printing
  - Resizing to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)
  - Scaling Originals (Windows)
  - Banner Printing (Windows)

For instructions on printing multiple pages per sheet, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) (→P.398)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) (→P.400)
- Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) (→P.403)

Printing Posters in Sections

You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer.



Page Layout

Choose poster printing.
For instructions on printing large posters, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Large Posters (Windows) (→P.385)
- Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) (→P.387)

Note

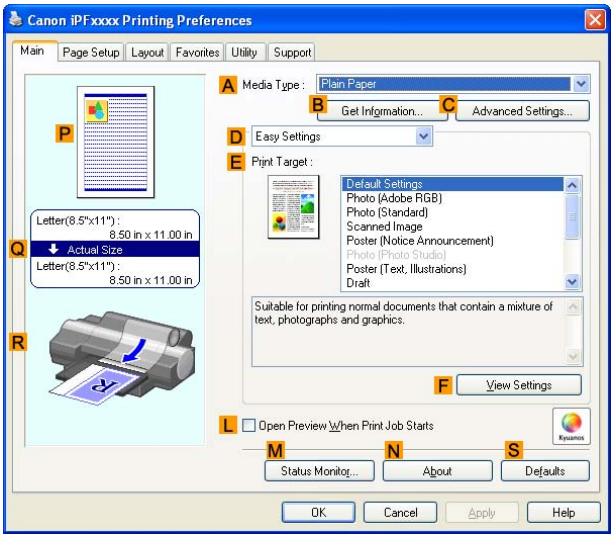
- This method of poster printing is supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.

Printing Large Posters (Windows)

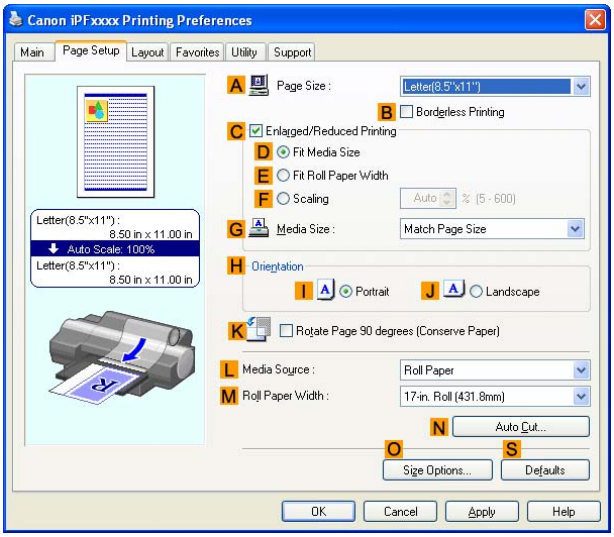
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing it in sections on four sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

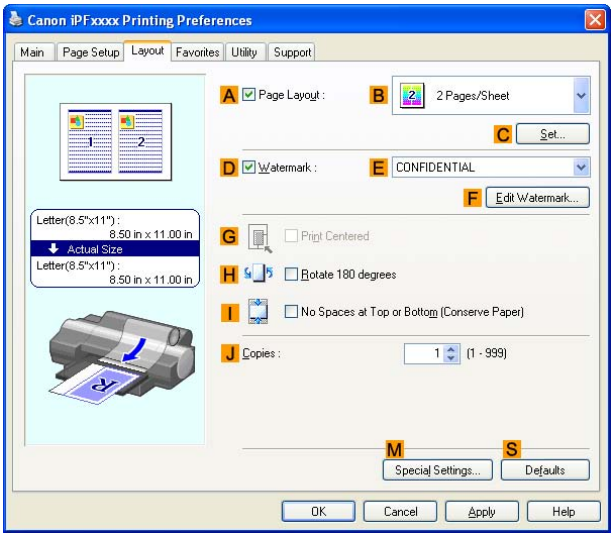
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.
5. Click **Poster (Graphic Image)** in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
8. Click **Manual** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- Follow the steps below to print only a portion of the poster as divided for printing.
  1. Click C **Set** under B **Page Layout** to display the **Pages to Print** dialog box.
  2. On the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of the portion you do not want to print.
  3. Click **OK** to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

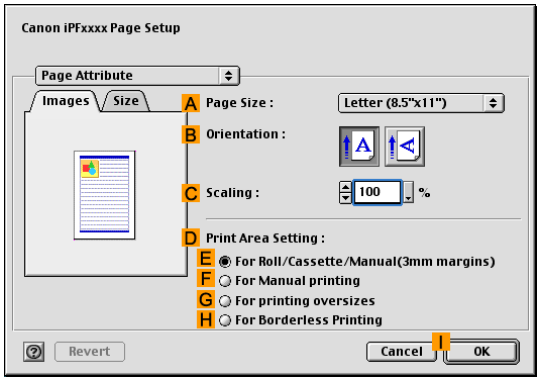
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9)

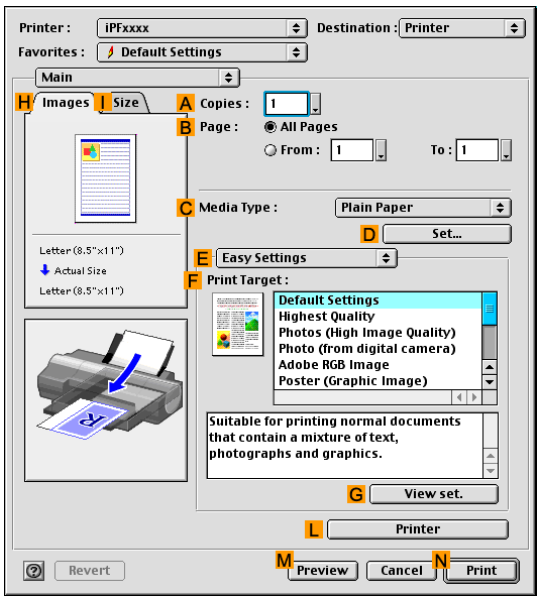
You can enlarge an original to print it in sections on several sheets. By assembling the printed sheets, you can create a poster larger than the maximum supported paper size of the printer. This topic describes how to enlarge an A2 original for printing on four sheets of paper based on the following example.

- Document: Poster
- Page size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Glossy Paper
- Paper size: A2 (420.0×594.0 mm [16.5 × 23.4 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

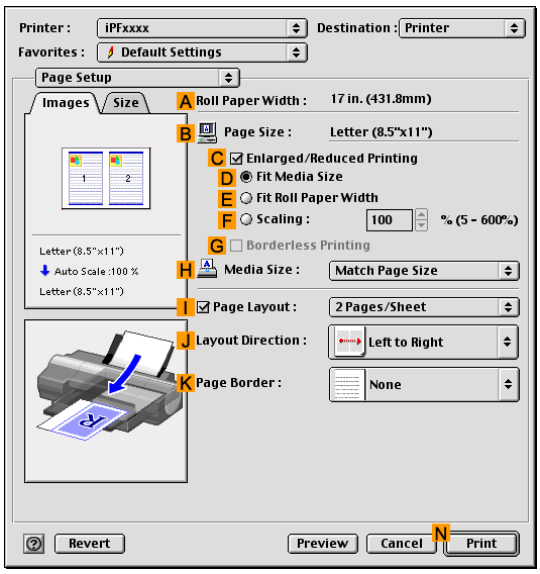


3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A2**.
4. In D **Print Area Setting**, click F **For Manual printing**.
5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

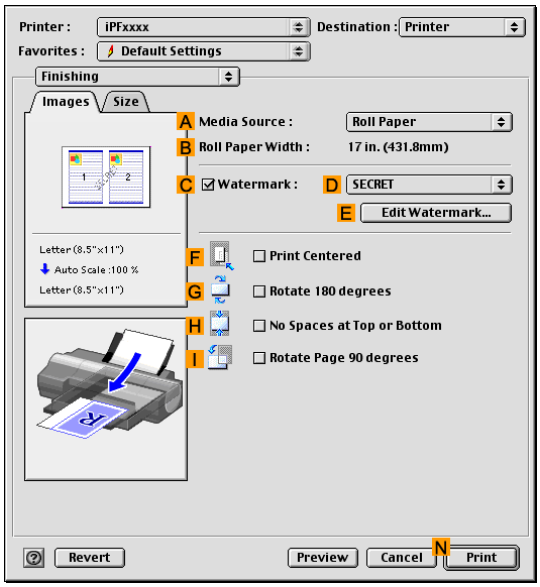


8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Paper.

9. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Poster (Graphic Image)** in the F **Print Target** list.
10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Select the I **Page Layout** check box.
12. Click **Poster (2 x 2)** in the I **Page Layout** list.
13. In the **Pages to Print** dialog box, clear the check boxes of any portion you do not want to print.
14. Access the **Finishing** pane.



15. Click **Paper Tray Feed** in the A **Media Source** list.
16. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

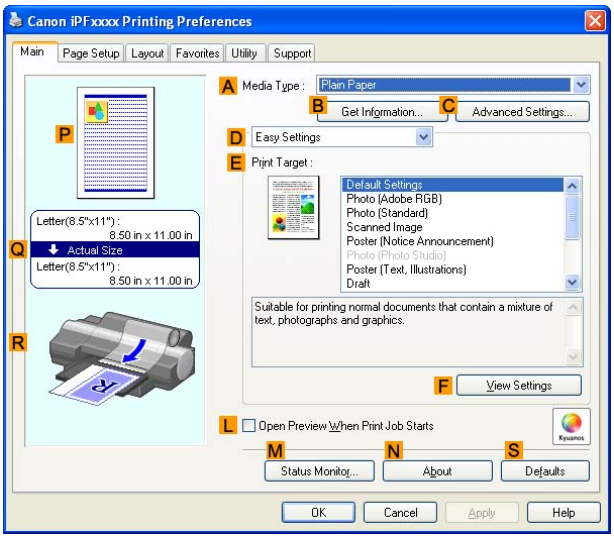
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

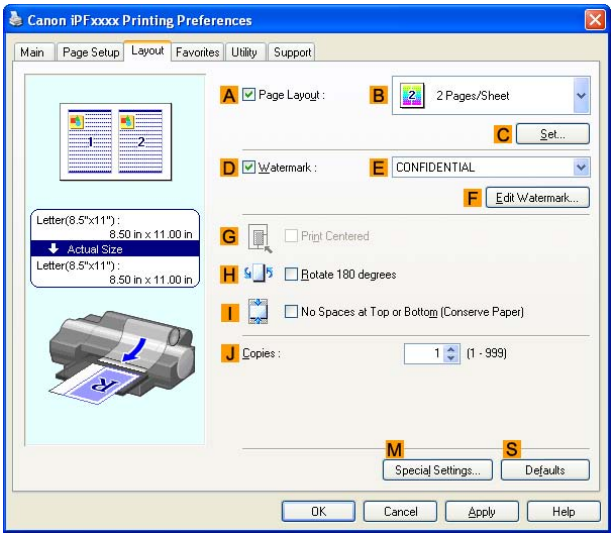
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows)

This topic describes how to arrange multiple originals using the Free Layout function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

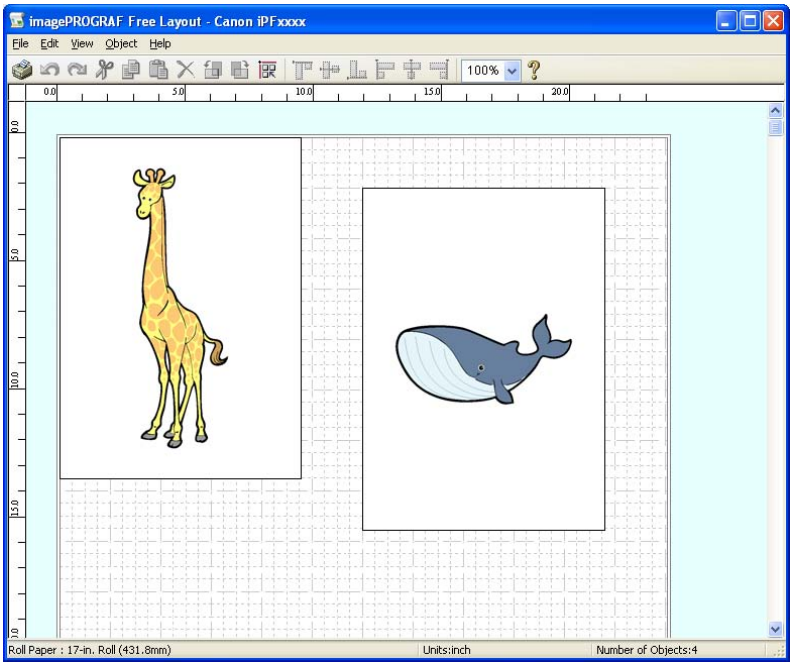


4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click **Free Layout** in the B **Page Layout** list.

7. When you attempt to print, the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)



8. Edit and rearrange the image in the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the imagePROGRAF Free Layout window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the imagePROGRAF Free Layout help topic.

9. Print from the imagePROGRAF Free Layout menu.

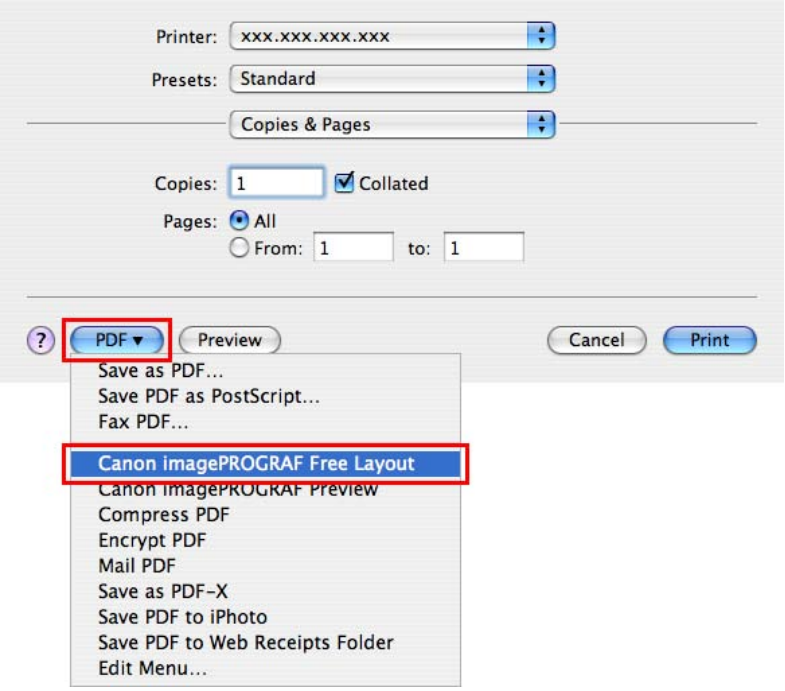
Note

- For details on imagePROGRAF Free Layout functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

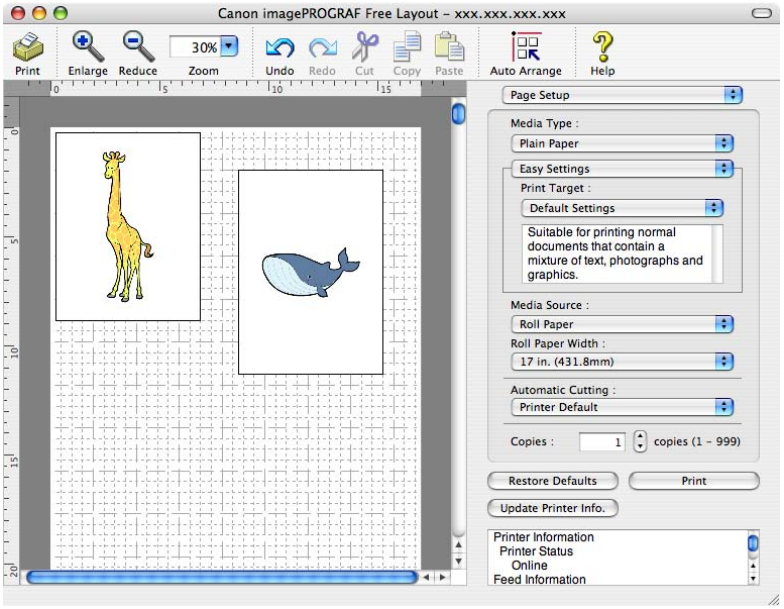
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to use the **Free Layout** function to arrange multiple originals next to each other before printing.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window is displayed.



4. Edit and rearrange the image in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window as desired.

   Important

   - Without closing the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** window, repeat steps 1-7 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

   Note

   - For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** help topic.

5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** menu.

   Note

   - For details on **Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout** functions, refer to Free Layout Guide .

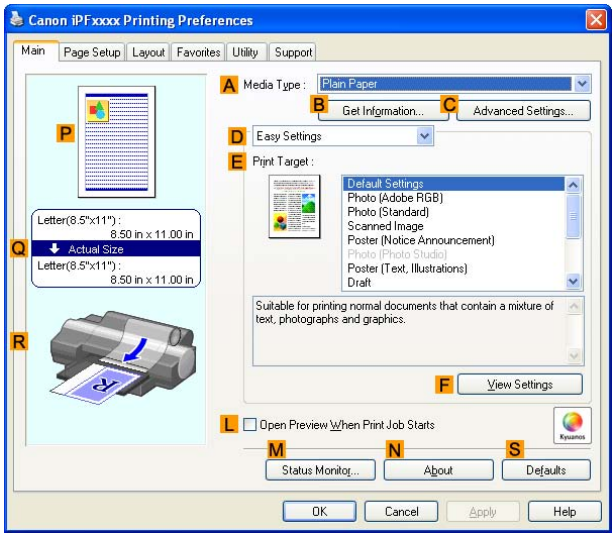
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

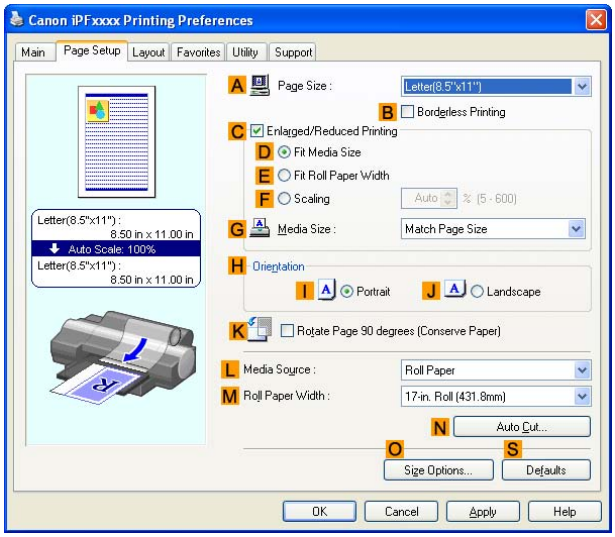
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the L **Media Source** list.
7. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

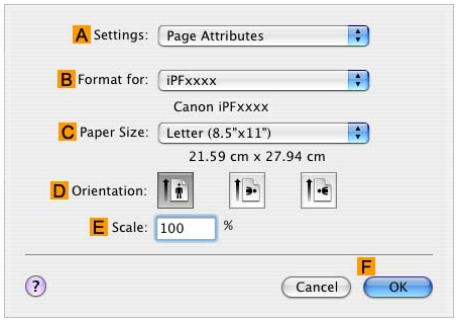
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

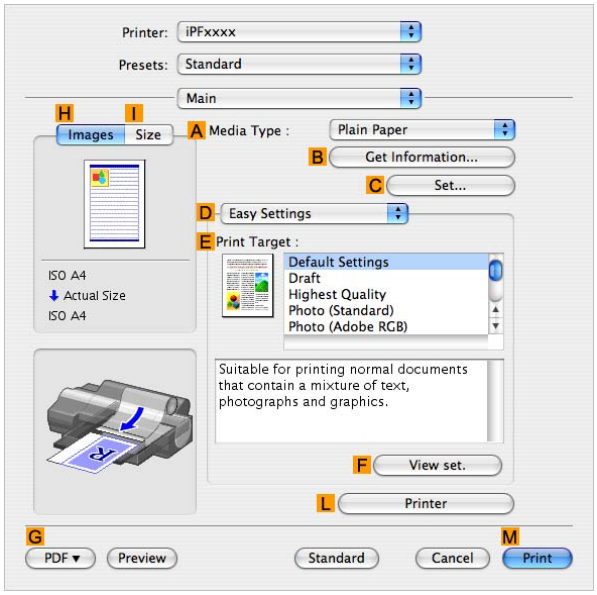
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

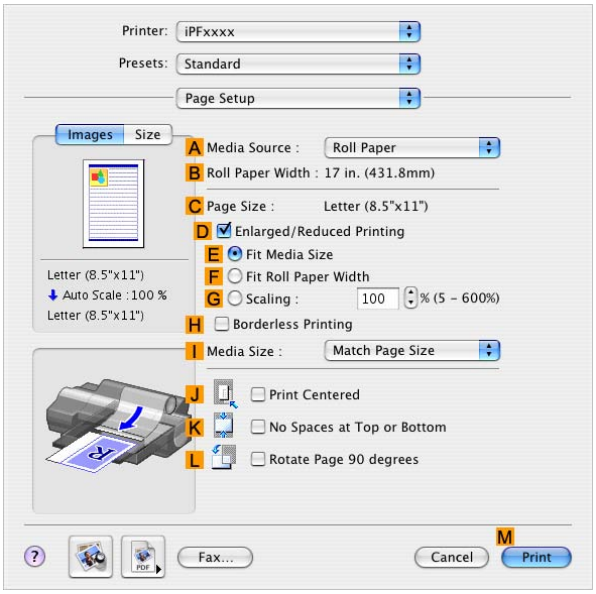


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Click the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

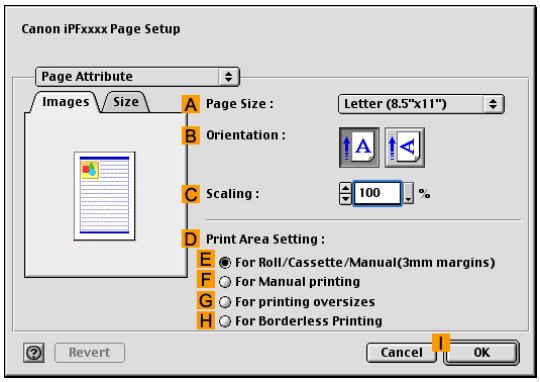
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print multiple pages as a single continuous image, without margins between pages.

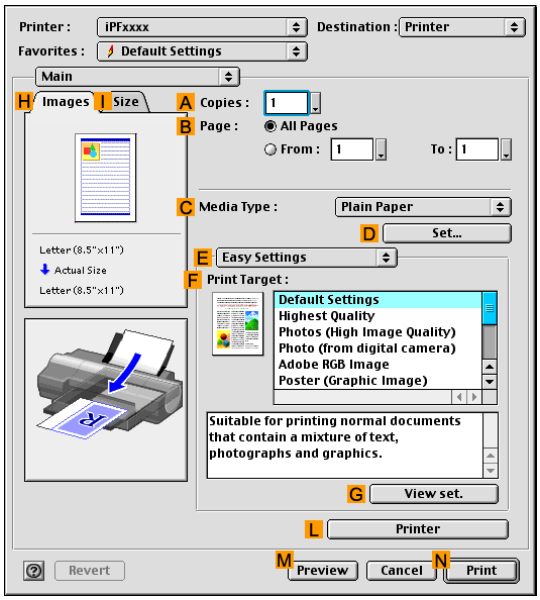
Important

- This feature is only available with rolls. It cannot be used when printing on sheets.
- During banner printing, settings for conserving paper, number of copies, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, and other layout-related settings are disregarded.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

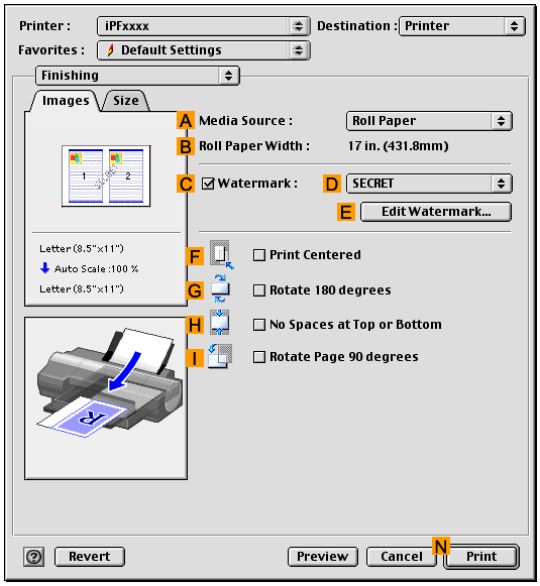


3. Click the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, click the type of paper that is loaded.
8. Make your selection in the F **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Roll Paper (Banner)** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

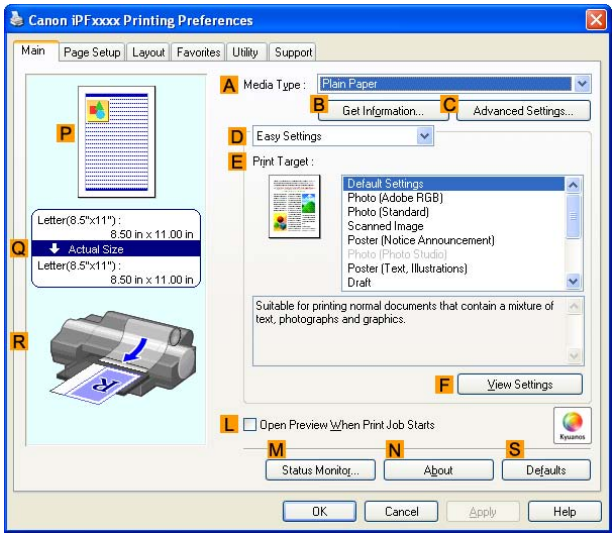
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows)

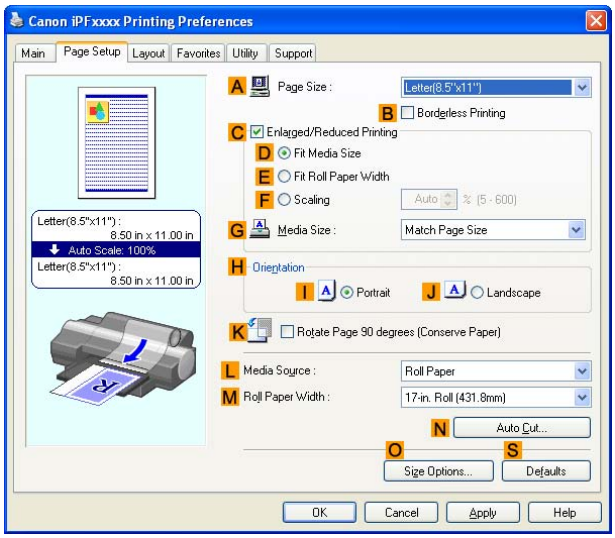
This topic describes how to print four pages of originals together on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

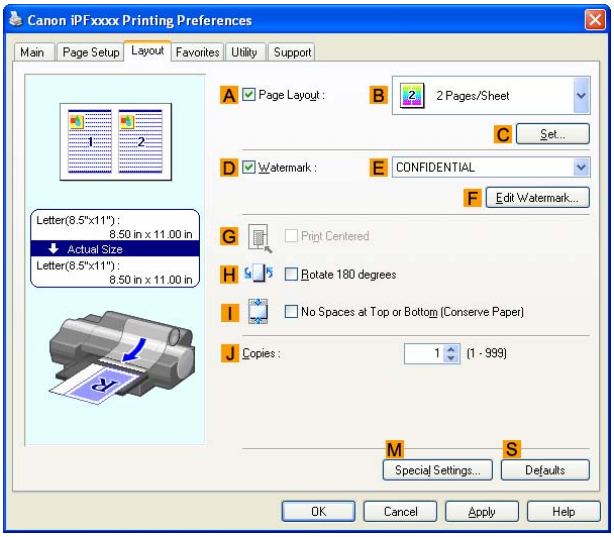
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
11. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the B **Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can select the layout order for placing four pages on a sheet and a frame border in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box by clicking C **Set**.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

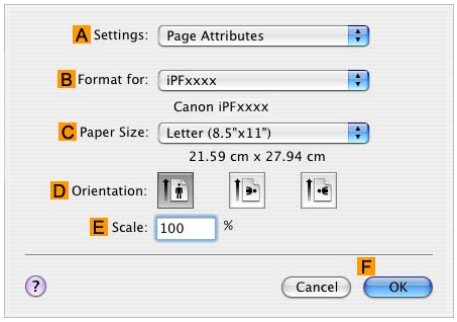
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X)

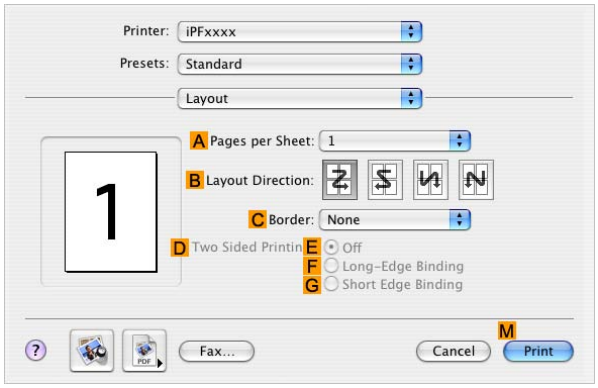
This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet, based on the following example.

- Document: Any Type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Layout** pane.

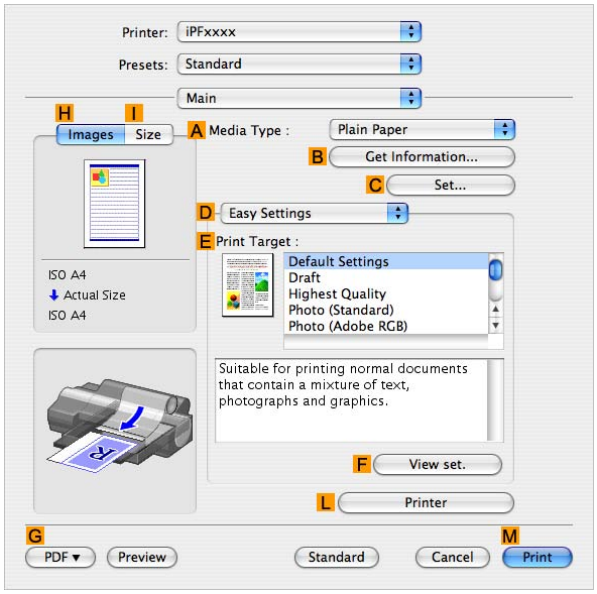


7. Click **4** in the A **Pages per Sheet** list.

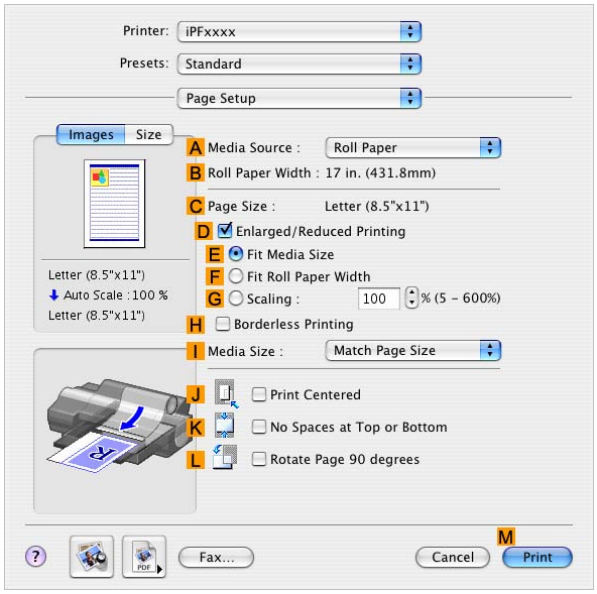
Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in B **Layout Direction** and C **Border** (or **Border**).

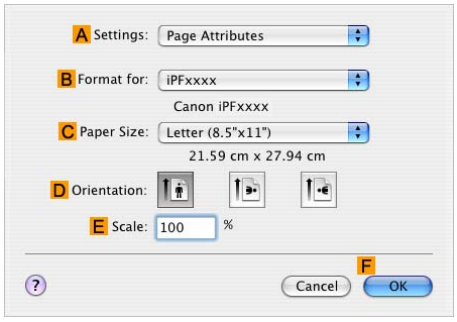
8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
10. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.
11. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



12. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
13. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

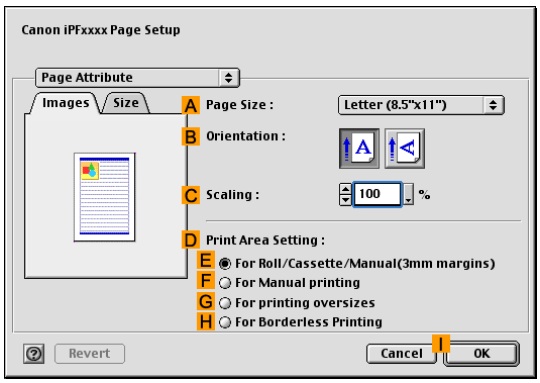
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9)

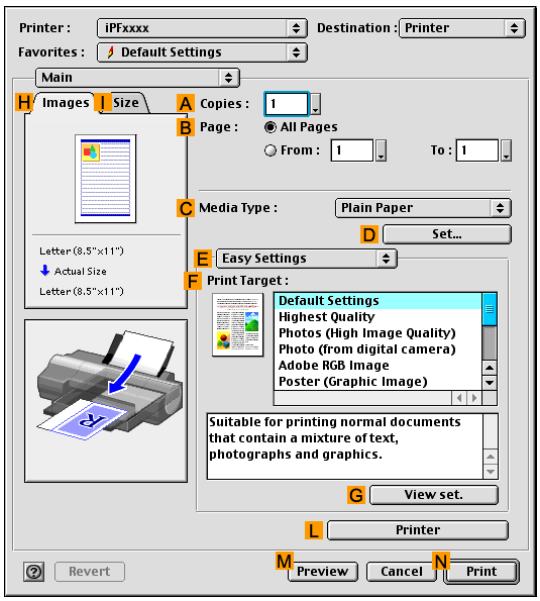
This topic describes how to print four pages of an original on a single sheet based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

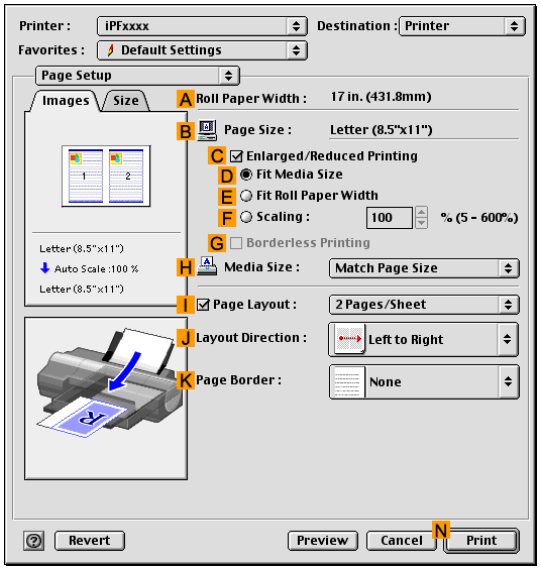


3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



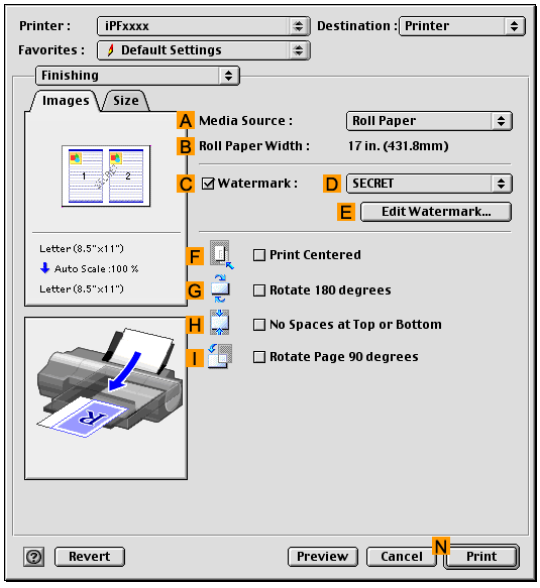
10. Select the **I Page Layout** check box.

11. Click **4 Pages/Sheet** in the **I Page Layout** list.

Note

- You can choose the layout order and specify a boundary line for the four pages in **J Layout Direction** and **K Page Border**.

12. Access the **Finishing** pane.



13. Click **Cassette** in the **A Media Source** list.

14. Confirm the print settings, and then click **N Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Centering originals

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls

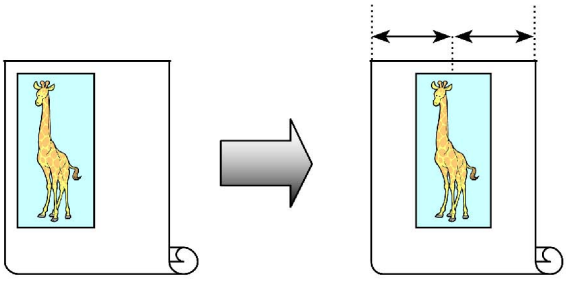
You can print originals centered on a page-for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals relative to roll paper width

If you use originals smaller than the roll paper width, you can center them relative to the width when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the roll, relative to the width.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on rolls, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) (→P.407)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) (→P.409)
- Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) (→P.412)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets

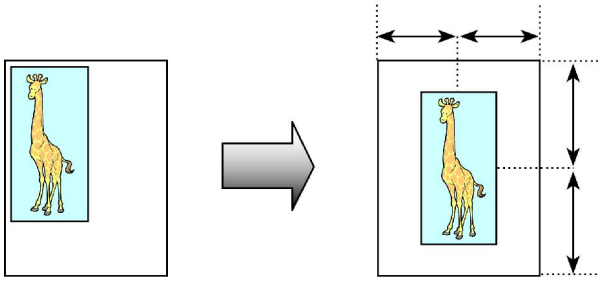
You can print originals centered on a page-for example, if the paper is larger than the original, or if you are reducing the original.

Centering originals on sheets

If you use paper larger than the original size or print originals after reduction, the printed images may be aligned in the upper-left corner of the paper. In this case, you can center originals on sheets when printing.

Print Centered

Aligns the center of the original with the center of the sheet.



For instructions on centering originals when printing on sheets, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

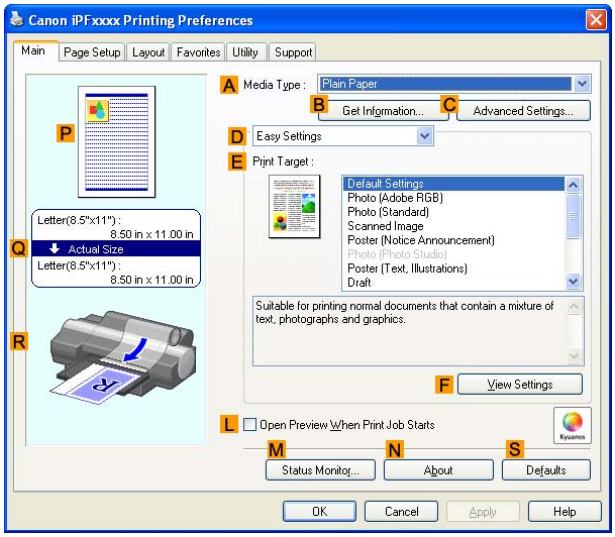
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) (→P.415)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) (→P.417)
- Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) (→P.419)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows)

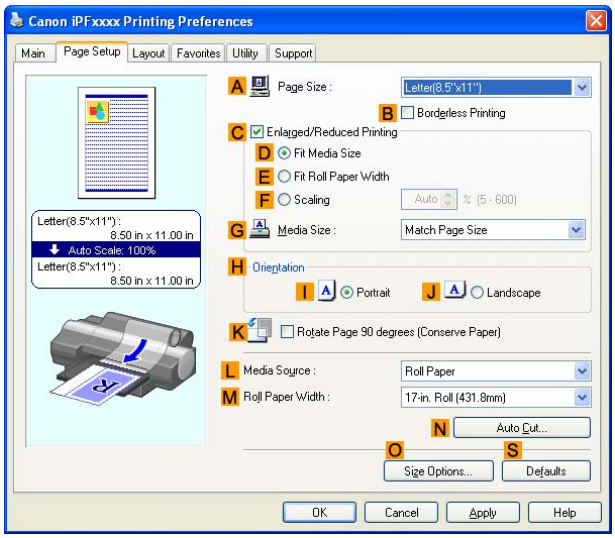
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

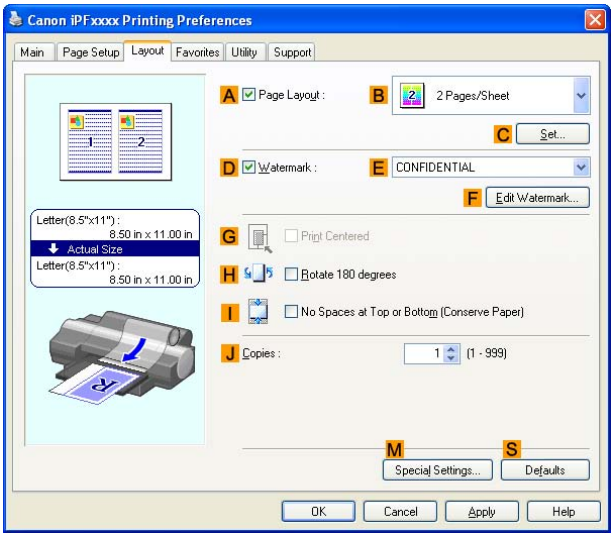
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
10. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



11. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

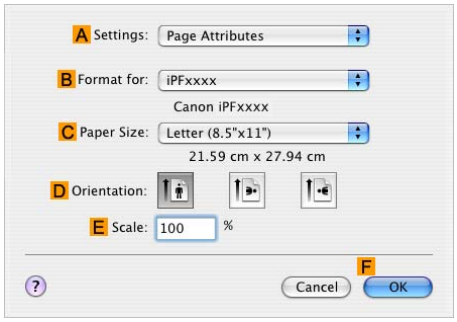
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X)

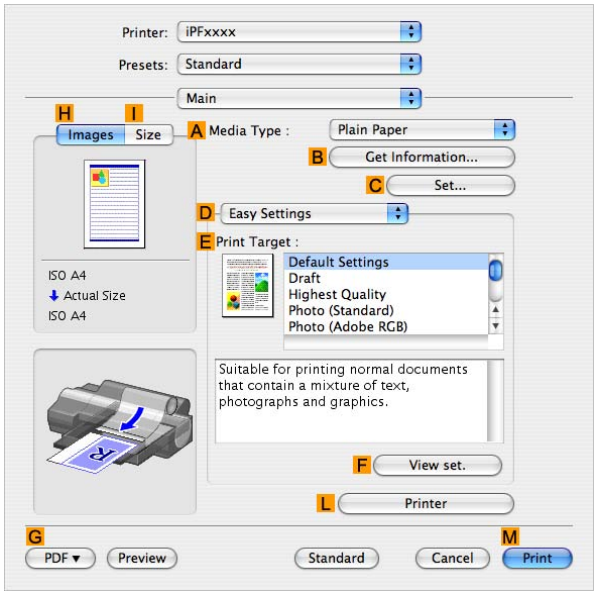
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.00 mm [11.7 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

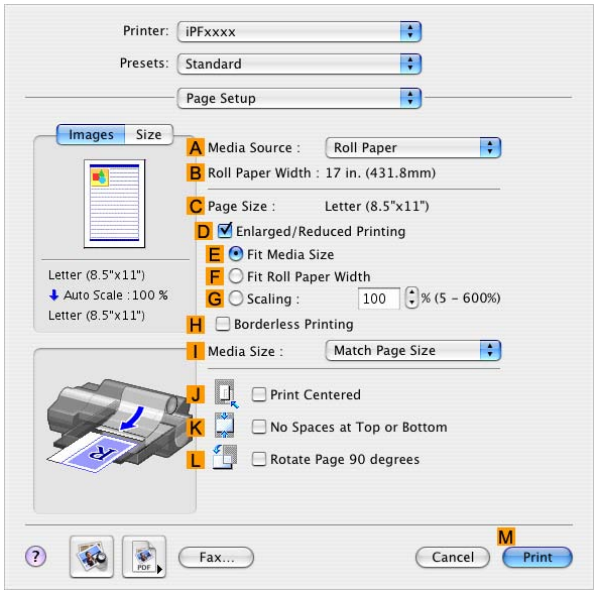


2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the E **Print Target** list.

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

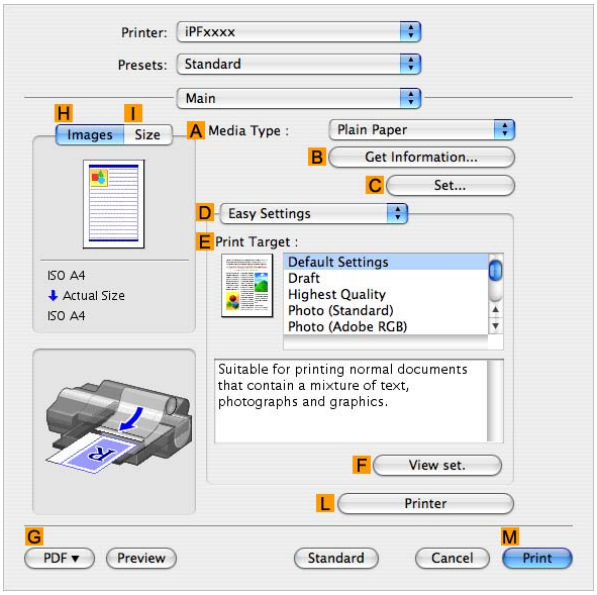


10. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

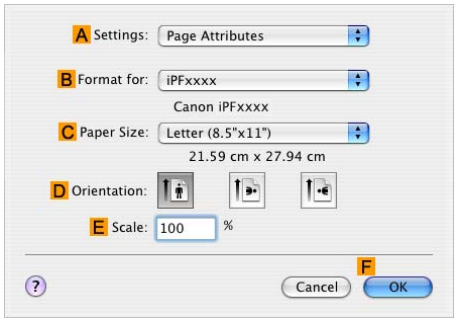
11. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **10-in. Roll**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



12. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.

14. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

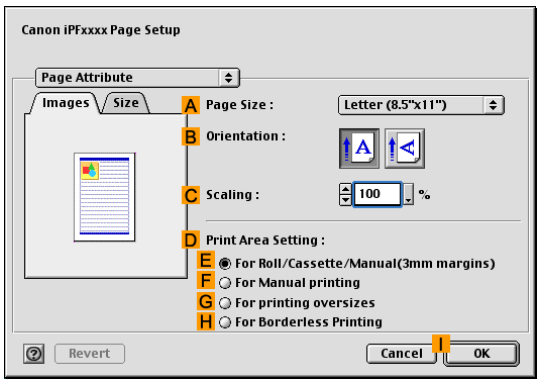
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9)

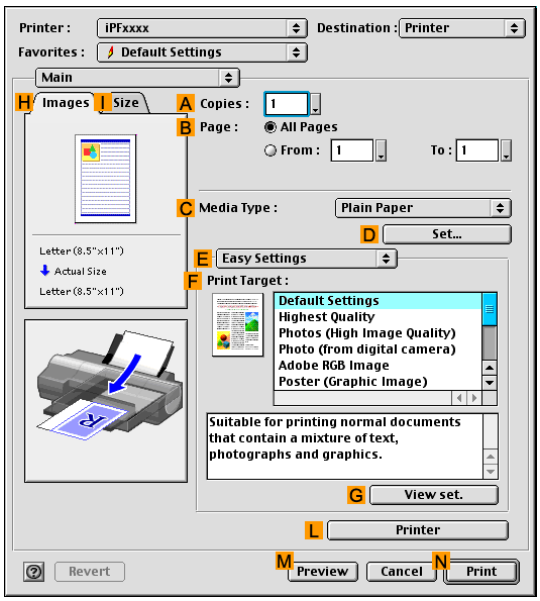
This topic describes how to center originals before printing on rolls based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

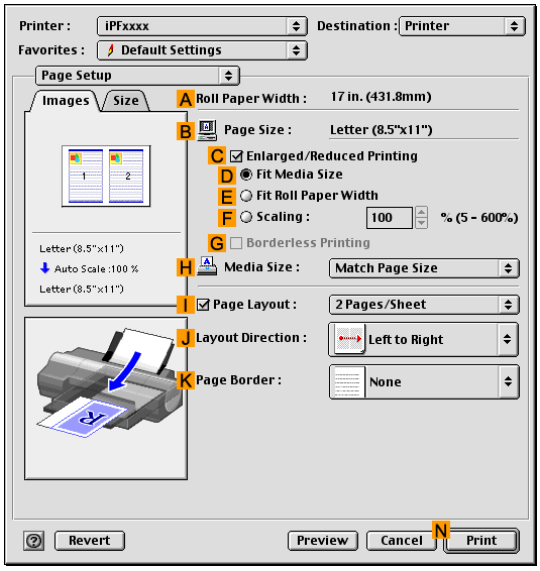


3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

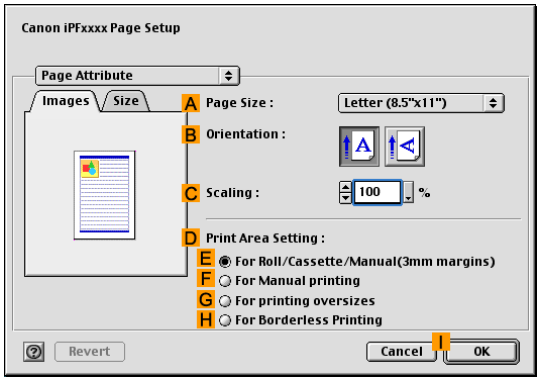


7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Select the print target in the F **Print Target** list.

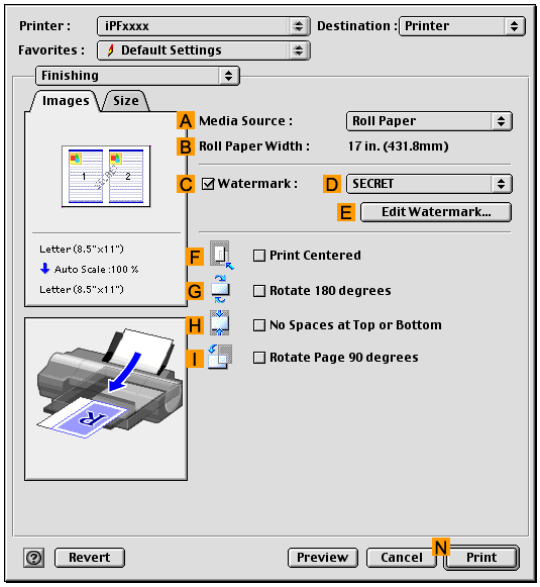
9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Make sure the **B** **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in **A** **Page Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



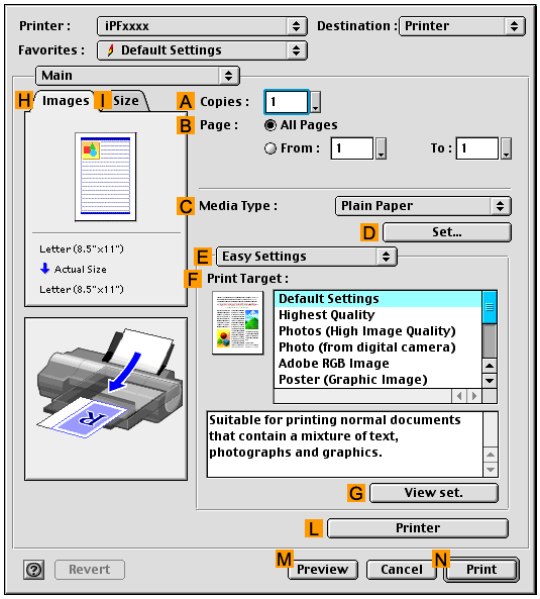
11. Access the **Finishing** pane.



12. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
13. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



14. Select the F **Print Centered** check box.
15. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

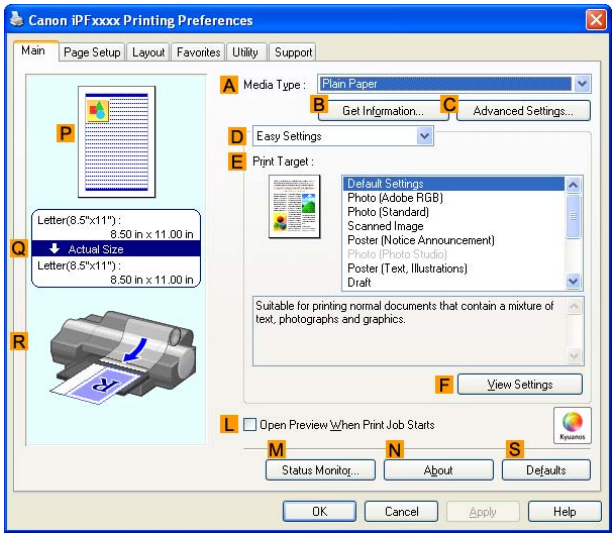
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows)

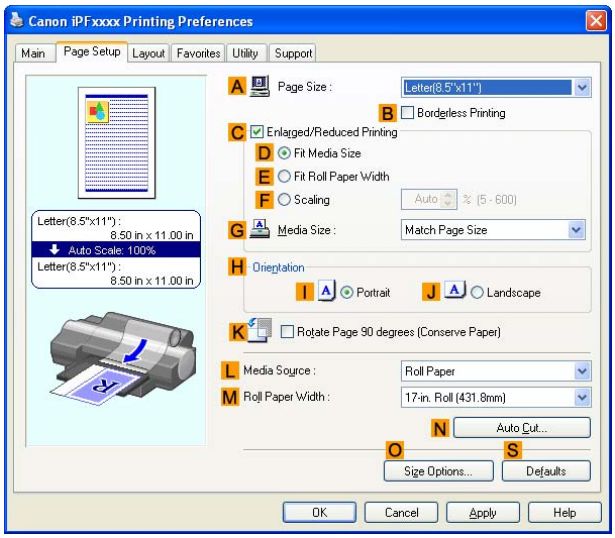
This topic describes how to reduce an original 50% for printing centered on a sheet.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

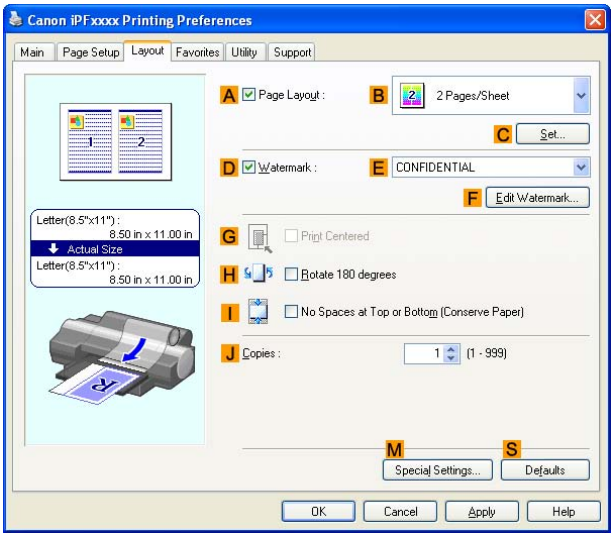
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application software. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Select the C **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** check box.
9. Click **Match Page Size** in the G **Media Size** list.
10. Click F **Scaling** and enter “50.”
11. Click **Manual** in the L **Media Source** list.
12. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



13. Select the G **Print Centered** check box.
14. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Important

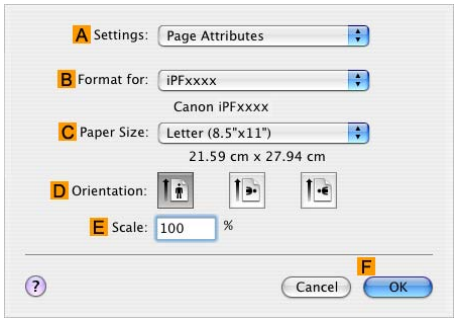
- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X)

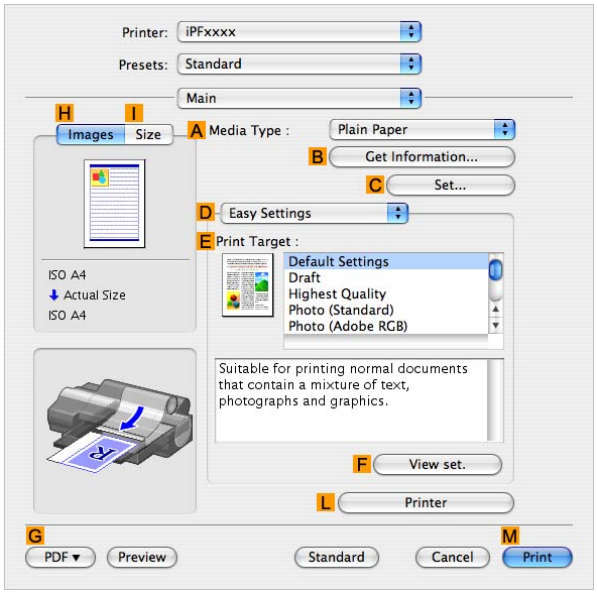
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

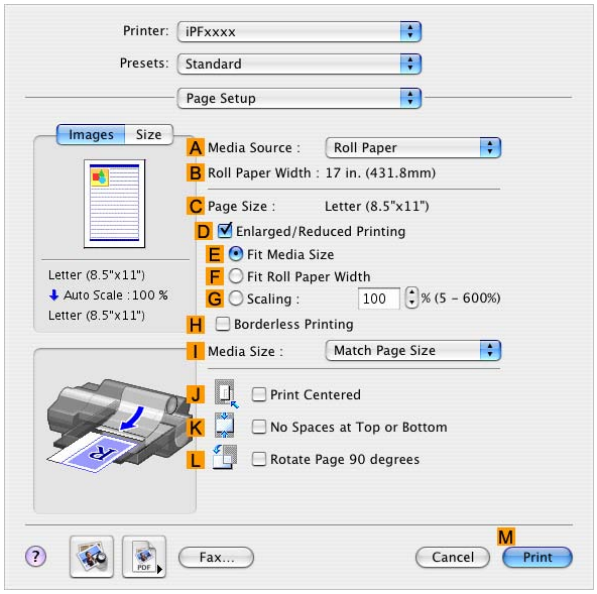


2. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the application software menu, choose **Print**.
5. Access the **Main** pane.

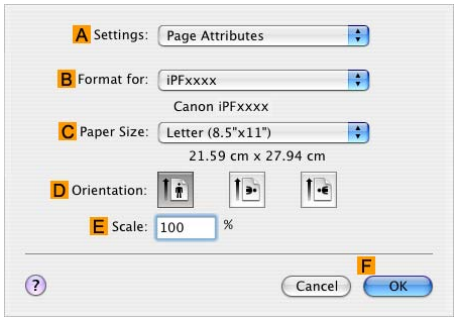


6. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Click **Manual** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



11. Select the J **Print Centered** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Important

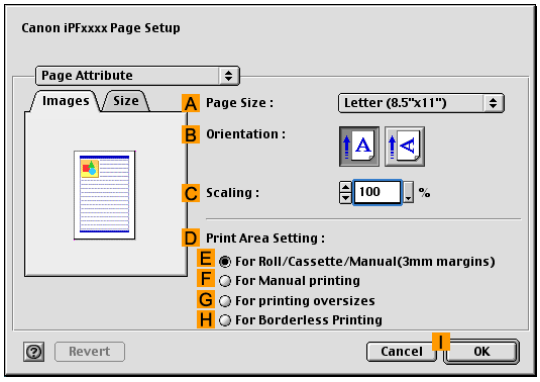
- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9)

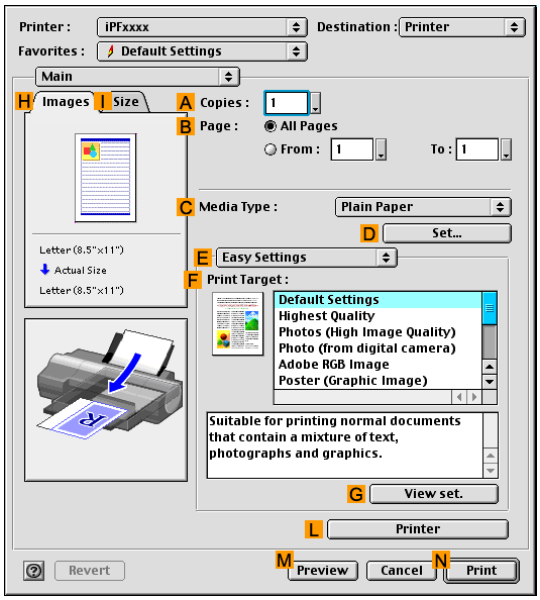
This topic describes how to center originals for printing on sheets, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4/Letter
- Paper: Sheets (**Manual**)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: Non-standard

1. Choose **Page Setup** from the source application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

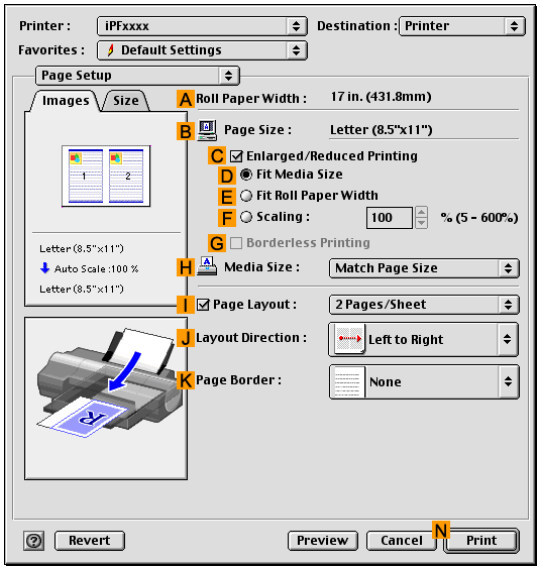


2. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
3. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
4. In the source application menu, choose **Print**.
5. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

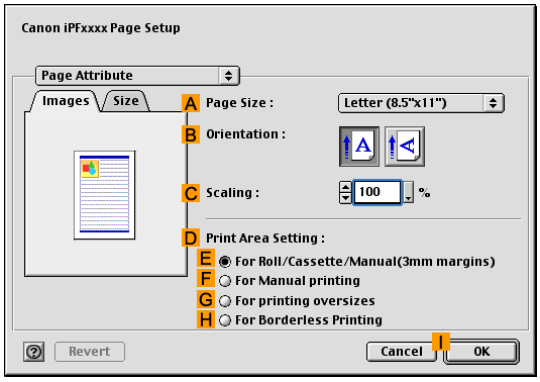


6. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
7. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

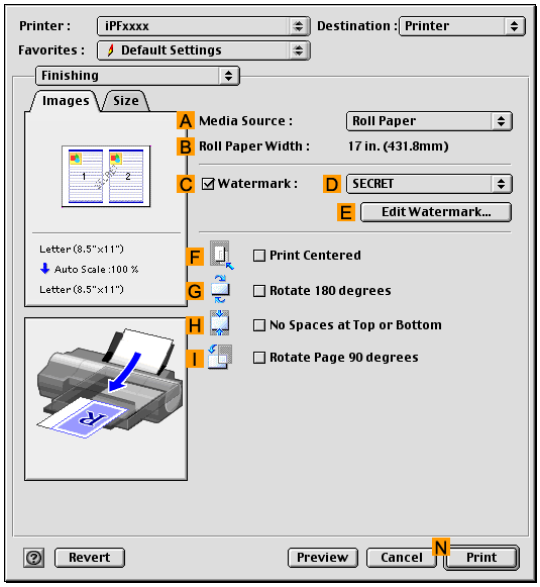
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



9. Make sure **B** **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in **Page Setup** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Manual** in the A **Media Source** list.
12. Select the F **Print Centered** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Important

- If you have selected **Cut Sheet** as the media source, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to enter the paper size.
- If you have selected **Manual** as the media source but have not loaded the paper yet, follow the instructions on the printer control panel to complete the size setting before loading the paper.

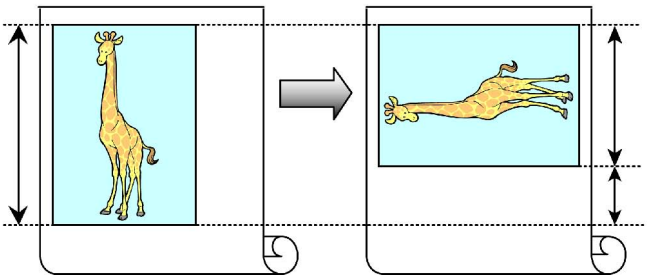
Conserving roll paper

Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)

When originals are printed in portrait orientation, the original is rotated 90 degrees before printing if it fits within the roll width. This enables you to conserve paper.



Important

- If the page would exceed the roll paper width after rotation, use this function with Scale to fit Roll Paper Width to print rotated pages.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

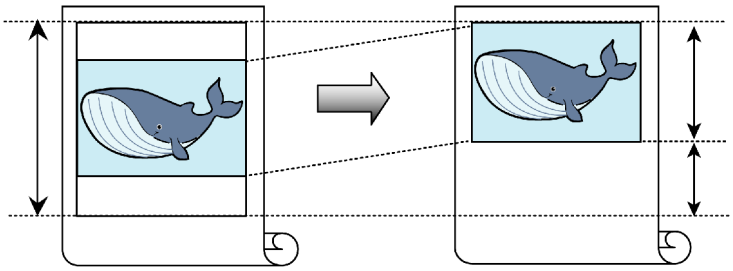
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows) (→P.431)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) (→P.433)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) (→P.436)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins

You can conserve roll paper by specifying particular settings as suitable for your original.

No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)

You can print without feeding the paper for blank portions of originals if there are top and bottom margins in originals. This enables you to conserve as much paper as the size of the margins.



Important

- Printing without the top and bottom margins is not supported in the following cases.
  - Banner printing
  - If you have chosen poster as the type of page layout

Note

- Even during borderless printing, you can print without the top and bottom margins.
- Printing without the top and bottom margins may cause inconsistency in the size of printed documents, depending on the layout of images or text in your originals.

For tips on conserving roll paper, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

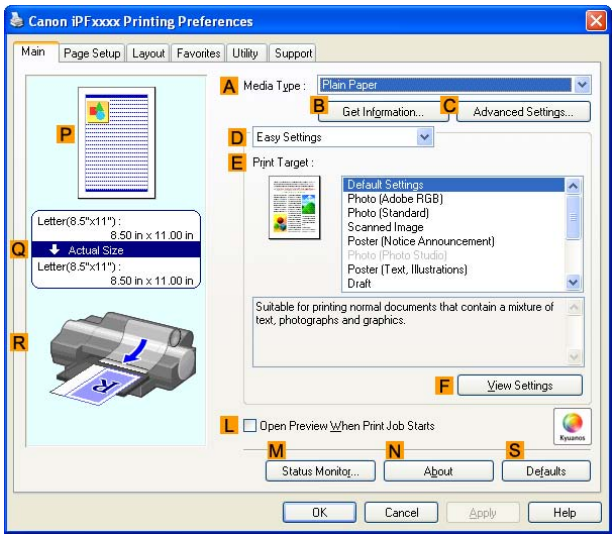
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) (→P.424)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X) (→P.426)
- Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) (→P.429)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows)

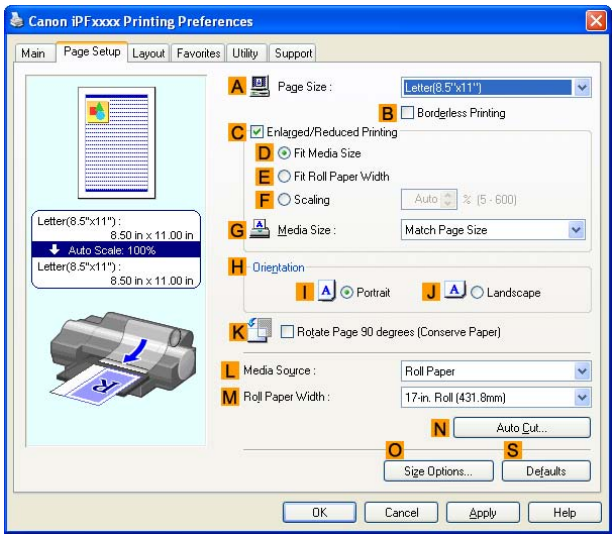
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

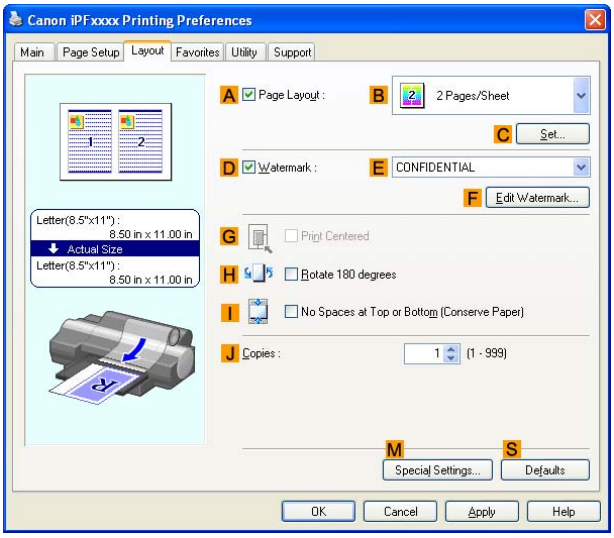
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the I **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)** check box.
11. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

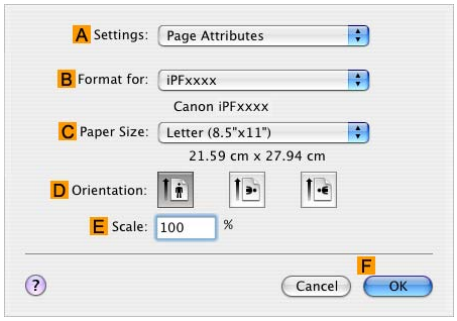
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)

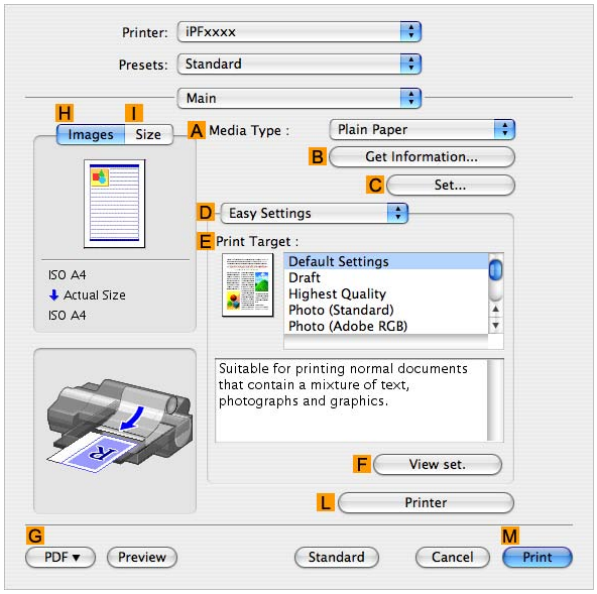
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

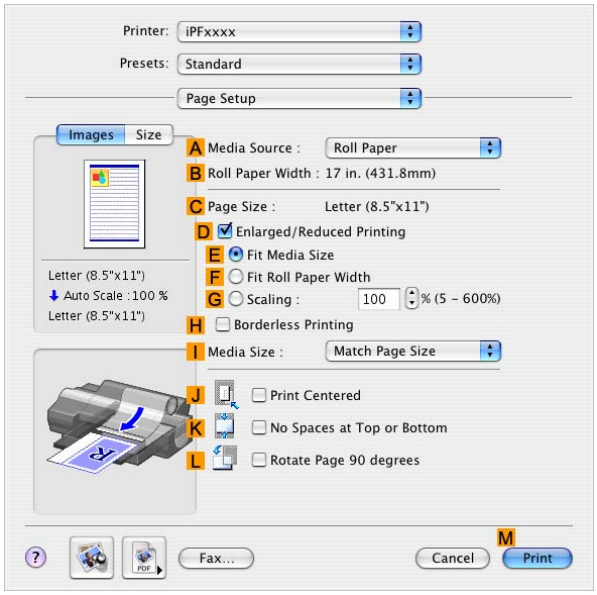
1. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the print target in the B **Format for** list.
3. In C **Paper Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



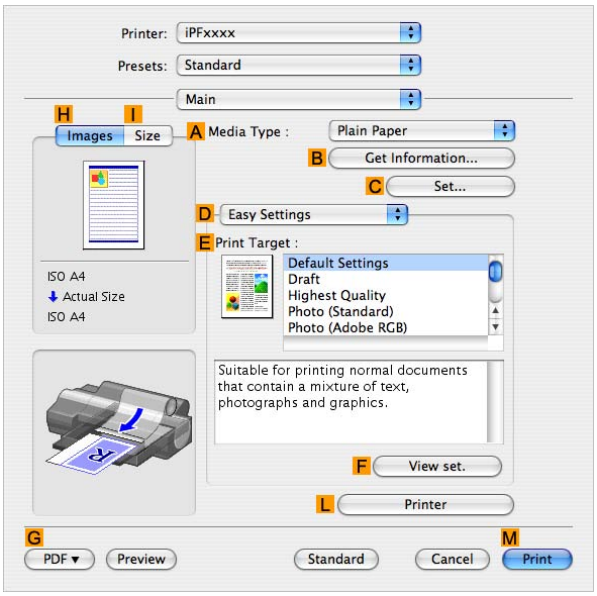
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



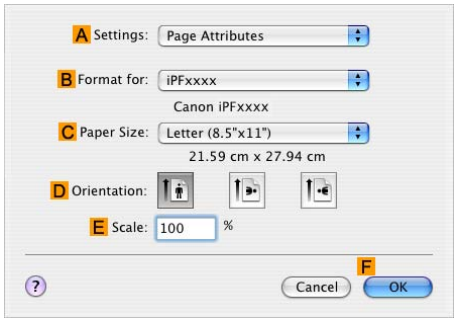
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

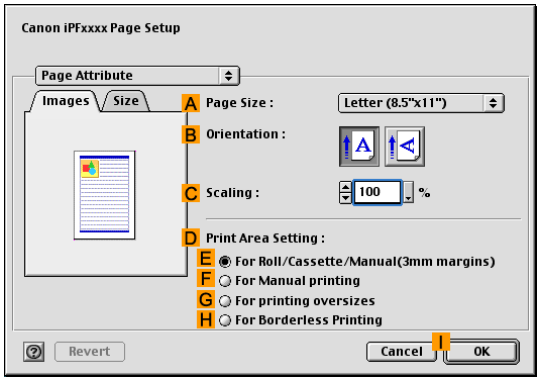
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9)

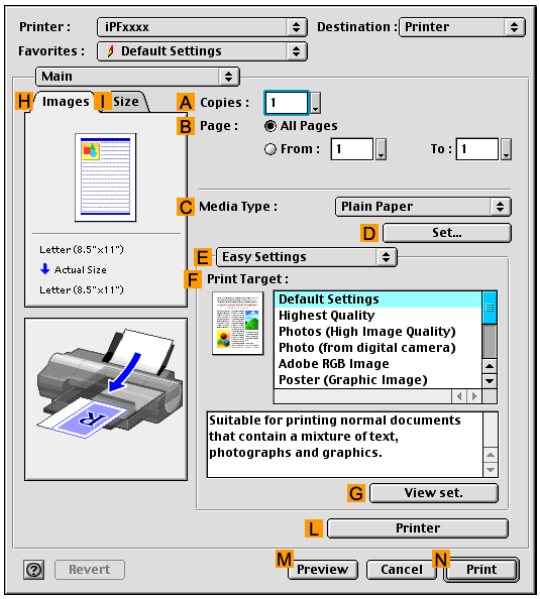
This topic describes how to conserve roll paper when printing originals that have a top and bottom margin, based on the following example.

- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

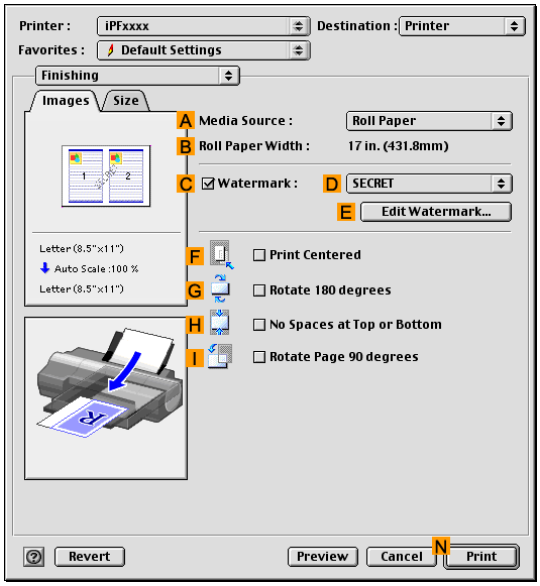


3. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

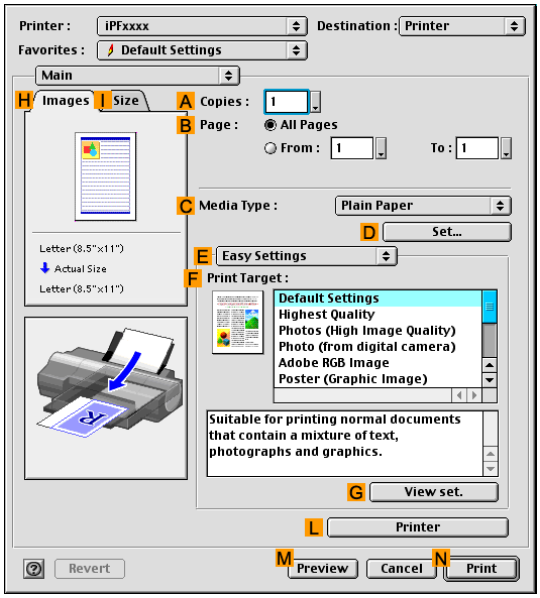
8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the H **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

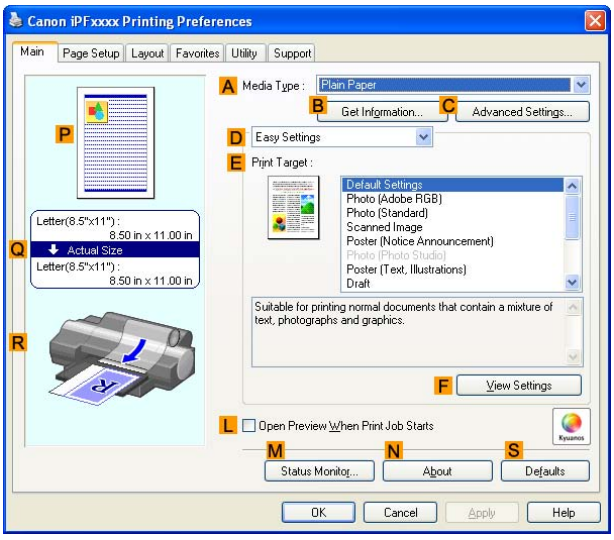
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)

This topic describes how to conserve paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

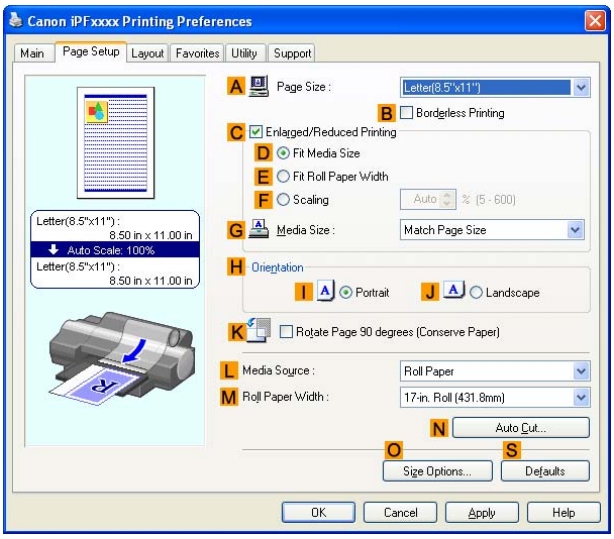
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3×11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll paper (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



6. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
7. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
8. Select the width of the loaded roll in the M **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 Roll (297.0mm)**.
9. Select the K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** check box.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

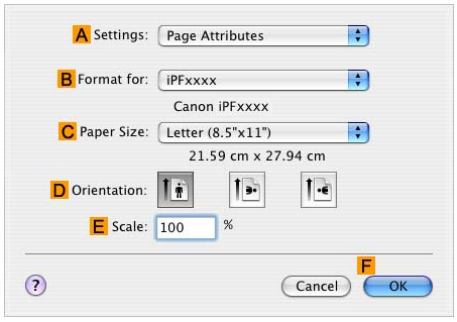
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

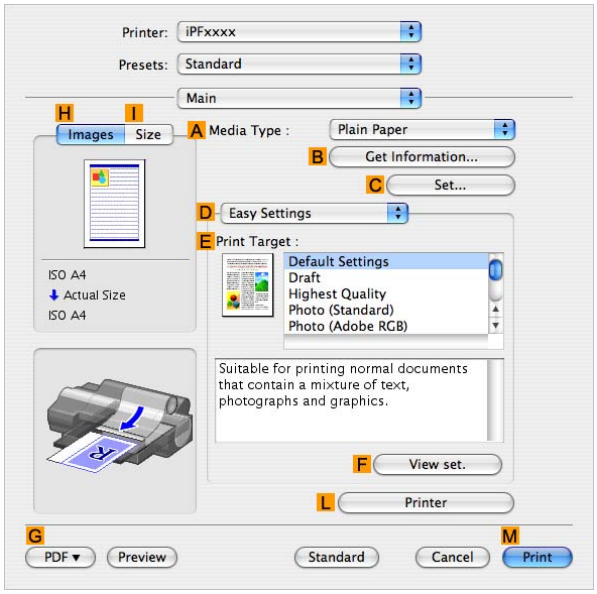
- Document: Any type
- Page Size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll paper width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

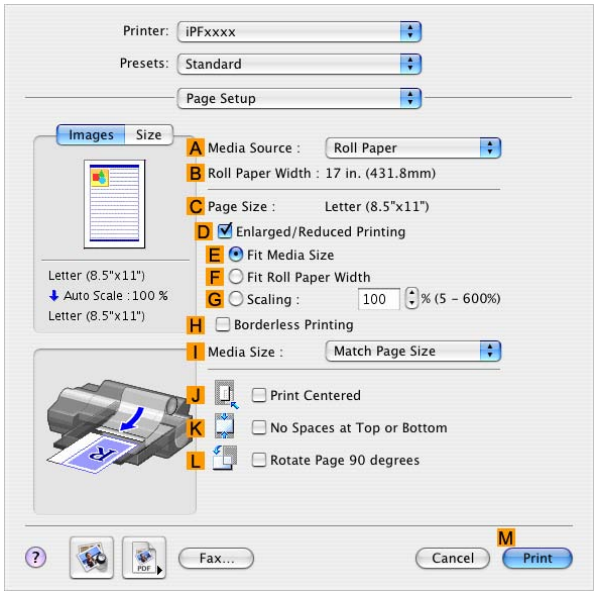
1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



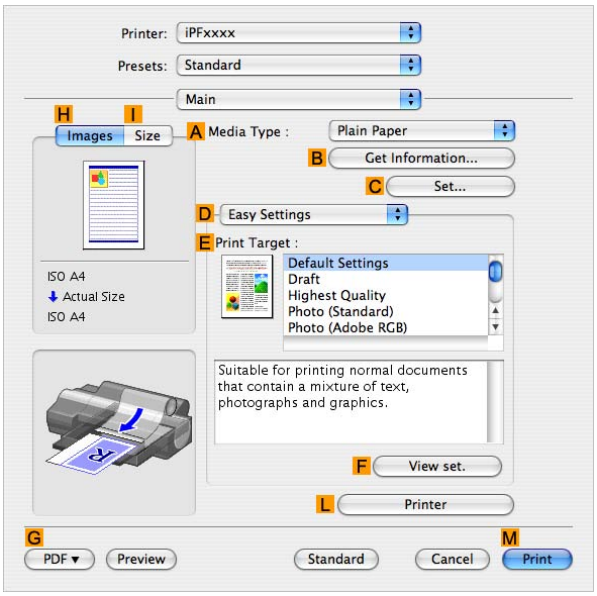
7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



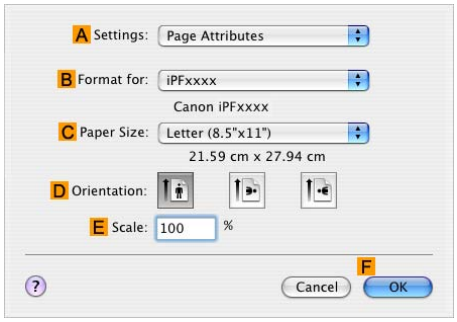
9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in B **Roll Paper Width** -in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Make sure the C **Page Size** setting matches the original size as selected in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



12. Select the L **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.

13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

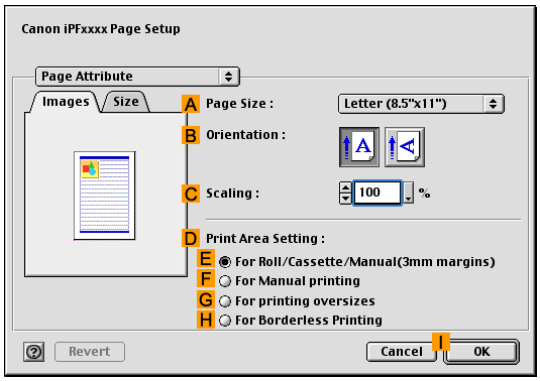
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to conserve roll paper by rotating originals 90 degrees before printing, based on the following example.

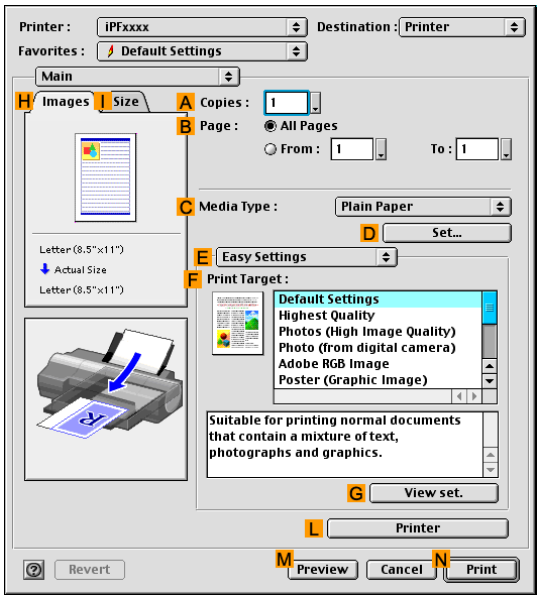
- Document: Any type
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Roll width: A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in])

This example illustrates how to rotate an A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in) original in portrait orientation 90 degrees to fit within the width of A3/A4 roll (297.0 mm [11.7 in]), which enables you to conserve paper.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

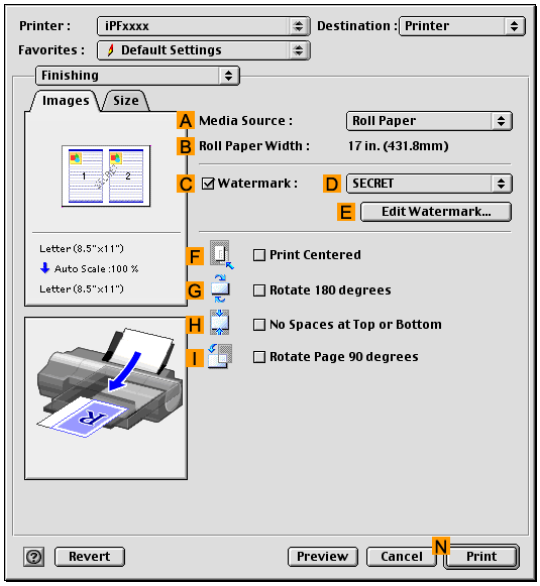


3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.

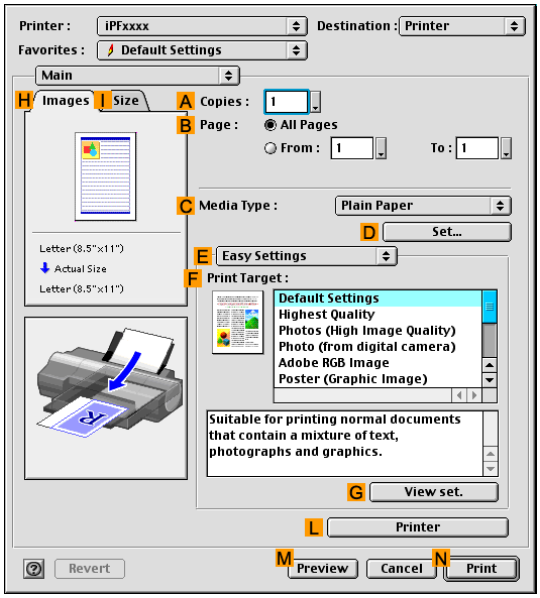
8. Access the **Finishing** pane.



9. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
10. Make sure the width of the loaded roll is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-in this case, **ISO A3/A4 (297.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



11. Select the I **Rotate Page 90 degrees** check box.
12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing CAD Drawings

Printing CAD Drawings

Using this printer, you can print fine lines and text clearly and sharply. It's easy to produce highly precise drawings from CAD applications.
For instructions on CAD printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

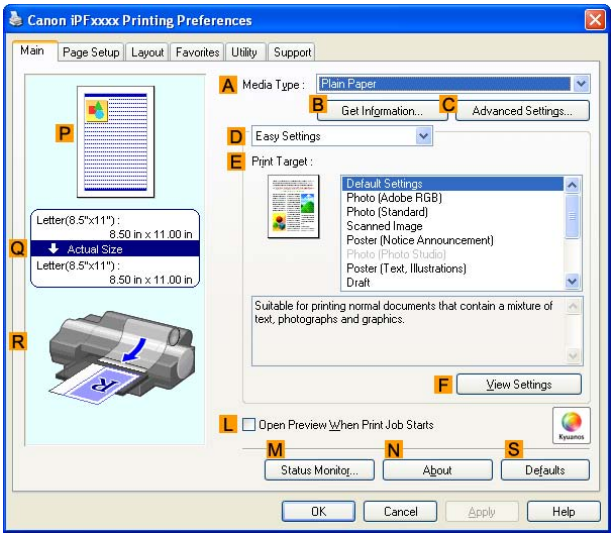
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) (→P.439)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X) (→P.441)
- Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.443)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows)

This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

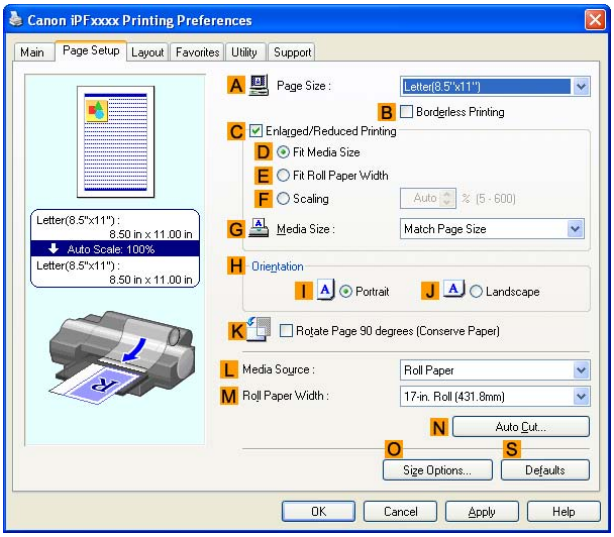


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
8. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Specify additional printing conditions.
   For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Windows)”. (→P.465)
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

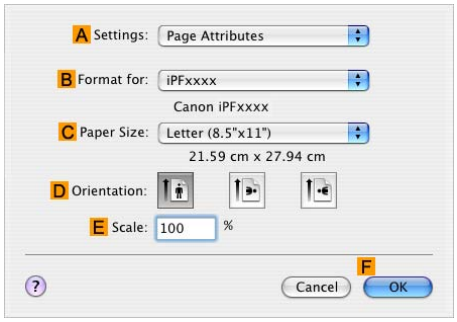
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X)

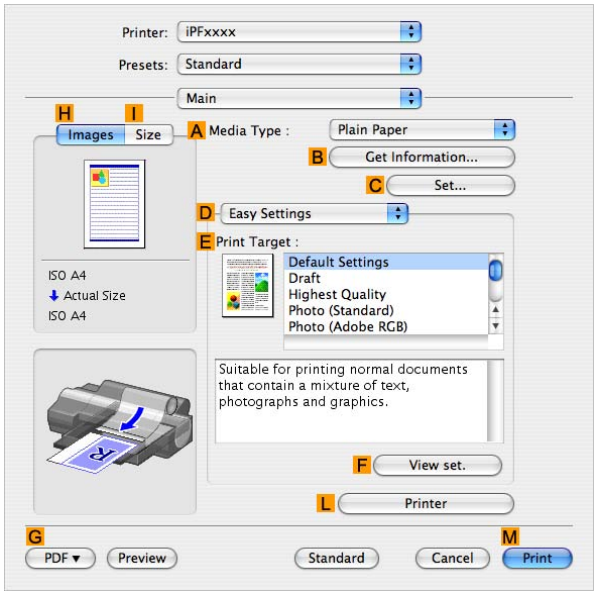
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A3**.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Main** pane.

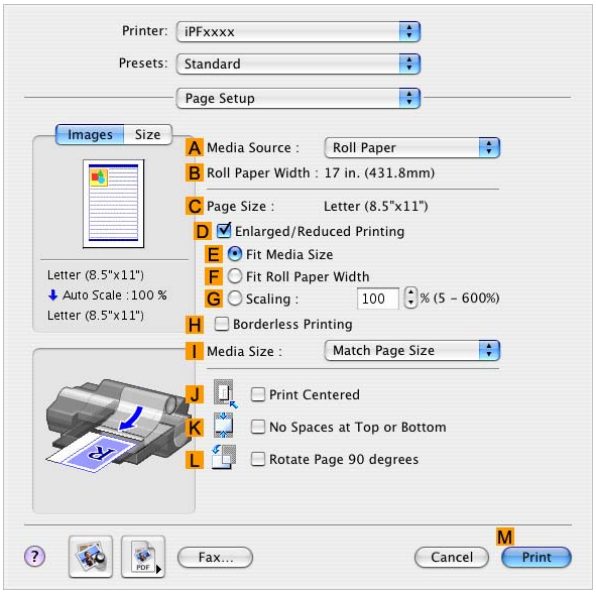


7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** in the E **Print Target** list.

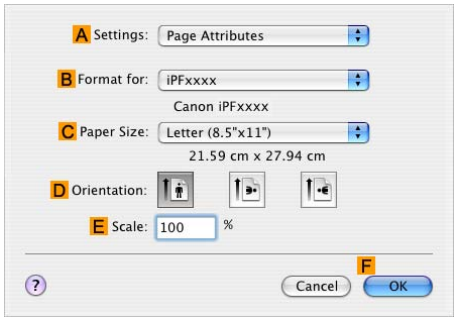
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View set.**

9. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.
11. Make sure C **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** pane shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A3**.



12. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.516)
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

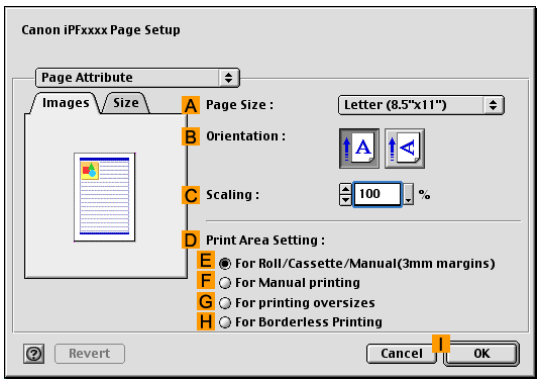
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9)

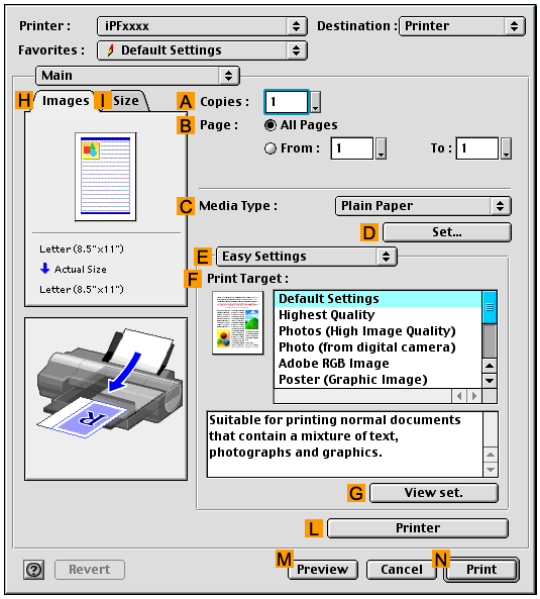
This topic describes how to print line drawings based on the following example.

- Document: CAD drawing
- Page Size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A3 (297.0×420.0 mm [11.7 × 16.5 in])

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

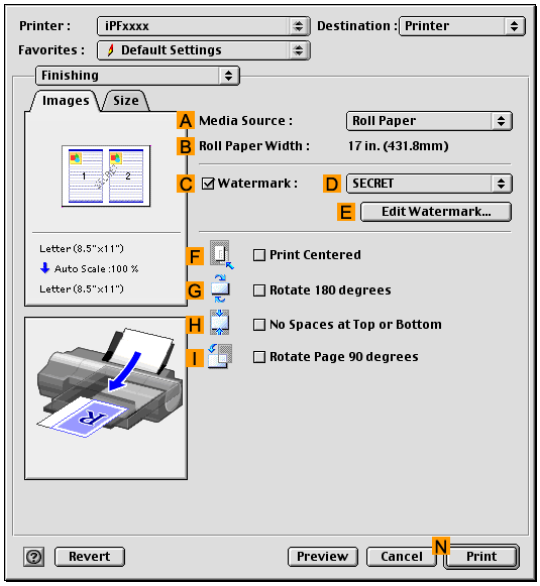


7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **CAD (Line Drawing)** or **CAD (Monochrome Line Drawing)** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.

11. Specify additional printing conditions.

For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

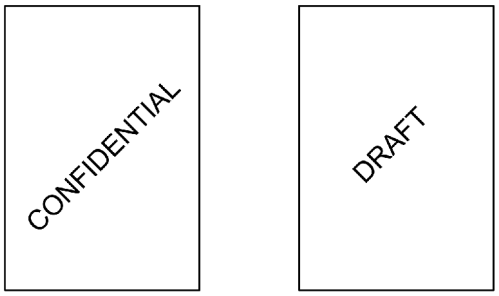
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Other useful settings

Printing With Watermarks

You can add watermarks (background images) to documents that require special handling.



Watermark

Watermarks are applied to all pages of your document.

Important

- Watermarks are not printed if you select poster as the type of page layout.

The following watermarks are provided:

- CONFIDENTIAL (Windows)
- COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- DRAFT (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FILE COPY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- FINAL (Windows)
- PRELIMINARY (Windows and Mac OS 9)
- PROOF (Windows)
- TOP SECRET (Windows and Mac OS 9)

You can also create your own watermarks. Specify the following options to customize your watermark.

- Watermark string: Specify the font, size, color, and so on. Surround the watermark with a frame, if desired.
- Watermark position: Specify the position on the page, the angle, and so on.
- Watermark printing method: Specify whether to print the watermark superimposed or under the document image. You can also print the watermark only on the first page, if desired.

Note

- Watermarks are supported in Windows and Mac OS 9.
- In addition to the provided watermarks, you can create up to 50 original watermarks in Windows. In Mac OS 9, you can use up to 50 original watermarks including the watermarks provided.

For detailed instructions on printing with watermarks, refer to the following topics:

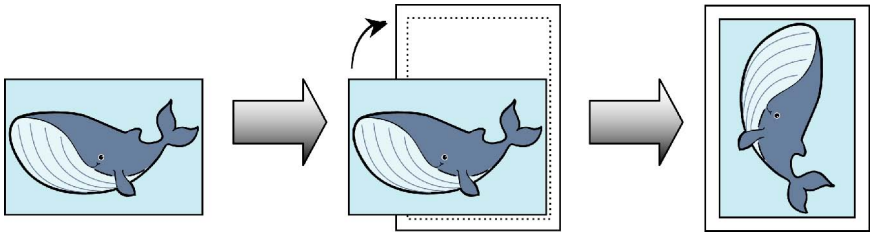
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) (→P.461)
- Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) (→P.463)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation

You can specify the original orientation to match the orientation of the paper for printing.

Orientation

Paper is usually loaded in the printer in portrait orientation. When you have an original in landscape orientation, you can specify the printing orientation so that the original is printed in landscape orientation.



Rotate 180 degrees

The original is rotated 180 degrees to print it upside down.

Mirror

A mirror image of the original is printed.

For instructions on specifying the original orientation before printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows) (→P.455)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) (→P.457)
- Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) (→P.459)

Using Favorites

You can register print settings as “favorites” to reuse settings from a particular job that met your expectations, or settings for a particular page size that you will use repeatedly.

Favorites

Registering a favorite for later use. You can choose the settings you have registered from a list before printing, and you can check the settings details.

Note

- You can also save the favorite settings as files. Using these files is a convenient way to print under the same conditions on another computer. (In Windows and Mac OS 9.)

For instructions on using favorites to print, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Using Favorites (Windows) (→P.472)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS X) (→P.530)
- Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) (→P.553)

Cutting Roll Paper After Printing

Roll paper can be automatically cut after printing.

Note

- It may not be possible to cut certain types of paper, such as adhesive paper. For details on types of paper that cannot be used with the auto cut feature, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Automatic Cutting

Roll paper is cut automatically after printing. If you prefer, you can print continuously without cutting the roll, or you can print a cut line.
For instructions on cutting roll paper after printing, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows) (→P.450)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.451)
- Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) (→P.453)

Printing from Photoshop

You can print images in the Adobe RGB color space that you have created in Photoshop, the Adobe Systems photo retouching application. Using the dedicated Photoshop printer driver plug-in (provided with the printer) makes it easy to print Adobe RGB images more attractively.

- Using the Plug-in to Print (→P.448)
- Using the Printer Driver to Print (→P.448)

Using the Plug-in to Print

The imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop is a dedicated plug-in provided with the printer that you can load in Photoshop and customize for your printing needs. By using the plug-in, you can print while preserving the 16-bit RGB data from Photoshop without losing the exceptional color gradations of original image. Some of the settings and customizations available in the plug-in are as follows.

- Automatic detection of the color space (sRGB or Adobe RGB) for automatic selection of the optimal profile. This feature eliminates the need to complete intricate settings when printing Adobe RGB images.
- Advanced gray adjustment, including adjustment of tone curves, in addition to an array of standard adjustments for color balance, brightness, contrast, highlight, and shadow.
- Fine-tune color tones in Photoshop while viewing a preview that accurately reproduces printing results.
- With print log management, you can save and load setting parameters from past print jobs.

Note

- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop for Windows and Macintosh are provided with the printer.

For instructions and details on which versions of Photoshop are compatible with the imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide (Windows)
- imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide (Macintosh)

Using the Printer Driver to Print

The printer driver offers the following settings and adjustments.

- Choose the standard sRBG color space or Adobe RGB as desired.
- Adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, saturation, and gray levels.

For instructions on using the printer driver to print Adobe RGB images created in Photoshop, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) (→P.489)
- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X) (→P.531)
- Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.555)

Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals

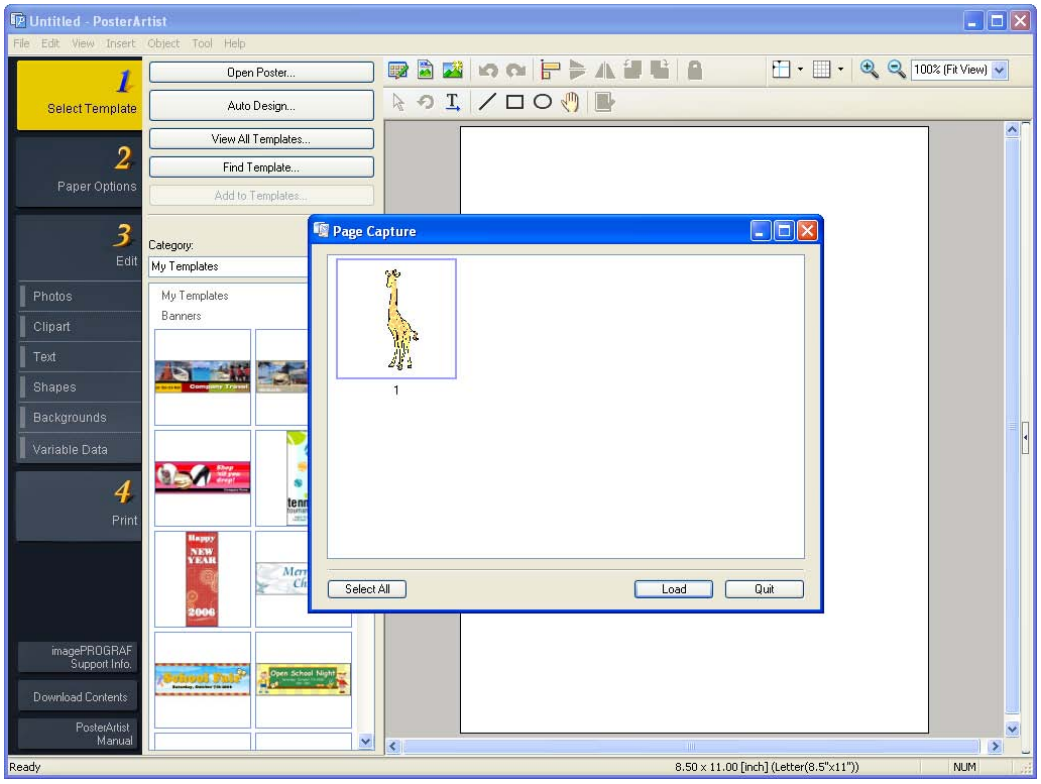
You can print a variety of source documents from word-processing or spreadsheet programs or screen shots from web browsers after composing an original with them using PosterArtist.

Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

Edit Using PosterArtist

PosterArtist offers a wide range of features, including features to insert source documents in posters and compose an original with them.



Important

- This function is only supported in Windows.

For detailed instructions on editing with PosterArtist, refer to the following topic:

- Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) (→P.487)

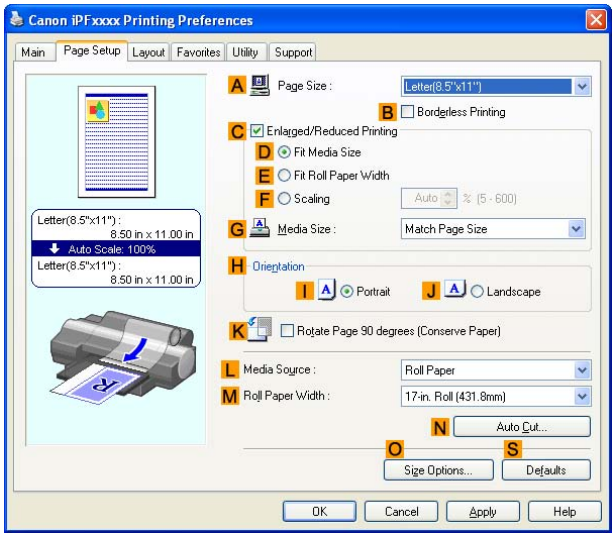
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

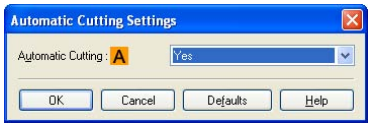
Note

- Auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function after it is disabled, or to change the setting for printing a cut line instead.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



4. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
5. Click N **Auto Cut** to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings**dialog box.



6. To enable automatic cutting, click **Yes** in the A **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.
8. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Roll paper will be automatically cut after printing.

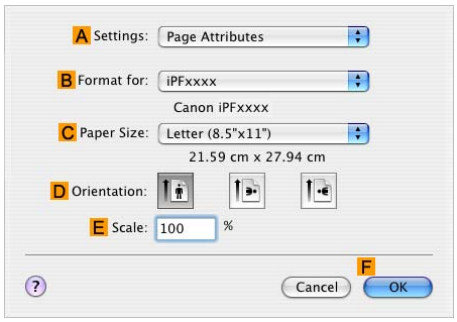
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

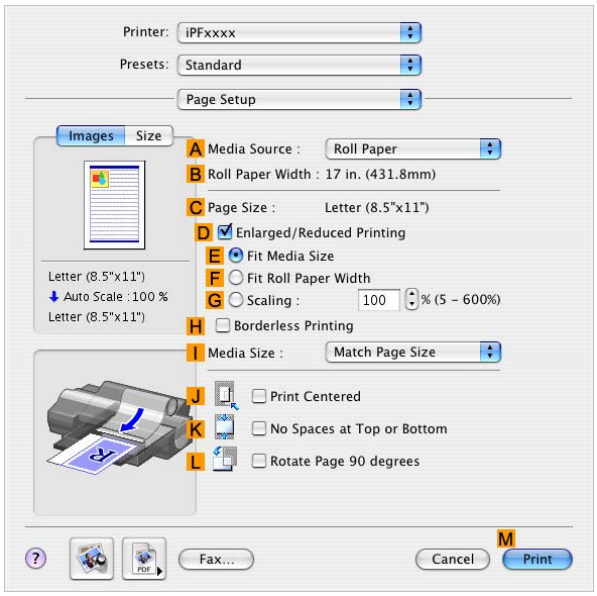
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

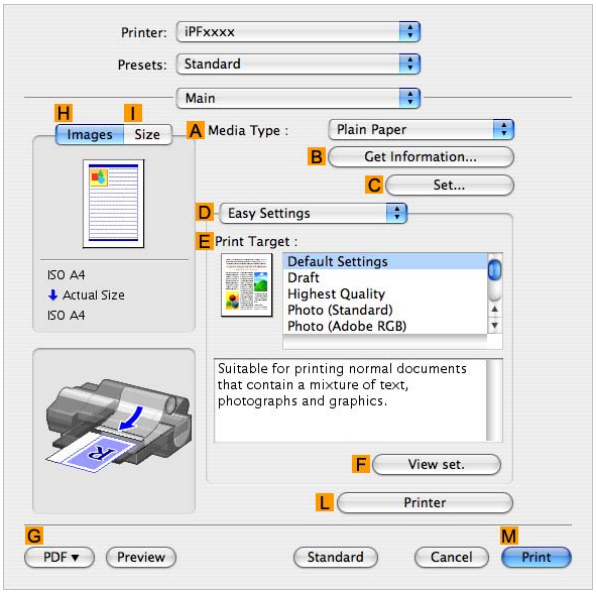


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. Choose the original size in the C **Paper Size** list.
4. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Page Setup** pane.

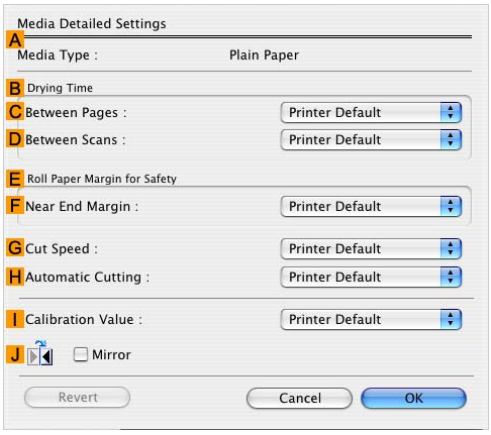


7. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click C **Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings**dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

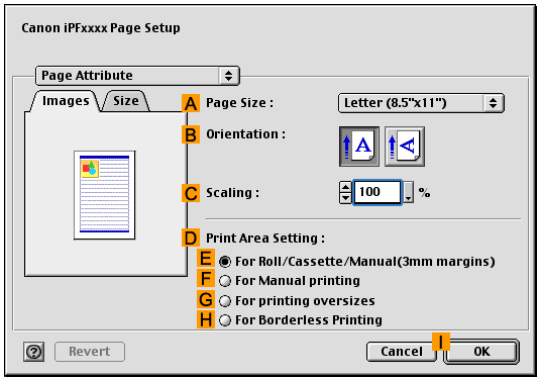
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to cut roll paper automatically (using the auto cut function) after printing, as well as how to print a cut line to cut the paper manually.

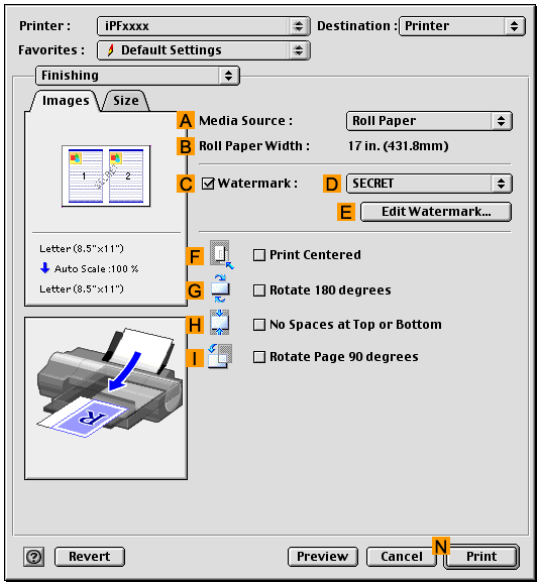
Note

- The auto cut function is activated on the printer by factory default and when the printer driver is installed. Follow the steps below to reactivate the function once disabled, or select the setting for printing a cut guideline instead.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

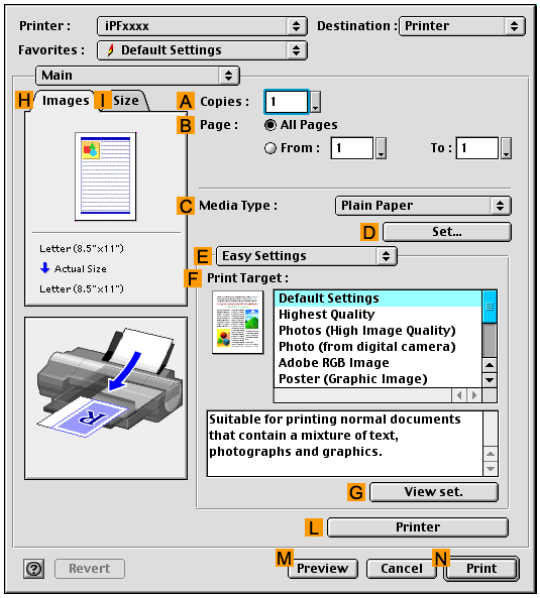


3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Access the **Finishing** pane.

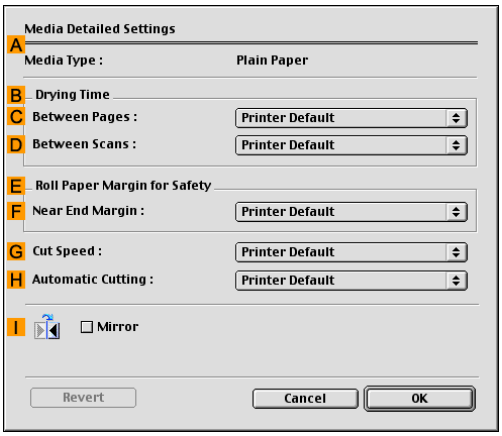


7. Make sure **Roll Paper** is selected in A **Media Source**.

8. Access the **Main** pane.



9. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded.
10. Click D **Set** to display the **Media Detailed Settings**dialog box.



11. To enable automatic cutting, click **Printer Default** in the H **Automatic Cutting** list. If you prefer to cut the paper later yourself, click **Print Cut Guideline**.

Important

- If the automatic cut function has been deactivated on the printer, change the auto cut setting on the printer Control Panel.

12. Click **OK** to close the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box.
13. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

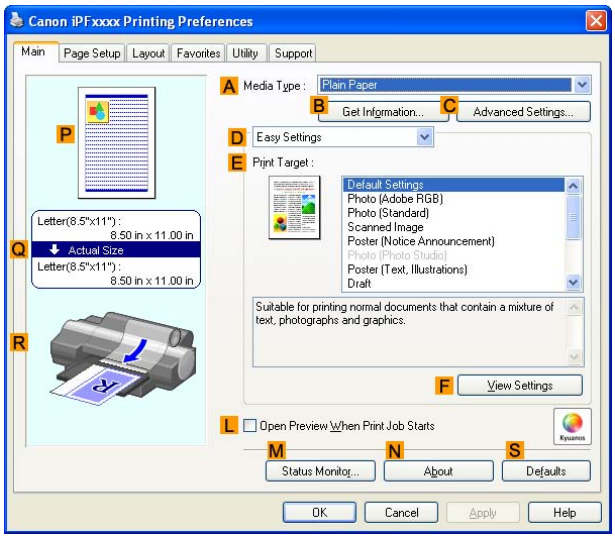
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)

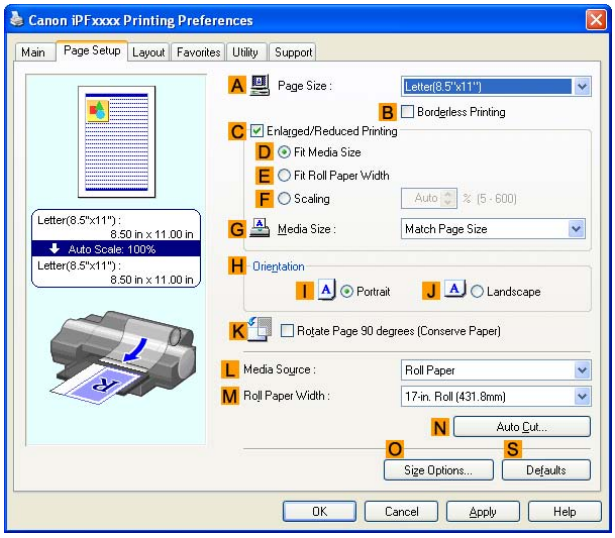
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. Select the type of document in the E **Print Target** list.
6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. In H **Orientation**, click J **Landscape**.
9. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
10. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

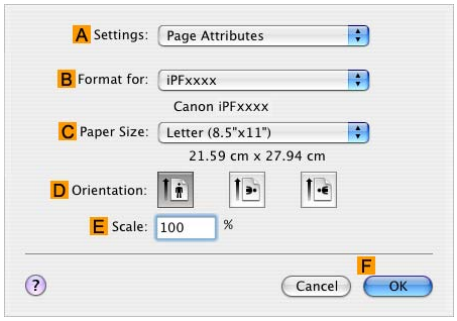
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X)

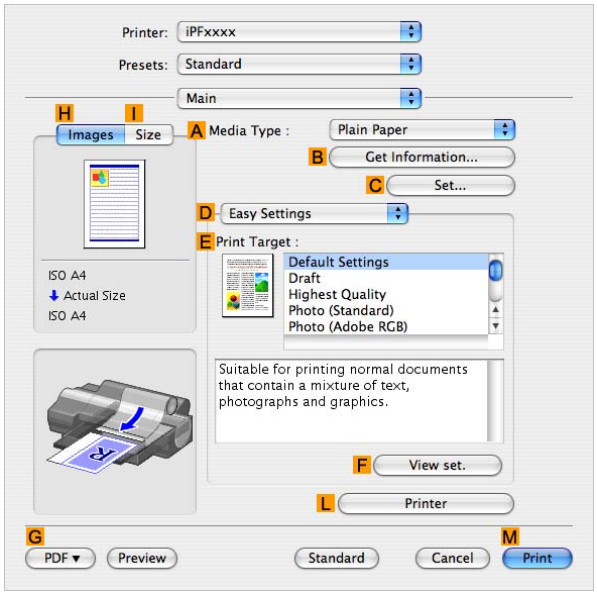
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

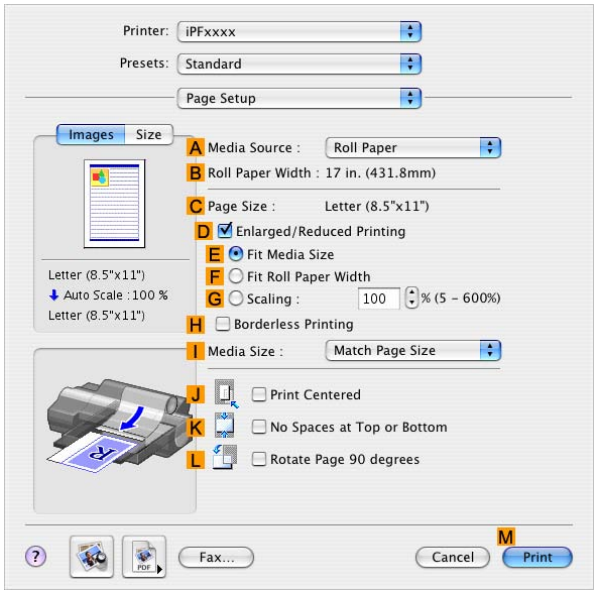


2. Select the printer in the B **Format for** list.
3. In the C **Paper Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In D **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click F **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Access the **Main** pane.



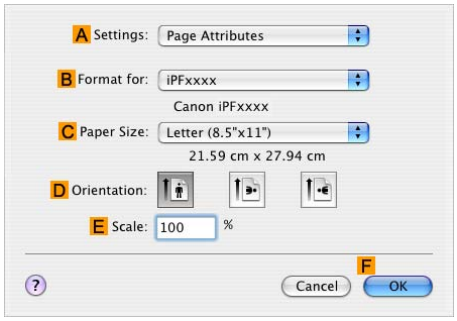
8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the E **Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



11. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.

12. Make sure C **Page Size** shows the original size as specified in C **Paper Size** in the **Page Attribute** dialog box-in this case, **ISO A4**.



13. Confirm the print settings, and then click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

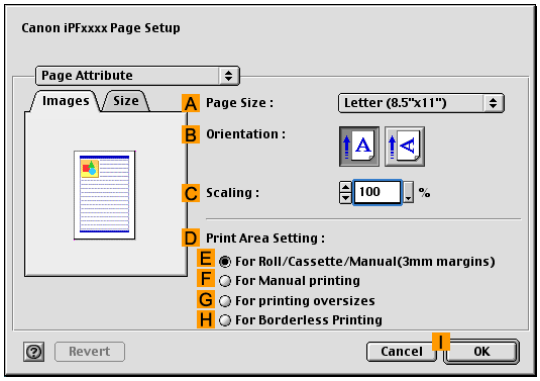
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9)

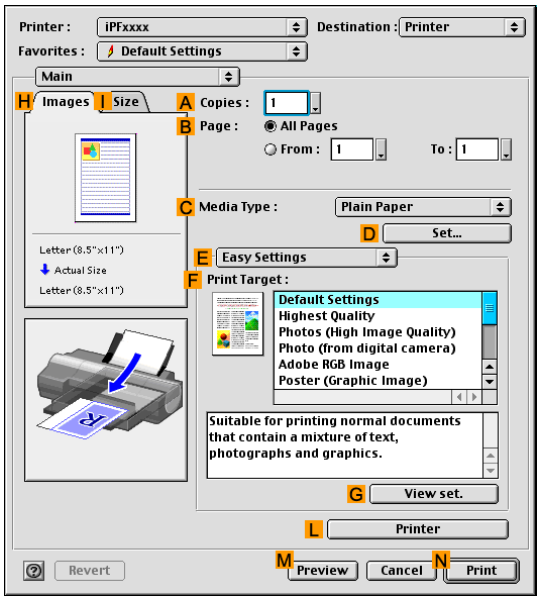
This topic describes how to print an original in landscape orientation after matching the paper orientation, based on the following example.

- Document: An original in landscape orientation
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.

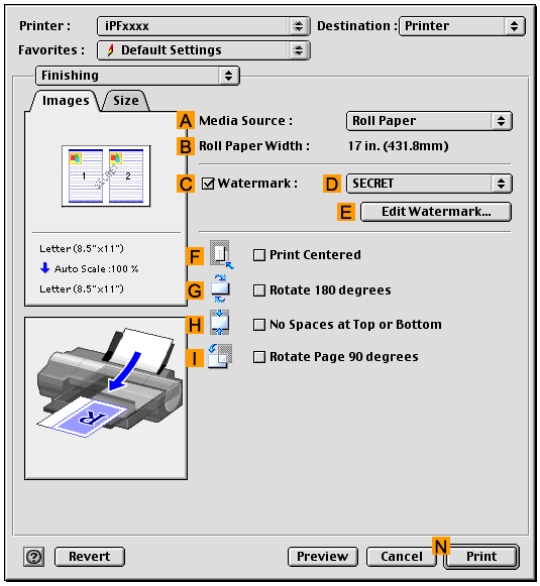


3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. In B **Orientation**, click the icon of the document in landscape orientation.
5. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
6. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
7. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



8. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
9. Select the printing application in the F **Print Target** list.

10. Access the **Finishing** pane.



11. Click **Cassette** in the A **Media Source** list.

12. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

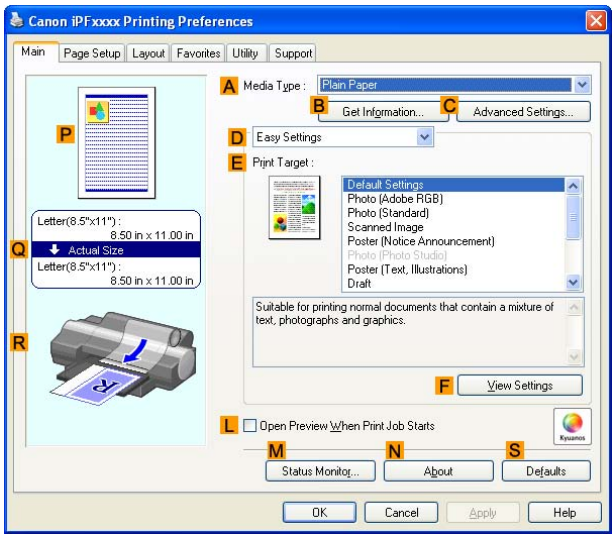
- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows)

This topic describes how to print office documents with a watermark (in this case, “FILE COPY”) based on the following example.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing software or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper Type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

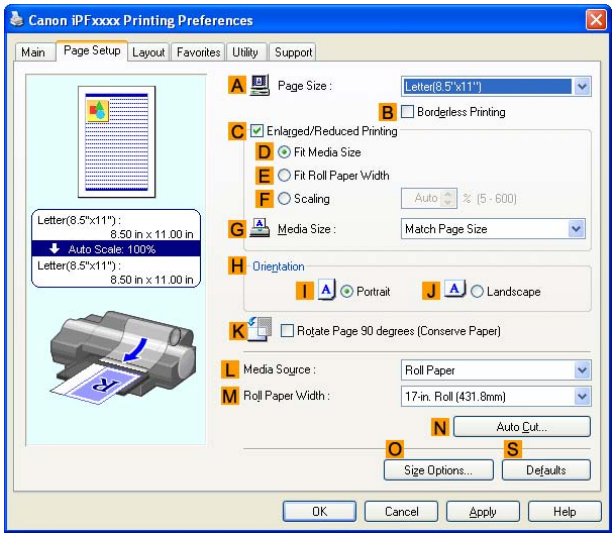


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
5. After confirming that D **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the E **Print Target** list.

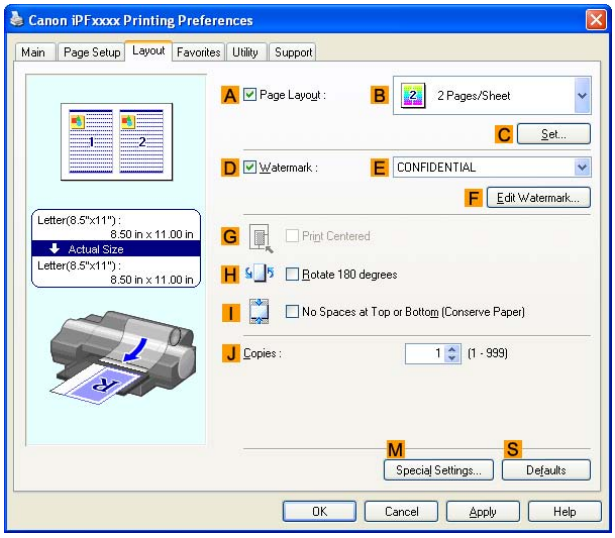
Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the E **Print Target** list by clicking F **View Settings**.

6. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



7. In A **Page Size**, click the size of the original as specified in the application. In this case, click **ISO A4** or **Letter (8.5"x11")**.
8. Click **Cassette** in the L **Media Source** list.
9. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



10. Select the D **Watermark** check box.
11. Click **FILE COPY** in the E **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click F **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

12. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

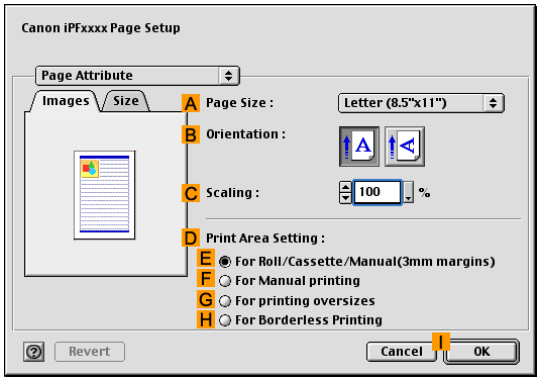
- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9)

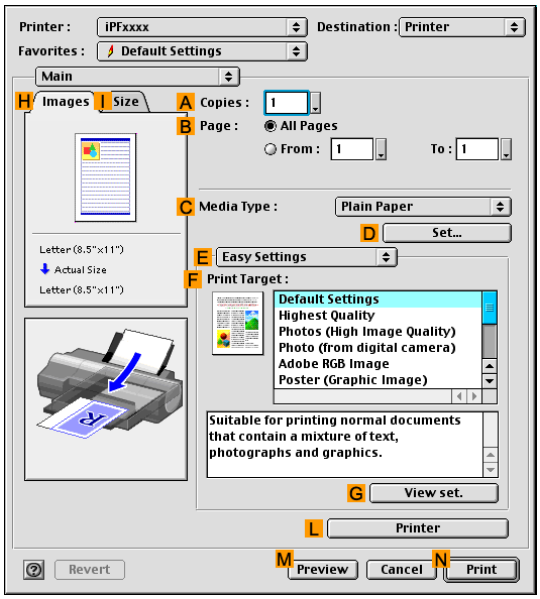
This topic describes how to print with watermarks, based on the following example of printing with a “FILE COPY” watermark.

- Document: Office document created using word-processing or spreadsheet programs
- Page size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)
- Paper: Sheets (Cassette)
- Paper type: Plain Paper
- Paper size: A4 (210.0×297.0 mm)/Letter (8.3 × 11.7 in)

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** in the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original. In this case, click **ISO A4**.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
6. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.

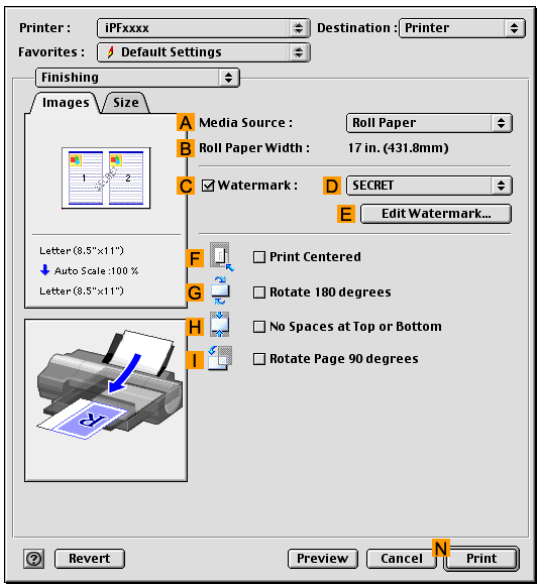


7. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Plain Paper.
8. After confirming that E **Easy Settings** is selected, click **Office Document** in the F **Print Target** list.

Note

- You can check the settings values selected in the F **Print Target** list by clicking G **View set.**

9. Access the **Finishing** pane.



10. Click A **Media Source** in the **Cassette** list.
11. Select the C **Watermark** check box.
12. Click **FILE COPY** in the D **Watermarks** list.

Note

- To create your own, original watermark, click E **Edit Watermark**. Refer to the printer driver help for instructions on modifying watermarks to create your own.

13. Specify additional printing conditions.
    For details on available printing conditions, see “Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.541)
14. Confirm the print settings, and then click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

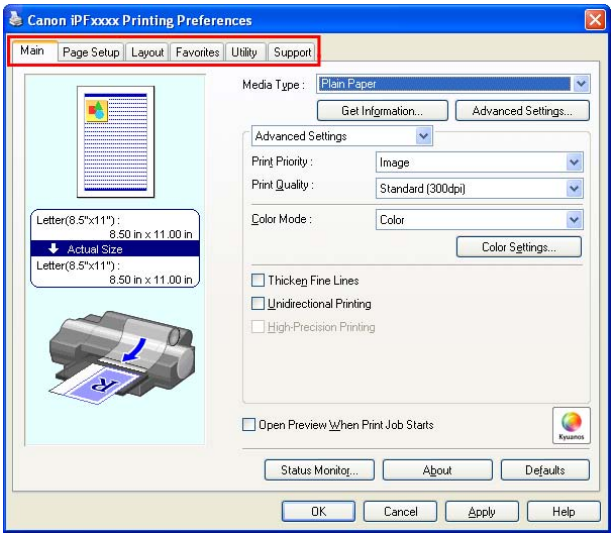
Software

Windows

Printer Driver Settings (Windows)

For instructions on accessing the Windows printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows) (→P.497)
- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows) (→P.499)



For information on the Windows printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Sheet (Windows) (→P.474)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.510)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) (→P.515)
  - Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows) (→P.501)
  - Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) (→P.507)
  - Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows) (→P.482)
- Page Setup Sheet (Windows) (→P.478)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.

  - Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.511)

- Layout Sheet (Windows) (→P.480)

  You can specify the page layout, watermarks, the orientation, the number of copies, and print processing options.

  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) (→P.514)
- Favorites Sheet (Windows) (→P.483)

  Groups of print settings you select on each sheet can be saved in a favorite. Favorites you have added can be edited or used at the time of printing as desired.
- Utility Sheet (Windows) (→P.484)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Support Sheet (Windows) (→P.485)

  You can view support information and the user's manual.
- Device Settings Sheet (Windows) (→P.486)

  You can display settings for optional equipment installed on the printer and see the printer driver version.

imagePROGRAF Free Layout is a feature for freely arranging originals from various source applications on a single page as desired before printing. For details, see Free Layout Guide .

Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy is a feature for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

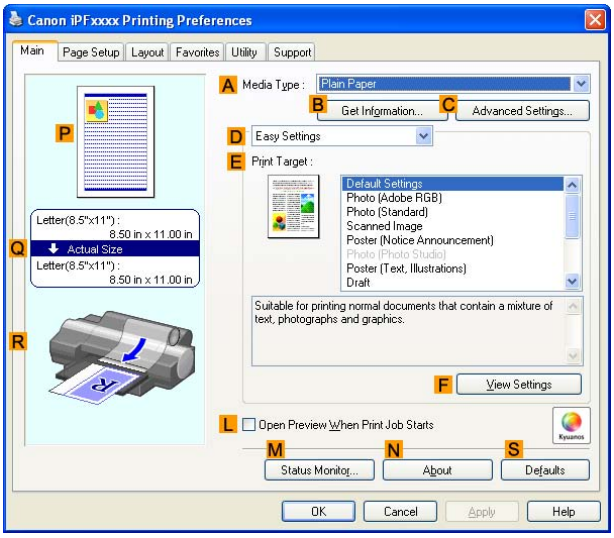
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)

There are two ways to confirm the print settings, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.467)
- Checking a print preview (→P.468)

Checking a preview of the settings

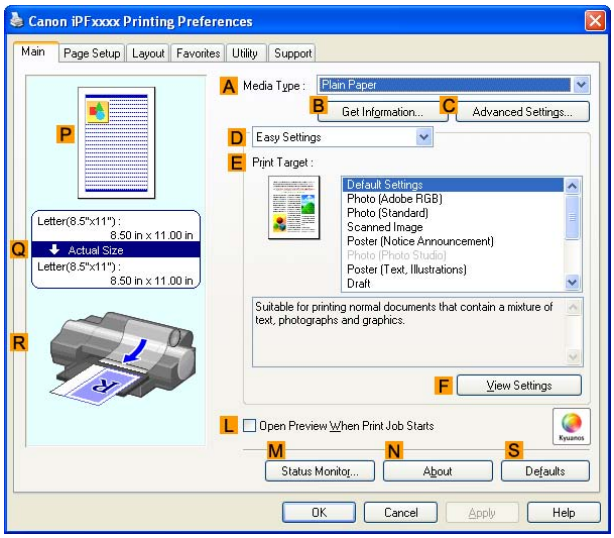
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, and **Layout** sheets. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, layout, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Top illustrations	Illustrations indicate the orientation, page layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information.
Middle, bordered area	The page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction are displayed.
Bottom illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F View Settings** on the **Main** sheet to display the **View Settings** dialog box.



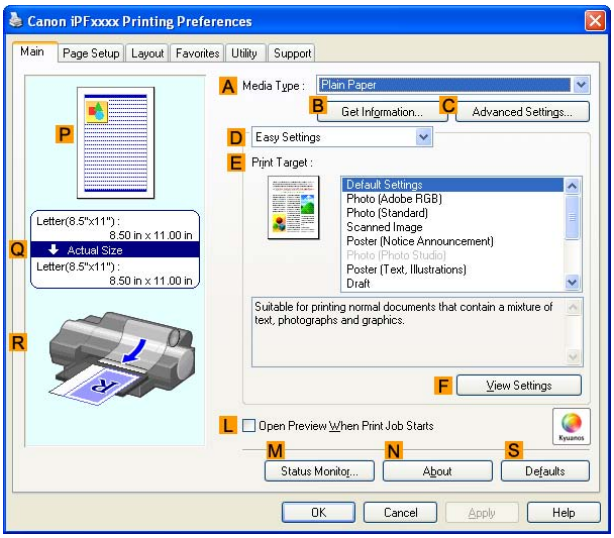
Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
When you activate this feature, PageComposer is launched before printing. Confirming how documents will be printed this way helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)”. (→P.469)

Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

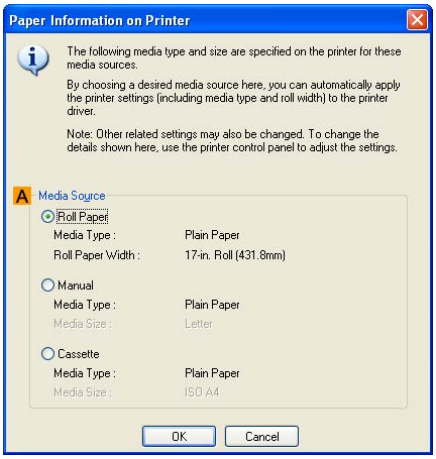
1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Select the **L** **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** check box.
5. When you attempt to print, the PageComposer window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)
6. In the PageComposer editing window, select the document to print and open the **Print Preview** window.
7. After confirming that the layout is just as you expected, close the **Print Preview** window.
8. In the PageComposer editing window, make sure the document to print is selected. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver settings for the media source and media type.



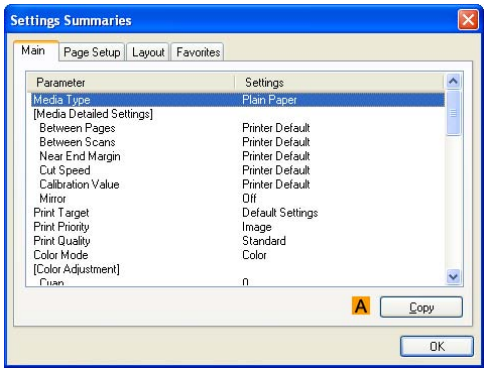
Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Media Source**	Shows the **Media Source** supported by the printer, as well as information about the loaded paper. To update the **Media Source** and media type settings in the printer driver, select the desired **Media Source** option and click **OK** .

Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Settings Summaries** dialog box enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, and **Favorites** sheets.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Copy**	Click to copy the settings information to the clipboard. You can paste the settings information into a file created with a text editor or similar application.

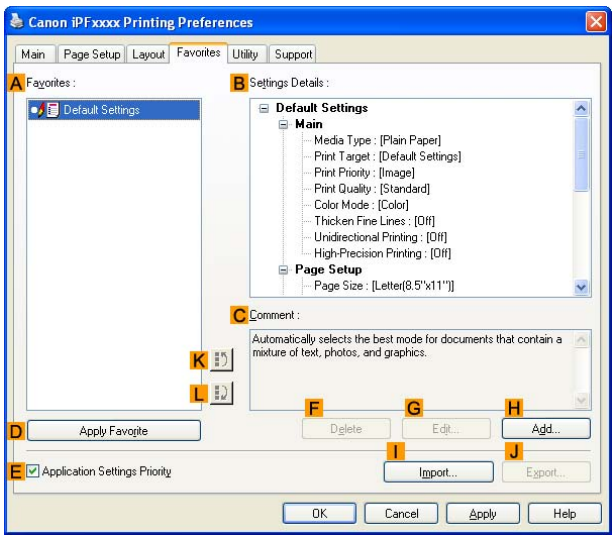
Using Favorites (Windows)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Complete the print settings.
4. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



5. Click H **Add** to display the **Add** dialog box.
6. Complete the following settings in the **Add** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - Choose a fitting icon for these print settings in the **Icon** list.
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added, as desired.
7. Click **OK** to close the **Add** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in A **Favorites**.

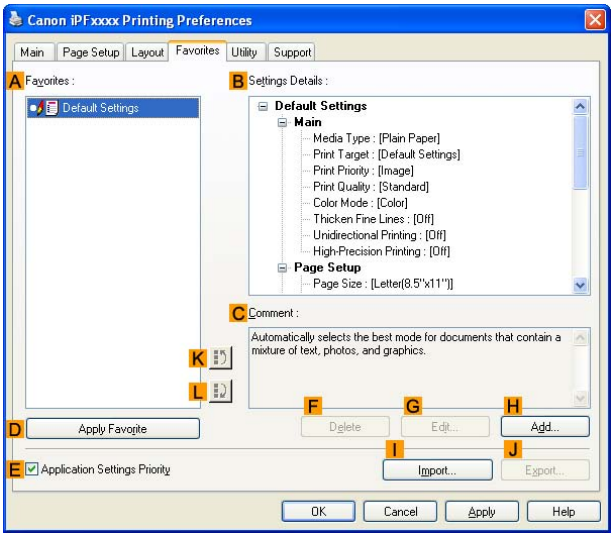
Note

- To save a favorite as a file, click J **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Click the **Favorites** tab to display the **Favorites** sheet.



4. In the A **Favorites**, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click I **Import** and specify the favorite file.

5. Click D **Apply Favorite** to replace the favorite settings with the current print settings.
6. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

Note

- For instructions on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

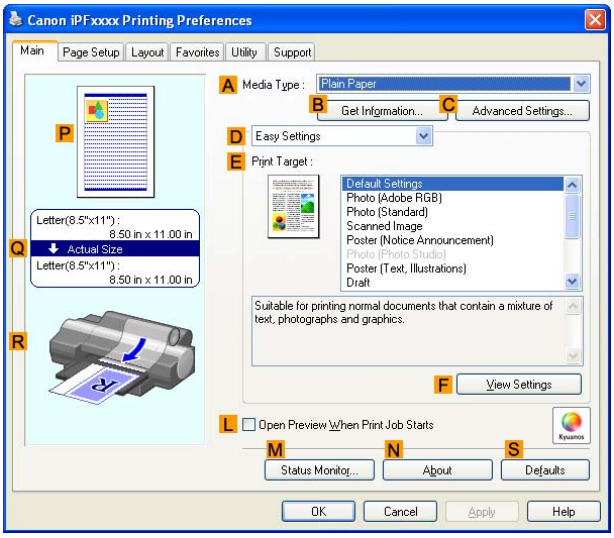
Main Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Main** sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

- On the **Main** sheet, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

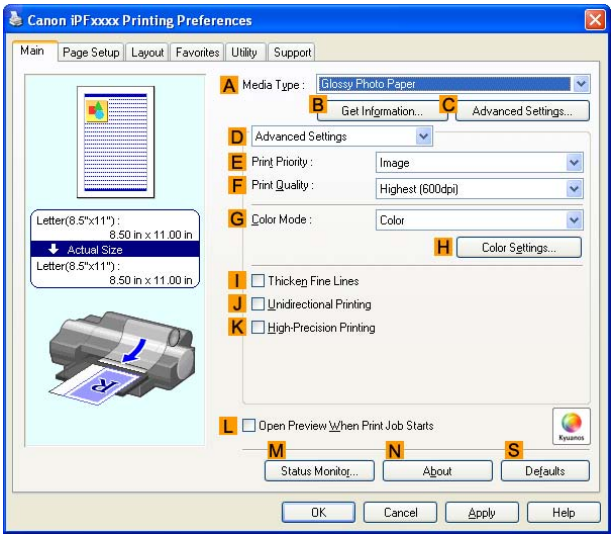
Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.207) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.211) Printing Office Documents (→P.213) Depending on the **Media Type** setting, some **Print Target** options may not be available.
	F View Settings	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target** .
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.509)

Setting Item	Description
M **Status Monitor**	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help.
N **About**	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Configuration using Advanced Settings

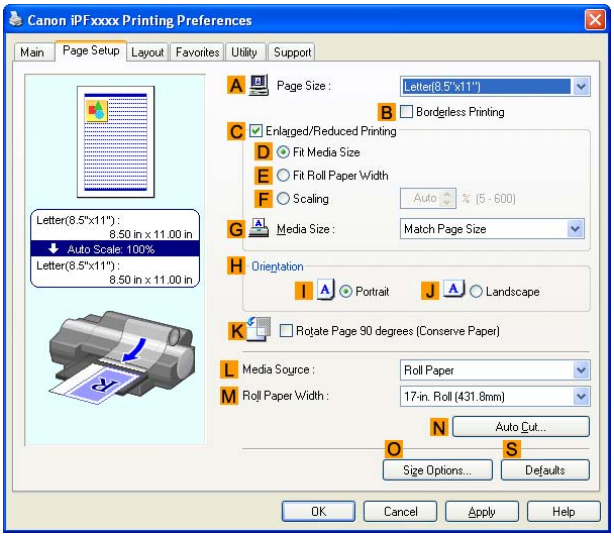


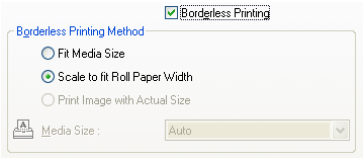
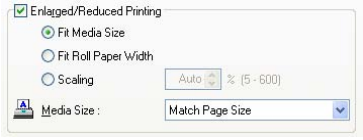
Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types and sizes by media source, as specified on the printer. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source, media type, and roll width.
	C Preferences	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
G Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203) The available **Color Mode** options vary depending on the **Media Type** setting.
	H Color Settings	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
I Thicken Fine Lines		Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K High-Precision Printing		Select this option for printing at the highest level of quality. However, this will take more time than regular printing.
L Open Preview When Print Job Starts		Activate this option to preview the print image before printing. Confirming the Print Image Before Printing (→P.509)

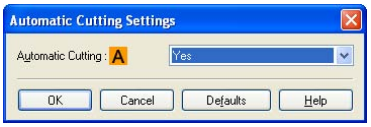
Setting Item	Description
M **Status Monitor**	Click to start imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which enables you to confirm the status of the printer and print jobs. You can also set up email notification if printer errors occur by completing the **Email Notice** settings. For details, refer to the **Status Monitor** help.
N **About**	Click to confirm version information for the printer driver.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Page Setup Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup**sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

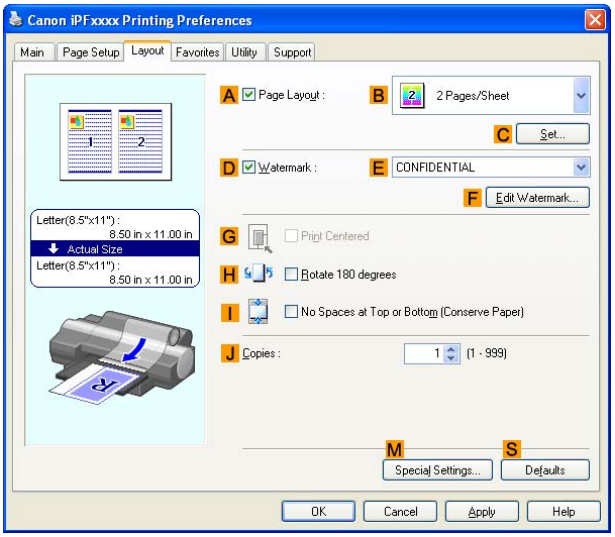


Setting Item		Description
A Page Size		Select the page size as specified in the source application. For details on available page sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)
B Borderless Printing 		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the **L Media Source** list. Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.325) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.327) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.307)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Scale to fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Print Image with Actual Size	Prints documents at their actual size. This function is available, when you have selected the size same as the width of **Roll Paper** for either length or width of the document from the **A Page Size** list.
	G Media Size Available when **Fit Media Size** is selected.	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112) Paper sizes compatible with borderless printing are shown in the list.
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing 		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.273) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.274) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.275)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

Setting Item	Description
H **Orientation**	Choose the printing orientation. Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (→P.446)
K **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**	Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.422)
L **Media Source**	Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** in the **Main** sheet.
M **Roll Paper Width**	Choose the roll width. For details on available roll widths, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)
N **Auto Cut**	You can activate or deactivate automatic cutting and printing of cut lines, as desired. Click to display the **Automatic Cutting Settings** dialog box.  Under A **Automatic Cutting** , you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** . Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (→P.447)
O **Size Options**	Click to display the **Media Size Options** dialog box, which enables you to register additional paper sizes or select the size system for use.
S **Defaults**	Restores all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Layout Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Layout**sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A Page Layout		Activate this setting to select a particular page layout. Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.383) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.384) Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (→P.380) Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (→P.449)
	C Set	Click to display one of the following dialog boxes depending on the selection in **A Page Layout** . In these dialog boxes, you can specify layout details and which pages to print, as well as other settings. • **Page Layout Printing** • **Pages to Print** • **Free Layout Settings**
D Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **E Watermarks** and **F Edit Watermark** . Printing With Watermarks (→P.445)
	E Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	F Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
G Print Centered		Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.405) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.406)
H Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this option to rotate document images by 180 degrees before printing.
I No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.423)
J Copies		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
	Reverse Order	Activate this option to print pages in reverse order.
	Collate	Activate this option to print complete sets in the specified quantity.

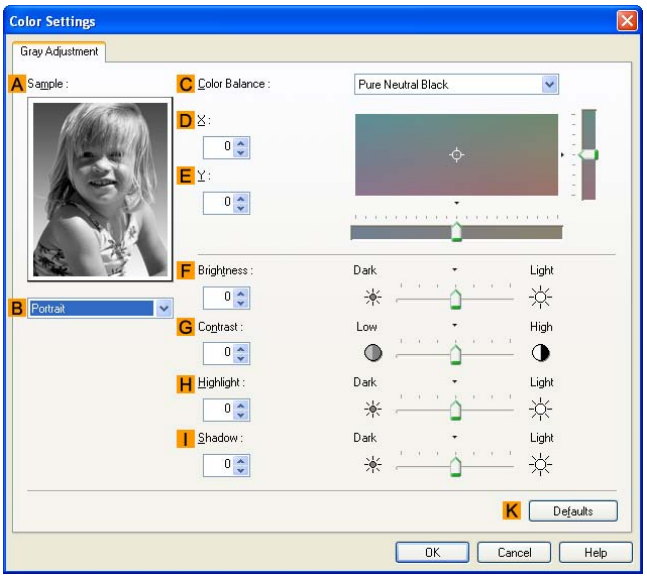
Setting Item	Description
M **Special Settings**	If the printing results are not as you expected, click this option to change how printing is processed.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** sheet.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



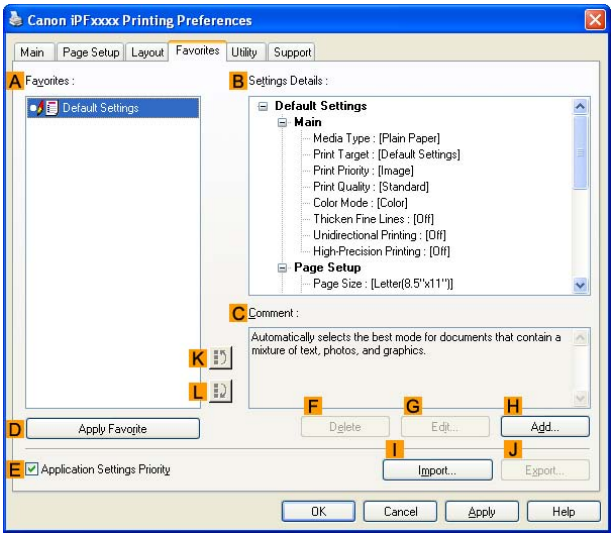
Note

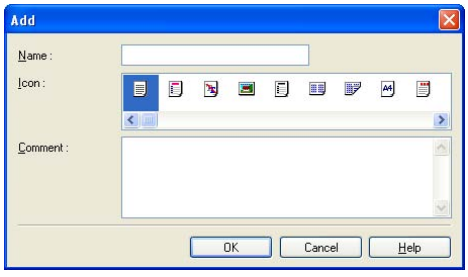
- To display the **Gray Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.
K **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Favorites Sheet (Windows)

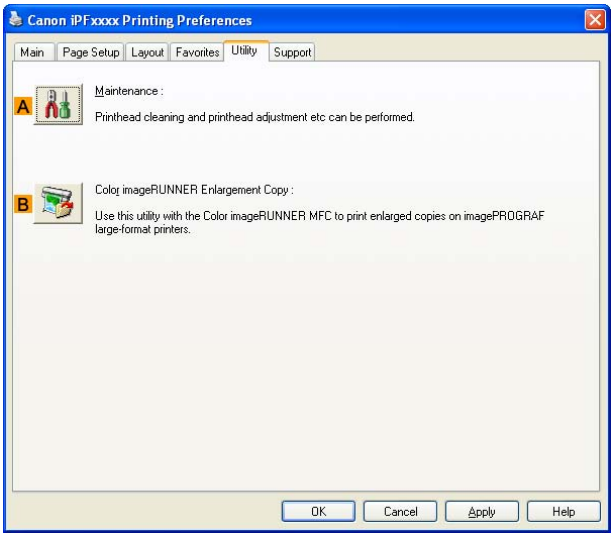
The following settings are available on the **Favorites**sheet. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item	Description
A Favorites	Printing favorites you have created are listed with **Default Settings** favorites. Using Favorites (→P.447)
B Settings Details	Displays details of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** .
C Comment	Displays notes registered in the favorite.
D Apply Favorite	Click to change the current print settings to those of the favorite selected in the **A Favorites** .
E Application Settings Priority	Activate this setting to use settings values specified in the source application in preference to favorite settings selected in the **A Favorites** , when clicking **D Apply Favorite** . For details on the settings items used in preference, refer to the printer driver help.
F Delete	Click to delete the selected favorite settings from the **A Favorites** .
G Edit	Click to display the **Edit** dialog box, which enables you to change the name and icon for the favorite settings selected in the **Favorites** .
H Add	Click to display the **Add** dialog box, which enables you to add the current print settings as a favorite. 
I Import	Click to display the **Open** dialog box, which enables you to import favorite settings saved as a file.
J Export	Click to display the **Save As** dialog box, which enables you to save the favorite settings as a file.

Utility Sheet (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**sheet. For details on the utilities, refer to the relevant utility help.

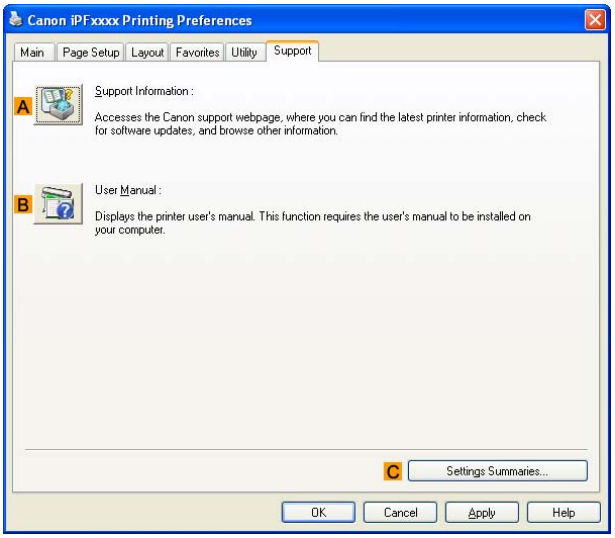


Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Maintenance**	Click to start the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor , which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) check • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**	Click to launch Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (*1) (iR enlargement copy), which enables you to create hot folders used for Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy and assign print settings to hot folders. Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows) (→P.277)

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Support Sheet (Windows)

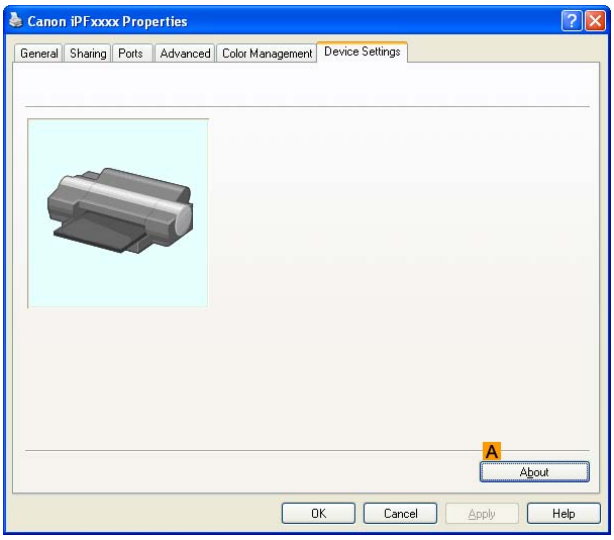
On the **Support** sheet, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings Summaries**	Click to display the **View Settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the **Main** , **Page Setup** , **Layout** , and **Favorites** sheets.

Device Settings Sheet (Windows)

Many settings items on the printer properties sheets are controlled by Windows applications. However, the **Device Settings** sheet is for configuring the printer, and it is an extension of the printer driver.
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings**sheet.



Setting Item	Description
A **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

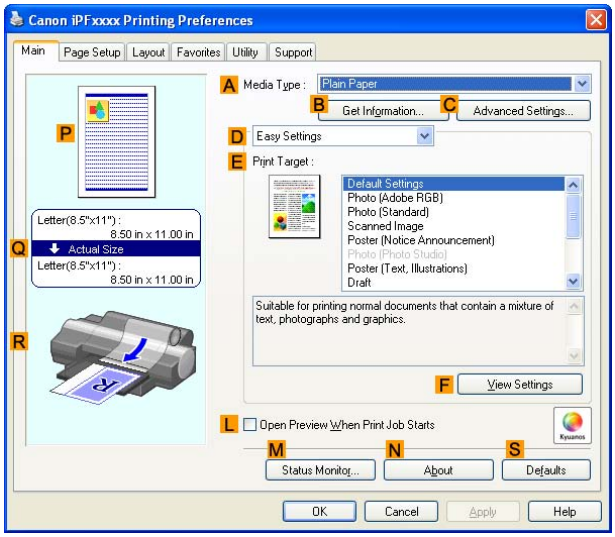
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows)

This topic describes how to use PosterArtist to compose originals from multiple applications, creating a poster layout for printing.

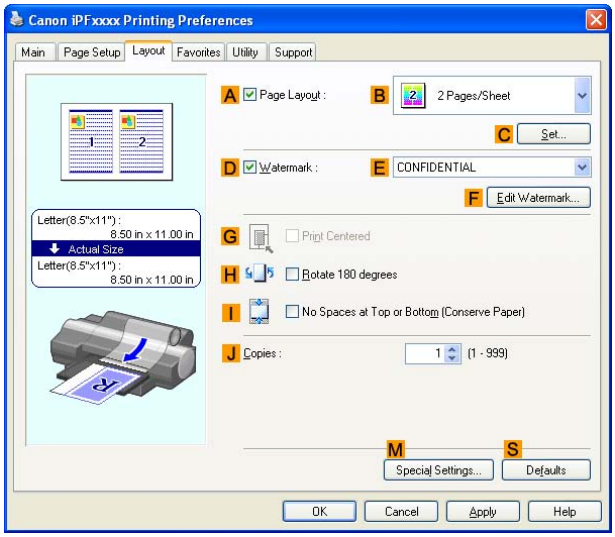
Important

- PosterArtist (sold separately) must be installed to use this function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then open the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



4. Click the **Layout** tab to display the **Layout** sheet.



5. Select the A **Page Layout** check box.
6. Click in the **Edit Using PosterArtist** in the B **Page Layout** list.
7. When you attempt to print, PosterArtist starts up and the PageCapture window is displayed. (At this point, the document will not be printed yet.)

8. Choose the page to load in PosterArtist.
9. Edit and rearrange the image in the PosterArtist window as desired.

Important

- Without closing the PosterArtist window, repeat steps 1-8 to arrange originals from multiple applications on the same page.

Note

- For instructions on editing and rearranging images, refer to the PosterArtist Manual.

10. Print from the PosterArtist menu.

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page Size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll Paper Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

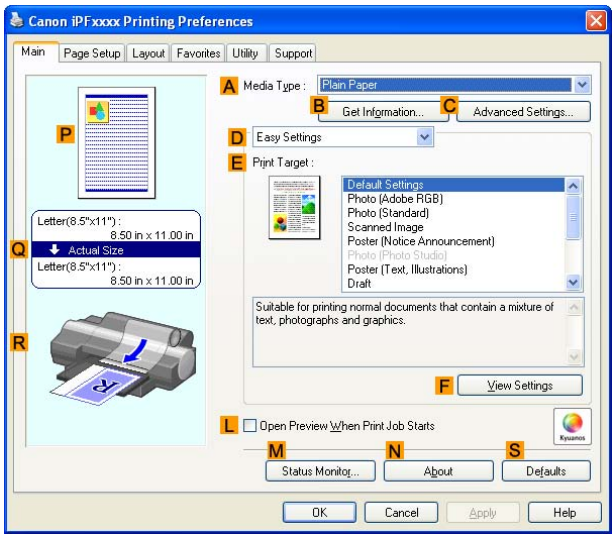
- In Photoshop, select no color-matching.
- In the printer driver settings, select **Driver Matching Mode** and choose **Adobe RGB** in **Color Space**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

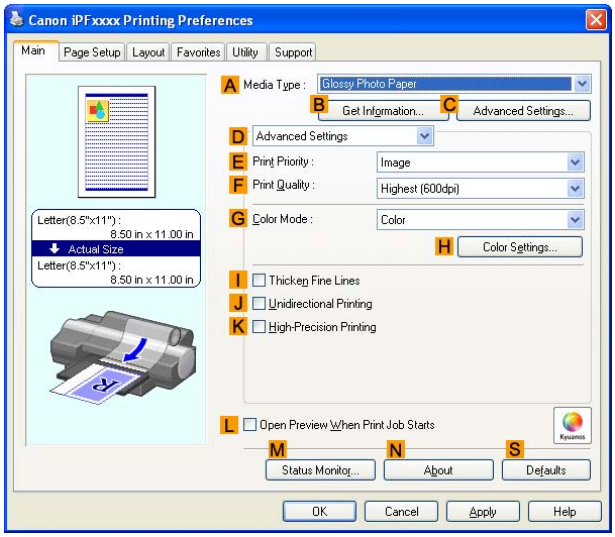
   - The following procedures are based on the example of Photoshop CS2.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the **File** menu to display the **Print** dialog box.
3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.
4. In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **No Color Management**.
5. Click **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
6. Select the printer and click **Properties** to display the printer driver dialog box.
7. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.



8. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

9. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

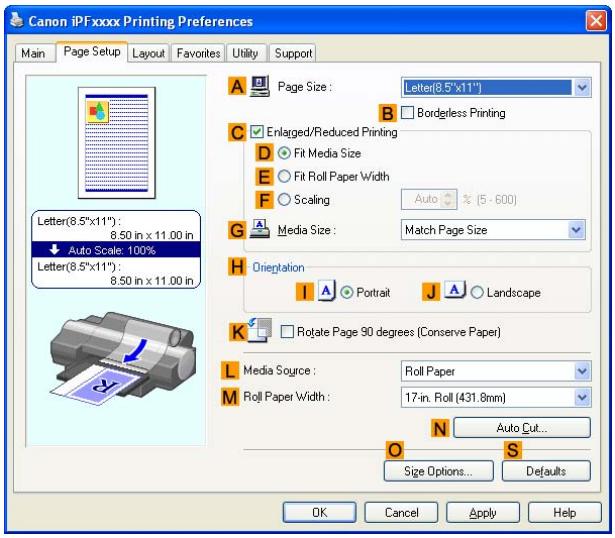


10. Click **Image** in the E **Print Priority** list.
11. Select the print quality in the F **Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the F **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

12. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
13. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
14. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
15. In **Matching Mode**, click **Driver Matching Mode**.
16. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
17. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
18. Click the **Page Setup** tab to display the **Page Setup** sheet.



19. In the A **Page Size** list, click the size of the original as specified in the source application. In this case, click **10"x12"**.

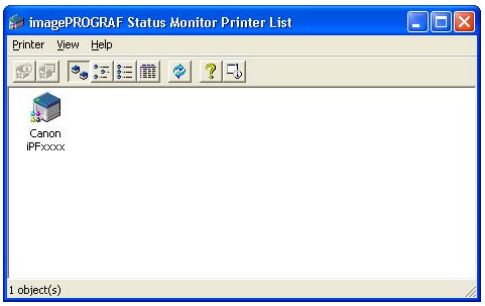
20. Click **Roll Paper** in the L **Media Source** list.
21. Select the width of the loaded roll in the **Roll Paper Width** list. In this case, click **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**, and then click **OK**.
22. Confirm the print settings and print as desired.

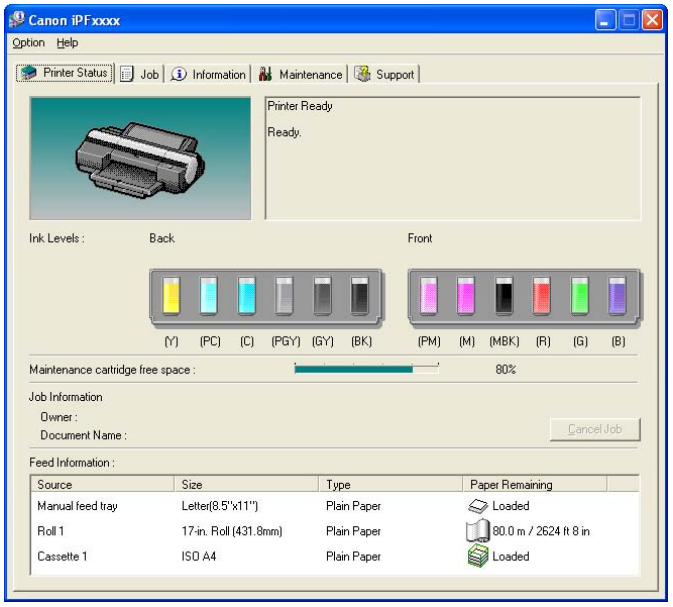
Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Windows)”. (→P.467)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

imagePROGRAF Status Monitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.
Two screens are available in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor : “Printer List” shows a list of printers, and “Status Monitor” shows details for each printer.





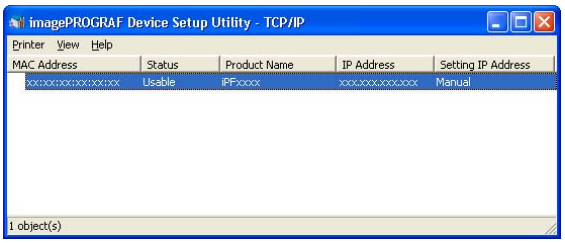
- You can view a list of the printers for which printer drivers have been installed on your computer, printers connected to your computer, and printers found on the network.
- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- Images of Ink Tanks are shown, with different images for various types of ink. An icon and warning message will notify you when ink levels are low.
- The type of paper loaded in each media source is identified. You can also check to see if paper has run out.
- This way, the utility enables you to check printer information and take care of printer maintenance for optimal printing results.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility is a utility to establish communication between the printer and your computer by completing relevant settings. After the printer is installed, for example, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility to complete the network settings initially.



- Starting imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility will show a list of printers found on the network. In this list, select the printer (specifically, the printer's Mac address) that you want to set up, and then configure the basic settings from your computer, such as the printer's IP address and the network frame type.
- You can see which printers are online in the network by checking the printer list. Communication between your computer and these printers is possible.

Note

- We recommend that your network or printer administrator complete the setup work using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
- For details, refer to the imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility help.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.494)

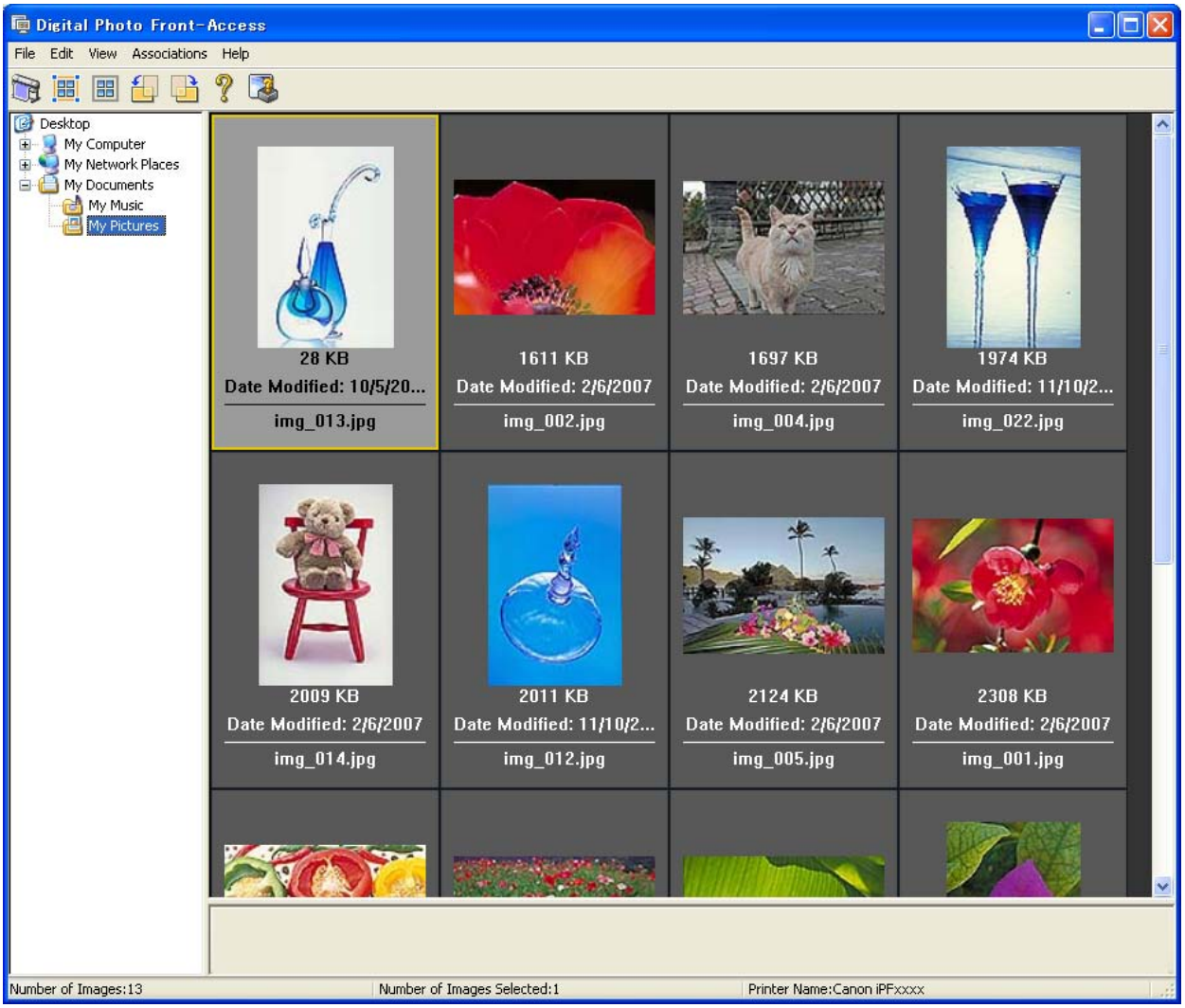
1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Digital Photo Front-Access

Digital Photo Front-Access is an application that links photos from Canon digital cameras and other image files on your computer with various other applications.



- Simply select an image and click the icon of the application you want to start to launch the application.
- You can also print from Digital Photo Front-Access. In short, Digital Photo Front-Access can help you manage images in many ways from editing to printing as an effective way to work with other applications.
- Digital Photo Front-Access also enables image retouching. For automatic retouching, select an image for retouching and click Image Adjustment.
- Because this application automates the workflow from retouching to display for all of your images, it can save time and work in retouching.

Note

- For details, refer to the Digital Photo Front-Access help.

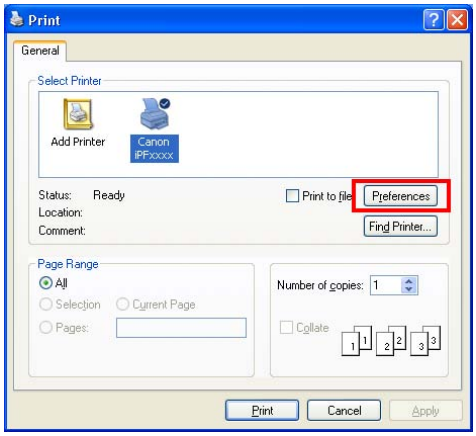
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

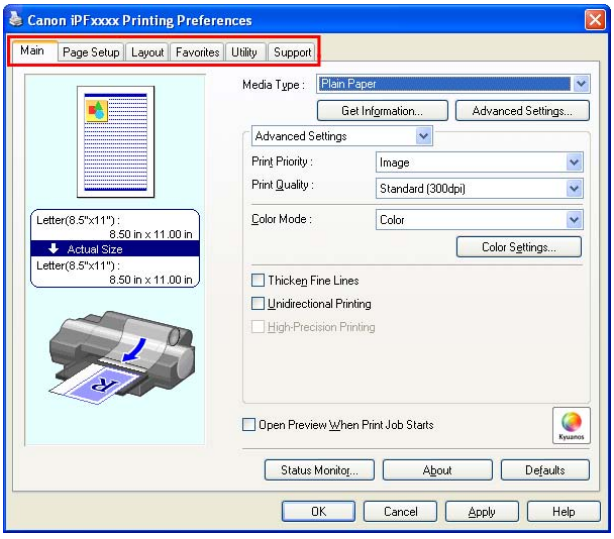
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

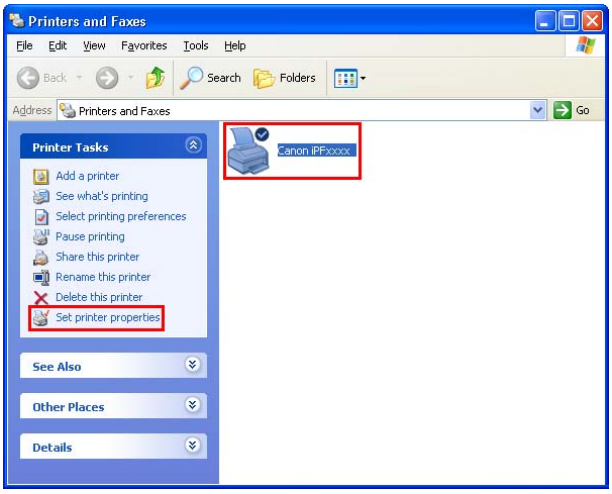
- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Important

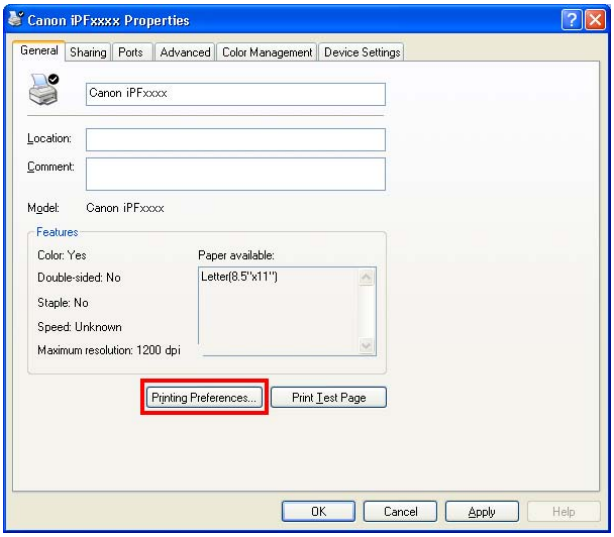
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.499)

Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)

1. Click **start** > **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**).
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer properties dialog box.



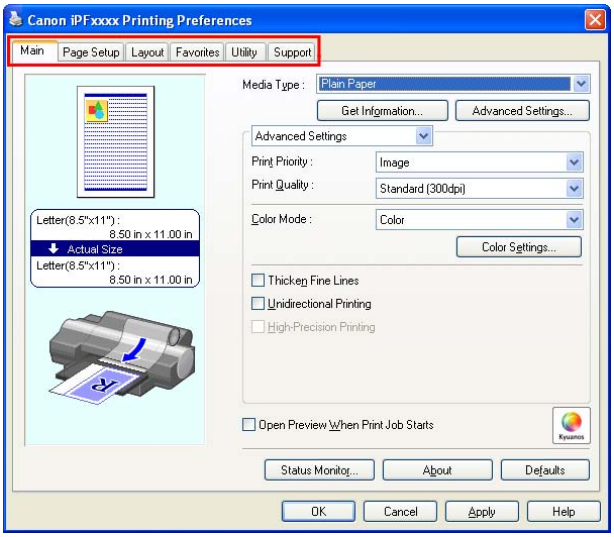
3. Click **Printing Preferences** to display the **Printing Preferences** dialog box, titled with the name of this printer.



Note

- The **Device Settings** sheet is also an extension of the printer driver. (→P.486)

Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Important

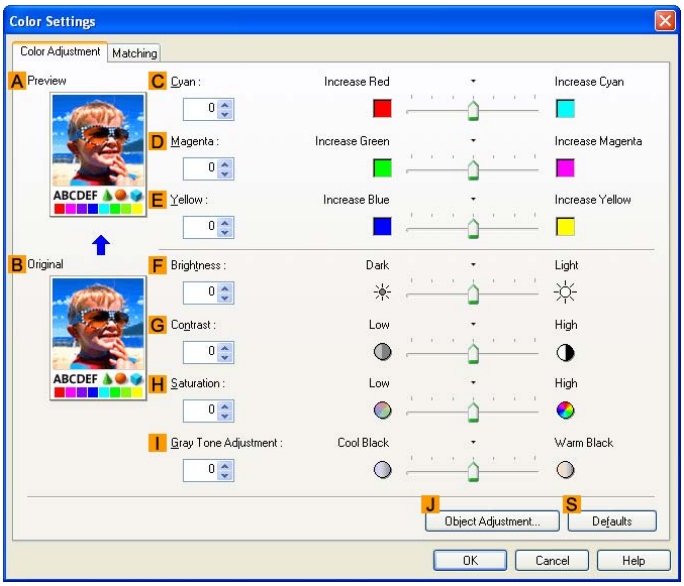
- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the operating system menu, changes you make to the settings will apply to all applications you use for printing.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from applications.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)”. (→P.497)

Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment : color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.
I **Gray Tone Adjustment**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.

Setting Item	Description
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.

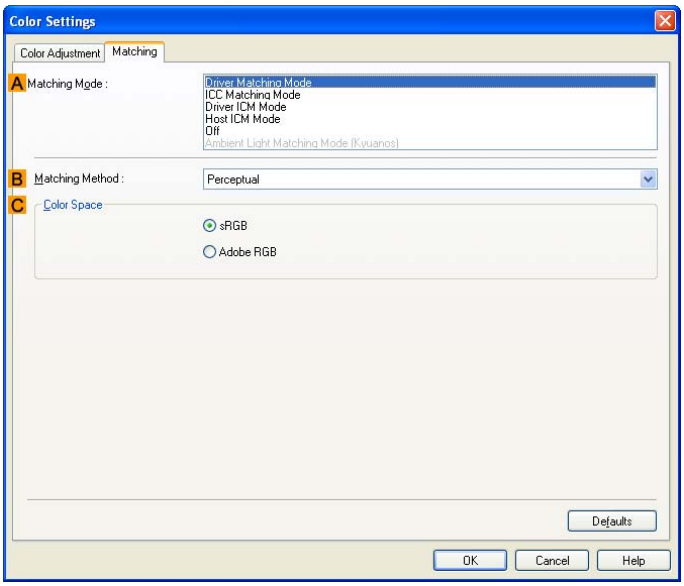
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **Driver Matching Mode** in the **Matching Mode** list.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet.

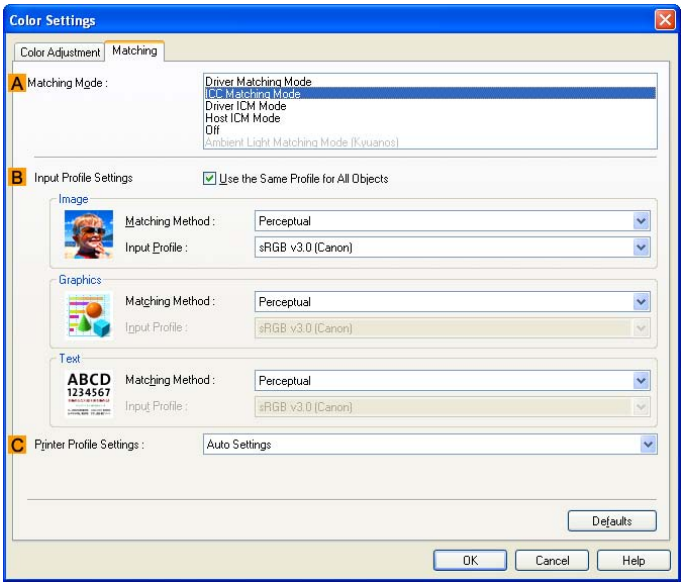
Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Normally, select **Driver Matching Mode** . For color matching based on ICC profiles, select **ICC Matching Mode** , **Driver ICM Mode** , or **Host ICM Mode** , depending on your color matching system. If you don't want color matching using the printer driver, select **Off** .
B **Matching Method**	Select the color matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

Note

- For details on settings items, see "Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver". (→P.214)

Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode, and Host ICM Mode

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **ICC Matching Mode**, **Driver ICM Mode**, or **Host ICM Mode** on the **Matching Mode** sheet.



Note

- To display the **Matching** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click the **Matching** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Input Profile Settings**	You can select **Image** , **Graphics** , or **Text** . You can choose **Matching Method** and **Input Profile** . Various options are available depending on your selected **Matching Mode** . To apply the same input profile automatically for **Graphics** and **Text** , select **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** . To apply separate input profiles to **Graphics** and **Text** , clear **Use the Same Profile for All Objects** and specify the individual settings.
C **Printer Profile Settings**	Specify the printer profile as desired. Normally, select **Auto Settings** .

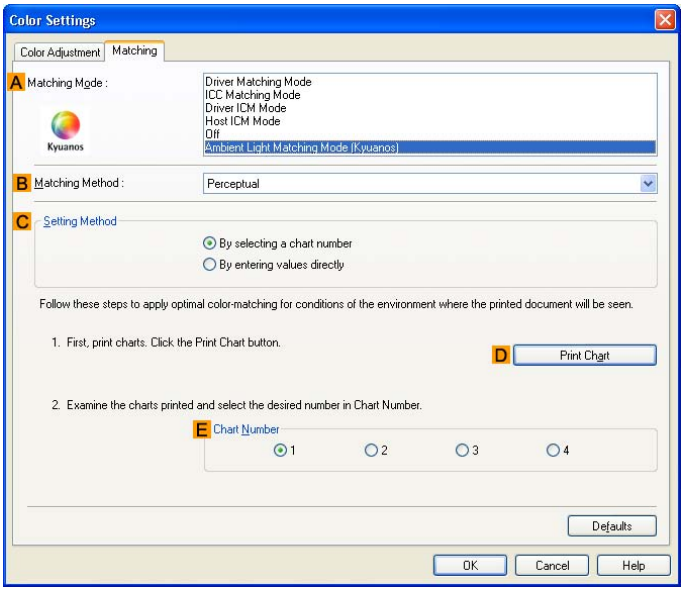
Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

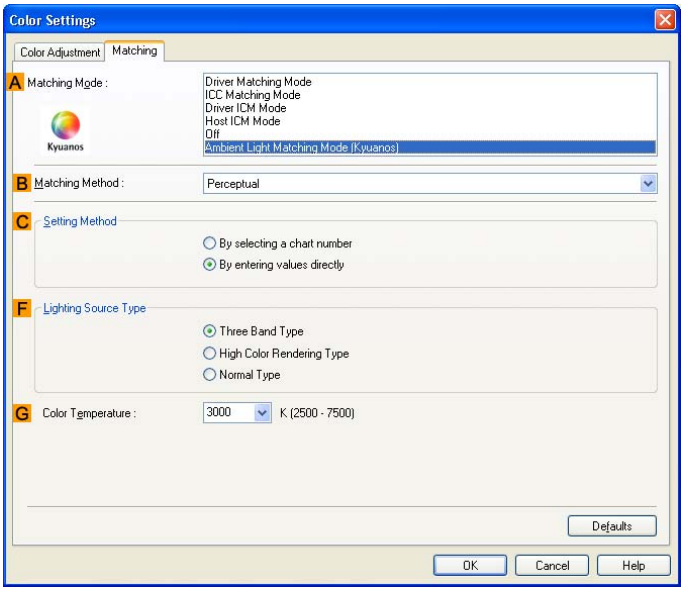
Matching sheet: Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)

On the **Matching** sheet, you can specify color matching to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices. The following options are available when you select **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the **Matching Mode** list.

When you select **By selecting a chart number** in **Setting Method**



When you select **By entering values directly** in **Setting Method**

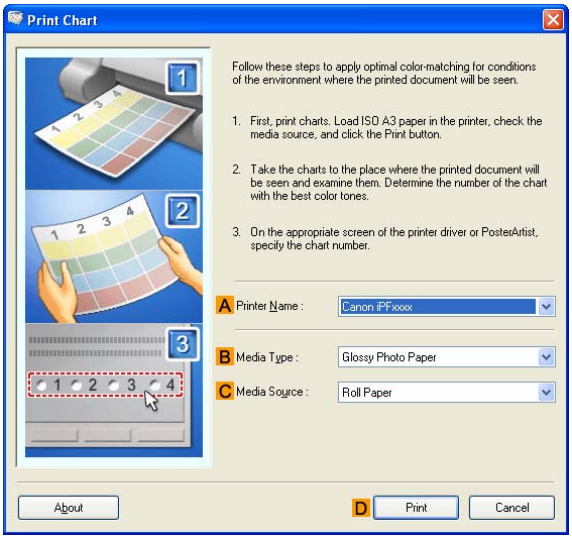


Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired. Here, select **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** .
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method.
C **Setting Method**	You can choose configuration based on printed **Charts** or based on using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.
D **Print Chart**	Click to start the **Light Source Check Tool** , for printing **Charts** . The **Light Source Check Tool** must be installed to use this function.

Setting Item	Description
E Chart Number	In **Chart** , select the number of the pattern with your desired colors.
F Lighting Source Type	Select the light source measured using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.
G Color Temperature	Select the value measured using the Eye-One spectrophotometer.

Light Source Check Tool

The **Light Source Check Tool** enables you to print **Chart**.



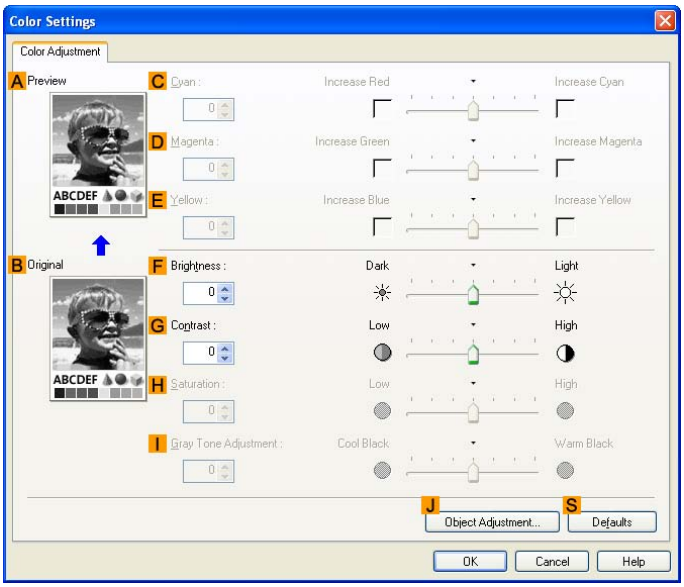
Setting Item	Description
A Printer	The printer name is displayed here.
B Media Type	Select the type of paper, as desired. For information on the types of paper compatible with **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** , refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
C Media Source	Choose the media source, as desired. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **Media Type** in the **Main** sheet.
D Print	Click to print the **Chart** .

Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** sheet for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment : monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** sheet for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** sheet, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

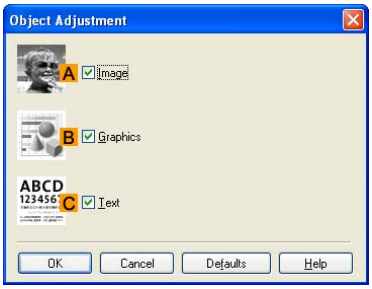
Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Not available.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Not available.
I **Gray Tone Adjustment**	Not available.
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.
S **Defaults**	Click to restore all settings on the sheet to the default values.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** sheet.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

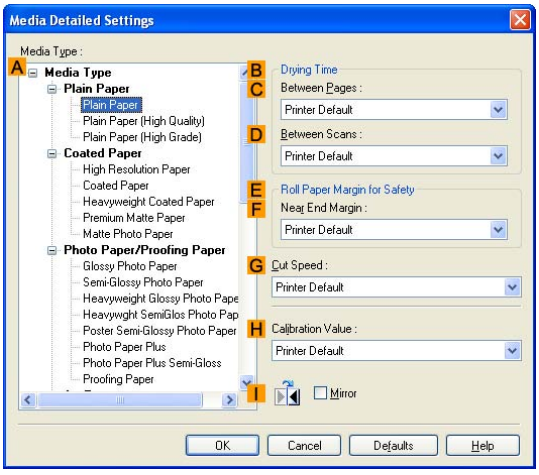
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing

The preview screen displayed before printing enables you to see the original image just as it will be printed. Confirming the image of print jobs helps prevent printing errors.
For instructions on previewing print jobs, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows) (→P.469)
- Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.521)
- Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9) (→P.544)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



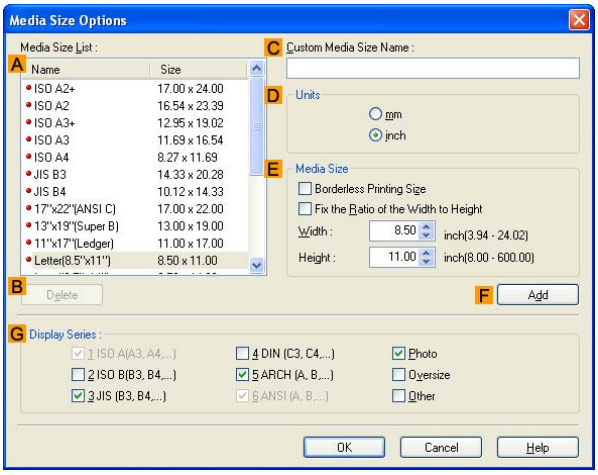
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B Drying Time		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C Between Pages	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D Between Scans	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E Roll Paper Margin for Safety		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F Near End Margin	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G Cut Speed		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H Calibration Value		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
I Mirror		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)

In the **Media Size Options** dialog box, you can create and register your own **Custom Media Size**. The sizes you define are listed with standard media sizes for selection later as needed.



Note

- To display the **Media Size Options** dialog box, on the **Page Setup** Sheet (Windows) (→P.478) , click **Media Size Options**.

Setting Item	Description
A Media Size List	Shows the names and sizes of paper that can be used with the printer driver.
B Delete	Custom media sizes created by users can be deleted from the **Media Size List** , as needed. However, they cannot be deleted in the following situations. • If a standard media size of the printer driver is selected. • If an oversized media size is selected. • If a media size in a red box is selected.
C Custom Media Size Name	You can name **Custom Media Size** as desired.
D Units	Specify the desired unit of measure for the **Custom Media Size** height and width.
E Media Size	Specify the desired **Width** and **Height** . You can make your selection from sizes that are compatible with **Borderless Printing** by selecting **Borderless Printing Size** . To maintain the aspect ratio of the **Width** and **Height** as you resize the paper, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** .
F Add	Enables you to register the custom media size you have specified or overwrite an existing custom media size.
G Display Series	You can limit the number of options shown in **Page Size** , **Media Size** , and **Media Size List** .

Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows)

Scanned originals from a Color imageRUNNER can be enlarged and printed automatically.
Originals you create by scanning with a Color imageRUNNER are transferred to a "hot folder" and printed automatically after enlargement according to printing conditions you specify for that folder.
This processing sequence is called the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy function.
To use Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, first complete these settings in the following order.

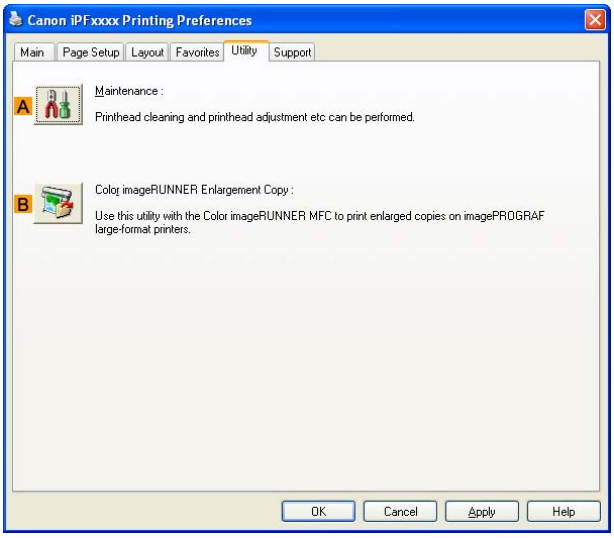
1. Register a hot folder on your computer
   Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER and complete the settings for enlargement copy.
2. Complete the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.
   Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder.

After these settings are complete, you can print enlarged copies of scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER.

Registering a hot folder on your computer

Folders used for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** (iR enlargement copy) are called hot folders. Register a hot folder on your computer for storing scanned originals from the Color imageRUNNER. You can specify printing conditions (such as the image quality and paper size), based on which originals transferred to the hot folder will be printed. Follow these steps to register and modify hot folders.

1. Display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.499)
2. Click the **Utility** tab to display the **Utility** sheet.



3. Click B **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** to start the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.
4. Use the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility to register or modify hot folders.
   For instructions on registering and modifying hot folders, refer to the help file for the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility.

Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER.

Configure the Color imageRUNNER to send scanned originals to the hot folder. It is easy to send scanned originals to the hot folder if you assign the scanning settings and destination to a **Favorites** button on the Color imageRUNNER.
For instructions on assigning scanning settings and destinations to a **Favorites** button, refer to the setting manual, displayed by clicking **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Setup Manual** button of Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy utility, or refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

Scanning the original and print an enlargement

Follow the steps below to scan an original on the Color imageRUNNER for enlarged printing on the printer. For detailed instructions, refer to the Color imageRUNNER manual.

1. Load the original on the platen glass or document feeder of the Color imageRUNNER.
2. Press **Send** to display the screen for transmission.
3. Press **Favorites**, and then press the **Favorites** button assigned to the hot folder.
4. Press **Start** on the control panel. If you scan originals on the platen glass, after scanning all originals, press **Done** on the touch-panel display.
   Scanned originals are sent to the hot folder and automatically enlarged and printed following the conditions you specified for the folder.

Note

- For details on Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy, refer to Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.

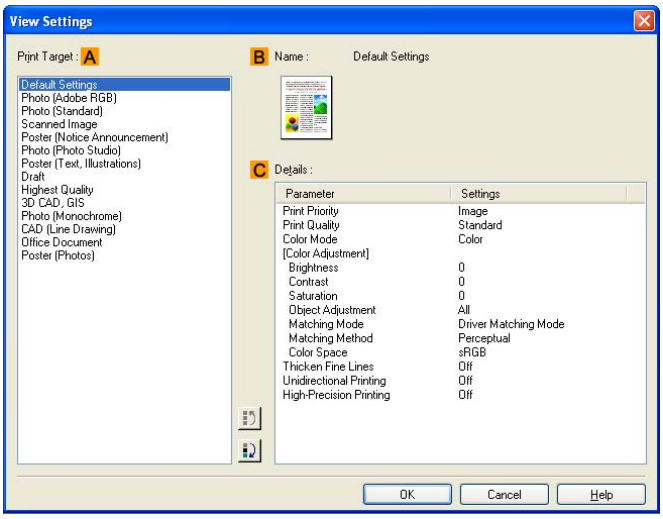
Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Layout** Sheet (Windows) (→P.480) , click **Special Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **FineZoom Settings**	This function is used in large-format printing. Normally, choose **Auto** . If documents are not printed correctly on large-format media, it may help to select **Yes** , and if fine lines are not visible or if images are distorted when printed, it may help to select **No** .
B **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.
C **Application Color Matching Priority**	You can give applications priority in color management.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Sheet (Windows) (→P.474) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

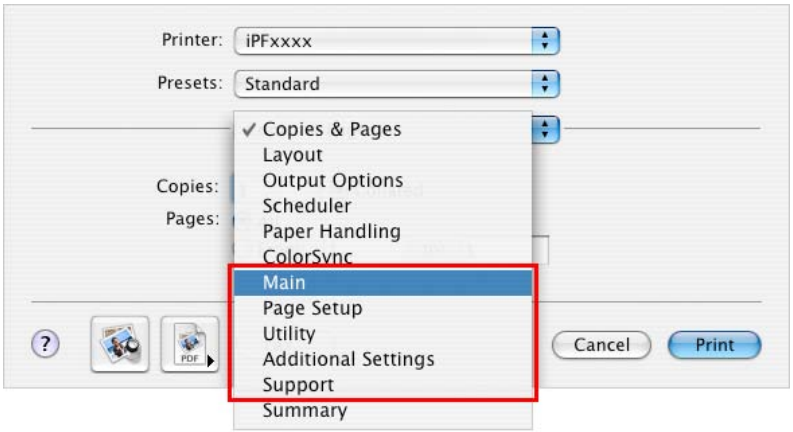
Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each listed item for the selected **Print Target** .

Mac OS X

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS X printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X) (→P.535)



For information on the Mac OS X printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523)

  You can specify the media type, color processing, print quality, print preview, and other settings. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X) (→P.539)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) (→P.540)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) (→P.536)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X) (→P.538)
  - Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.528)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.525)

  You can specify the page size of the original, borderless printing, enlargement or reduction, the orientation, the media size and source, and automatic cutting.
- Utility Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.527)

  You can specify settings related to maintenance for the Printhead and feed amount, as well as settings for **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy**.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.529)

  You can specify settings for how print jobs are sent to the printer.
- Support Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.530)

  You can view support information and the user's manual.

With the **imagePROGRAF Free Layout** feature, you can arrange originals from various source applications on a single page before printing. For details, see the Free Layout Guide .
With the **imagePROGRAF Preview** feature, you can check the layout before printing and adjust layout or size settings while viewing a preview screen. For details, see the imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .
With the **Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy** feature, you can automatically enlarge and print scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER**. For details, see the Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

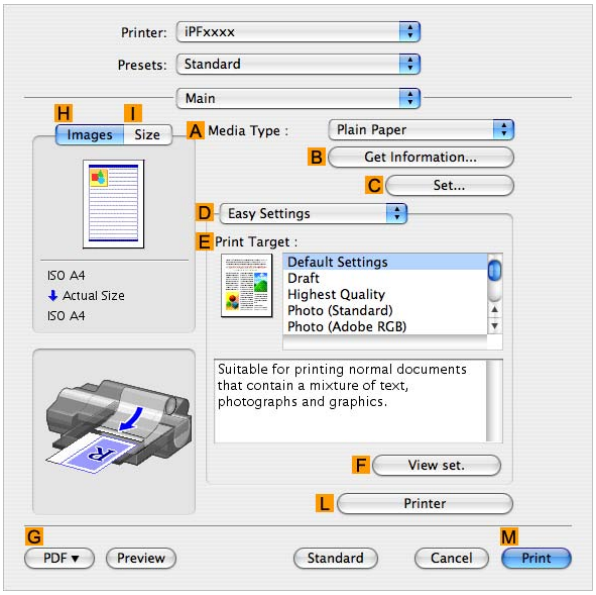
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.517)
- Checking a print preview (→P.518)

Checking a preview of the settings

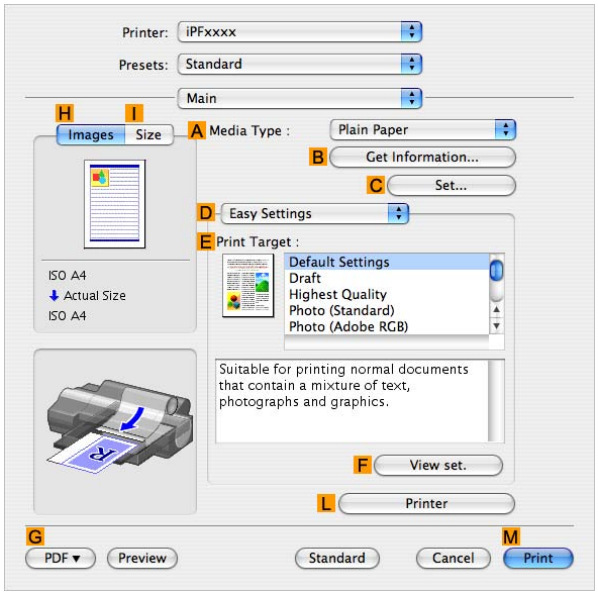
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click **F View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View settings** dialog box.



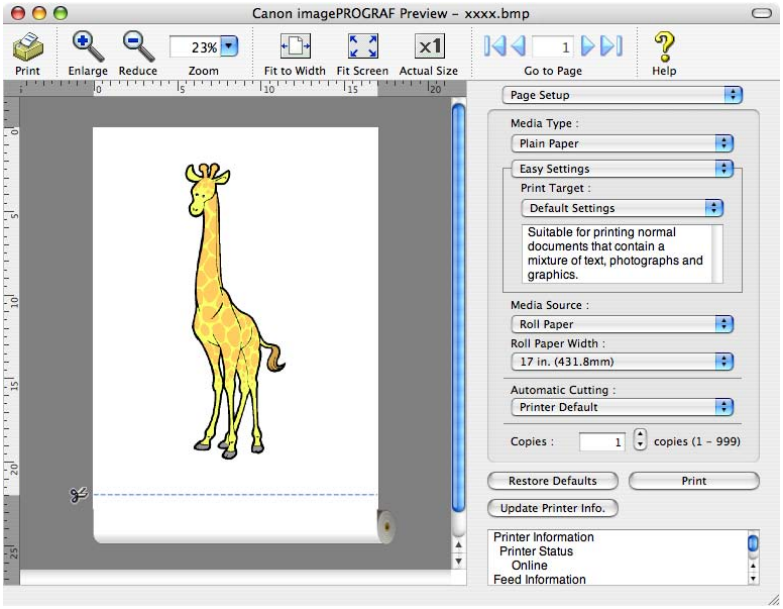
Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)”. (→P.521)

Checking the Layout Before Printing

You can check the print layout on the preview screen. While viewing this screen, you can also adjust layout or size settings, and your changes will be instantly applied on the preview screen.

Preview (Macintosh)



Important

- The driver must be installed from the User Software CD-ROM to use this function.

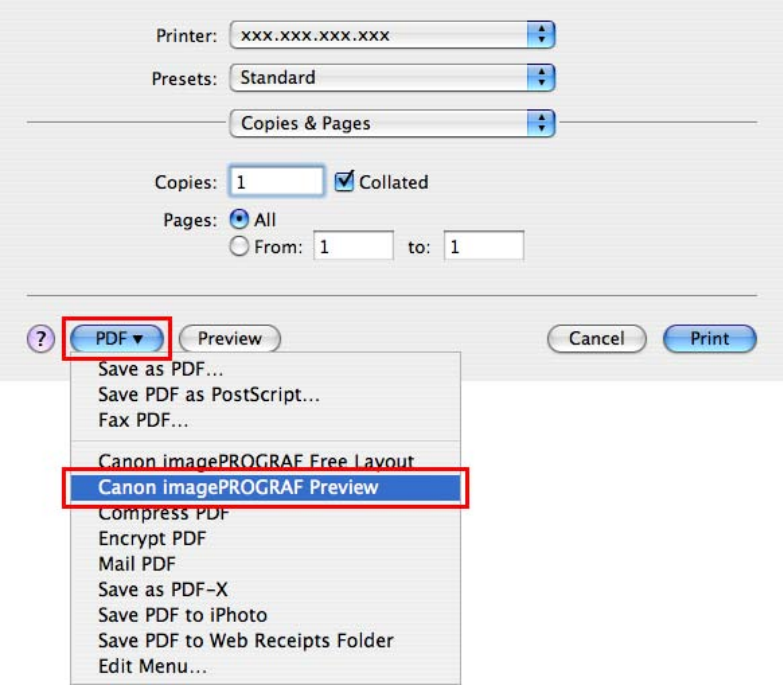
For instructions on how to check the layout before printing, refer to the following topics:

- Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) (→P.520)

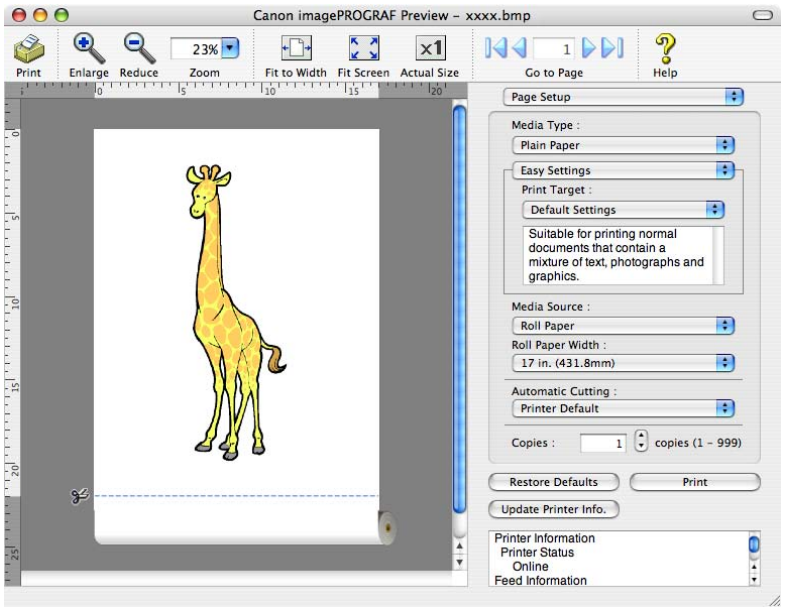
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to check the layout before printing using the **Preview** function.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Click **PDF** and select **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview**.



3. The **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window is displayed.



4. Check the layout and adjust settings in the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** window as desired.
5. Print from the **Canon imagePROGRAF Preview** menu.

Note

- For details on **imagePROGRAF Preview** functions, refer to imagePROGRAF Preview Guide .

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

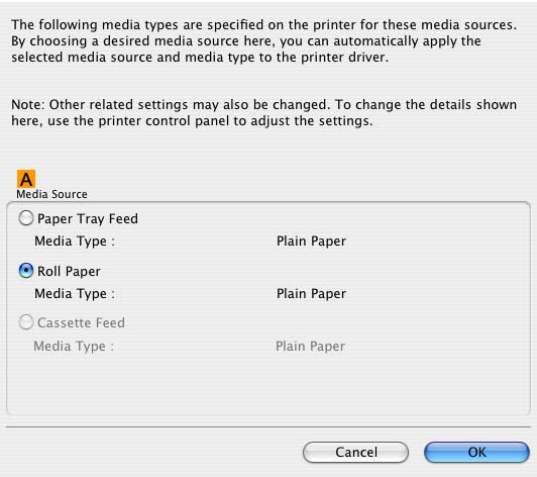
1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

On the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, you can obtain information on the paper in the printer and configure printer driver media type setting.



Note

- To display the **Paper Information on Printer** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Get Information** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Media Source**	Shows the **Media Source** supported by the printer, as well as the type of paper loaded. To update the media type setting in the printer driver, select the desired **Media Source** option and click **OK** .

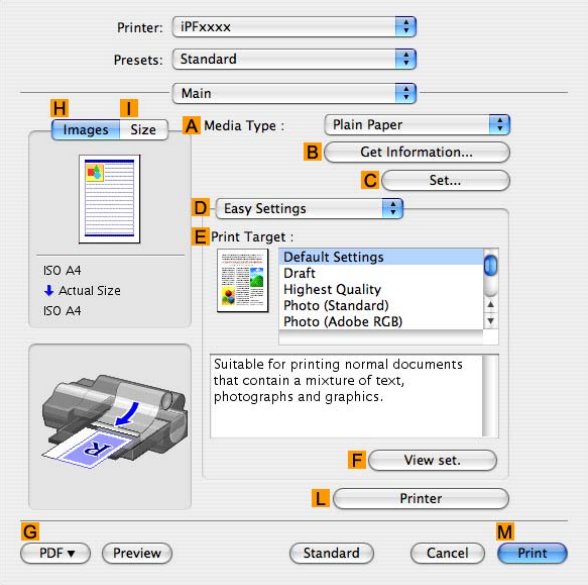
Main Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

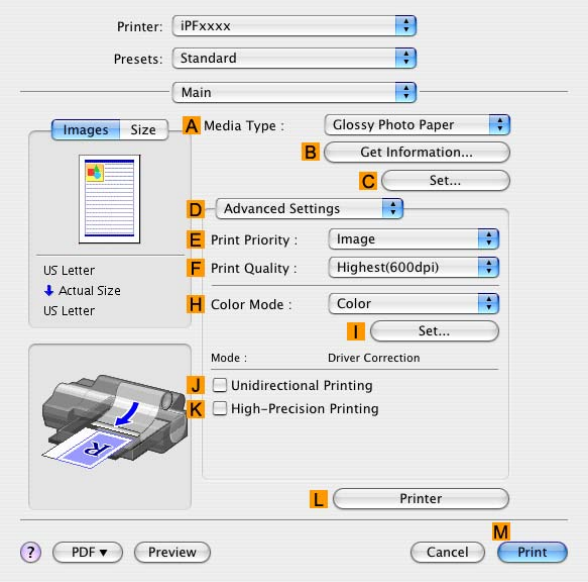
- On the **Main** pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the print target, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Target		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.207) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) (→P.211) Printing Office Documents (→P.213)
	F View set.	Click to display the **View settings** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the **E Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in **E Print Target** .
L Printer Information		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

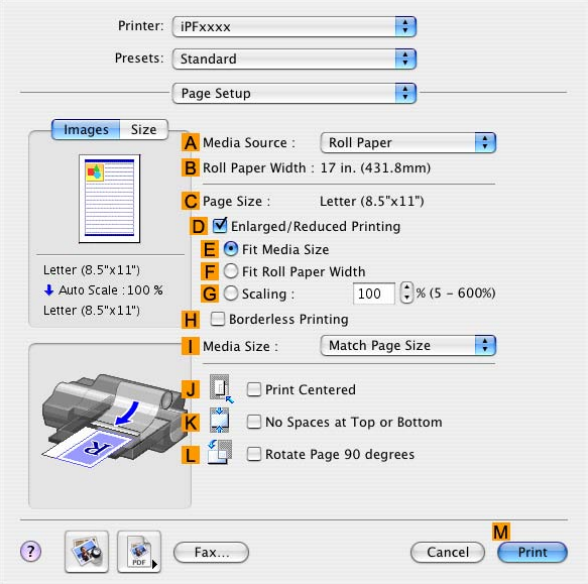
Configuration using Advanced Settings



Setting Item		Description
A Media Type		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
	B Get Information	Click to display the **Get Information** dialog box, which shows media types specified on the printer for each media source. When you select a media source, your selection is applied to the printer driver settings for the media source and media type.
	C Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
E Print Priority		Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
F Print Quality		Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
H Color Mode		Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
	I Set	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
J Unidirectional Printing		Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results.
K High-Precision Printing		Select this option for printing at the highest level of quality. However, this will take more time than regular printing.
L Printer Information		Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

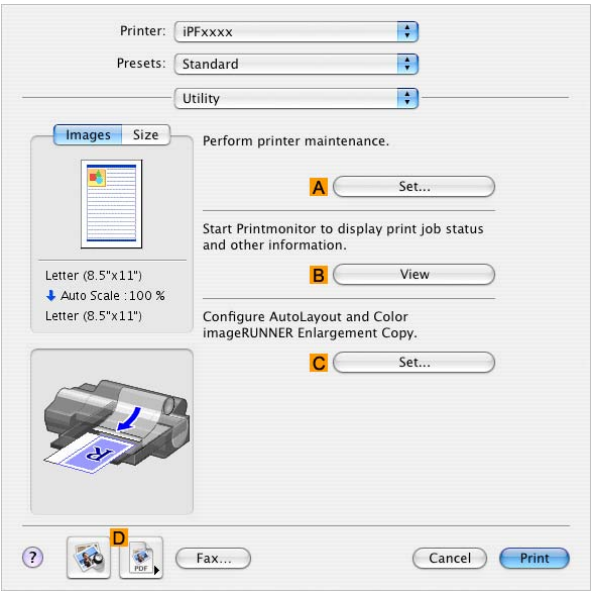


Setting Item		Description
A **Media Source**		Choose how paper is supplied. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in A **Media Type** in the **Main** pane.
B **Roll Paper Width**		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C **Page Size**		Displays the size of the original, as specified in the page settings of the application. For details on page sizes available in the application.see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)
D **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.273) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.274) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.275)
	E **Fit Media Size**	Resizes the document image to match the paper size.
	F **Fit Roll Paper Width**	Resizes the document image to match the roll width.
	G **Scaling**	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
H **Borderless Printing**		Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected in the A **Media Source** list. Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.325) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.327) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.307)
I **Media Size**		Choose the size of the paper you will print on. Click **Display all selections for Media Size** to list available sizes. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

Setting Item	Description
J **Print Centered**	Activate this setting to print document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.405) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.406)
K **No Spaces at Top or Bottom**	Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.423)
L **Rotate Page 90 degrees**	Activate this setting to rotate the original 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.422)

Utility Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Utility**pane.



Setting Item	Description
A **Set**	Click to display the **Printer** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment
B **View**	Click to start **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** , which enables you to view the status of print jobs.
C **Set**	Click to complete the settings for Auto Arrange or Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy).

*1: For details, see Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy Guide .

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** pane.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.

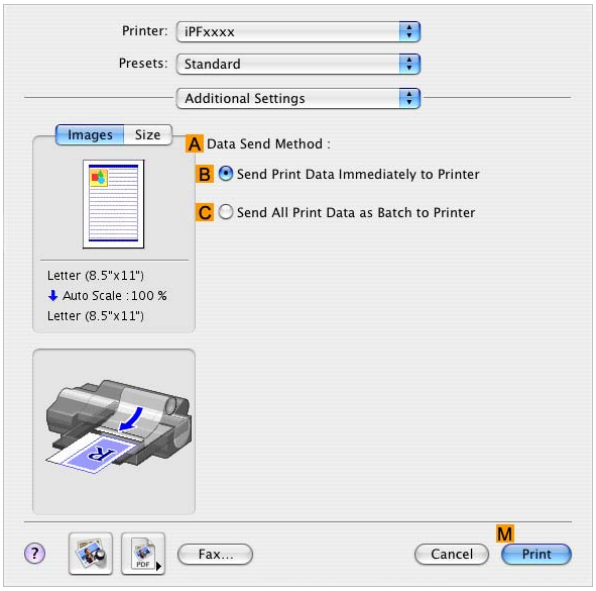
Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)

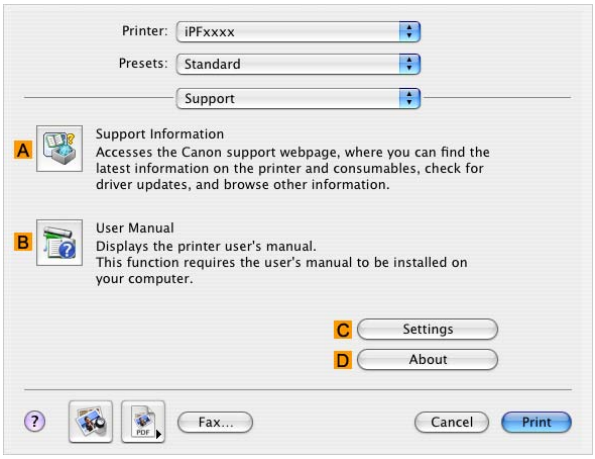
The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings**pane.



Setting Item	Description
A **Data Send Method**	Choose how printing data is sent to the printer. • B **Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • C **Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**

Support Pane (Mac OS X)

On the **Support** pane, you can view support information and the user's manual.



Button	Corresponding Utility
A **Support Information**	Click to access the Canon support webpage, where you can find the latest information on the printer and consumables, check for printer driver updates, and browse other information.
B **User Manual**	Click to view the printer user's manual. This function requires the user's manual to be installed on your computer.
C **Settings**	The settings can be saved as a file. Click to display the **Export** dialog box, which enables you to specify where to save the file.
D **About**	You can display version information for the printer driver.

Using Favorites (Mac OS X)

You can use the **Presets** function in Mac OS X for favorite-based printing.

Note

- In the printing dialog box, click **Save As** in the **Presets** list to save the current print settings. This is a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll Width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

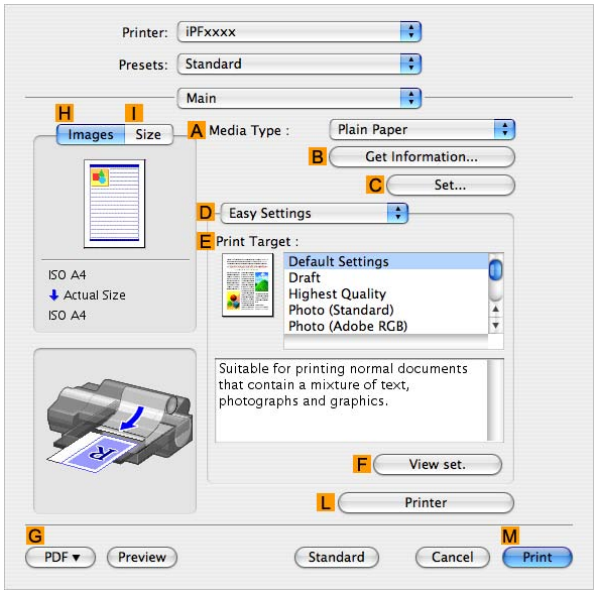
- Do not set up color-matching in Photoshop.
- In the printer driver, specify **Driver Correction** and set **Color Space** to **Adobe RGB**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

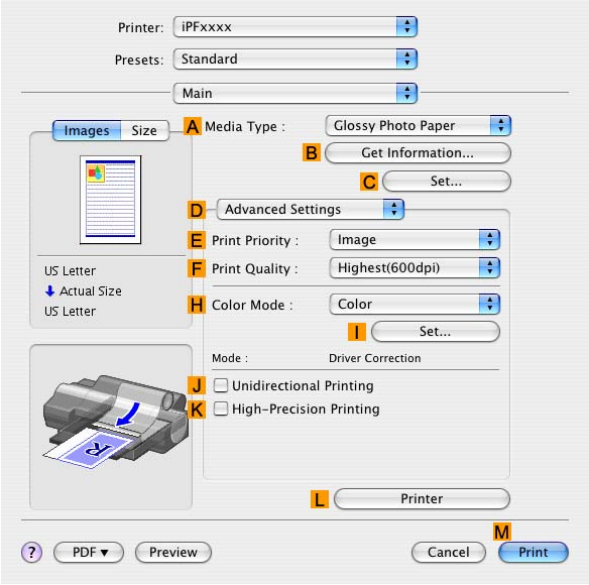
   - Photoshop CS2 is used in this example.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2. Choose **Print with Preview** from the Photoshop menu to display the **Print** dialog box.
3. Make sure the setting mode is **Color Management**.
4. In the **Color Handling** list in **Options**, click **No Color Management**.
5. Click **Print**.
6. Access the **Main** pane.



7. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

8. Click **D Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

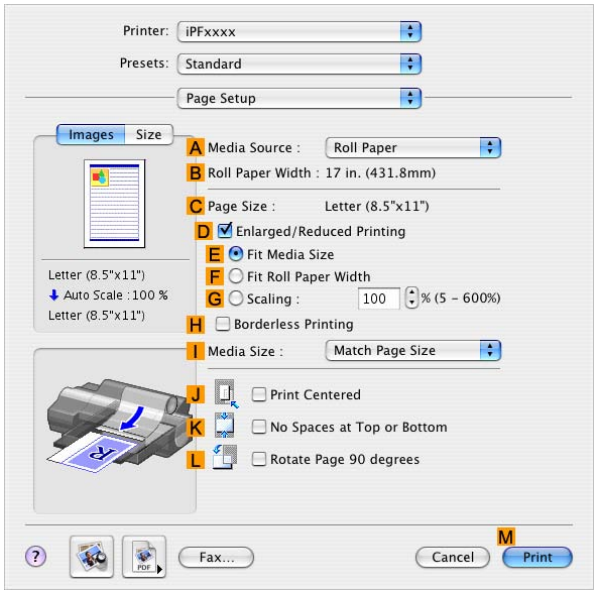


9. Click **Image** in the **E Print Priority** list.
10. Select the print quality in the **F Print Quality** list.

Note

- Options displayed in the **F Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

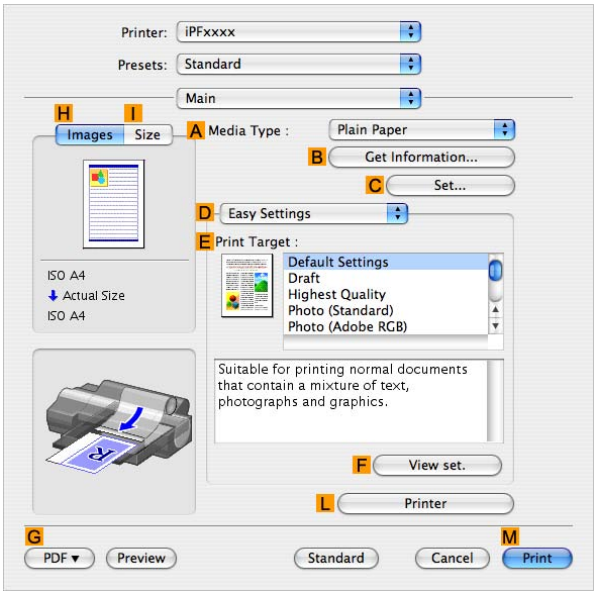
11. Click **Color** in the **H Color Mode** list.
12. Click **I Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
13. Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.
14. In **Mode**, click **Driver Correction**.
15. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
16. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
17. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



18. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
19. Make sure the width of the loaded roll paper is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the loaded roll is not displayed in B **Roll Paper Width**, click L **Printer Information** on the **Main** pane and update the printer information.



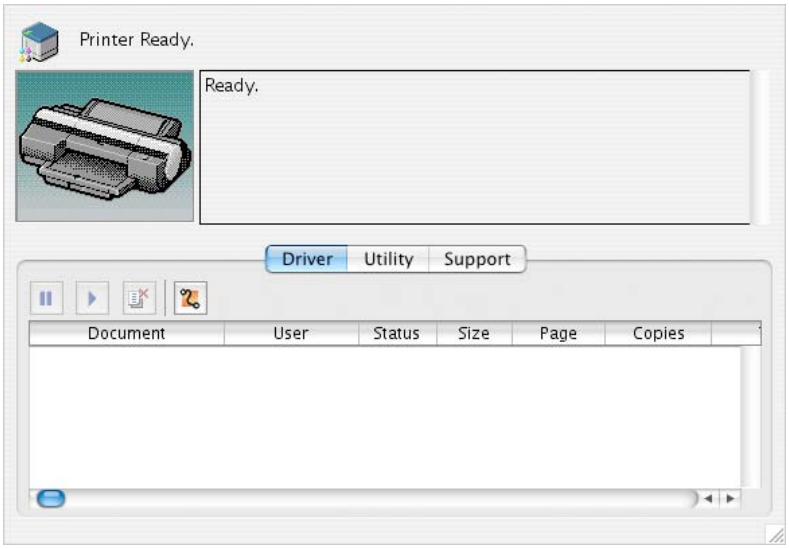
20. Make sure the page size as specified in Photoshop is shown in C **Page Size** -in this case, **10"x12"**.
21. Confirm the print settings, and click M **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)”. (→P.517)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

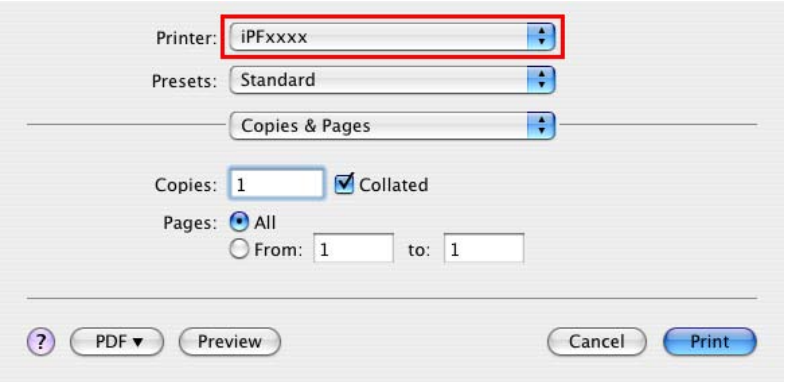
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

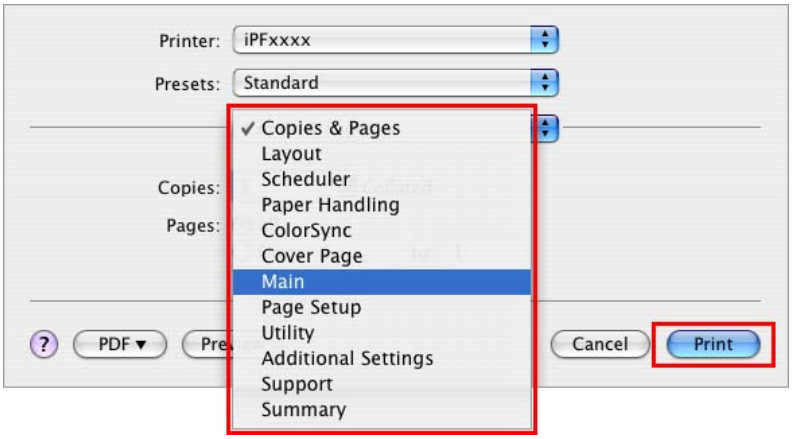
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

   As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

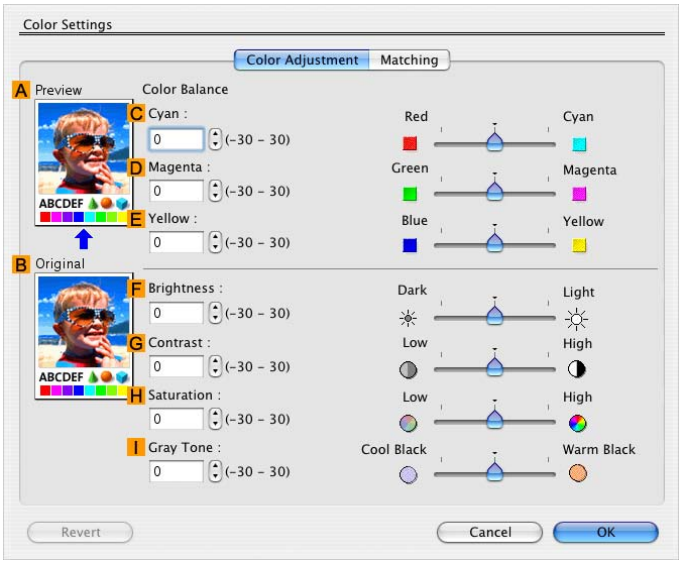


Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

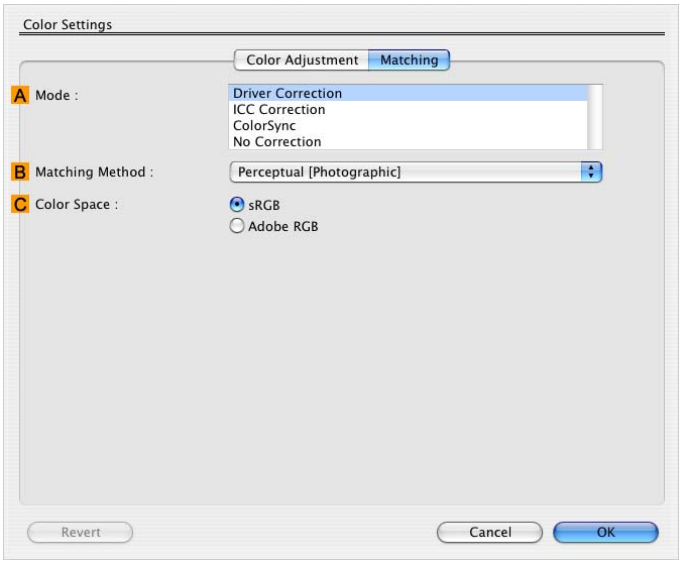
Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

Note

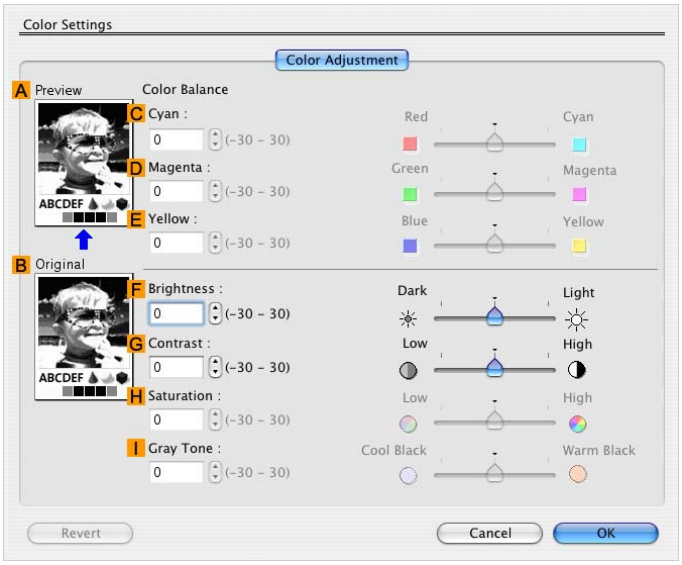
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Color Settings** in **Advanced Settings**.

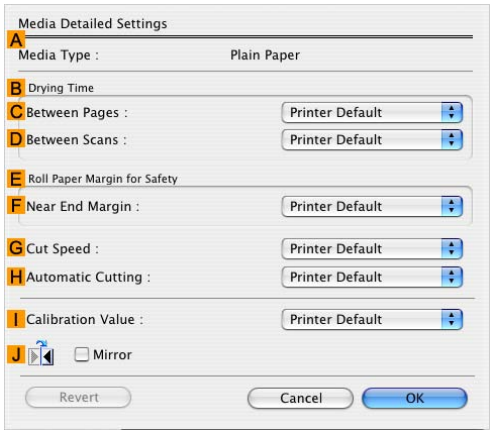
Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Not available.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Not available.
I **Gray Tone**	Not available.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



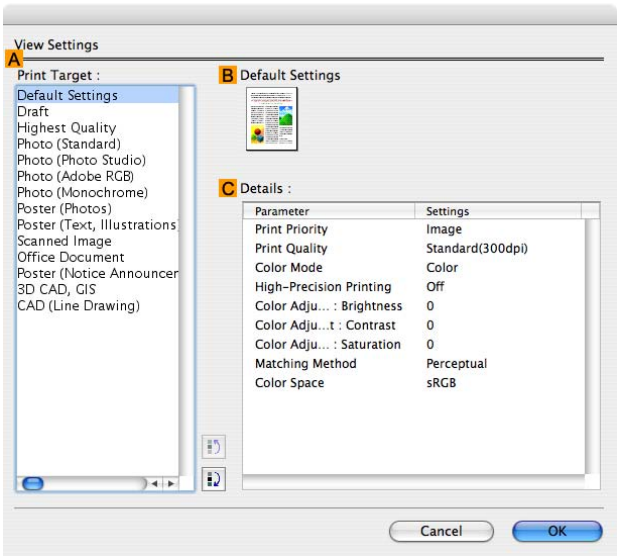
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B **Drying Time**		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C **Between Pages**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D **Between Scans**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F **Near End Margin**	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G **Cut Speed**		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. You can adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H **Automatic Cutting**		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, specify **Yes** , **No**, or **Print Cut Guideline** .
I **Calibration Value**		You can specify whether to apply the results of calibration performed on the printer to image processing.
J **Mirror**		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS X) (→P.523) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

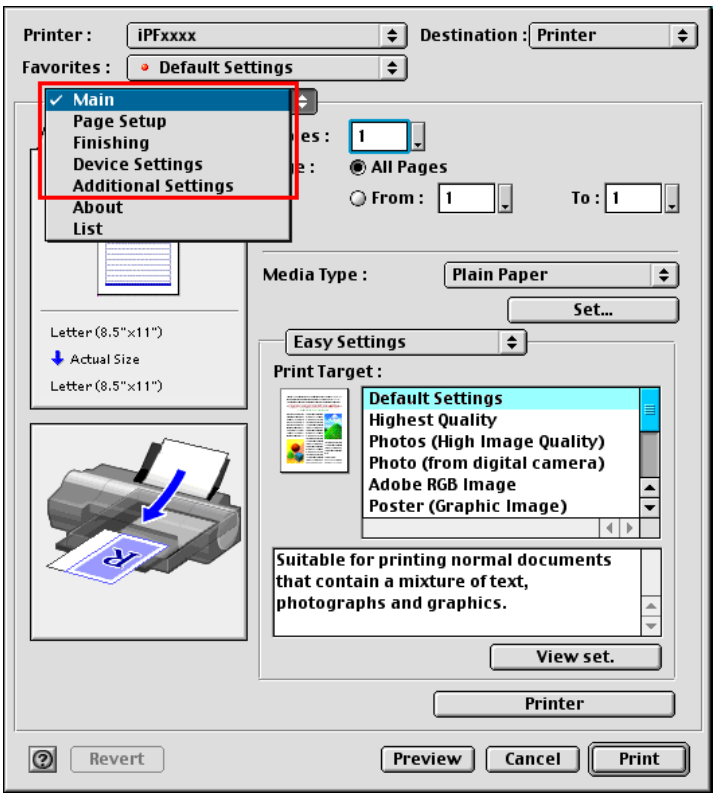
Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Mac OS 9

Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9)

For instructions on accessing the Mac OS 9 printer driver, refer to the following topics.

- Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9) (→P.559)



For information on the Mac OS 9 printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.

- Main Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545)

  You can specify the number of copies, page range, media type, color processing, print quality, and print preview. Choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application or **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

  - Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.566)
  - View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) (→P.568)
  - Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) (→P.561)
  - Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) (→P.564)
  - Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.550)
- Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.547)

  You can specify the amount of enlargement or reduction, borderless printing, media size, and page layout.
- Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.549)

  You can specify the media source, watermarks, and orientation.
- Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.551)

  You can perform maintenance for the Printhead or feed amount.
- Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.552)

  You can specify settings for background printing, how print jobs are sent to the printer, and notification after printing.

  - Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) (→P.567)

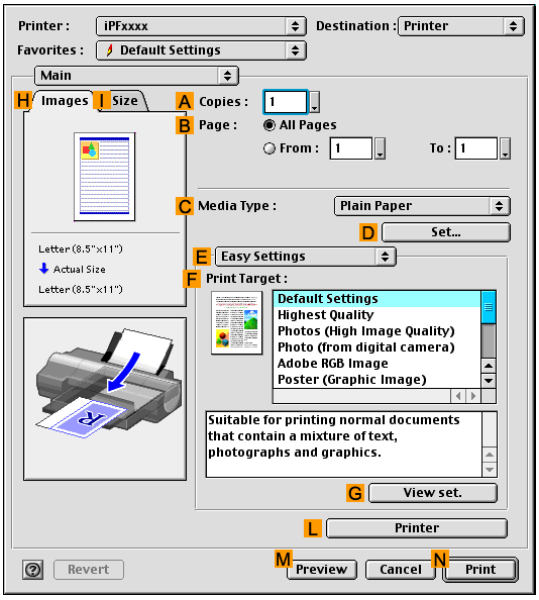
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)

There are two ways to confirm what printing conditions have been specified, as follows.

- Checking a preview of the settings (→P.542)
- Checking a print preview (→P.543)

Checking a preview of the settings

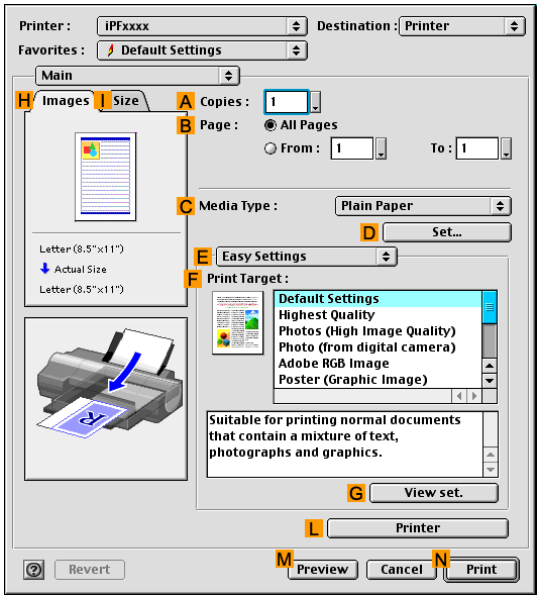
A preview of the settings is displayed on the left side of the **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Finishing**, **Utility**, and **Additional Settings** panes. By checking images and numerical values in the preview, you can confirm current settings for the page size, orientation, media source, and so on.



Display Area	Information Displayed
Pane displayed when the H **Images** tab is clicked	On top, illustrations indicate the page size of the original, the paper size, orientation, layout, borderless printing selection, color mode, and other settings information. Under this, the page size, paper size, and method and percentage of enlargement or reduction is displayed.
Pane displayed when the I **Size** tab is clicked	Paper size details are indicated numerically.
Pane with printer and paper illustrations	Illustrations indicate the media source, orientation, borderless printing selection, and other settings information.

Note

- To confirm the **Print Target** specified in **Easy Settings**, click G **View set.** on the **Main** pane to display the **View set.** dialog box.



Checking a print preview

You can check an image of the original just as it will be printed.
Confirming the image of print jobs beforehand helps prevent printing errors.
For details on print previews, see “Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.544)

Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to preview images of print jobs before actually printing them.

1. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
2. Click **Preview** to open the preview window.
3. Check the layout and other aspects of the printing image, and then click **Print this page** to start printing.

Note

- “Preview” is provided as a standard feature of the operating system. For details, refer to the Mac OS documentation.

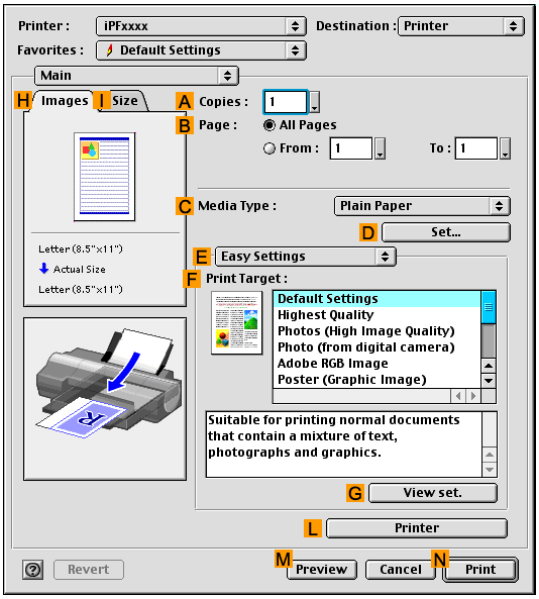
Main Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Main** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.

Note

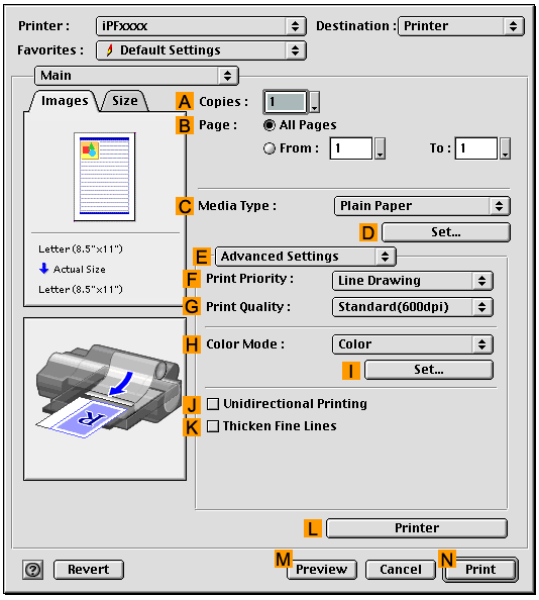
- On the Main pane, choose **Easy Settings** to specify basic print settings based on the printing application, or switch to **Advanced Settings** to complete more detailed settings as desired.

Configuration using Easy Settings



Setting Item		Description
A **Copies**		Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
B **Page**		Specify the pages to print. • **All Pages** • **From** and **To**
C **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
	D **Set**	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F **Print Target**		Choose presets that match the type of document to be printed. Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) (→P.209) Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) (→P.212) Printing Office Documents (→P.213)
	G **View set.**	Click to display the **View set.** dialog box, which enables you to confirm the settings for the selected item from the F **Print Target** list or change the order of items listed in F **Print Target** .
L **Printer**		Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

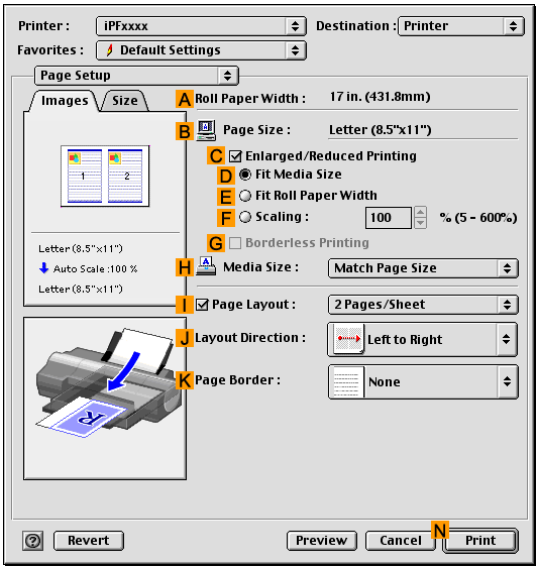
Configuration using Advanced Settings



Setting Item	Description
A Copies	Enter the number of copies to print, in a range of “1-999.”
B Page	Specify the pages to print. • **All Pages** • **From** and **To**
C Media Type	Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
D Set	Click to display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box for ink drying time and other detailed settings based on the paper type.
F Print Priority	Choose the graphic elements that you want to emphasize for printing. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
G Print Quality	Choose the level of print quality. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
H Color Mode	Choose the color mode. Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)
I Set	Click to display the **Color Settings** dialog box for more advanced color settings. Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
J Unidirectional Printing	Although unidirectional printing is slower, it can help prevent misaligned lines and ensure better results. Depending on the printing conditions, unidirectional printing may be the default setting even if you do not choose it. In this case, the printing speed will not change if you activate the setting.
K Thicken Fine Lines	Activate this option to print fine lines more distinctly.
L Printer	Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which indicates the ink levels and gives other information about the printer.

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Page Setup** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



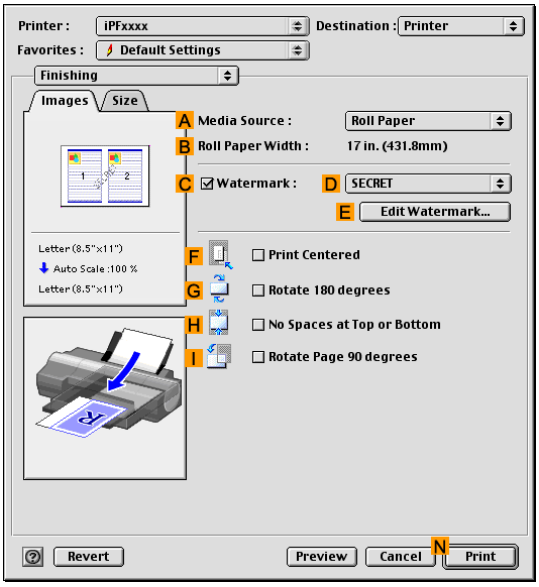
Setting Item		Description
A Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer.
B Page Size		Displays the page size, as specified in the source application. For details on paper sizes available from the source application, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)
C Enlarged/Reduced Printing		Choose from the following options when this setting is activated. Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.273) Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.274) Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.275)
	D Fit Media Size	Scales the document image to match the paper size.
	E Fit Roll Paper Width	Scales the document image to match the roll width.
	F Scaling	Resizes the document image based on a specified scaling value. Enter a value in a range of “5-600.”
	G Borderless Printing	Borderless printing is available if **Roll Paper** is selected from the **A Media Source** list in the **Finishing** Pane (Mac OS 9). (→P.549) Activate this setting for borderless printing to match the size and width of the paper. Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.325) Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.327) Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.307)
	H Media Size	Choose the size of the paper you will print on. For details on available paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)
I Page Layout		Activate this option to select the page layout when printing multiple pages per sheet.(*1) Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (→P.383) Printing Posters in Sections (→P.384)

Setting Item		Description
	J **Layout Direction**	This setting is available when I **Page Layout** is selected. Here, you can specify the orientation of multiple pages to be printed on a single sheet.
	K **Page Border**	This setting is available when I **Page Layout** is selected. Here, you can specify the type of boundary line around each page of multiple pages printed on a single sheet.

*1: Selecting poster layout from the I **Page Layout** list displays a check box for specifying the pages to print.

Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Finishing** pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



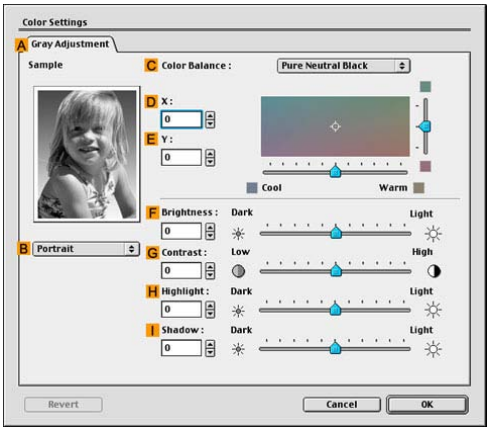
Setting Item		Description
A Media Source		You can choose the media source. Options displayed in the list vary depending on the selection in **C Media Type** in the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9). (→P.545)
B Roll Paper Width		Displays the paper width of the roll loaded in the printer. **Unknown** is displayed if the printer cannot detect the roll paper width.
C Watermark		Activating this option makes two settings available, **D Watermarks** and **E Edit Watermark** . Printing With Watermarks (→P.445)
	D Watermarks	Lists the provided watermarks. Choose the watermark to print.
	E Edit Watermark	Click to display the **Edit Watermark** dialog box for creating your own, original watermark.
F Print Centered		Choose this option to print the document images in the center of the paper. Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (→P.405) Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (→P.406)
G Rotate 180 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 180 degrees before printing.
H No Spaces at Top or Bottom		Activate this setting to print the next image skipping blank areas above and below printable data in documents, which enables you to conserve the paper. Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.423)
I Rotate Page 90 degrees		Activate this setting to rotate the document image by 90 degrees before printing. Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.422)

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Gray Adjustment** pane.

Gray Adjustment

On the **Gray Adjustment** pane, you can adjust the color balance, brightness, contrast, and other image qualities.



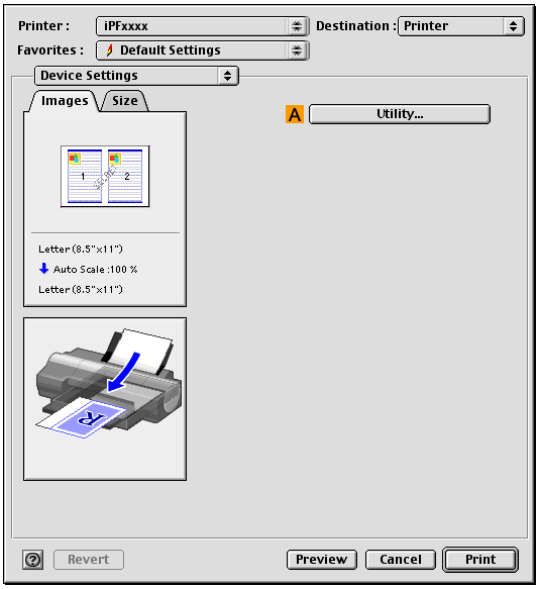
Note

- To display the **Gray Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , select **Monochrome (Photo)** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Color Settings**.
- **Monochrome (Photo)** is not available for all types of paper.

Setting Item	Description
A **Sample**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the sheet, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Sample List**	Select a sample image, as desired.
C **Color Balance**	Click the list to select a color balance that suits the printing application.
D **X**	Adjust the color balance as you check the color tone in the adjustment area. You can adjust the square area in the center by clicking or dragging it. Drag the vertical or horizontal scroll bars for adjustment, as desired. You can click the arrows by the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) boxes or enter the values directly.
E **Y**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Highlight**	Adjust the brightness of the lightest portion.
I **Shadow**	Adjust the brightness of the darkest portion.

Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

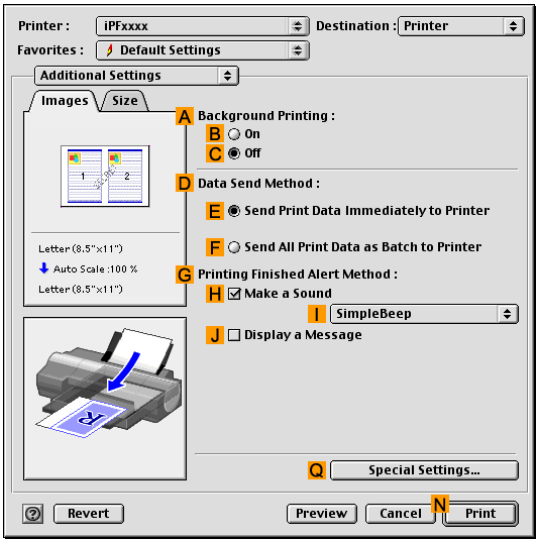
The following settings are available on the **Device Settings** pane.



Setting Item	Description
A **Utility**	Click to display the **Printer Information** dialog box, which offers the following maintenance for the printer. • Nozzle (ink ejecting outlet) cleaning • Head alignment adjustment • Feed amount adjustment

Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Additional Settings**pane. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



Setting Item		Description
A **Background Printing**		Choose the printing method. Activate this setting by clicking B **On** to print in the background. Deactivate this setting by clicking C **Off** to print in the foreground.
D **Data Send Method**		Choose how printing data is sent to the printer. • E **Send Print Data Immediately to Printer** • F **Send All Print Data as Batch to Printer**
G **Printing Finished Alert Method**		Choose how to notify when printing is finished. Specify how to be notified when printing is finished, by a tone or a message.
	H **Make a Sound**	Activate this setting to be notified by a tone when printing is finished. You can also choose a different tone.
	J **Display a Message**	Activate this setting to be notified by a dialog box when printing is finished.

Using Favorites (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to register favorites and print using favorite settings.

Registering a favorite

Follow the steps below to save the current print settings as a favorite.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Complete the print settings.
4. In the **Favorites** list, click **Add Favorite** to display the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
5. Complete the following settings in the **Add Favorite** dialog box.
   - Enter a desired name in **Name**, such as “Photos for Presentations” or “Monthly Report.”
   - In **Comment**, enter a description of the favorite to be added.
6. Click **OK** to close the **Add Favorite** dialog box.

   The favorite you have added is now displayed in **Favorites**.

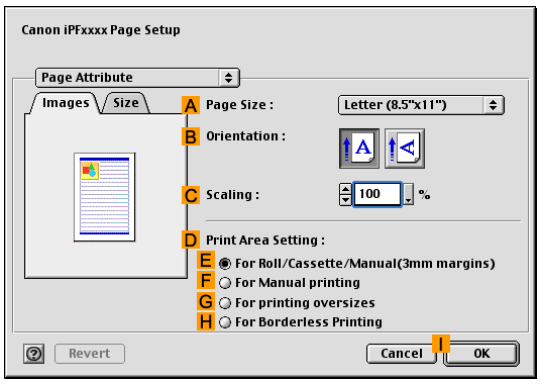
Note

- To edit the name of an existing favorite or comment, click **Edit Favorite** in the **Favorites** list to display the **Edit Favorite** dialog box.
- To save a favorite as a file, click **Export** and specify the file to save.

Printing using the favorite

Follow the steps below to print using the favorite you have registered.

1. Select the printer in **Chooser**.
2. Choose **Page Setup** from the application menu to display the **Page Attribute** dialog box.



3. Choose the original size in the A **Page Size** list.
4. Click I **OK** to close the dialog box.
5. In the application menu, choose **Print**.
6. In the **Favorites** list, choose the favorite you registered.

Note

- To import a favorite, click **Import** and specify the favorite file.
- If you select a favorite and edit it, an icon is displayed at left of the name to indicate that the settings have been changed. For details, refer to the printer driver help.

7. Confirm the print settings, and then click **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9)

This topic describes how to print Adobe RGB images based on the following example.

- Document: Adobe RGB image created in Photoshop
- Page size: 10×12 inches (254.0×304.8 mm)
- Paper: Roll
- Paper type: Glossy Photo Paper
- Roll width: 10 inches (254.0 mm)

Important

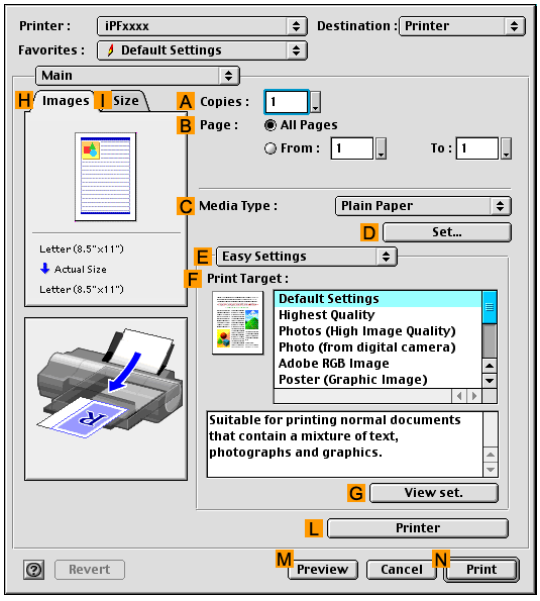
- Do not set up color-matching in Photoshop.
- In the printer driver, specify **Driver Matching Mode** and set **Color Space** to **Adobe RGB**.

1. In Photoshop, create an image in the Adobe RGB color space.

   Note

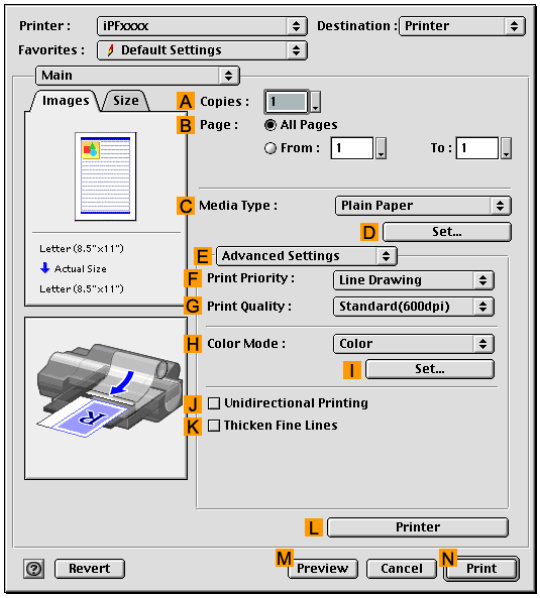
   - Photoshop CS2 is used in this example.
   - For instructions on creating Adobe RGB images, refer to the Photoshop documentation.

2. In the Photoshop menu, choose **Print**.
3. Make sure the **Main** pane is displayed.



4. In the C **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded. In this case, click Glossy Photo Paper.

5. Click **E** **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

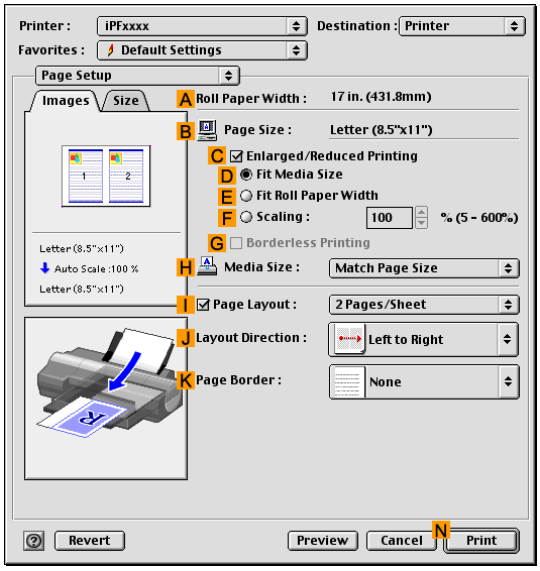


6. Click **Image** in the **F** **Print Priority** list.
7. Select the print quality in the **G** **Print Quality** list.

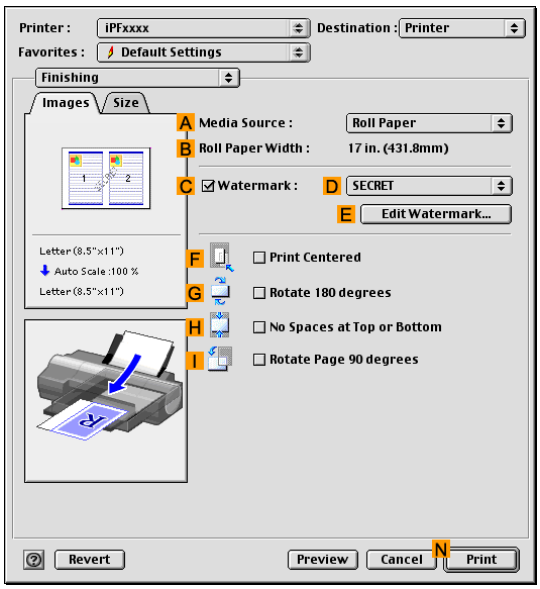
Note

- Options displayed in the **G** **Print Quality** list vary depending on the paper type.

8. Click **Color** in the **H** **Color Mode** list.
9. Click **I** **Set** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click **Matching** to display the **Matching** pane.
11. In **Mode**, click **Driver Correction**.
12. In **Color Space**, click **Adobe RGB**.
13. Click **OK** to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.
14. Access the **Page Setup** pane.



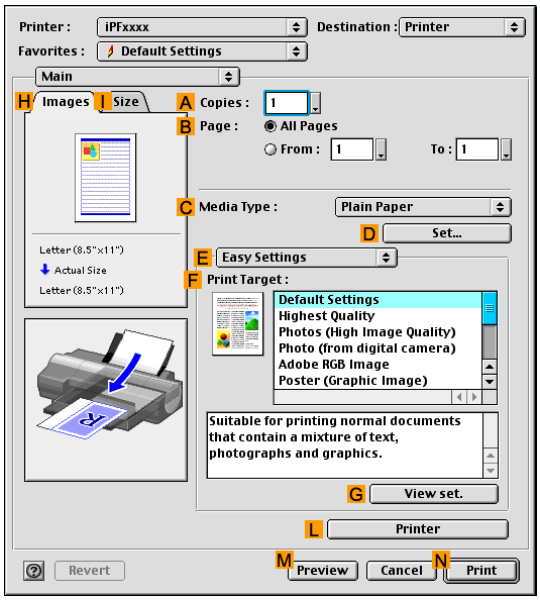
15. Make sure the page size as specified in Photoshop is shown in B **Page Size** -in this case, **10"x12"**.
16. Access the **Finishing** pane.



17. Click **Roll Paper** in the A **Media Source** list.
18. Make sure the width of the loaded roll paper is displayed in the B **Roll Paper Width** list-here, **10-in. Roll (254.0mm)**.

Note

- If the width of the roll loaded in the printer is not shown in the B **Roll Paper Width** list, click the L **Printer** in the **Main** pane to update the printer information.



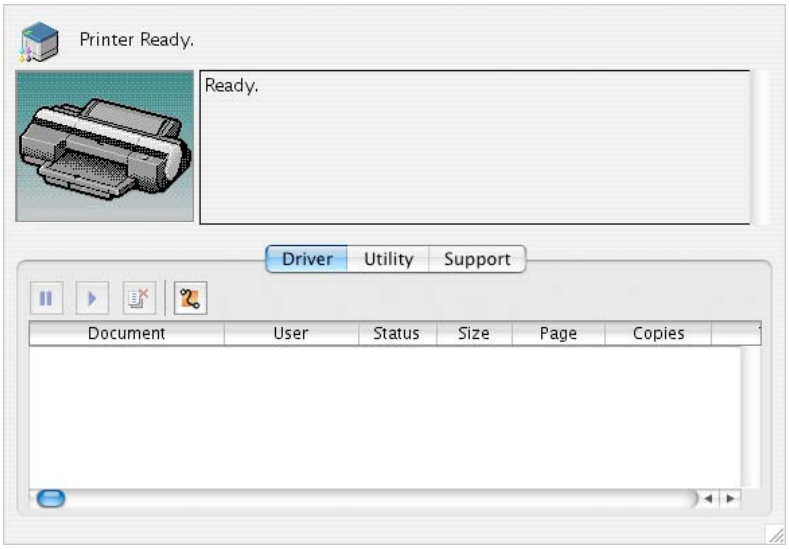
19. Confirm the print settings, and click N **Print** to start printing.

Note

- For tips on confirming print settings, see “Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9)”. (→P.542)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

imagePROGRAF Printmonitor is a utility for checking the printer status and managing print jobs.



- Printer status can be checked in real time on a computer monitor.
- You can check the status of print jobs, cancel jobs, and manage them as needed.
- If a printer error occurs, you can investigate the corrective action immediately.
- You can also set up automatic email notification of any printer problems or errors to email addresses you designate in advance.

Note

- If the status of the desired printer is not shown in **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor**, select the printer again as follows.
  1. Make sure the printer is on and connected to the network or to a local port.
  2. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.
  3. If information about the printer is not shown in step 2, choose **Search Printer** in the **Printer** menu.
  4. Select the zone to search (or select ***(My Zone)** if no zones have been set up) and click the **Search** button.
     Printer names listed in the **Printer** menu are updated with the printers that are now detected.
  5. In the **Printer** menu, select the name of the desired printer.
     After the printer is detected, the printer status is shown.

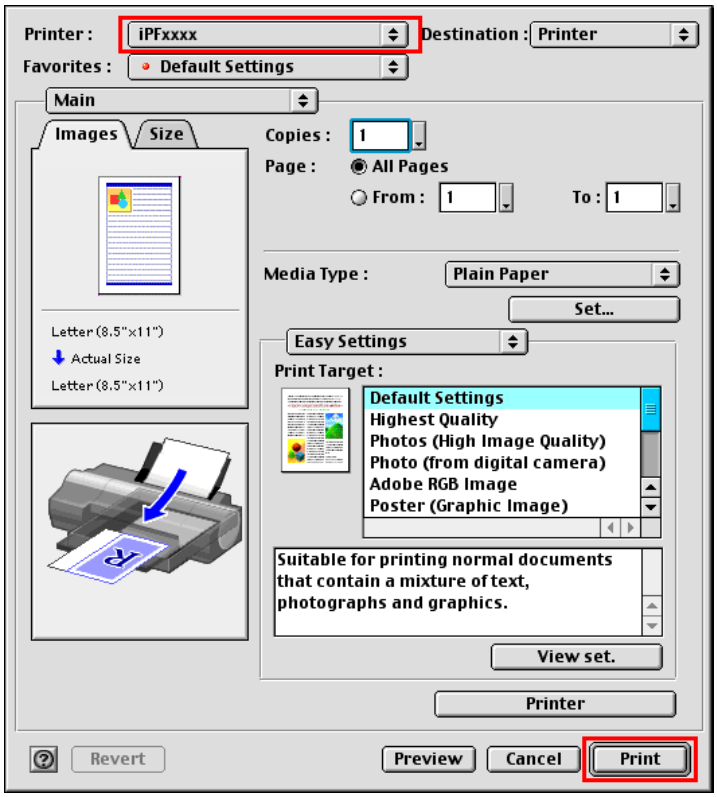
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)

1. In the application software, select **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.

   Note

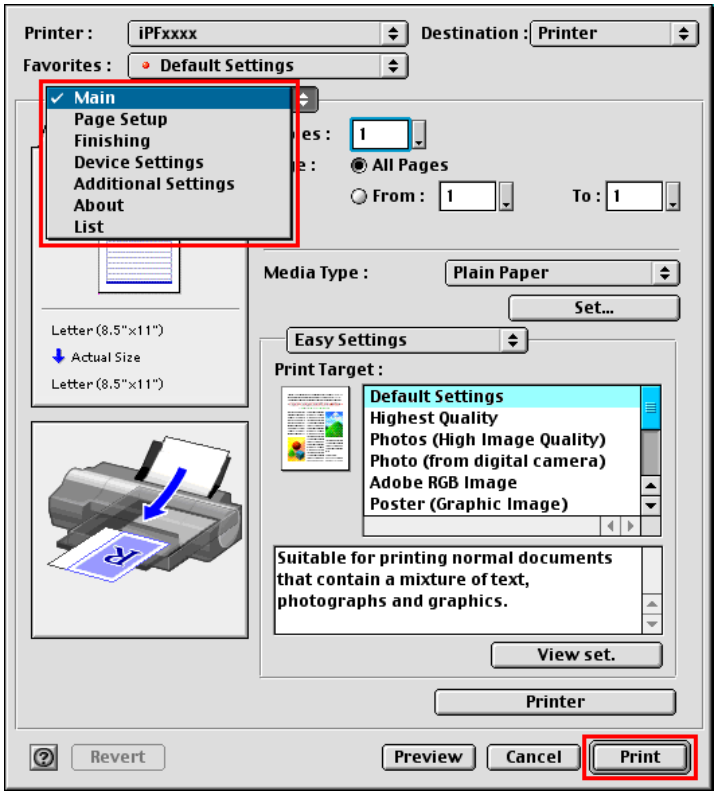
   - This dialog box includes basic printing options and enables you to choose the printer, specify the range of pages, number of copies, and so on.

2. Select the printer in the **Printer** list.



3. Click **Print** to start printing.

As shown in the following illustration, you can switch to other panes in this dialog box to complete settings for various methods of printing, including enlarged and reduced printing, borderless printing, and so on.

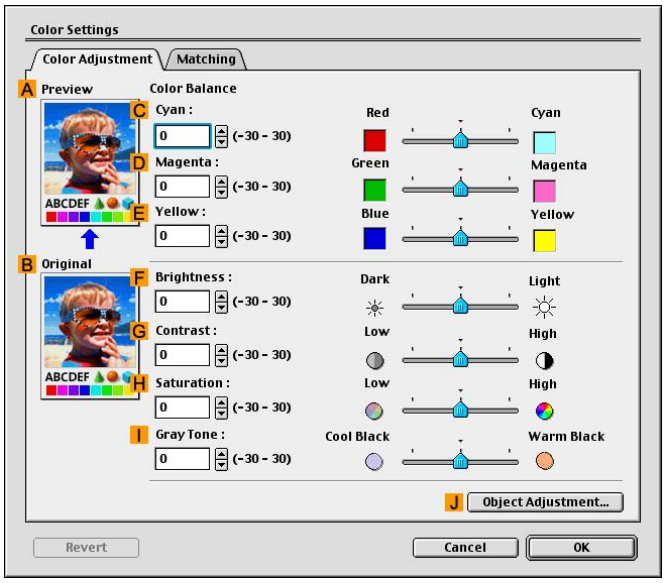


Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9)

In general, make any needed adjustments to the color of documents in the application used to create them. However, if the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can also adjust the color in the printer driver.

Color Adjustment pane: color

If the color tone as printed is not as you expected, you can adjust it on the **Color Adjustment** pane.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Preview**	The image at left is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B **Original**	The image at right shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C **Cyan**	Correct color tones by adjusting the levels of each color.
D **Magenta**	
E **Yellow**	
F **Brightness**	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the computer screen).
G **Contrast**	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H **Saturation**	Adjust the color intensity as desired. Increasing the **Saturation** setting makes colors more vivid, and reducing the **Saturation** makes colors more subdued.

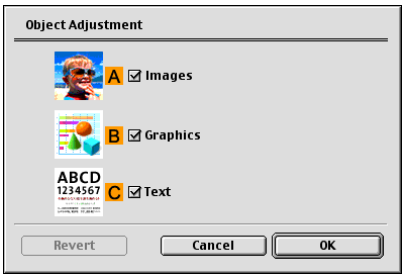
Setting Item	Description
I **Gray Tone**	Adjust the color tone of grays as desired. Choose **Cool Black** (tinged with blue), **Warm Black** (tinged with red), and so on.
J **Object Adjustment**	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.



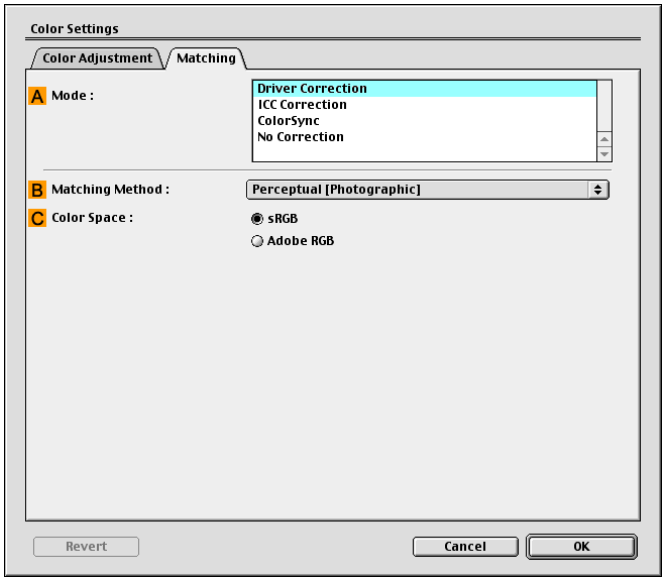
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, click **Object Adjustment** on the **Color Adjustment** pane.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Matching pane

On the **Matching** pane, you can specify color matching, to compensate for differences in the appearance of colors on various devices.



Note

- To display the **Matching** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**, and then click **Matching**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Matching Mode**	Select the color matching mode to use, as desired.
B **Matching Method**	Select the matching method that suits the document to be printed. Various **Matching Method** options are available depending on your selection in **Matching** .
C **Color Space**	Select the applicable color space as desired.

Note

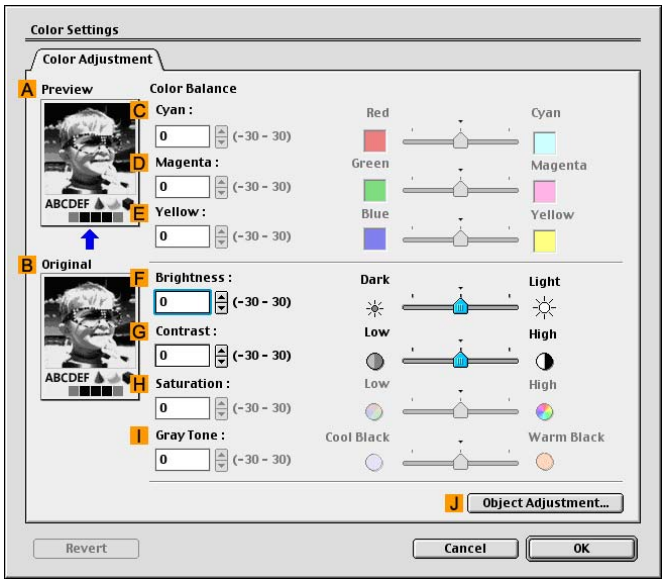
- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9)

The following settings are available on the **Color Settings** pane for monochrome printing.

Color Adjustment pane: monochrome

On the **Color Adjustment** pane for monochrome printing, you can adjust the brightness and contrast.



Note

- To display the **Color Adjustment** pane, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **Color Settings** by **Color Mode** in **Advanced Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A Preview	The image above is updated to reflect any changes you make to setting items on the right of this pane, enabling you to check the results of adjustment.
B Original	The image on the bottom shows the original state before adjustment. You can compare it to the **Preview** image.
C Cyan	Not available.
D Magenta	
E Yellow	
F Brightness	Adjust the overall image brightness as desired. You can adjust the brightness if the printed document is lighter or darker than the original image (that is, the original photo that was scanned or the original graphic as it appears on the monitor).
G Contrast	Adjust the contrast of the darkest and lightest portions relative to each other, as desired. Increasing the **Contrast** makes images sharper, and reducing the **Contrast** softens images.
H Saturation	Not available.
I Gray Tone	Not available.
J Object Adjustment	Select this option to display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, in which you can specify objects subject to color adjustment.

Note

- For details on settings items, see “Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver”. (→P.214)

Object Adjustment dialog box

In the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, you can specify what type of print jobs to apply color adjustment to. If an original comprises images, graphics, and text, you can specify which portion to apply color adjustment to.

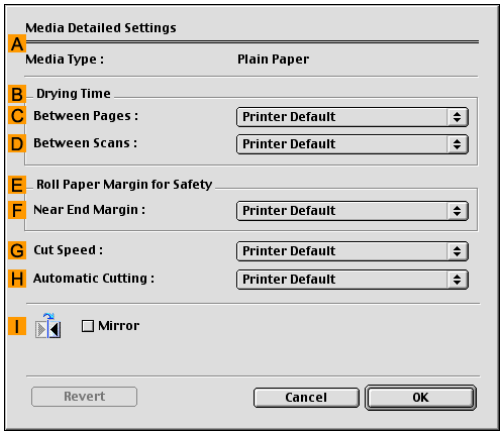
Note

- To display the **Object Adjustment** dialog box, on the **Color Adjustment** pane, click **Object Adjustment**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Image**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to image areas, such as photos.
B **Graphics**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to graphics, such as lines and circles.
C **Text**	Select this option to apply color adjustment to text.

Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

The **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box offers the following settings. For details on settings items, refer to the printer driver help.



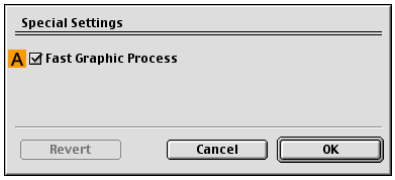
Note

- To display the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **Settings** by **Media Type**.

Setting Item		Description
A **Media Type**		Select the paper type. For information on the types of paper the printer supports, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
B **Drying Time**		Specify the time that the printer waits for ink to dry, as needed. The **Drying Time** setting is only valid for rolls. (→P.135)
	C **Between Pages**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a page until ejecting the paper, as needed.
	D **Between Scans**	Specify the time the printer waits after printing a line on the page until printing the next line, as needed.
E **Roll Paper Margin for Safety**		You can specify the length of a margin on the leading edge of paper to ensure that paper susceptible to curling is held firmly against the Platen .
	F **Near End Margin**	Specify the length of the **Near End Margin** (the leading edge margin) of the roll, as needed.
G **Cut Speed**		Select the speed of automatic cutting, as needed. Adjust this setting if paper is not cut well when automatic cutting is used.
H **Automatic Cutting**		You can activate or deactivate **Automatic Cutting** and printing of cut lines, as desired. In this list, you can specify **Yes** or **No** and **Print Cut Guideline** .
I **Mirror**		Specify whether to print a mirror image, as needed. Select this option to print a version of the document or image with the left and right sides inverted.

Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9)

If the printing results are not as you expected, you can change how printing is processed in the **Special Settings** dialog box.



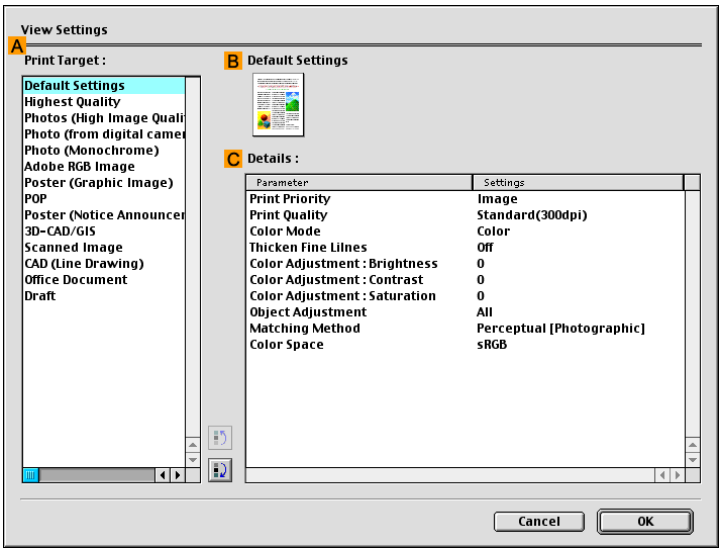
Note

- To display the **Special Settings** dialog box, on the **Additional Settings** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.552) , click **Special Settings**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Fast Graphic Process**	If image colors are inconsistent in printed documents or if lines are printed in varying thicknesses, clearing this option may help produce the expected results.

View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9)

In the **View Settings** dialog box, you can check details of the selected printing application.



Note

- To display the **View Settings** dialog box, on the **Main** Pane (Mac OS 9) (→P.545) , click **View Settings** by **Print Target**.

Setting Item	Description
A **Print Target**	Shows all **Print Target** options (settings items for the printing application).
B **Name**	Identifies the item selected in **Print Target** by its name and an icon.
C **Details**	Here, you can confirm detailed settings values for each item selected in the **Print Target** list.

Network Setting

Network Setting

Network Environment

System requirements

The system requirements, which vary depending on your network, are as follows.

- Printing over a TCP/IP network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Home Edition or Professional)
    - Windows Server 2003 (Standard Edition)
    - Windows Vista (Home Basic/Business/Ultimate)
    - Mac OS 9.1 or later
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems
- Printing over an AppleTalk network
  - Compatible operating systems
    - Mac OS 9.1 or later
    - Mac OS X 10.2.8 or later
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

Note

- The printer cannot be used over a LocalTalk network.
- Compatible with EtherTalk Phase 2.

- Printing over a NetWare network
  - Compatible servers
    - Novell NetWare 4.2/5.1/6.0
  - Compatible clients
    - Windows 2000 (Professional or Server)
    - Windows XP (Professional)
  - Compatible computer
    - A computer that runs one of the above operating systems

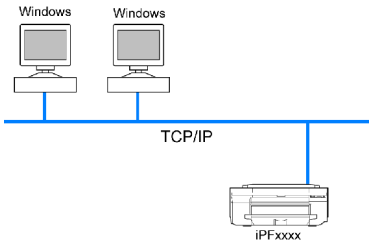
Note

- In NetWare 6.0, iPrint is not supported.

Network environment

After confirming what type of network environment you will connect the printer to, set up the printer and computers as needed.

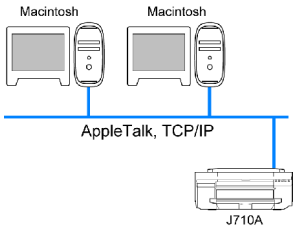
- Example of a Windows network
  In Windows networks, print over TCP/IP.



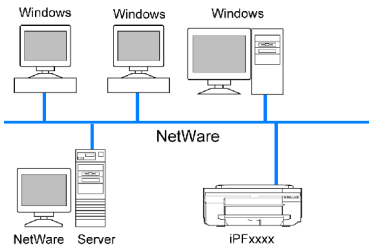
Note

- NetBIOS is not supported.

- Example of a Macintosh network
  In Macintosh networks, print over AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, using Bonjour(Zeroconf) functions.



- Example of a NetWare network



Note

- Even if there is a NetWare server in your network environment, you can use both TCP/IP and AppleTalk. In this case, complete the settings for each protocol you will use.

Configuring the IP Address on the Printer

You must configure the printer's IP address before using the printer on a TCP/IP network.
The printer's IP address is configured automatically when you install the printer driver following the instructions in the Quick Start Guide.
Follow the steps below to configure the IP address by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, the printer Control Panel, or ARP or PING commands, if the IP address is changed, or if you change the printer connection mode to a network connection. For details on configuring the IP address, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) (→P.495)
- Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.575)
- Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands (→P.577)

Note

- We recommend configuring the printer's IP address even if you will use the printer in other network except for TCP/IP. Configuring the printer's IP address enables you to use RemoteUI to configure the network settings and manage the printer with a web browser.
  For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.580)

Initializing the Network Settings

Use RemoteUI to restore the network settings to the default values as follows.

Important

- Initializing the network settings will also restore the default value of the printer's IP address. As a result, the RemoteUI page cannot be displayed in the web browser after this procedure.
- For instructions on reconfiguring the IP address, see "Configuring the IP Address on the Printer". (→P.571)
- For details on RemoteUI, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.580)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Reset to Default settings** in the lower-right corner of the **Network Interface** group.
6. After confirming the message, click **OK** to restore the network settings to the default values.

Note

- You can also use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the Control Panel to restore the default network settings.

Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the TCP/IP network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **TCP/IP** group to display the **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the TCP/IP Settings Items table to complete the settings.

TCP/IP Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Use DHCP	Activate this setting to use DHCP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use BOOTP	Activate this setting to use BOOTP for configuring the IP address.	Off
Use RARP	Activate this setting to use RARP for configuring the IP address.	Off
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Activate this setting to use Raw mode bidirectional communication.	Off
Enable DNS Dynamic Update	Activate this setting to perform DNS server registration automatically.	Off
Use Zeroconf Function	Activate this setting to use Bonjour.	On
IP Address	Specify the printer's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify the printer's subnet mask.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	Specify the printer's default gateway.	0.0.0.0
LPD Printing	Activate this setting to use LDP Printing.	On
IPP Printing	Activate this setting to use IPP Printing.	On
IPP Printer URI	Specify the URI of the printer used for IPP printing using up to 252 characters (1-252 characters). When using a standard Windows port for IPP printing, enter an URL less than 255 bytes for all characters for "http://<IP address/IPP-URI."	printer

Item	Details	Default Setting
RAW Printing	Activate this setting to use Raw Printing.	On
SMTP Server Address	Specify the SMTP server's IP address.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Specify the printer host name, up to 63 characters (1-63 characters). Use single-byte letters, numbers, and "-" (hyphens). Do not use numbers or "-" for the first character or "-" for the last character.	NB-17FBxxxxxxxxxxx
DNS Domain Name	Specify the printer domain name, up to 63 characters. Use single-byte letters, numbers, "-" (hyphens), and "." (periods). Do not use numbers, "-", or "." for the first character, or "-" or "." for the last character.	(Blank)
Multicast DNS Service Name	Specify the printer's Multicast DNS service name, up to 63 characters. (1-63 characters) This name will be displayed when Bonjour functions are used.	Canon iPFxxxx (xxxxxx)

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

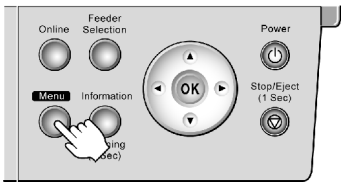
Note

- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, there must be a server that supports such protocol running in the network.
- If you specify to configure the IP address using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, the IP address obtained by this method is used first. If you cannot obtain the IP address, the address specified in **IP Address** is used.
- It takes a minute or two to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP are available. We recommend clearing check boxes of options you will not use.
- If you are using a DNS server, select **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** and enter the IP Address for DNS servers, DNS host name, and DNS domain name in **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**, respectively.

Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel

This topic describes how to configure the printer's IP address on the Control Panel.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Interface Setup ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **TCP/IP**, and then press ▼.

Interface Setup TCP/IP ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **IP Setting**, and then press ▼.

TCP/IP IP Setting ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **IP Address**, and then press ▼.

IP Setting IP Address ↓

6. Press ◄ or ► to move the cursor (_) to each field for entering IP address numbers.

IP Address =0.0.0.0

7. Press the **OK** button to prepare to enter the number.

8. Press ◄ or ► to select the number, and then press the **OK** button.

IP Address =xxx.0.0.0

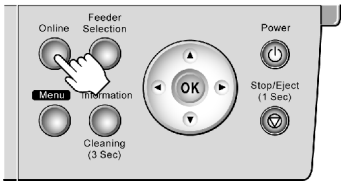
Note

- Pressing the ◄ button decreases the number by 1. The minimum value is “0,” after which “255” is displayed.
- Pressing the ► button increases the number by 1. The maximum value is “255,” after which “0” is displayed.
- Hold down ◄ or ► to increase or decrease the value continuously.

9. Repeat steps 6-8 to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.

IP Address =xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx

10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
If any of the settings are changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 10. This will activate the values you have entered.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway on the Control Panel.

Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands

This topic describes how to configure the IP address using ARP and PING commands.
To use the ARP and PING commands, you will need to know the printer's MAC address. You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel.

1. Check the printer's Mac address.

   You can confirm the MAC address on the Control Panel as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Information**, and then press ▼.
   3. Press ◄ or ► to select **MAC Address**, and then press the **OK** button.

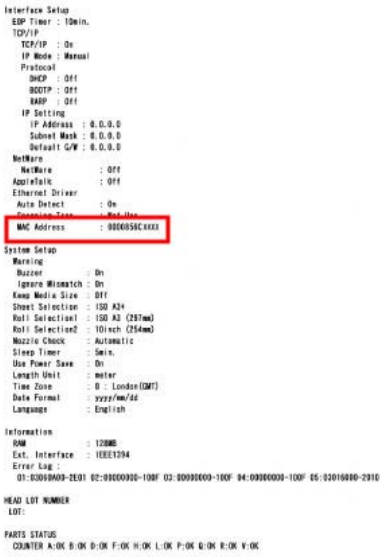
   You can also print information on the printer status, which includes the MAC address, as follows:

   1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
   2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Test Print**, and then press ▼.
   3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Status Print**, and then press the **OK** button.

   Note

   - If you have selected **20mm** in **Nr End Sht Mrgn** in the printer menu, the **Status Print** sheet may not be printed completely.
     (→P.47)

   The MAC address is indicated in the printer status information in the following location.



2. In Windows, open a command prompt or MS-DOS prompt, or in Mac OS X, start Terminal.
3. Execute the following command to add entries to the ARP table for managing IP addresses and corresponding Mac addresses.

   arp -s [IP address] [the printer's Mac address you have verified]

   Example: arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00-00-85-xx-xx-xx

   Note

   - In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the arp command in the format "arp -s xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx 00:00:85:xx:xx:xx." For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

4. Execute the following command to send the IP address to the printer and configure it.
   ping [IP address as specified in the ARP command] -l 479
   Example: ping xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx -l 479

Note

- In “-l,” the “l” is the letter “l”.
- In Mac OS X when using Terminal, enter the ping command in the format “ping -s 479 xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx.” For details, refer to the help file for the command line.

Note

- The subnet mask and default gateway will be set to “0.0.0.0.”Use RemoteUI to change the subnet mask and default gateway to match your network settings.
  For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.580)

Specifying Printer-Related Information

Follow the steps below to specify device information and security settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Information** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Information** page.
5. To display the relevant settings page, click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of **Device Information** or **Security**, depending on what information you want to specify.
6. Refer to the tables of settings items for device information and security settings to complete the settings.

   Device information settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Device Name	Specify the device name. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Location	Specify where the device is installed. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Administrator	Identify the administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Phone	Specify the device administrator’s contact information. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)
Comments(E-mail)	Enter any notes from the device administrator. (0-32 characters)	(Blank)

   Security settings items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Old Password	Enter the current device password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
New Password	Enter a new password. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)
Confirm	Enter the new password again to confirm it. (0-15 characters)	(Blank)

   Besides entering a password, you can specify other security-related information, such as use of SNMP or IPP authentication, or an IP address to restrict printing via TCP/IP.
7. Click **OK** to activate the settings.

Using RemoteUI

Enter the printer's IP address in a web browser to display the RemoteUI page. After you log on to RemoteUI from the page, you can check and change the status of the printer and print jobs, and configure network settings.
For details on configuring printer settings for networks, refer to the following topics.

- Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings (→P.573)
- Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings (→P.598)
- Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings (→P.582)
- Specifying Printer-Related Information (→P.579)

Note

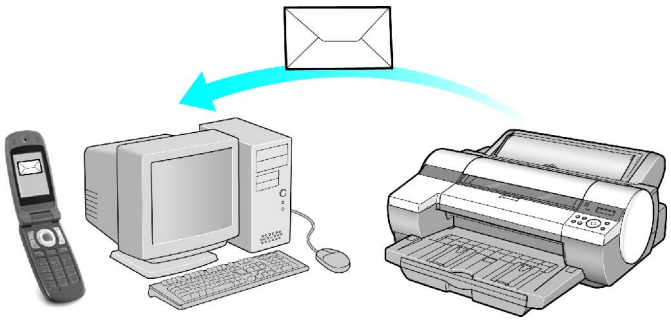
- RemoteUI also offers many other features. You can display the ink levels, check error messages and other status information, and cancel print jobs.
- By factory default, the English screen is displayed. You can change the display language after logging on by choosing the desired language in the **Language** list.

Important

- Use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, Internet Explorer 5.01 or later, or Firefox 1.5 or later as a web browser. In Mac OS X, you can also use Safari 1.32 or later or Safari 2.03 or later.
- Access is not possible via a proxy server. In environments where a proxy server is used, add the printer's IP address to **Exceptions** (addresses accessed without a proxy server) in the web browser proxy server settings. (Settings may vary depending on the network environment.)
- Enable JavaScript and cookies in the web browser.
- If you access RemoteUI with the printer name instead of its IP address, make sure the DNS settings are correctly configured.

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur

The printer can notify you of the printer status by email. Even when you are away from the printer, you can know when printing is finished or if errors occur. Receive notification via email on your mobile phone or at your computer.



Use the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) function to set up email recipients and message timing. Besides being informed of finished print jobs or errors, you can also complete settings for email notification when service is needed or it's time to replace consumables.

Note

- For details on email notification using imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows), refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.

Network Setting (Windows)

Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the NetWare network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the NetWare Settings Items table to complete the settings.

NetWare Settings Items

Item		Details	Default Setting
Frame Type		Specify the type of frame to use in NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode		Activate this setting to use NCP Burst Mode. This mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, leave the setting On.	On
Print Application		Choose the print service. • **Bindery PServer** • **RPrinter** • **NDS PServer** • **NPrinter**	NDS PServer
Packet Signature		Select **If Requested by Server** to use packet signature.	**If Requested by Server**
Bindery PServer	**File Server Name**	Specify the name of a file server that has a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-15 seconds)	5

Item		Details	Default Setting
RPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-5)	0
NDS PServer	**Tree Name**	Specify the name of an NDS tree that has a NetWare print server, up to 32 characters.	-
	Context Name	Specify the name of a context that has a NetWare print server, up to 255 characters.	-
	Print Server Name	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 64 characters.	-
	Print Server Password	Set a password for the print server, up to 20 characters.	-
	Polling Interval	Specify the interval to confirm jobs. (1-255 seconds)	5
NPrinter	**Print Server Name**	Specify the name of a NetWare print server, up to 47 characters. Enter the advertising name of the print server designated by the NetWare print service. Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.	-
	Printer Number	Specify the number of the printer connected to the NetWare print server. (0-254) Enter the printer number designated by the NetWare print service.	0

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Specifying the Printer's Frame Type

To enable communication between the printer and computers on your network, specify the Ethernet frame type in your NetWare environment.
Follow the steps below to specify the frame type by using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility or the printer Control Panel.

Note

- You can specify the frame type by using RemoteUI if the printer's IP address is configured.

Important

- Before specifying the frame type, make sure the printer is on and connected to the network.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.494)

Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **NetWare Frame Type** list, select the frame type.
5. Click **ETHERNET II** under **Frame Type** in **TCP/IP**.
6. In **IP Address**, enter the IP address assigned to the printer, and then enter the subnet mask in **Subnet Mask** and the default gateway in **Gateway Address**.

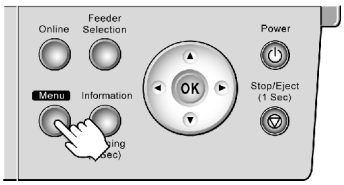
   Important

   - You must specify the IP address here to be able to configure NetWare protocol settings using RemoteUI.

7. Click **Set**.
8. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
9. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Interface Setup ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **NetWare**, and then press ▼.

Interface Setup NetWare ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **NetWare**, and then press ▼.

NetWare NetWare ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **On** and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

NetWare = On

   Return to the **NetWare** menu.

6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Frame Type**, and then press ▼.

NetWare Frame Type ↓

7. Press ◄ or ► to select your frame type, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Frame Type = Ethernet 802.3

   Return to the **NetWare** menu.

8. Press ◄ or ► to select **Print Service**, and then press ▼.

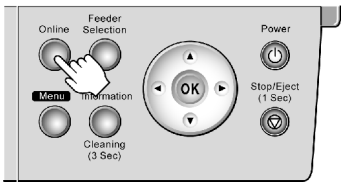
NetWare Print Service ↓

9. Press ◄ or ► to select your print service, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Print Service = RPrinter

   Return to the **NetWare** menu.

10. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more.

Important

- Be sure to complete step 10. This will activate the values you have entered.

Specifying NetWare Print Services

Before printing in a NetWare network, you must configure print services such as print servers, print queues, and so on. You can configure the print service settings from a computer using any of the following software.

- NWADMIN
- PCONSOLE
  (from Novell, provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you use NWADMIN to configure the print service settings, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client software) must be installed as the client software application.
- NetWare networking is unsupported in Windows Vista.

This topic gives instructions for configuring NetWare print services. The order of this procedure may vary depending on the environment.

Choosing the type of print services

Before completing print service settings, choose the type of print service. Refer to the following descriptions as needed.

Note

- In NetWare 5.1/6.0/6.5, NDPS may also be used as the print service. If you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway included with NetWare. For details on configuring NDPS, refer to the NetWare documentation.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and Bindery
  NDS and bindery are both supported. Use the mode that is compatible with your network environment.
- Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode
  Queue server mode and remote printer mode are both supported.
  - Queue Server Mode
    When using queue server mode, all print server functions are supported, so there is no need for other print server software or hardware. In NDS queue server mode (NDS PServer), the NDS print server is used for printing. In bindery queue server mode (Bindery PServer), the bindery print server is used for printing. Note that if you use queue server mode, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface.
  - Remote Printer Mode
    In remote printer mode, the printer is controlled by the NetWare print server. Thus, a NetWare print server is required. In NDS remote printer mode (NPrinter), the NDS print server is used for printing, and in bindery remote printer mode (RPrinter), the bindery print server is used for printing.

Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server

Use NWADMIN to set up the print server if NDS queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Administrator or with equivalent rights, and then start NWADMIN.
2. Run Quick Setup.
   1. Choose **Print Services Quick Setup** in the **Tools** menu.
   2. Enter a desired name in **Print Server Name**. To use an existing print server, click the button at right and choose the name from the list.
   3. Enter a desired printer name in **Name**.
   4. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use the printer in remote printer mode, choose **Parallel** in **Type**, click **Communications**, and set **Ports** to **LPT1** and **Connection Type** to **Manual Load**.
   5. Enter a desired queue name in **Name**.
   6. In **Volume**, enter the volume object (that is, the object representing the physical volume on the network) where the print queue will be created. Click the button at right to choose from a list.
   7. Complete other settings as needed and click **OK**.

   Note
   - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's network settings. Note the print server name for future reference.
   - When running Quick Setup, the printer is assigned printer number "0." When using the printer in queue server mode, do not change the printer number from "0."
3. Set a password.
   1. Right-click the print server created in step 2 and choose **Details**.
   2. Click **Change Password** to open the password input dialog box. Enter the password.
   3. Click **OK** to close the password input dialog box.
   4. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the details dialog box.
4. To use the printer in remote printer mode, start the print server.

   To use the NetWare file server as the print server, enter "LOAD PSERVER.NLM" at the file server and press the Enter key.

   Note
   - This procedure is not required when using queue server mode.

Use PCONSOLE to set up the print server if bindery queue server mode or remote printer mode is used.

1. Log into NetWare as Supervisor and start PCONSOLE.
2. Switch to bindery mode.
3. If the print server has not been created, create it.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Quick Setup** and press the Enter key.
    2. Enter the name of the new print server, the new printer, and the queue.

    Note
    - The print server name will be required when configuring the printer's protocol settings. Note down the print server name for future reference.

4. Specify the printer type.
    1. To use the printer in queue server mode, choose **Other/Unknown** in **Type**. To use remote printer mode, set **Printer Type** to **Parallel** and **Position** to **Manual Load**.
    2. Press the Esc key.
    3. After the confirmation message is displayed, choose **Yes** and press the Enter key.
5. Set a password.
    1. In **Available Options**, select **Print Servers** and press the Enter key.
    2. Select the print server created in step 2 and press the Enter key.
    3. Select **Password**, and press the Enter key to display the password input dialog box.
    4. Enter the password and press the Enter key.
6. Press the Esc key several times to display the dialog box for confirming that PCONSOLE is finished.
7. Click **Yes** to exit PCONSOLE.

Specifying NetWare Protocols

Follow the steps below to configure NetWare protocol settings other than the frame type by using RemoteUI.

Note

- For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.580)

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://“printer IP address or name”/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **NetWare** group to display the **Edit NetWare Protocol Settings** page.
6. Make sure the **Frame Type** indicates the frame type used on the NetWare network.
7. To use burst mode, choose **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.

   Note

   - Burst mode supports fast data transfer when printing in queue server mode. Normally, choose **On**.

8. In **Print Application**, click the print service to be used.

   Note

   - Only one print service selected here will be enabled. Multiple print services are not available at the same time.

9. For packet signature, click **If Requested by Server** in **Packet Signature**.
10. Complete the following settings based on the selected service.
    - If you have selected Bindery PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **File Server Name**, enter the file server name.
      2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)
      3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)
      4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
    - If you have selected RPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
      1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)
      2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)

- If you have selected NDS PServer: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Tree Name** and **Context Name**, enter the tree and context name of the print server. Do not exceed 255 characters for the context name.
  2. In **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)
  3. In **Print Server Password**, enter the password of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)
  4. In **Polling Interval**, specify the interval at which the printer checks the NetWare print queue.
- If you have selected NPrinter: Remote Printer Mode (Using a NDS Print Server)
  1. In **Print Server Name**, enter the advertising name of the print server created in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587) Usually, the advertising name is the same as the name of the print server.
  2. In **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number specified in Specifying NetWare Print Services. (→P.587)

11. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.
12. Click **Reset** to activate the settings.

For a list of NetWare protocol settings items, see “Configuring the Printer’s NetWare Network Settings”. (→P.582)

Note

- If you use RemoteUI to display the print log in RPrinter or NPrinter mode, the document and user information cannot be obtained. Thus, **Document Name** only indicates **Unknown**, and the **User Name** information is identified as **RPRINTER/NPRINTER**.

Configuring NetWare Network Settings

To print over a NetWare network, configure the network environment as follows.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.

1. Specify the Ethernet frame type for communication between the printer and computers.
   For instructions, see “Specifying the Printer’s Frame Type”. (→P.584)
2. Specify the NetWare print services, including the print server and queue.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Print Services”. (→P.587)
3. Specify NetWare protocol details besides the frame type.
   For instructions, see “Specifying NetWare Protocols”. (→P.590)
   After you have completed the steps above, configure each computer for printing over the NetWare network.
4. Connect to the NetWare network.
   Install NetWare client software on each computer to be used for printing over the network, and log in to the NetWare server or tree. For instructions on connection, refer to the NetWare and operating system documentation.
5. Install the printer driver.
   Follow the instructions of your network administrator to install the printer driver on each computer to be used for printing. When installing the printer driver, choose **Network Printer** as the printer destination, and then choose the print queue created from the NetWare print service settings.
6. Follow these steps to configure the printer port.
   1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
   2. Right-click the printer icon and choose **Properties**.
   3. Click the **Port** (or **Advanced**) tab to display the **Port** (or **Advanced**) sheet.
   4. As the destination port, specify the print queue created by configuring the NetWare print service settings.

   Note

   - This step is not necessary if you specified the printer destination during installation of the printer driver.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)

This topic describes how to specify the printer driver destination if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

Important

- If you use the printer on a TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address on the Printer (→P.571)

1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.
2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Properties** to open the printer properties window.
3. Click the **Port** tab to display the **Port** sheet.
4. Click **Add Port** to display the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
5. In the **Available Port** list, select **Standard TCP/IP Port**.
6. Click **New Port**.

   After the wizard starts, a window is displayed for the **Welcome to the Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard**.
7. Click **Next**.
8. In **Printer Name or IP Address**, enter the printer's IP address.
9. Follow the instructions on the screen to add a printer port.
10. Click **Close** to close the **Printer Ports** dialog box.
11. Make sure the printer port you added is displayed under **Ports**, and that the port is selected.
12. Click **OK** to close the printer properties window.

Note

- The procedure described above is the configuration based on the LPR or RAW protocol using the standard TCP/IP port in Windows (**Standard TCP/IP Port**).

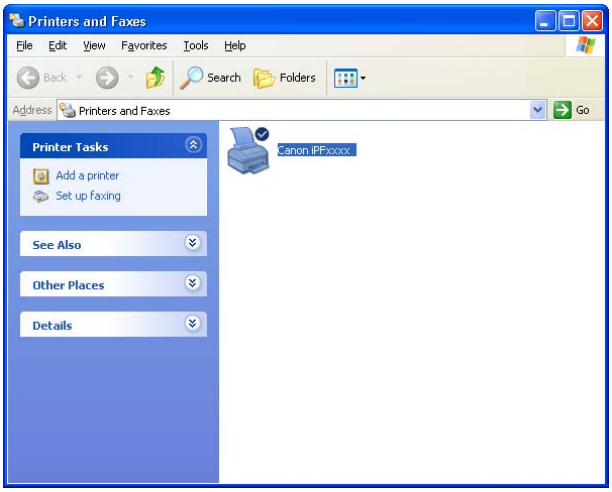
Sharing the Printer in Windows

If you set up a computer as a print server in Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003, the computer can receive print jobs sent from other computers (clients) connected to it for printing. This topic describes how to share the printer in Windows.

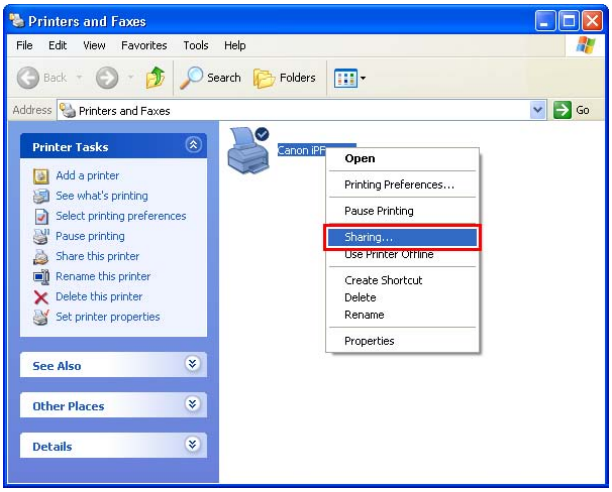
Important

- We recommend that your network administrator configure your network for printer sharing.

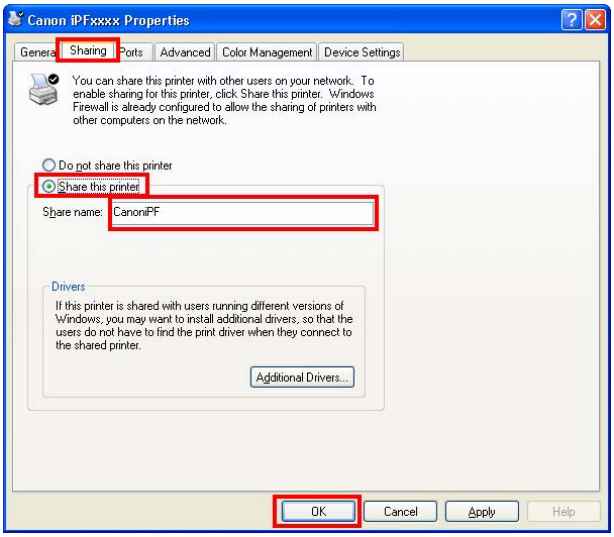
1. Open the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window.



2. Right-click the icon of this printer and choose **Sharing** to open the printer properties window.



3. On the **Sharing** sheet, click **Share this printer** and enter the shared name.



4. To print jobs from clients running other versions of Windows, click **Additional Drivers** and follow the instructions to install the printer driver of the corresponding version.
   If you are prompted to choose the location of the printer driver file, insert the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive and specify the folder where the printer driver is located.
5. Click **OK**.

Important

- When installing the printer driver on client computers, select "Network Printer" on the connection type screen in the printer wizard, and then select the printer shared from the computer set up as the print server.

Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

Install imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer as follows:

Important

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights equivalent to the “Administrator” account.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.
2. On the **Setup Menu** window, click **Install Individual Software**.
3. Click **Install** in imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to proceed with the installation.

Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility

From a computer running Windows, you can use imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility provided with the printer to configure the printer's IP address. This topic describes how to configure the IP address using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Important

- To configure network settings, you must be logged in with administrative rights such as "Administrator" account. We recommend that your network administrator configure the network settings.
- For instructions on installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility, see "Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.494)

1. Start imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility from the **start** menu.
2. In the list of printers, select the printer to configure.
3. Choose **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.
4. In the **Setting IP Address** list, choose **Manual**.
5. Enter the IP address assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.
6. Click **OK** after the **Confirmation** message dialog box is displayed.
7. Exit imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Note

- To configure the IP address automatically, choose **Auto** in the **Setting IP Address** list and select **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP**.
- You can also specify the subnet mask and default gateway.

Network Setting (Macintosh)

Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings

Follow the steps below to configure the AppleTalk network settings.

1. Start the web browser and enter the following URL in the **Location** (or **Address**) box to display the RemoteUI page.
   http://"printer IP address or name"/
   Example: http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/
2. Select **Administrator Mode** and click **Logon**.
3. If a password has been set on the printer, enter the password.
4. Click **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu at left to display the **Network** page.
5. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner of the **AppleTalk** group to display the **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page.
6. Refer to the AppleTalk Settings Items table to complete the settings.

   AppleTalk Settings Items

Item	Details	Default Setting
Phase Type	Specify whether to use AppleTalk. If you will use AppleTalk, choose **Phase 2**. If you will not use AppleTalk, choose **Disabled** .	Disabled
Name (*1)	Specify the object name used by AppleTalk (in up to 31 single-byte or 15 double-byte characters). However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ * : =	Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)
Zone (*2)	Specify the printer zone name, up to 31 single-byte characters. However, do not use the following single-byte characters: @ : = Also avoid using "*" (which represents the default zone) in the middle of a string.	*

   *1:The object name you have specified in **Name** is displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X. If you use multiple printers in the same zone, assign a unique name to each printer. By default, the network interface name is "Canon NB-17FB (xxxxxx)." (Here, xxxxxx is the last six digits of the printer's Mac address.)

   2: If zones have been created on the network, enter the name of the printer's zone. If there are no zones, leave the asterisk "" entry (for the default zone) as it is. If you enter a network zone name that does not match created zones, the printer will not be detected by Macintosh computers. Consult your network administrator for information on zone names.

7. Click **OK** to display the **Network** page.

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh)

Specify the printer driver destination as follows if the printer's IP address is changed, or if you will use the printer over a network connection instead of via USB connection.

- If you switch to printing in an AppleTalk network, see "Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)". (→P.600)
- If you switch to printing in a TCP/IP network, or if the printer's IP address is changed, see "Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)". (→P.604)
- If you switch to printing in a Bonjour network, see "Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)". (→P.608)

Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)

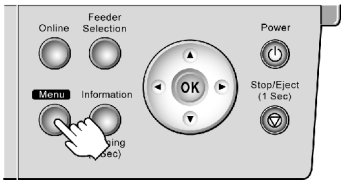
To print over an AppleTalk network, activate the AppleTalk protocol and configure the destination as follows.

Activating AppleTalk on the printer

Important

- By factory default, the AppleTalk protocol is disabled on the printer.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Interface Setup ↓
```

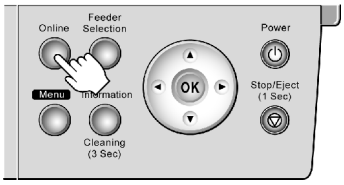
3. Press ◄ or ► to select **AppleTalk**, and then press ▼.

```
Interface Setup
AppleTalk ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **On** and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
AppleTalk
= On
```

5. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer online.
   If any of the settings is changed, a message for confirmation is displayed. In this case, press the **OK** button.



Note

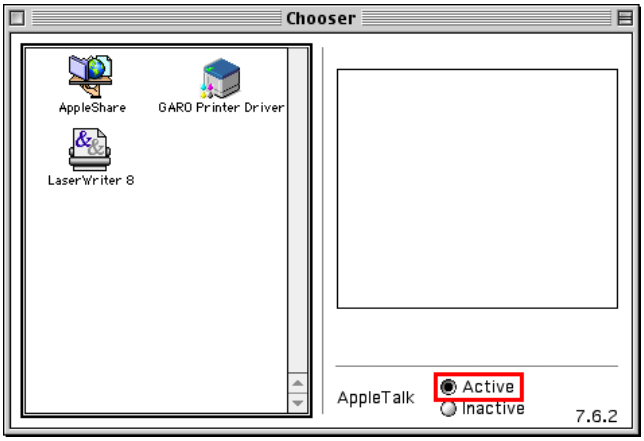
- By using RemoteUI, you can also specify the object name used by AppleTalk, as well as the printer zone name.
  For details on RemoteUI, see “Using RemoteUI”. (→P.580)

Important

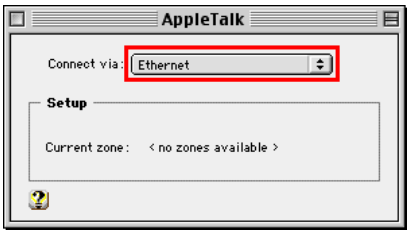
- Be sure to complete step 5. This will activate the values you have entered.

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)

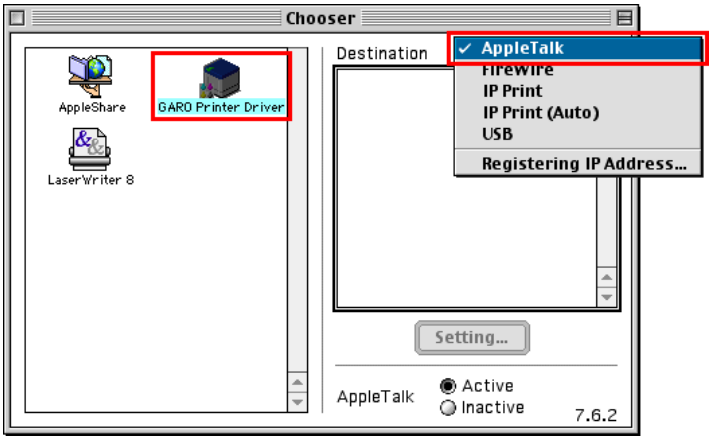
1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In **AppleTalk**, click **Active**.



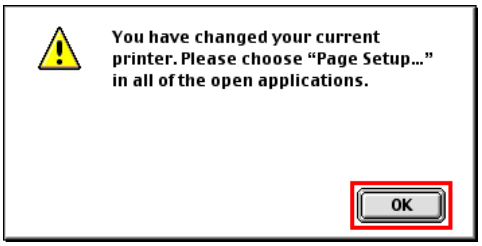
3. Close the **Chooser** window.
4. Click **AppleTalk** under **Control Panels** to display the **AppleTalk** window.
5. In **Connect via**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**.



6. Close the **AppleTalk** window and save the settings.
7. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
8. In the list at left, click **GARO Printer Driver**.
9. In the **Destination** list at right, select **AppleTalk**, and then select the printer in the list below.



10. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.

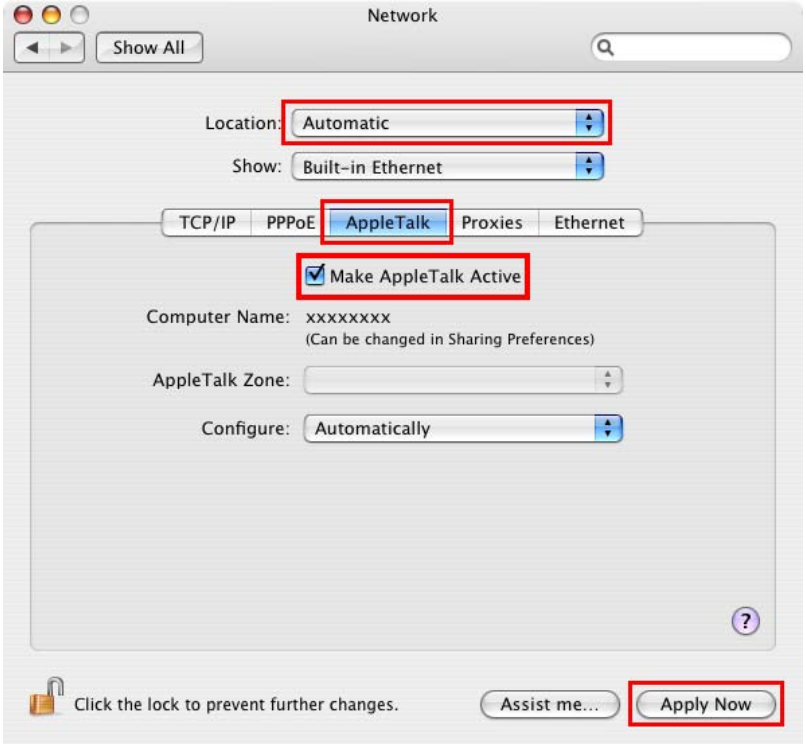


Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

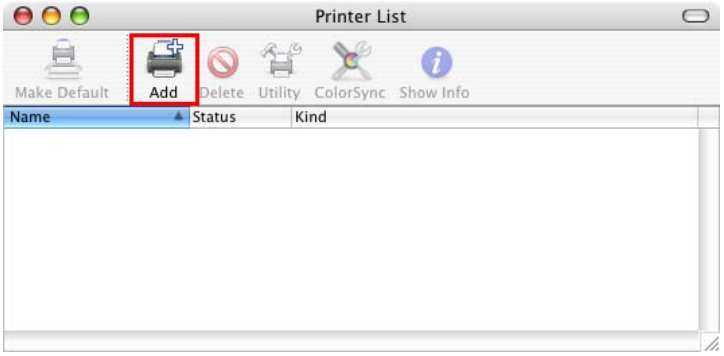
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X.

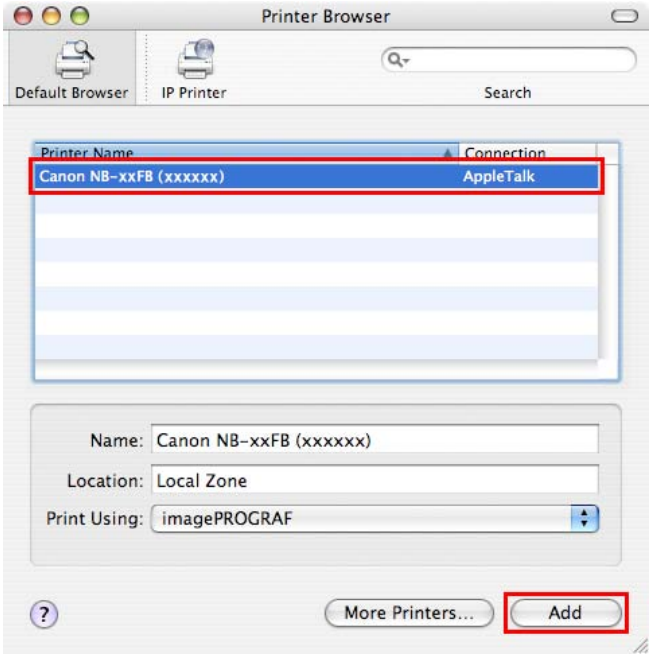
1. In **System Preferences**, click **Network** to display the **Network** window.
2. In **Show**, choose **Built-in Ethernet**. Next, click **AppleTalk**, select **Make AppleTalk Active**, and click **Apply now**.



3. Close the **Network** window and save the settings.
4. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
5. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
6. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



7. Select the printer in the **Printer Browser** list and click **Add**.



Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh)

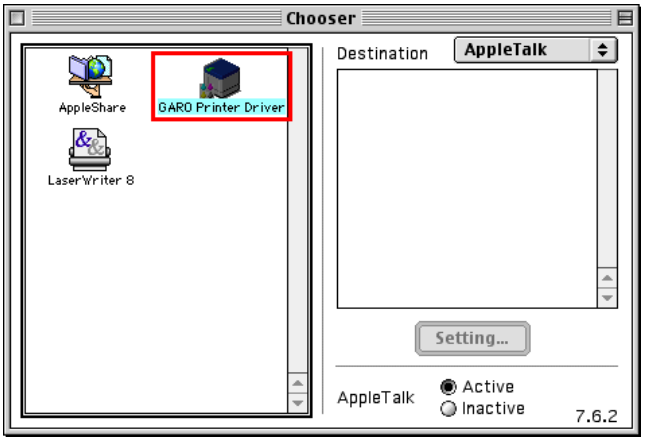
Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

Important

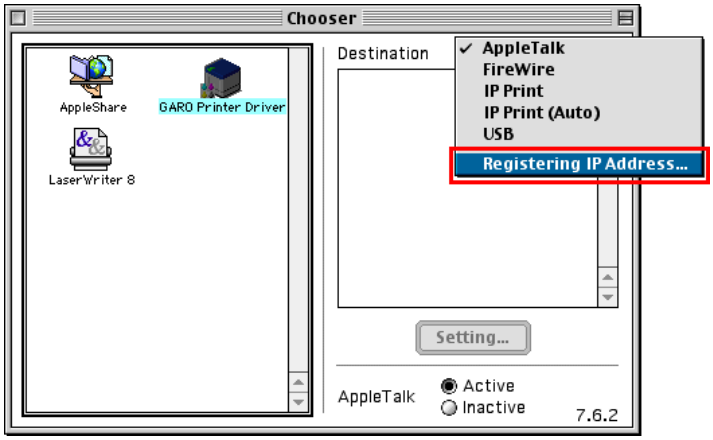
- If you use the printer on TCP/IP network, make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly.
  - Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel (→P.575)

Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9)

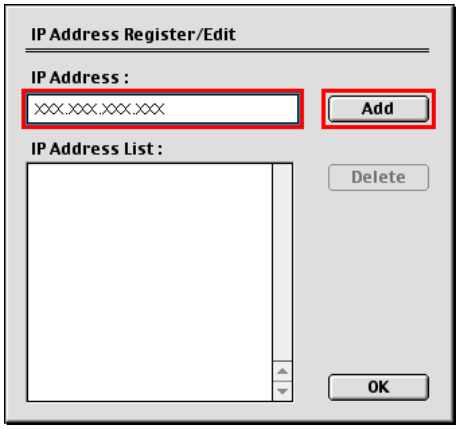
1. Choose **Chooser** from the Apple menu to display the **Chooser** window.
2. In the list at left, click **GARO Printer Driver**.



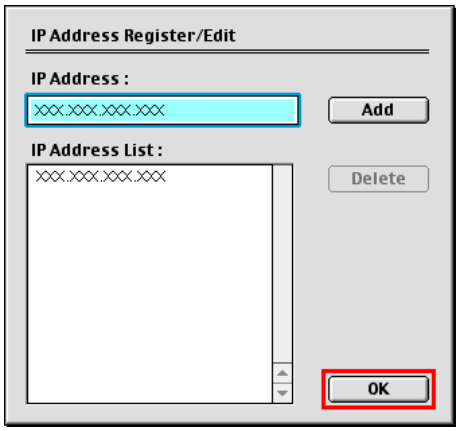
3. Click **Registering IP Address** in the **Destination** list to display the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.



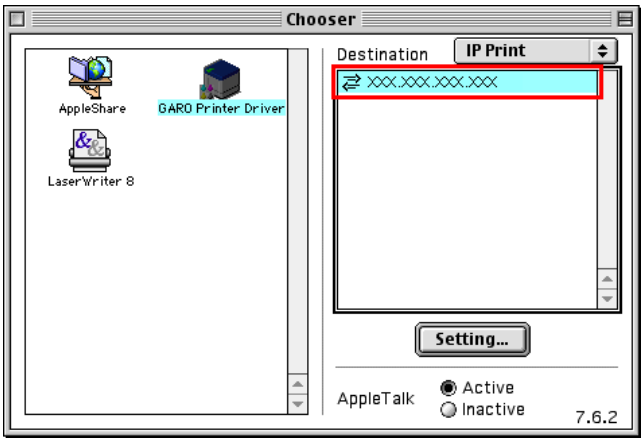
4. Enter the printer's IP address in **IP Address** and click **Add**.



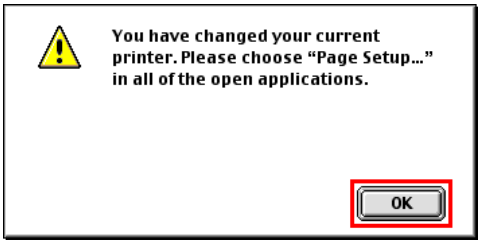
5. Click **OK** to close the **IP Address Register/Edit** dialog box.



6. In the **Destination** list, click the address you registered.



7. Close the **Chooser** window and click **OK** after the confirmation message is displayed.

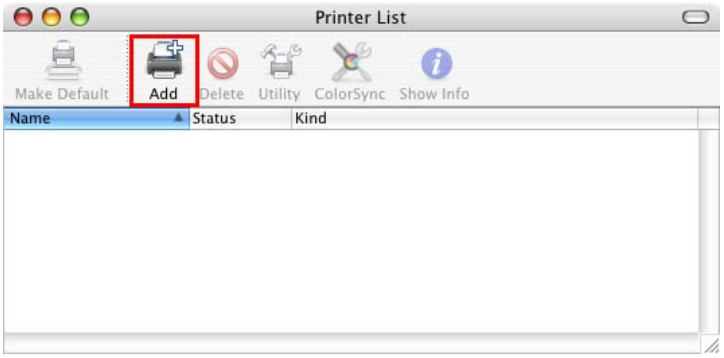


Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X)

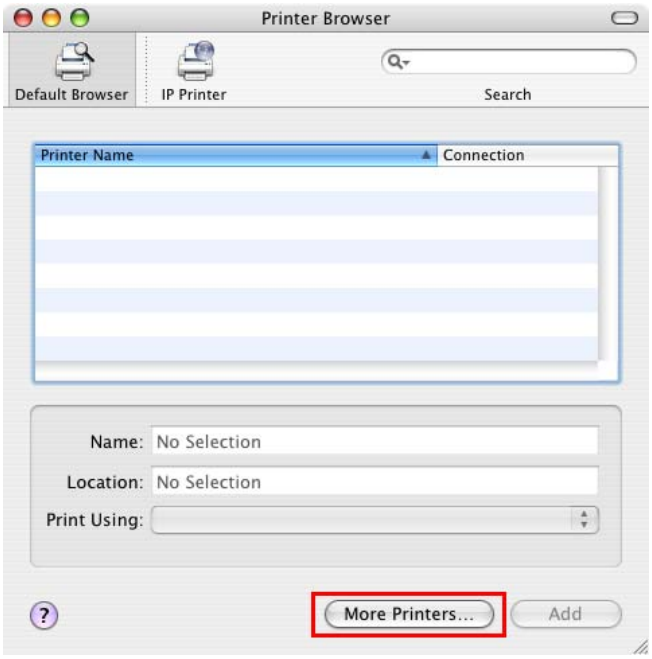
Note

- The following procedures are based on Mac OS X 10.4. The method of configuring the destination varies depending on the version of Mac OS X. If you use other versions, refer to the help for the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**).

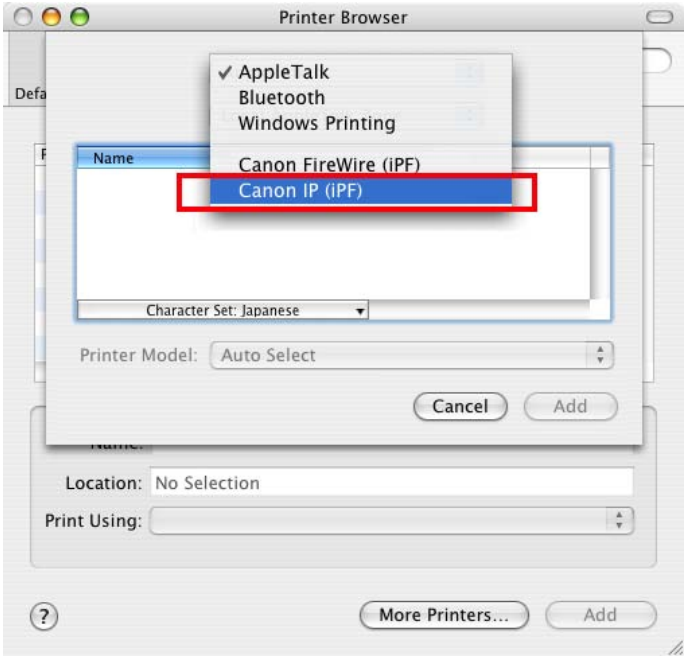
1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. Click **Add** to display the **Printer Browser** window.



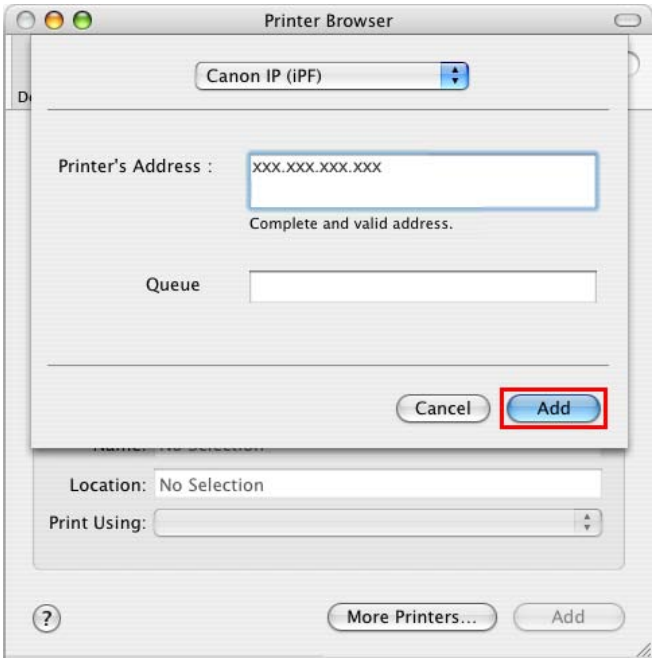
4. Click **More Printers**.



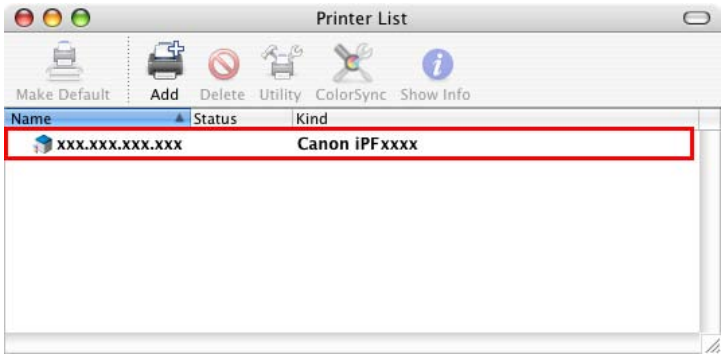
5. In the list of connection methods, click **Canon IP(iPF)**.



6. Enter the printer's IP address in **Printer's Address** and click **Add**.



7. Make sure the printer has been added, and then close the **Printer List** window.



Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)

In Mac OS X 10.2.8 and later, use Bonjour functions to easily connect the printer to the network. Follow the steps below to configure the destination if you use the printer on TCP/IP network.

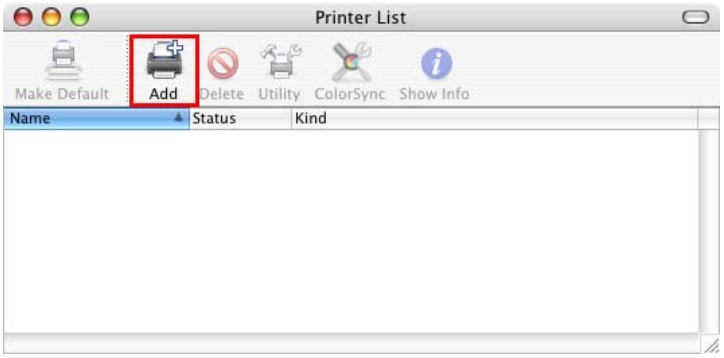
Note

- In Mac OS 9, if the computer's TCP/IP settings have been configured, you can connect the printer to the network as easily as with the Bonjour function.
  Select **IP Print (Auto)** from the **Destination** list in **Chooser** to specify the destination.

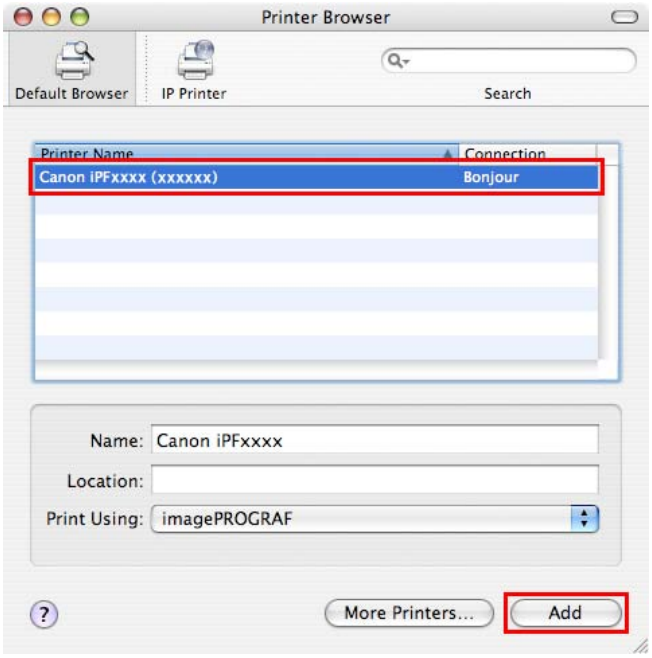
Important

- Bonjour and **IP Print (Auto)** do not support printing to a printer on other network groups that require a router for connection. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.
- By default, Bonjour is activated on the printer. The printer name as displayed in **Chooser** in Mac OS 9 or **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in Mac OS X is predefined as the **Multicast DNS Service Name**. You can activate or deactivate the Bonjour function or change the printer name by using RemoteUI. For instructions on changing it, see "Using RemoteUI". (→P.580)

1. Choose **Utilities** (or **Applications**) in the **Go** menu of **Finder**.
2. Click **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) in the **Utilities** folder.
3. If the printer name is not displayed in **Printer List**, click **Add**.



4. Select the printer from the list in the **Printer Browser** window and click **Add**.



Maintenance

Adjusting the Printhead

Correcting Print Misalignment

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.610)
For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.612)

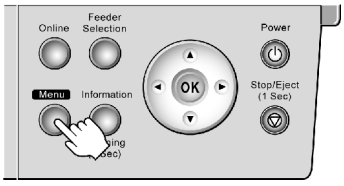
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by printing and reading a test pattern.
There are two modes for automatic adjustment: **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj.** **Standard Adj.** will fix most slight image distortion or color misalignment, but if not, try **Advanced Adj.**
If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually”. (→P.612)
Follow these steps for standard automatic adjustment of the Printhead.

1. When using sheets, have two unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger ready when **Standard Adj.** is selected or 8 when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.156)
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)

   Note
   - Use **Standard Adj.** if you have switched to another type of paper or if you want the boundaries between colors to appear as attractive as possible.
   - Use **Advanced Adj.** to fine-tune the space between nozzles or colors if you have switched the printhead or if you want printed documents to appear as vivid as possible. We recommend using **Advanced Adj.** for printing at a higher level of image quality.
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.
   - This function is not available with CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, or CAD Clear Film. If adjustment is not possible as expected using highly transparent film or similar media, try another type of media or adjust the Printhead alignment manually. (→P.612)

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Adjust Printer ↓

4. Press the ◄ or ► button to select **Auto Head Adj.**, and then press ▼.

Adjust Printer Auto Head Adj. ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Advanced Adj.**, and then press ▼.

Auto Head Adj. Advanced Adj. ↓

6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press **OK**.

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Advanced Adj. = Yes

A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.

After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the Printhead alignment.

Note

- If paper is fed automatically and no roll is loaded, select the media source and click the **OK** button.

Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually

If printed vertical lines are warped or colors are out of alignment, adjust the Printhead alignment. Adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually by using a printed test pattern.
You can adjust the Printhead alignment automatically or manually. Normally, choose automatic adjustment. If using special media or printing does not improve even after performing automatic adjustment using advanced adjustment, try manual adjustment. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically”. (→P.610)
Follow these steps for standard manual adjustment of the Printhead.

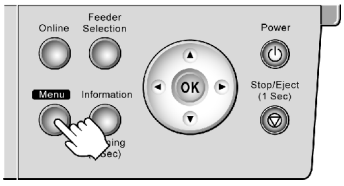
Note

- If **Manual Head Adj** is not displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** **Manual Head Adj** is displayed after you try **Auto Head Adj.** once.

1. When using sheets, have an unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger ready.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)

   Note
   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Adjust Printer ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Manual Head Adj**, and then press ▼.

```
Adjust Printer
Manual Head Adj ↓
```

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Manual Head Adj = Yes

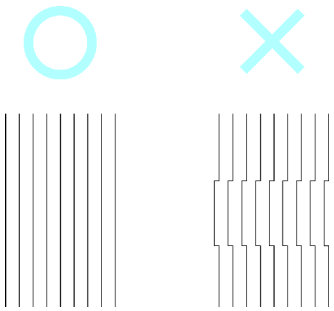
   A test pattern is printed for printhead adjustment.
6. After **Adj.Setting** is displayed, press ▼.

Adj.Setting D ↓

7. Press ▼.

D D-1

8. Examine test pattern **D-1** for printhead adjustment. After you determine the pattern with straight lines, press ◄ or ► to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.

D-1 =10 ↓

   Note
   - If you cannot determine the pattern with straight lines, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to specify the adjustment value for **D-2** to **D-5** and **D-7** to **D-11**.
10. Press ▲.
11. Press ◄ or ► to select **Save Settings**, and then press ▼.

Adj.Setting Save Settings ↓

12. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
    The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

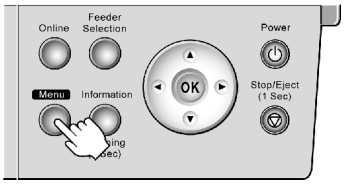
Save Settings = Yes

    The printer now goes online.

Adjusting the Printhead Height

If paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the Printhead height may improve results.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Med.Detail Set. ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press ▼.

Med.Detail Set. Plain Paper ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Head Height**, and then press ▼.

Plain Paper Head Height ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select Printhead, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Head Height = Automatic

Important

- If you switch to another type of paper after printing, reset the Printhead height to **Automatic**.

Adjusting the feed amount

Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically

If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. There are two modes for adjusting the amount paper is fed, **Standard Adj.** and **Advanced Adj. Advanced Adj.** offers a wider range of adjustment than **Standard Adj.** If using **Standard Adj.** does not eliminate streaks, or if streaks are quite noticeable, try **Advanced Adj.**
Follow the steps below for standard automatic adjustment of the feed amount.
When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, you must adjust the feed amount manually. For instructions on manual adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually”. (→P.619)

Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.624)
- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.203)

Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.

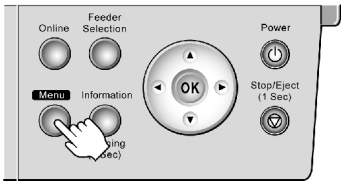
1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press the ▼ button.
3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the ▼ button.
4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ▼ button.
5. Press ◄ or ► to select the level of suction against paper on the **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount automatically.

1. Prepare one unused sheet A4/Letter-sized or larger when **Standard Adj.** is selected or two when **Advanced Adj.** is selected.
   When using a roll, load an unused roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.156)
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)

   Note
   - Always specify the paper type when loading paper. Using paper that you have not specified on the printer may cause feeding problems and affect the printing quality.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Adjust Printer ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Auto Band Adj.**, and then press ▼.

Adjust Printer Auto Band Adj. ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Standard Adj.**, and then press ▼.

Auto Band Adj. Standard Adj. ↓

6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Standard Adj.
= Yes
```

Note

- The following screen will be displayed when feeding paper automatically. In this case, select the paper source, and then press the **OK** button.

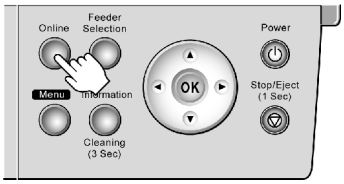
```
Media Source
= Roll
```

A test pattern is printed for band adjustment.
After reading the pattern, the printer automatically adjusts the feed amount and returns to online mode.
If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.618)

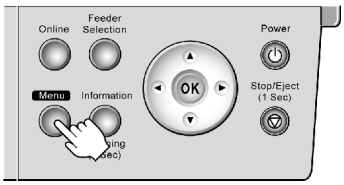
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

```
MAIN MENU
Fine Band Adj. ↓
```

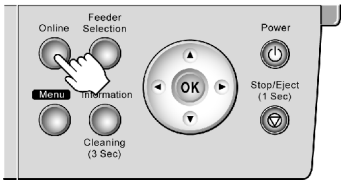
4. Press ◄ or ► to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Fine Band Adj.
=+2
```

Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, if you adjust the feed amount (manually or automatically), the **Fine Band Adj.** value is reset to 0.

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually

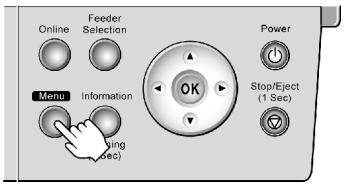
If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed.
This topic describes how to adjust the feed amount manually.
When using highly transparent media for which automatic adjustment is not supported, adjust the feed amount manually. We recommend automatic adjustment for other types of media. For instructions on automatic adjustment, see “Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically”. (→P.615)

Note

- To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount. (→P.624)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the feed amount in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Band Joint**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Image** or **Office Document**. (→P.203)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



  2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press the ▼ button.
  3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the ▼ button.
  4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ▼ button.
  5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Band Joint**, and then press the **OK** button.

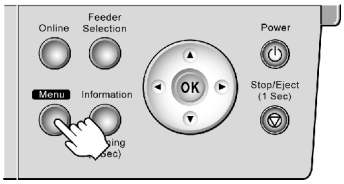
Follow the steps below to adjust the feed amount manually.

1. When using sheets, load two unused sheets A4/Letter-sized or larger.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.156)
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)

   Note

   - Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ▼ button.

```
MAIN MENU
Adjust Printer ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Manual Band Adj**, and then press the ▼ button.

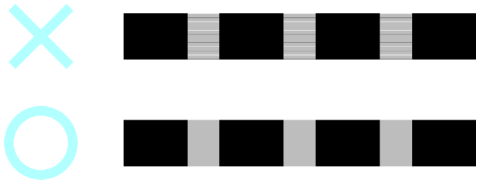
```
Adjust Printer
Manual Band Adj ↓
```

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

```
Manual Band Adj
= Yes
```

   Test pattern A is printed for band adjustment.

6. Examine test pattern A for band adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ◄ or ► to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.



```
Adj.Setting
=8
```

   Test pattern B is printed for band adjustment.

Note

- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

7. Examine test pattern B for band adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press ◄ or ► to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button.

```
Adj.Setting
=11
```

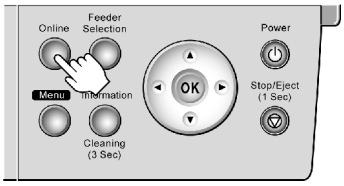
The feed amount is adjusted, and the printer goes online.

If printed documents are still affected by uneven contrast or banding in different colors at regular intervals after this adjustment, you can adjust the feed amount during printing. (→P.621)

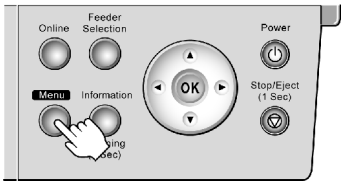
Adjusting the feed amount during printing

If, during printing, the contrast is uneven sideways across the paper or banding in different colors appears every 40 mm (1.6 in) or so, try adjusting the feed amount as follows. The results of adjustment are applied to printing in progress, enabling you to check the results immediately. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different.

1. Press the **Online** button to pause printing.



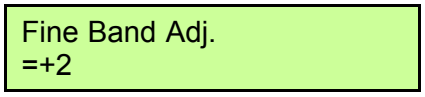
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **Menu Durng Prtng**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Fine Band Adj.**, and then press the **OK** button.

```
MAIN MENU
Fine Band Adj. ↓
```

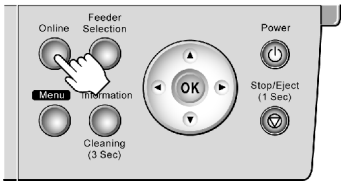
4. Press ◄ or ► to change the value, and then press the **OK** button.



Note

- The supported range is -5 to +5.

5. Press the **Online** button to resume printing.



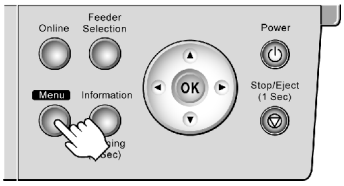
Note

- The **Fine Band Adj.** adjustment value set during printing is also applied to the next print job. However, if you adjust the Printhead alignment, the **Fine Band Adj.** value is reset to 0.

Adjusting the Vacuum Strength

When printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily, if paper rubs against the printer or the edge is wrinkled from rubbing, adjusting the level of suction against paper on the Platen may improve results.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Med.Detail Set. ↓
```

3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press ▼.

```
Med.Detail Set.
Plain Paper ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **VacuumStrngth**, and then press ▼.

```
Plain Paper
VacuumStrngth
```

5. Press ◄ or ► to select the level of suction against paper on the Platen, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
VacuumStrngth
= Automatic
```

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy

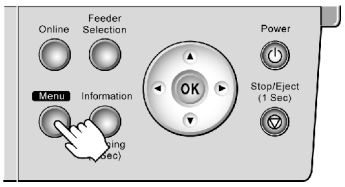
To adjust the measurement scale and ensure accuracy (so that lines in CAD drawings are printed at exactly the right length, for example), specify the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage when adjusting the feed amount.

Note

- If printed images are affected by banding in different colors, adjust the amount that paper is fed. (→P.619)

Important

- Use paper of the same type and size for adjustment as you will use for printing.
- To apply the results of adjusting the measurement scale for better accuracy in printing, you must first set **Feed Priority** to **Print Length**. Note that if you select **Automatic**, the results of adjustment will only be applied in printing if you set **Print Priority** in the printer driver to **Line Drawing/Text**. (→P.203)
  Follow these steps to change the **Feed Priority** setting.
  1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



  2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Med.Detail Set.**, and then press the ▼ button.
  3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of paper, and then press the ▼ button.
  4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Feed Priority**, and then press the ▼ button.
  5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Print Length**, and then press the **OK** button.

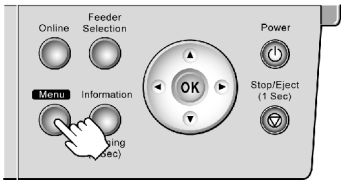
Follow these steps to adjust the scale for better accuracy.

1. Load unused paper.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.156)
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)

   Note

   - Always specify the paper type when loading paper. When the paper type is not specified, the printing quality may be affected without the correct adjustment of the feeding.
   - We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for feed amount adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Adjust Printer ↓
```

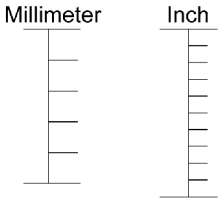
4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Length**, and then press ▼.

```
Adjust Printer
Adjust Length ↓
```

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Adjust Length
= Yes
```

A test pattern is printed for adjustment based on the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage.
The scale bar shows “Millimeter” in 50 mm units and “Inch” in 1 inch units.



6. Measure the length of the adjustment pattern. Calculate the difference between the measured length and actual length. Enter it as a percentage and press the **OK** button.
You can adjust the value in 0.02% increments. Press ◄ to increase the value and ► to decrease it.

```
Adjust Length
=0.02%
```

If the scale is printed shorter than actual size, set the value toward the positive side; if it is printed longer, set the value toward the negative side.
The setting for the amount of paper stretching or shrinkage is relative. If you access it again later, it will be displayed as 0.00%.

Note

- You can also specify the adjustment value by selecting **Adjust Length** in **Med.Detail Set.**.

Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets

If printed sheets are affected by banding in different colors toward the end of the sheet (about 20-30 mm from the edge), try adjusting the feed amount of the trailing edge of sheets.
Follow these steps for standard automatic adjustment of the feed amount.

Note

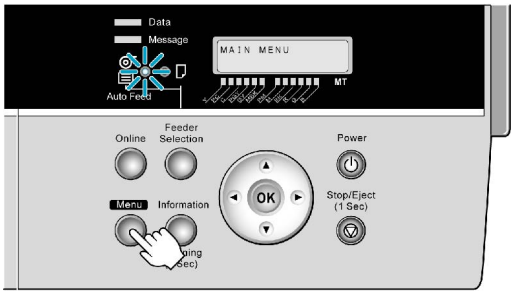
- If printed documents (including documents printed on rolls) are affected by banding in different colors not only toward the end of the sheet but throughout the printed area, try adjusting the overall feed amount. (→P.619)
- This adjustment is only possible when feeding paper from the Cassette or Top Paper Feed Slot that can be set up with a margin on the trailing edge of 3 mm (0.12 in). If you use paper for which you cannot specify a trailing margin of 3 mm, it will be automatically ejected, and adjustment is not possible.

1. Load a sheet of unused paper A4/Letter-sized or larger.

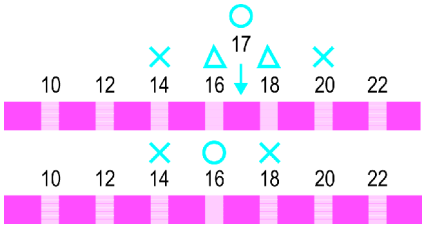
Note

- Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer. Adjustment cannot be completed correctly unless the setting value matches the loaded paper.
- We recommend using the type of paper you use most often for adjustment.

2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

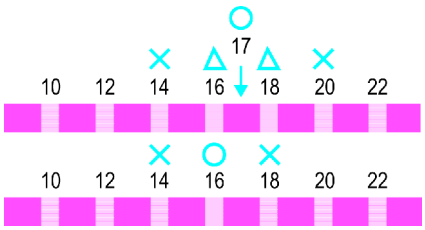


3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ▼ button.
4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adj Far Ed Feed**, and then press the ▼ button.
5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   A test pattern is printed for adjustment.



C1 is displayed on the Control Panel.

6. Examine test pattern **C1** for adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press the ◄ or ► to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button. **C2** is displayed on the Control Panel.



7. Examine test pattern **C2** for adjustment. After you determine the pattern in which streaks are least noticeable, press the ◄ or ► to choose the pattern number, and then press the **OK** button. The printer now goes back online.

Note

- If streaks seem least noticeable in two patterns but you cannot decide which one is better, choose an intermediate value. For example, choose 11 if you cannot decide whether pattern 10 or 12 is better.

Color adjustment

Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors

Color calibration is a feature that compensates for changes in color from individual variation among Printheads or from the printing environment, ensuring better color consistency.
We recommend using color calibration in the following situations.

- After initial installation
- After Printhead replacement
- If colors seem different from before when printing under the same conditions in the same printing environment
- When consistent color is desired from multiple printers (in this case, also use the same version of firmware and printer driver and the same settings.)

When you execute color calibration, a test pattern is printed and an adjustment value is automatically set based on the results of printing.

Important

- Before executing color calibration, you must prepare one of the following types of paper. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. Use the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper to be used. For details on recommended environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Paper Compatible With Color Calibration	Japan	Europe	Americas
Matte Coated 90	-	Compatible	Compatible
HW Coated	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Premium MatteP	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Matte Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
GlossyPhoto 190	-	Compatible	Compatible
SatinPhoto 190	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
GlossyPhoto 240	-	Compatible	Compatible
SatinPhoto 240	-	Compatible	Compatible
Glossy Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
HW GlossyPhoto2	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
HW SemiGlPhoto2	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Photo PaperPlus	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
FineArt Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
FneArt HW Photo	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Comm Proofing	-	Compatible	Compatible

RC Proofing 210	-	Compatible	Compatible
Proofing Paper	Compatible	Compatible	Compatible
Opaque Paper	-	Compatible	-
Art Extr Smooth	-	Compatible	-

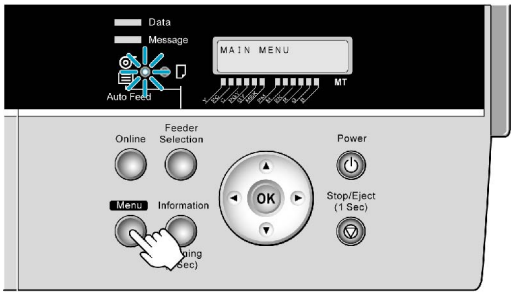
- The adjustment value determined by color calibration is also applied when printing on paper other than the paper you use to execute color calibration.
- In the printer driver or in the **MAIN MENU** of the Control Panel, you can specify whether to apply the adjustment value from color calibration when printing. The printer driver settings are given priority.
  For menu details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.47)
  For information on printer driver settings, refer to the following topics.
  - Printer Driver Settings (Windows) (→P.465)
  - Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) (→P.516)
  - Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9) (→P.541)
- Before color calibration, ensure the printer is not exposed to direct sunlight or other strong sources of light.
- If you reinstall the printer driver and change the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool, region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation will be deleted. If the information of paper you used for color calibration is deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper. To apply the results of color calibration, perform color calibration again using paper supported in the newly selected region and compatible with color calibration. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).
- Default settings will be restored if you select **MAIN MENU** > **System Setup** > **Reset MediaType** > **Yes**. Because information added or updated using the Media Configuration Tool is also deleted, if paper of which information was added using the Media Configuration Tool was used for color calibration and is now deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper. To apply the results of color calibration, perform color calibration again using a paper included originally in the default settings that is compatible with color calibration. See the Media Configuration Tool Guide (Windows) or Media Configuration Tool Guide (Macintosh).

Note

- For further adjustment of the color of documents as printed applying color calibration, adjust the color in the printer driver. (→P.214)
- You can check when color calibration was executed and what paper was used from imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (in Windows) or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (on a Macintosh computer) in the **MAIN MENU** on the Control Panel.
  For menu details, see “Main Menu Settings”. (→P.47)
  For details on imagePROGRAF Status Monitor, refer to the imagePROGRAF Status Monitor help.
  For details on imagePROGRAF Printmonitor, refer to the imagePROGRAF Printmonitor help.

Follow these steps to execute color calibration.

1. Load paper compatible with color calibration.
   When using sheets, load paper A4/Letter (vertical, 8.5×11 in [210.0×297.0 mm]) or larger.
   One sheet is required.
   When using a roll, load a roll 10 inches (254 mm) or wider.
   - Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette (→P.80)
   - Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.82)
   - Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.86)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Adjust Printer**, and then press the ▼ button.

MAIN MENU Adjust Printer ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Calibration**, and then press ▼.

Adjust Printer Calibration ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Auto Adjust**, and then press the ▼ button.

Calibration Auto Adjust ↓

6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Auto Adjust = Yes

After the printer measures environmental conditions and checks the paper, a test pattern for color calibration is printed. An adjustment value based on the results of printing is set automatically. After adjustment is complete, the printer goes online or offline automatically.

Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment

You can print in the colors that look best when viewed under the light where the printed image will be displayed. There are two ways to adjust the color tone for the ambient light, as follows.

By selecting color tones on Charts before printing

On the printed **Chart**, note the number of the set of colors with the desired color tone and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on selecting color tones on **Charts** before printing, refer to the following topic:

- By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows) (→P.632)

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.
- This function is only supported in Windows.

For instructions on measuring light levels before printing, refer to the following topic:

- Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light (→P.636)

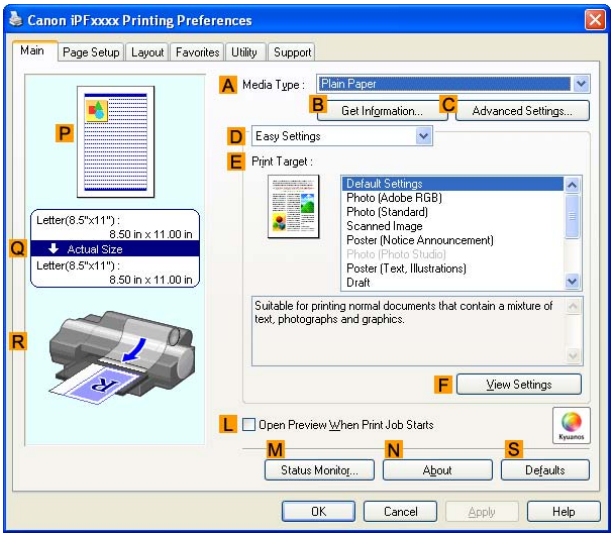
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows)

Print **Charts**, note the number of the chart with your desired color tone, and enter this number in the printer driver before printing.

Important

- This function requires that the **Light Source Check Tool** be installed.
- You can install the **Light Source Check Tool** from the User Software CD-ROM.

1. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
2. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
3. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

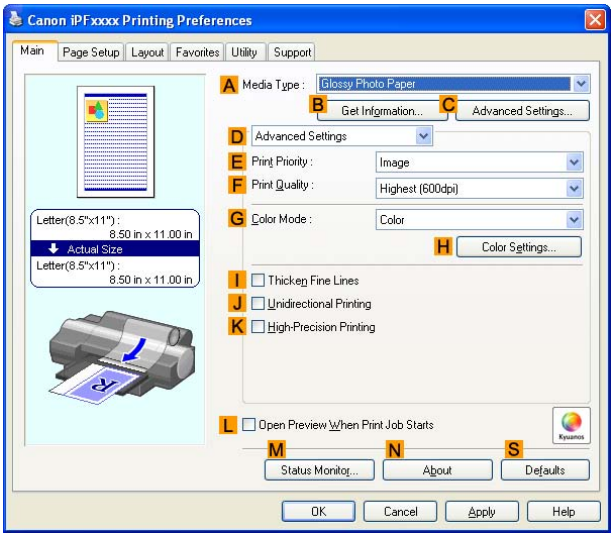


4. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, Glossy Photo Paper).

Important

- **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** may not be available, depending on the type of paper used. For details, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.107)

5. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

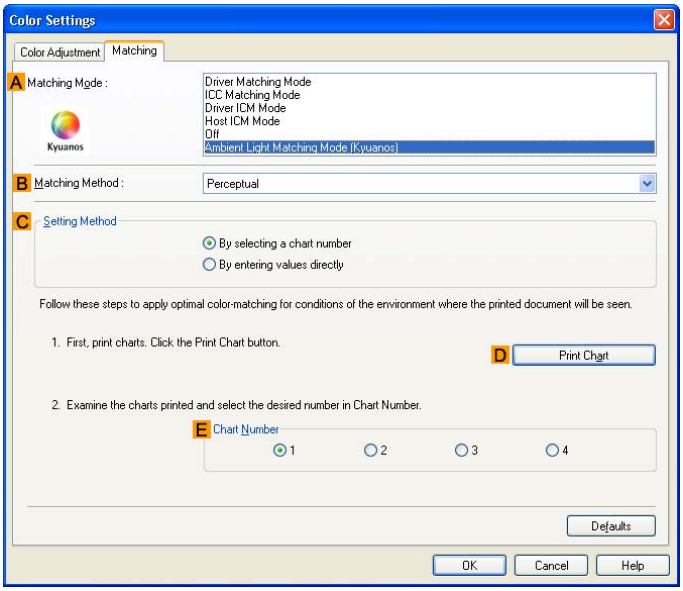


6. In F **Print Quality**, click **Highest** or **High**.

Important

- Ambient Light Matching mode is only available when the F **Print Quality** is set to **Highest** or **High**.

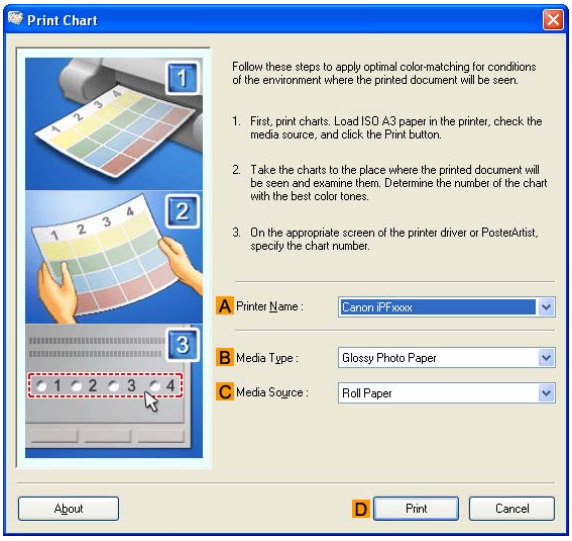
7. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
8. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
9. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
10. Click **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the A **Matching Mode** list.



11. Confirm that **By selecting a chart number** is selected in C **Setting Method**.
    If it is not selected already, select it.

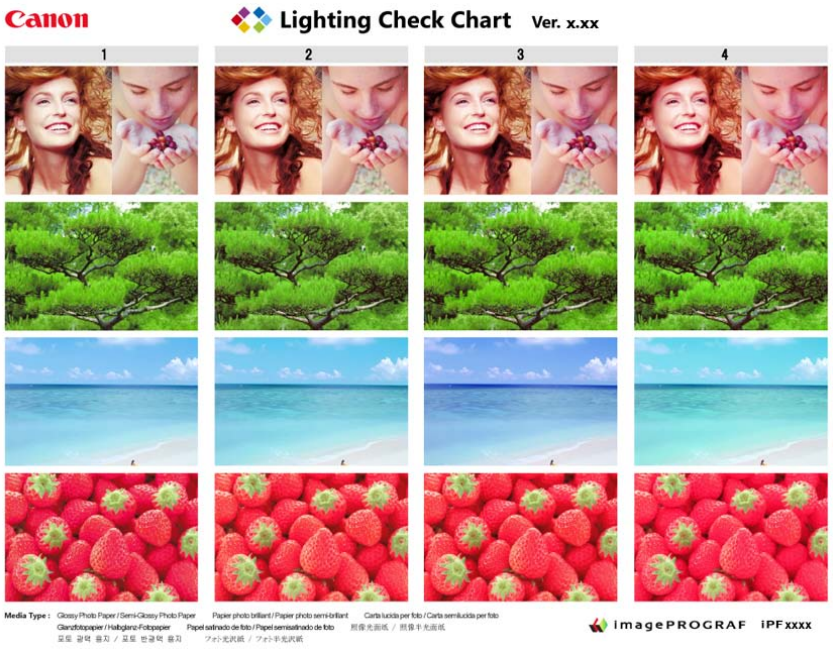
12. Click D **Print Chart**.

Light Source Check Tool now starts up.



13. Check the settings and click **Print**.

The **Chart** is printed.

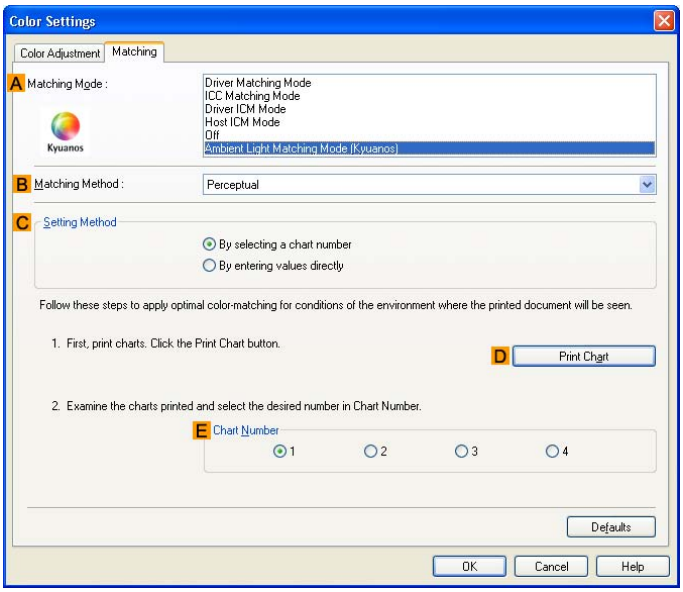


14. In the viewing environment, determine the number of the set of images on the **Chart** in which all four vertical images have the best overall color tone.

Note

- Choose the number of the set of images in which the people, the blue of the sky, and the red of the strawberries look the most natural overall.

15. After confirming that **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** is selected in **A Matching Mode**, select the number for the desired color tone on the chart in **E Chart Number**.



16. Click **OK**.

17. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light

Measure the light level in the viewing environment and enter the results in the printer driver before printing.

Important

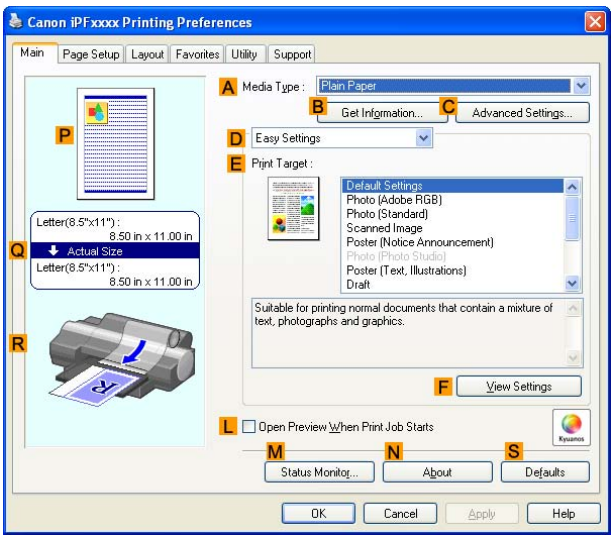
- This function requires the Eye-One spectrophotometer. The Light Source Measure Tool must also be installed.
- You can install the Light Source Measure Tool from the User Software CD-ROM.
- For a list of supported Eye-One devices, refer to the manual provided with the Light Source Measure Tool.

1. Using the Eye-One spectrophotometer and the Light Source Measure Tool, determine the **Lighting Source Type** and **Color Temperature** in the viewing environment.

Note

- For detailed instructions on Eye-One and the Light Source Measure Tool, refer to the provided instructions.

2. Choose **Print** in the application menu.
3. Select the printer in the dialog box, and then display the printer driver dialog box. (→P.497)
4. Make sure the **Main** sheet is displayed.

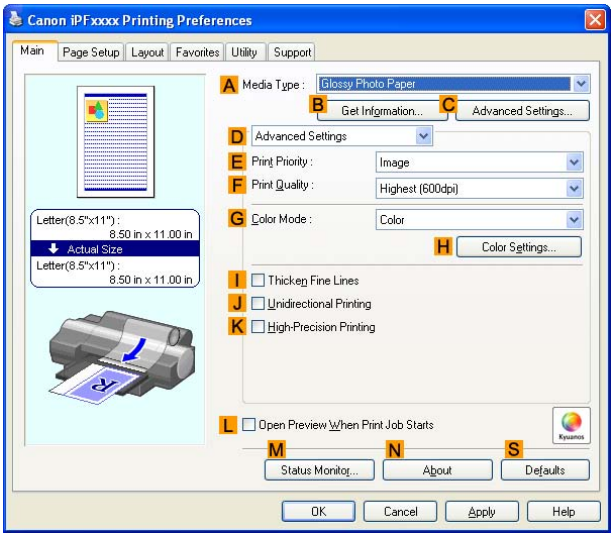


5. In the A **Media Type** list, select the type of paper that is loaded (for example, Glossy Photo Paper).

Important

- **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** may not be available, depending on the type of paper used. For details, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.107)

6. Click D **Advanced Settings** to switch the print mode.

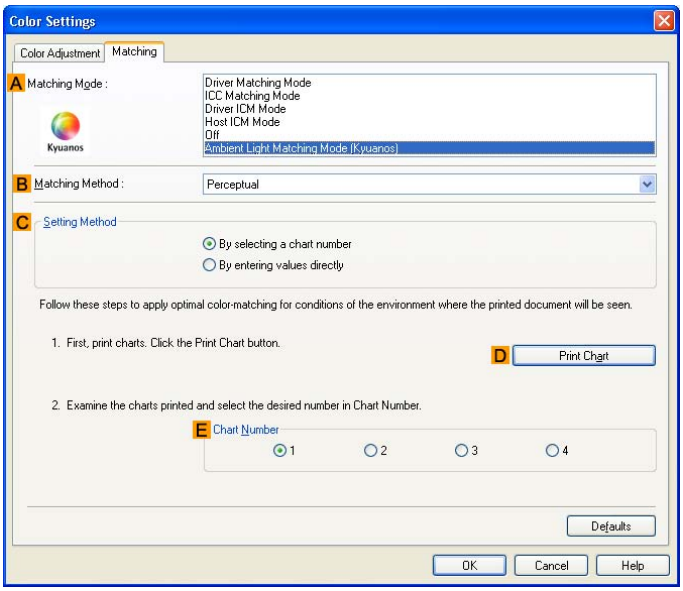


7. In F **Print Quality**, click **Highest** or **High**.

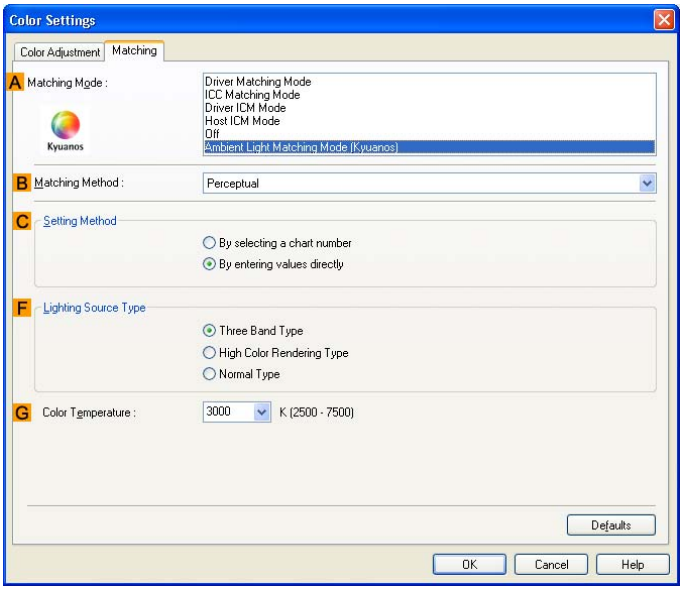
Important

- Ambient Light Matching mode is only available when the F **Print Quality** is set to **Highest** or **High**.

8. Click **Color** in the G **Color Mode** list.
9. Click H **Color Settings** to display the **Color Settings** dialog box.
10. Click the **Matching** tab to display the **Matching** sheet.
11. Click **Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos)** in the A **Matching Mode** list.



12. Select **By entering values directly** in C **Setting Method**.



13. Select the F **Lighting Source Type** and G **Color Temperature** determined in step 1.
14. Click **OK**.
15. Confirm the print settings and start printing.

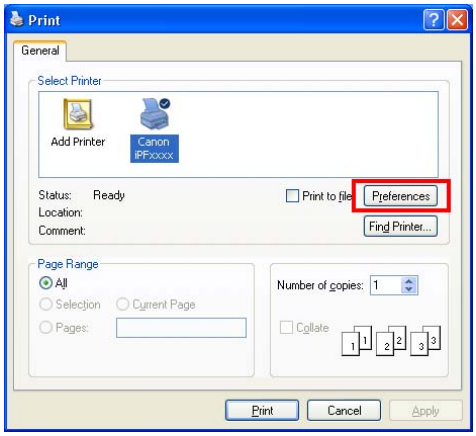
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)

1. Choose **Print** from the **File** menu to display the dialog box for printing conditions.
2. Select the printer, and then display the printer driver dialog box.

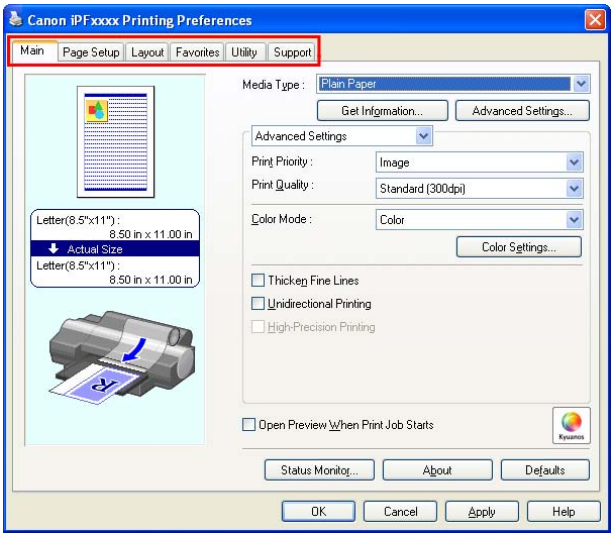
Note

- The dialog box for specifying printing conditions varies depending on the source application. In some cases, when you select the printer, a sheet for configuring the printer driver is added to the dialog box. In the following case, click **Preferences**.

■Example: Print dialog box displayed by the application software



Six sheets of print settings are displayed by the printer driver: **Main**, **Page Setup**, **Layout**, **Favorites**, **Utility**, and **Support**.



Note

- The titles of dialog boxes may vary depending on the application, and sheets other than these six sheets may be displayed.

Important

- If you access the printer driver dialog box from the source application, changes you make to the settings will only apply temporarily to that application. Because these are sizes you specify temporarily in the printer driver, the sizes will not be available after you exit the application.
- You can also access the printer driver dialog box from the Windows system menu.
  see “Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)”. (→P.149)

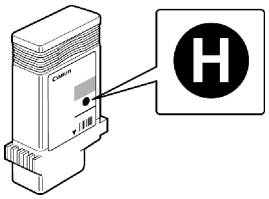
Ink Tanks

Ink Tank

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. When purchasing an Ink Tank, make sure an “H” is printed on the label, along with the following Ink Tank part numbers.

- Y Ink Tank PFI-101Y
- PC Ink Tank PFI-101PC
- C Ink Tank PFI-101C
- PGY Ink Tank PFI-103PGY
- GY Ink Tank PFI-103GY
- BK Ink Tank PFI-103BK
- PM Ink Tank PFI-101PM
- M Ink Tank PFI-101M
- MBK Ink Tank PFI-103MBK
- R Ink Tank PFI-101R
- G Ink Tank PFI-101G
- B Ink Tank PFI-101B

  130 ml per color



Note

- For instructions on replacing Ink Tank, see “Replacing Ink Tanks”. (→P.642)

Replacing Ink Tanks

Compatible Ink Tank

An Ink Tank that can be used in the printer is labeled with a white letter “H” in a black circle on the side. Request an Ink Tank with the same label when you purchase a new Ink Tank. For more information, see “Ink Tank”. (→P.641)

Precautions when handling an Ink Tank

Take the following precautions when handling an Ink Tank.

Caution

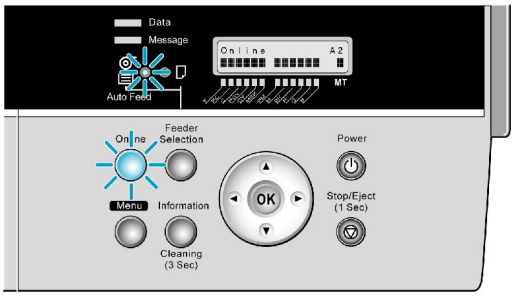
- For safety, keep an Ink Tank out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

- Before removing an Ink Tank from the pouch for installation, shake it gently seven or eight times. If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.
- Do not remove an Ink Tank to shake it once installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the ink holes of Ink Tank you remove. Handle an Ink Tank carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- We recommend using up an Ink Tank in the course of printing within six months after breaking the seal. Using an old Ink Tank may affect the printing quality.
- Do not remove the Ink Tank if the printer is not used for a long period (a month or more). Ink remaining in the printer may become clogged and affect the printing quality.

Replacing an Ink Tank

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.



It is time to replace an Ink Tank if any of these messages are shown on the Display Screen : **Ink Lvl: Chk xx**, **No Ink Left**, **Ink Tank / Check xx**, **Ink Tank / Replace xx**, **Online Key / Press To Print**, or **Not Enough Ink**. (In these examples, xx represents an abbreviation for ink colors.)

Ink Tank Replace xx

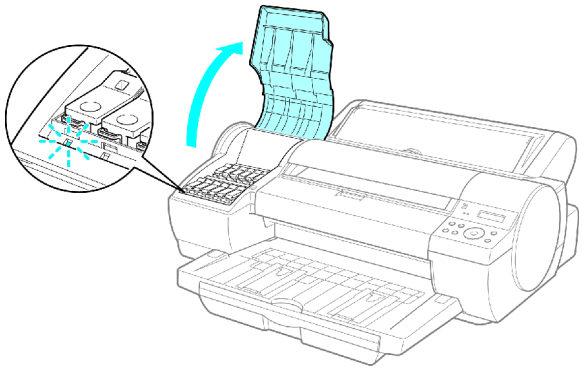
Do not remove an Ink Tank during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during printing or printhead cleaning.

Initializing

Note

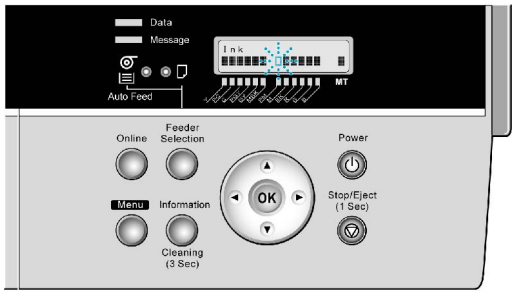
- Ink Tank replacement is possible even when print jobs are being canceled or if paper is being fed.
- Replacement of Ink Tank is possible even during print jobs if **No Ink Left** is shown on the Display Screen, but it is not possible to replace Ink Tank in other cases. If you pause printing to replace an Ink Tank, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.

2. Open the Ink Tank Cover and check the Ink Lamp.
The Ink Lamp flashes quickly if there is no ink left.

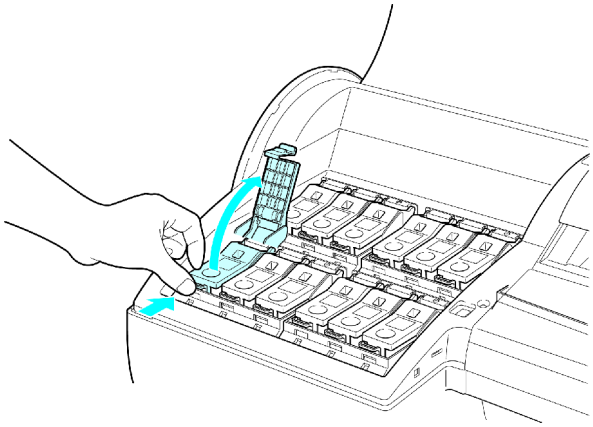


Note

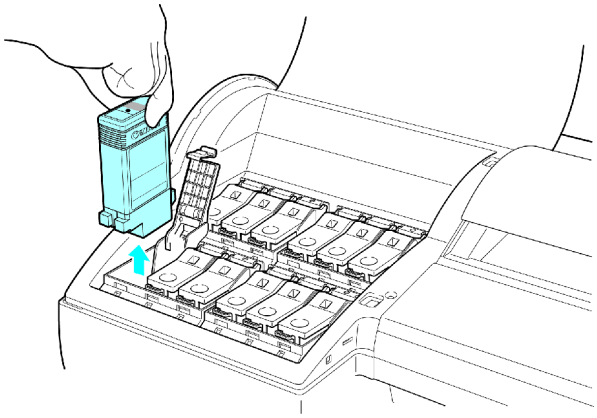
- Ink levels are shown on the Display Screen of the control panel, and the level indicator corresponding to the Color Label of the Ink Tank for replacement flashes.



3. Press the tip of the Ink Tank Lock Lever of the color for replacement and lift the Ink Tank Lock Lever to open it.

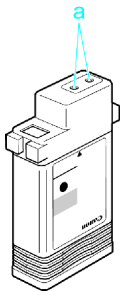


4. Hold the empty Ink Tank by the grip and remove it.



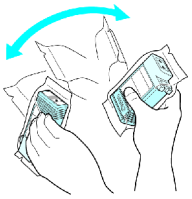
Note

- If there is still some ink left in the Ink Tank you removed, store the ink tank with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



- Dispose of used Ink Tanks according to local regulations.

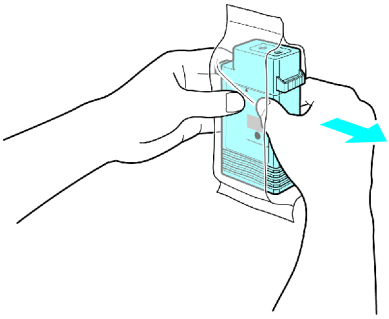
5. Before opening the pouch, shake the Ink Tank gently seven or eight times. Agitate the ink in the Ink Tank by rotating your wrist to turn the Ink Tank upside-down and right side up repeatedly.



Note

- If you do not shake the Ink Tank, the ink may sediment, which may affect printing quality.

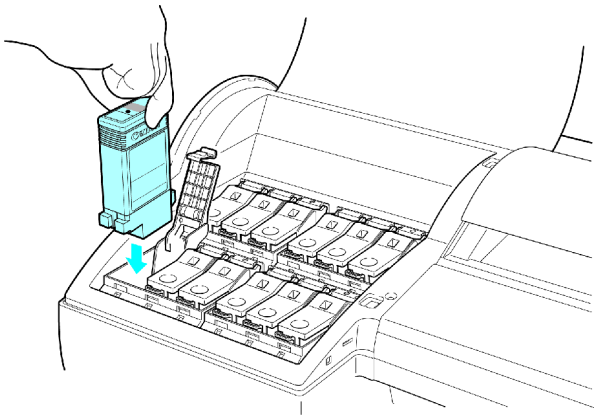
6. Open the pouch and remove the Ink Tank.



Note

- Never touch the ink holes or metal contacts. This may cause stains, damage the Ink Tank, and affect printing quality.
- Avoid dropping the Ink Tank after removing it from the pouch. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Do not remove an Ink Tank to shake it once installed in the printer. Ink may leak out.

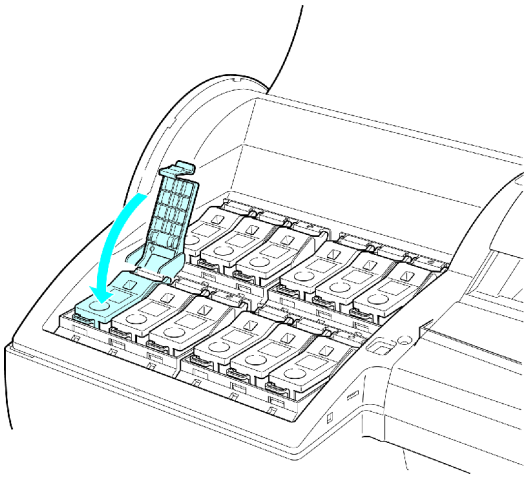
7. Insert the Ink Tank into the holder facing as shown in the figure, with the ink holes down.



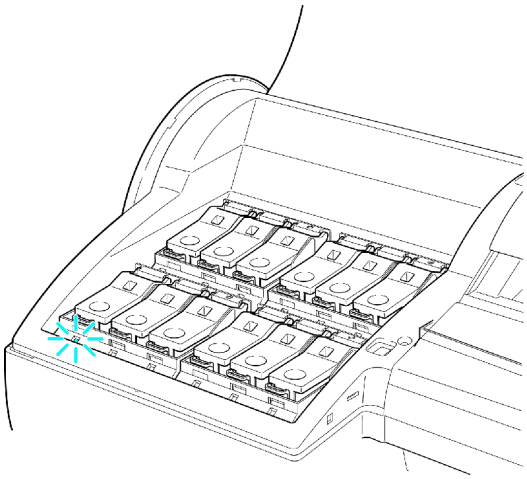
Important

- An Ink Tank cannot be loaded in the holder if the color or orientation is wrong.
  If the Ink Tank does not fit in the holder, do not force it into the holder. Make sure the color of the Ink Tank Lock Lever matches the color of the Ink Tank, and check the orientation of the Ink Tank before reloading it.

8. Close the Ink Tank Lock Lever until it clicks.



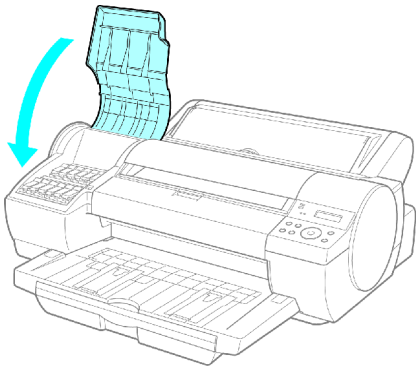
9. Make sure the Ink Lamp is lit in red.



Note

- Ink Lamp flashes when there is little ink left.

10. Close the Ink Tank Cover.

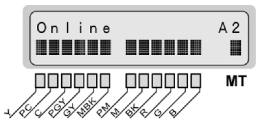


The printer returns to the mode before replacement of Ink Tank. If the printer was in Menu mode or an error message was shown on the Display Screen, the printer goes online. If a print job was in progress when the Ink Tank was replaced, printing is automatically resumed.

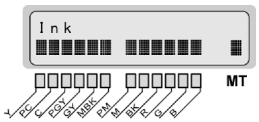
Checking Ink Tank Levels

On the Display Screen, you can check how much ink is left in the Ink Tank.

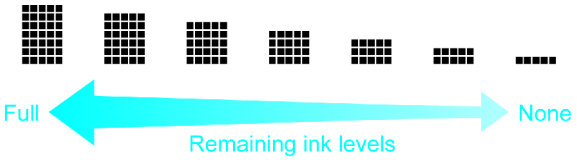
The remaining level of each ink is displayed on the Display Screen bottom line when the printer is online, except during print jobs or error messages.



During print jobs or error messages, press the **Information** button to display the ink levels on the Display Screen bottom line.



These levels shown on the Display Screen correspond to the inks identified by the Color Label below the Display Screen. The remaining ink level is indicated as shown below.



When **Not Enough Ink** or **No Ink Left** appears on the Display Screen, a "↓" symbol is shown above the Ink Tank without much ink left.

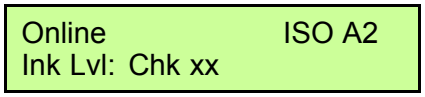
If **Rep. Ink Tank** is shown on the Display Screen, replace the Ink Tank. If **Ink Lvl: Chk xx** (here, xx refers to the ink color) is displayed, and particularly before large-format printing or head cleaning, which consumes a lot of ink, check the ink levels and replace Ink Tank as needed. (→P.642)

When to Replace Ink Tanks

Replace or prepare to replace Ink Tank in the following situations.

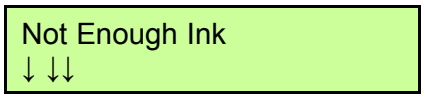
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen

"Check Ink Level: xx" (here, xx refers to the ink color) is shown on the Display Screen and the **Message lamp** is lit when there is little ink left in a tank. You can continue to print, but prepare to replace the Ink Tank. (→P.648)



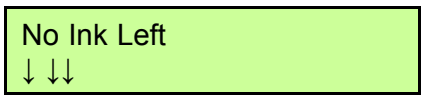
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink

If little ink is left, there may not be enough for large-format printing, head cleaning, and maintenance, which require a lot of ink. In this case, replace or prepare to replace the Ink Tank before maintenance. The ↓ display corresponds to the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen.



If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When ink runs out, **No Ink Left** is shown on the Display Screen, the **Message lamp** flashes, and printing is disabled. Replace the Ink Tank at this point. The ↓ display corresponds to the color labels on the bottom of the Display Screen.

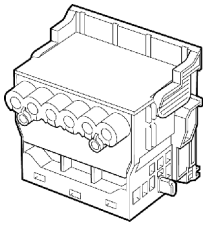


Printheads

Printhead

This is a replacement Printhead for the printer.

- Printhead PF-03



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Printhead, see “Replacing the Printhead”. (→P.653)

Checking the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.
For instructions, see “Checking for Nozzle Clogging”. (→P.651)

Improving the Print Quality

If printing is faint or streaked in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles. Clean the Printhead if the printed test pattern was faint.
For instructions on cleaning the Printhead, see “Cleaning the Printhead”. (→P.652)

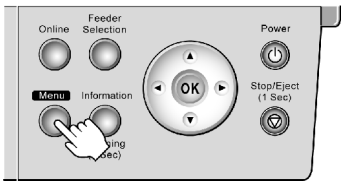
Checking for Nozzle Clogging

If printing is faint or is affected by streaks in different colors, make sure the Printhead nozzles are clear by printing a test pattern to check the nozzles.

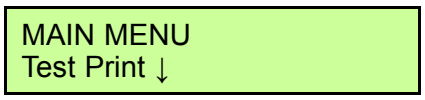
Note

- You can specify a number of pages in the printer's **Nozzle Check** menu for automatic nozzle checking every time you finish printing that quantity. (→P.47)

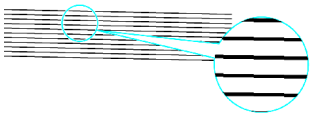
1. Load unused paper Letter-sized or larger.
   - Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder (→P.115)
   - Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit (→P.118)
   - Loading Sheets in the Cassette (→P.156)
   - Loading Sheets Manually (→P.159)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



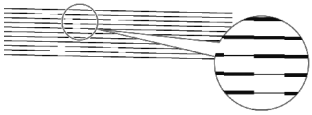
3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Test Print**, and then press ▼.



4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **Nozzle Check**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The printer goes online and prints a test pattern.
5. Check the printing results.
   The Printhead L prints the test pattern for nozzle checking on the top line for each color, and the Printhead R prints the test pattern on the bottom line.
   If the horizontal lines are not faint or incomplete, the nozzles are clear.



   If some sections of the horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, the nozzles for those colors are clogged.



   If horizontal lines are faint or incomplete, follow the steps below and check again for nozzle clogging.
   1. Clean the Printhead. (→P.652)
   2. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles.

Note

- If you repeat these steps several times but the horizontal lines are still faint or incomplete, contact your Canon dealer.

Cleaning the Printhead

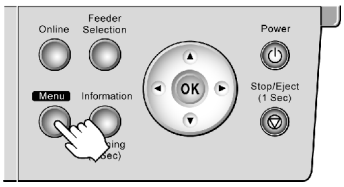
Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can perform automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity by specifying a number of pages in the printer's **Nozzle Check** menu. (→P.47)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.
- If POP Board (paper thickness 1.5 mm [0.06 in]) is loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot, printhead cleaning will not work correctly. Remove the paper before cleaning.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Head Cleaning ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about four minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning B** does not solve the problem. It takes about six minutes to complete.

   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

Head Cleaning = Head Cleaning A

   The printhead cleaning is finished, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.651)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Replacing the Printhead

When to replace the Printhead

Replace the Printhead in the following situations.

- If the printing quality does not improve even after two cycles of **Head Cleaning B** from the printer menu
- If **Printhead / Please Replace** is shown on the Display Screen
- If the Canon dealer has advised you to replace the Printhead

Compatible Printhead

For information on the compatible Printhead, see “Printhead”. (→P.650)

Precautions when handling the Printhead

Take the following precautions when handling the Printhead.

Caution

- For safety, keep the Printhead out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.
- Do not touch the Printhead immediately after printing. The Printhead becomes extremely hot, and there is a risk of burns.

Important

- Avoid dropping or shaking the Printhead. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- There may be ink around the nozzles of the Printhead you remove. Handle the Printhead carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not open the Printhead pouch until immediately before installation. After removing the Printhead from the pouch, install it right away. If the Printhead is left after the pouch is opened, the nozzles may dry out, which may affect the printing quality.
- If you need to store a Printhead temporarily before installation, do not keep the nozzles and metal contacts (→P.658) facing down. If the nozzles or metal contacts are damaged, it may affect the printing quality.
- Never attempt to take apart or modify a Printhead. This may damage the printer.
- Never touch the Printhead nozzles or the metal contacts. This may cause printing problems.

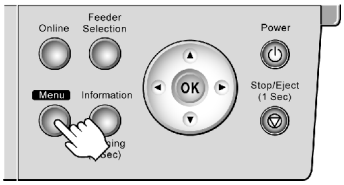
Replacing the Printhead

Follow the steps below to replace the Printhead. Failure to follow this procedure may cause ink leak from the Printhead, which may cause stains.

Note

- Prepare a new Ink Tank when ink levels are low.
- Your hands may become dirty during Printhead replacement. Use the gloves provided with the new Printhead for replacement.
- Choose **On** in **Auto Print** to have the printer automatically adjust the Printhead alignment after replacement of the Printhead. (→P.47)

1. If the roll is not ejected because of the cutting method selected, cut it manually and remove it. (→P.447)
2. Clean inside the Top Cover. (→P.670)
3. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Maintenance**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Maintenance ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Replace P.head**, and then press ▼.

Maintenance Replace P.head ↓

6. Press ◄ or ► to select Printhead, and then press ▼.
   Select **Left Printhead** to replace the left Printhead or select **Right Printhead** to replace the right Printhead.

Replace P.head Left Printhead ↓

7. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press **OK**.

The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Replace P.head
= Yes
```

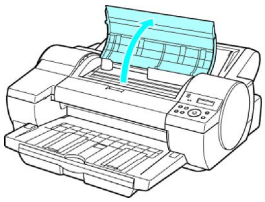
Please Wait.. is shown on the Display Screen, and excess ink is absorbed.

```
Replace P.head
Please Wait..
```

After about three minutes, **Open UpperCover** is shown on the Display Screen.

```
Replace P.head
Open UpperCover
```

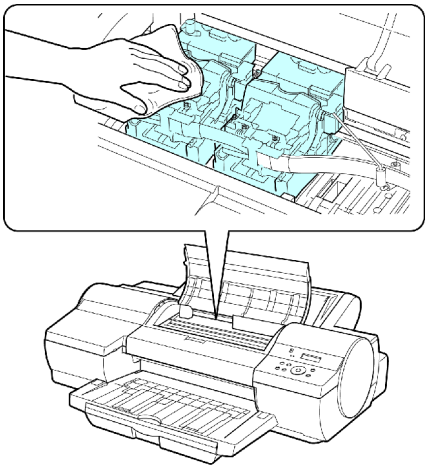
8. Open the Top Cover.



Rep. P.head OK is shown on the Display Screen.

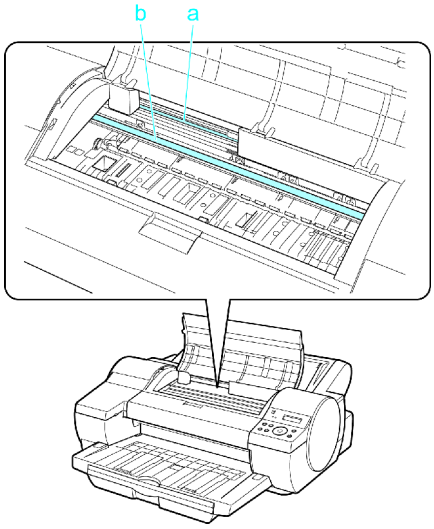
```
Replace P.head
Rep. P.head OK
```

9. If the Carriage is dirty, use a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely to wipe it clean.



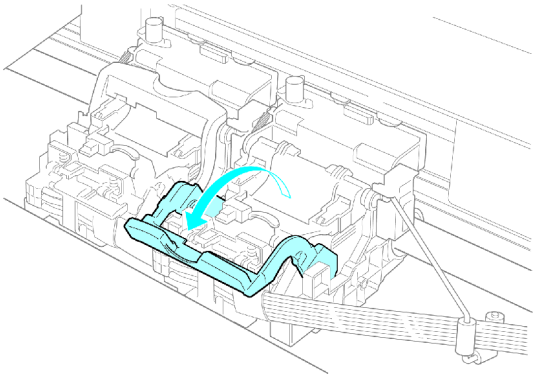
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

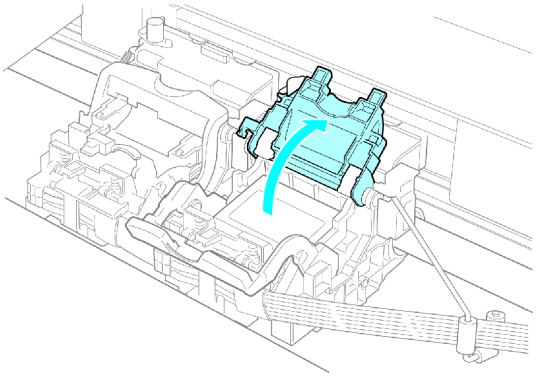


- Never touch the metal contacts of the Carriage. This may damage the printer.

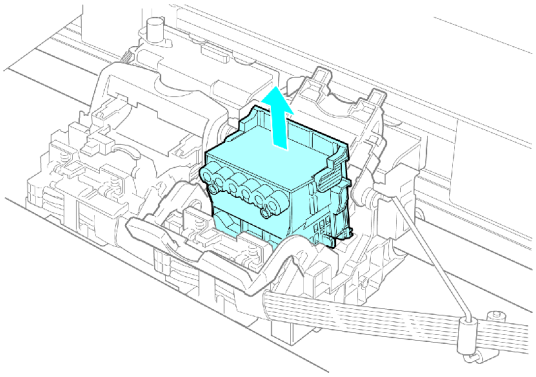
10. Pull the Printhead Fixer Lever of the Printhead forward all the way to open it completely.



11. Pull up the Printhead Fixer Cover to open it completely.



12. Remove the used Printhead.



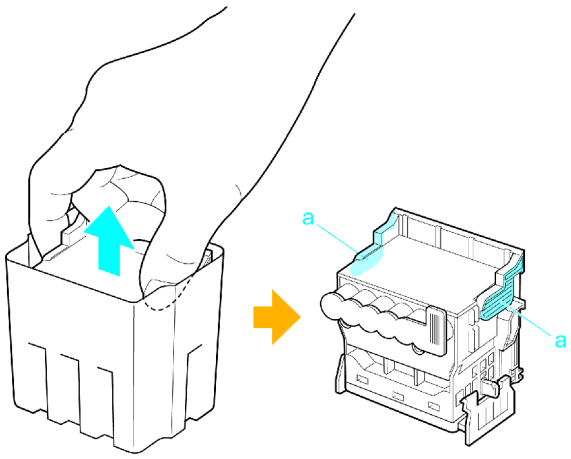
Caution

- When replacing the Printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before replacing it. The metal parts of the Printhead become hot during printing, and there is a risk of burns from touching these parts.

Note

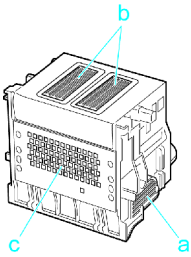
- Dispose of the used Printhead in accordance with local regulations.

13. Holding the new Printhead by the grips (a), remove it from the case.

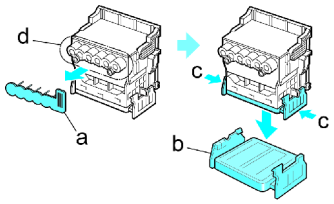


Important

- When handling the Printhead, always hold it by the grips (a). Never touch the nozzles (b) or the metal contacts (c). This may damage the Printhead and affect the printing quality.



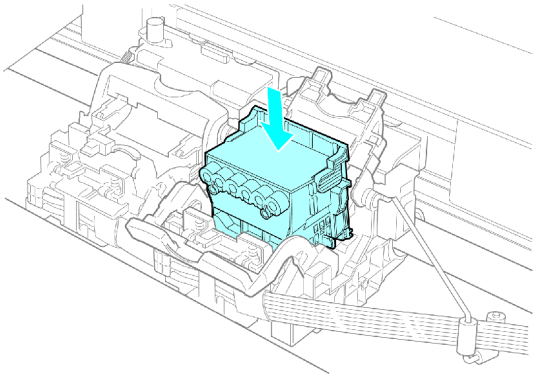
14. While firmly holding the Printhead you have removed, use your other hand to remove the orange Safety Cap 1 (a). Squeeze the grips (c) of Safety Cap 2 (b) and pull it down to remove it.



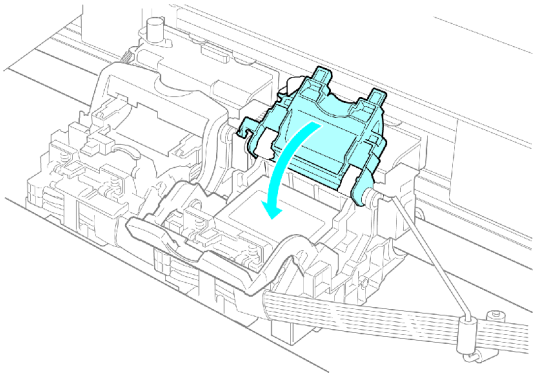
Important

- Safety Cap 1 (a) may be coated with ink to protect the Printhead. Be careful not to touch areas other than the grips.
- Never touch the ink supply section (d). This may cause printing problems.
- The inside surface of Safety Cap 2 (b) is coated with ink to protect the nozzles. Handle it carefully to avoid touching the nozzles or spilling ink. Spilled ink may cause stains. The Printhead contains ink to protect the nozzles. If this ink is accidentally spilled, it may stain the printer or surrounding area. We recommend removing the Safety Cap 2 (b) on top of the Printhead package or safely out of the way. Wipe off any spilled ink with a dry cloth. This ink is not non-toxic.
- Do not reattach the Safety Cap or protective material. Dispose of these materials in accordance with local regulations.

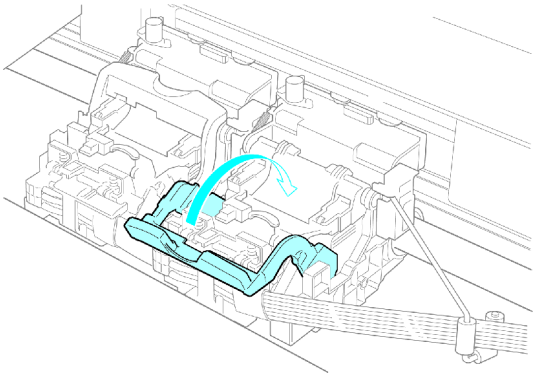
15. With the nozzles facing down and the metal contacts toward the back, insert the Printhead into the Carriage. Carefully push the printhead firmly into the Carriage, ensuring that the nozzles or metal contacts do not touch the carriage.



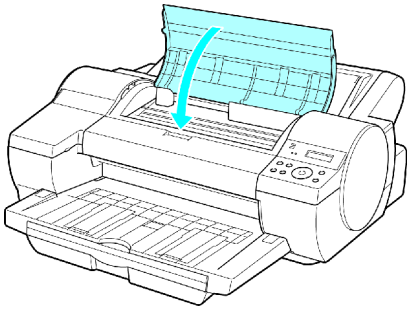
16. Pull the Printhead Fixer Cover down toward the front to lock the Printhead in place.



17. Push the Printhead Fixer Lever toward the back of the printer until it clicks.



18. Close the Top Cover.



Please Wait.. is shown on the Display Screen, and ink fills the system.

```
Replace P.head
Please Wait..
```

After about ten minutes, the Printhead alignment will be automatically adjusted, and the printer will go online.

Important

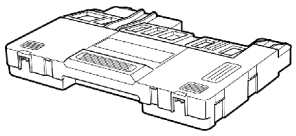
- Never remove an Ink Tank while the system is filling with ink.
- If **Auto Print** is **Off** in the printer menu, the Printhead alignment will not be adjusted. In this case, adjust the alignment after Printhead replacement by accessing **Advanced Adj.** in **Auto Head Adj.** (→P.610)

Maintenance Cartridge

Maintenance Cartridge

This is a replacement Maintenance Cartridge for the printer.

- Maintenance Cartridge MC-05



Note

- For instructions on replacing the Maintenance Cartridge, see “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.661)

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

Compatible Maintenance Cartridge

For information on the compatible Maintenance Cartridge, see “Maintenance Cartridge”. (→P.661)

Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge

Take the following precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge.

Caution

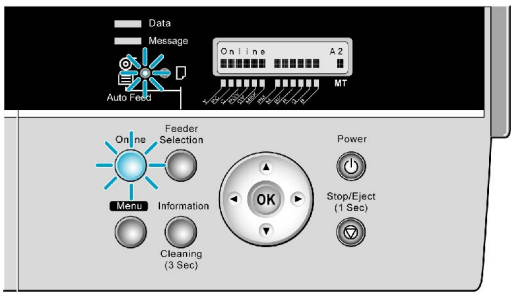
- For safety, keep the Maintenance Cartridge out of the reach of children.
- If ink is accidentally ingested, contact a physician immediately.

Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge except to replace it.
- To prevent ink from leaking from a used Maintenance Cartridge, avoid dropping the cartridge or storing it at an angle. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- Ink adheres to the top of the Maintenance Cartridge after it has been used. Handle the Maintenance Cartridge carefully during replacement. The ink may stain clothing.
- Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

1. Make sure no print jobs are in progress.



It is time to replace the Maintenance Cartridge if any of these messages are shown on the Display Screen : **Online**, **Offline**, **MTCart Full Soon**, and **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart**.

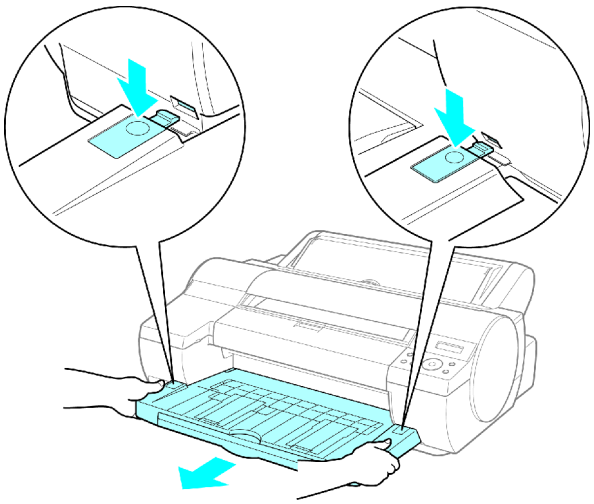
Maint Cartridge Replace Cart

Do not replace the Maintenance Cartridge during initialization immediately after turning on the printer, or during Printhead cleaning.

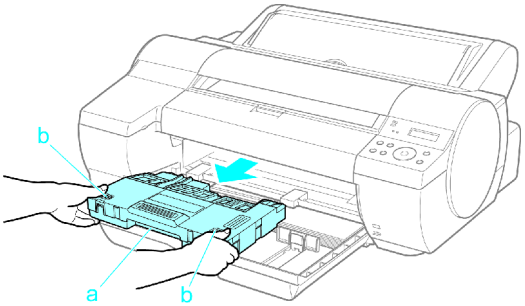
Initializing

If you pause printing to replace the Maintenance Cartridge, it may cause the printed images to be blurry.

2. Holding the Output Tray on both sides by the far end, press the button to release the lock, and then remove the tray.



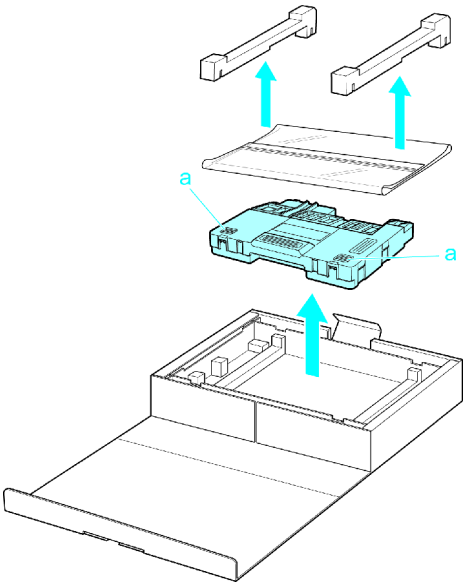
3. Hold the handle (a) of the used Maintenance Cartridge and pull out the cartridge. Grasp the handles on both sides (b) and keep the cartridge level as you remove it.



Important

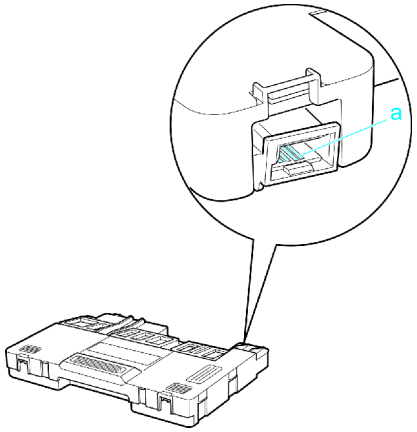
- Used Maintenance Cartridge is heavy. Always grasp the cartridge handles on both sides firmly and keep the cartridge level during removal and storage. If you drop a used Maintenance Cartridge or store it at an angle, ink may leak and cause stains.
- The remaining Maintenance Cartridge capacity is recorded on each printer. Do not install a used Maintenance Cartridge in another printer.

4. Open the plastic bag of the new Maintenance Cartridge and remove the packaging material. Holding the handles on both sides (a), remove the cartridge.

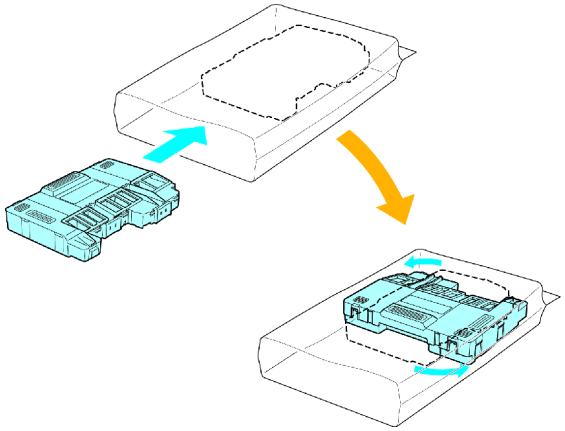


Important

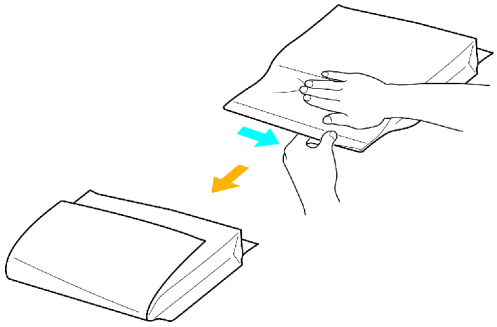
- Never touch the metal contacts (a). This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.



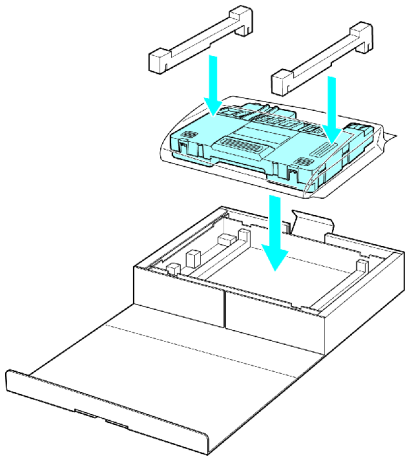
5. Keeping the used Maintenance Cartridge level, put it in the plastic bag that was in the box, as shown.



6. Expel air in the plastic bag and seal the zipper. Fold the plastic bag in half.



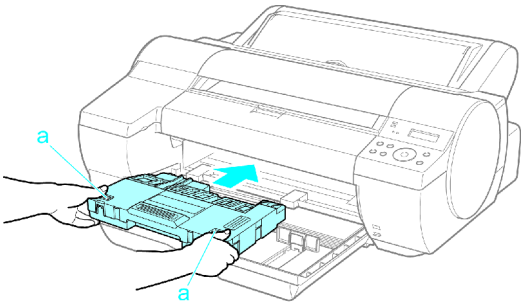
7. Put the used Maintenance Cartridge and packaging material in the box for storage, just like the new Maintenance Cartridge was, keeping it level.



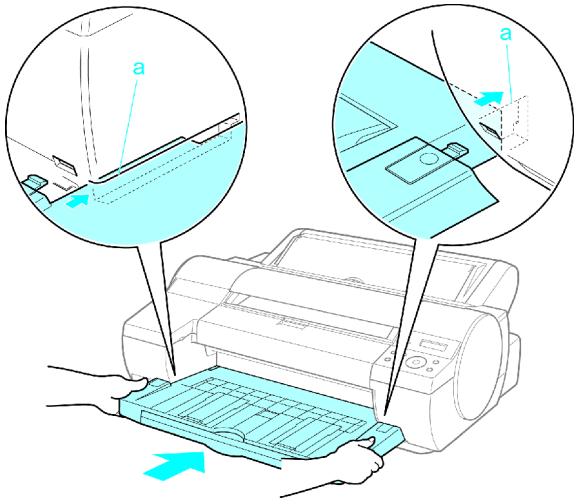
Important

- Always put the used Maintenance Cartridge back in the box and store the box on a flat surface. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.
- In accordance with its active and ongoing policy to protect the environment, Canon collects used Maintenance Cartridge. Follow the instructions provided with the new Maintenance Cartridge that describe how to process the used Maintenance Cartridge.

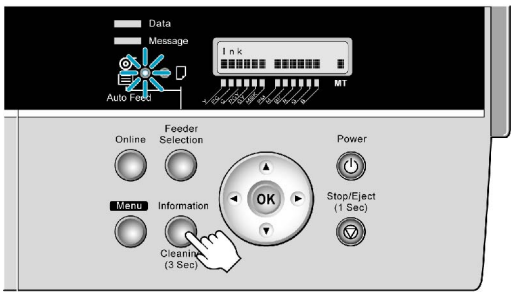
8. Holding the handles on both sides of the new Maintenance Cartridge (a), insert it completely, keeping it level.



9. Hold the Output Tray on both sides by the near end. Aligning the Output Tray with the guides (a), insert it into the printer until it locks in place.



10. Press the **Information** button.



Initialization of the new Maintenance Cartridge takes about five seconds, after which the printer returns to the mode before replacement of the Maintenance Cartridge. If **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart** is displayed, printing is disabled. Make sure that the Maintenance Cartridge is installed correctly.

If the printer was in Menu mode or an error message was shown on the Display Screen, the printer goes online. If a print job was in progress when the Maintenance Cartridge was replaced, printing is resumed.

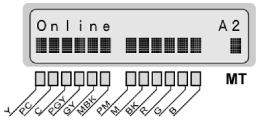
Important

- Do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after the printer goes back online. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.
- If you replace the Maintenance Cartridge when the printer is off, do not remove the Maintenance Cartridge during about the first five seconds after you turn the printer on again after replacement. This may damage the Maintenance Cartridge.

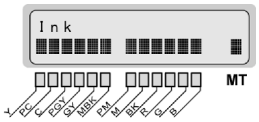
Checking the Maintenance Cartridge Capacity

The Maintenance Cartridge absorbs excess ink from borderless printing, printhead cleaning, ink mist, and so on. You can confirm the remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge by checking the Maintenance Cartridge capacity shown on the Display Screen.

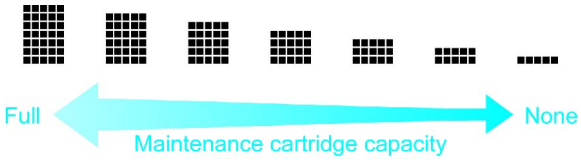
The remaining capacity of the Maintenance Cartridge is shown at right on the bottom line of the Display Screen when the printer is online, except during print jobs or error messages.



During print jobs or error messages, press the **Information** button to display the Maintenance Cartridge capacity at right on the bottom line of the Display Screen.



The remaining capacity level of the Maintenance Cartridge is indicated as shown below.



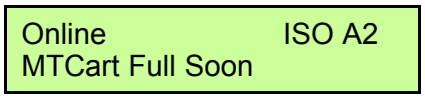
If **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart** is shown on the Display Screen, replace the Maintenance Cartridge. If **MTCart Full Soon** is displayed, and particularly before cleaning the printhead or transferring the printer, which may deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity, check the capacity and replace the Maintenance Cartridge as needed. (→P.661)

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Replace or prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge in the following situations.

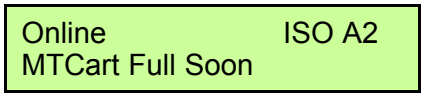
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is low, the **Message lamp** is lit and **MTCart Full Soon** is displayed. You can continue to print, but check the Maintenance Cartridge capacity and prepare to replace the Maintenance Cartridge with a new one. (→P.667)



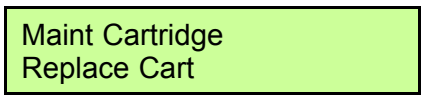
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted

Printhead cleaning, Printhead replacement, and preparations to transfer the printer deplete much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity. (In particular, preparing to move the printer depletes a lot of the capacity.) Check the Maintenance Cartridge capacity, and if necessary, perform maintenance after replacing the Ink Tank.



If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen

When the Maintenance Cartridge is full, the **Message lamp** flashes and **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart** is shown on the Display Screen. Printing is disabled, and you cannot replace the Printhead or transfer the printer. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge at this point.

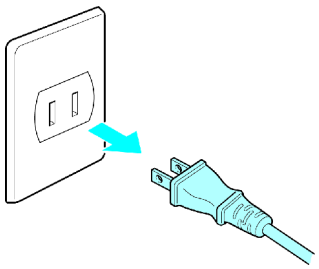


Cleaning the Printer

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

Clean the printer regularly to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems.
About once a month, clean the printer exterior.

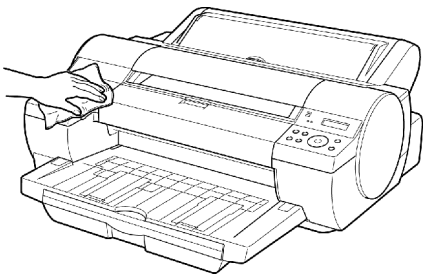
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.20)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning or maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

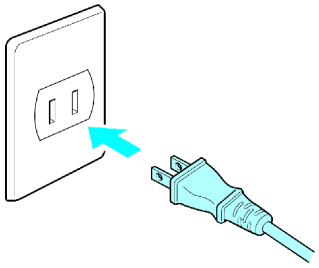
3. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe the exterior surfaces of the printer. Dry the surfaces with a dry cloth.



Caution

- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.

4. Plug the power cord into the outlet.



Cleaning Inside the Top Cover

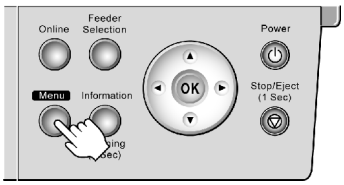
Clean inside the Top Cover about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean inside the Top Cover in the following situations to ensure optimal operation.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After you have used up a roll
- After borderless printing
- After printing on small paper
- After printing on paper that generates a lot of cutting debris
- If you have replaced the roll

Important

- If the Platen inside the Top Cover becomes dirty, it may soil the underside of paper. We recommend always cleaning the Platen after borderless printing or printing on small paper.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Maintenance**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Maintenance ↓

3. Press the ◄ or ► button to select **Clean Platen**, and then press ▼.

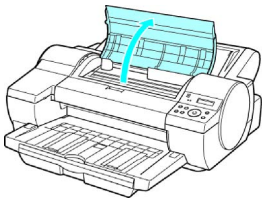
Maintenance Clean Platen ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

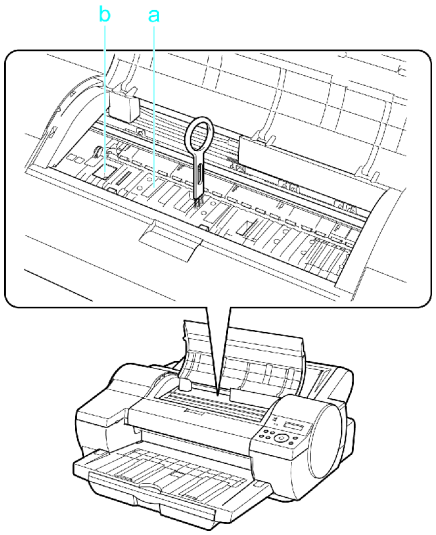
Clean Platen = Yes

   The Carriage is moved so that you can clean the Platen.

5. Open the Top Cover.



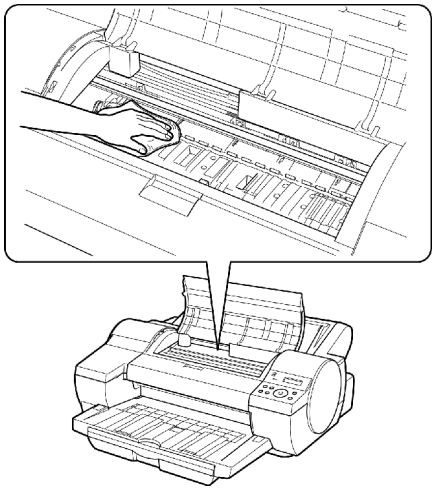
6. If paper dust has accumulated in the Vacuum holes (a) on the Platen or in the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves (b), use the Cleaning Brush, provided with the printer, to wipe it away.



Note

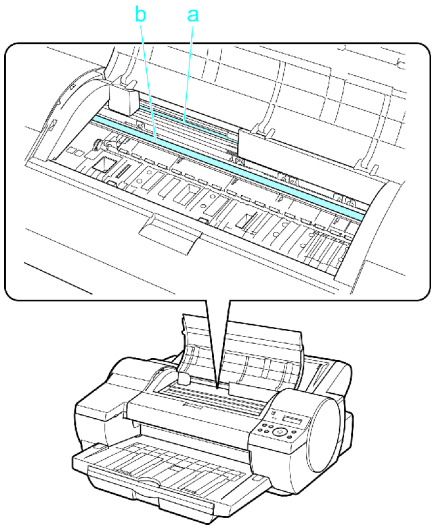
- If the Cleaning Brush is dirty, rinse it in water.

7. Using a damp cloth that you have wrung out completely, wipe inside the Top Cover to clean it. Wipe away any ink residue on the Platen as a whole, the Paper Retainer, and the Borderless Printing Ink Grooves.

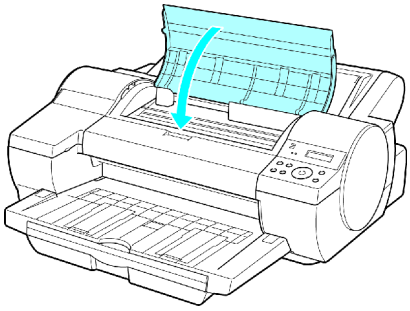


Important

- Do not use a dry cloth to wipe inside the Top Cover. This may create a static charge, which may attract dust and affect the printing quality.
- Never use flammable solvents such as alcohol, benzene, or thinner. If these substances come into contact with electrical components inside the printer, there is a risk of fire or electrical shock.
- Never touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



8. Close the Top Cover.



Cleaning the Paper Retainer

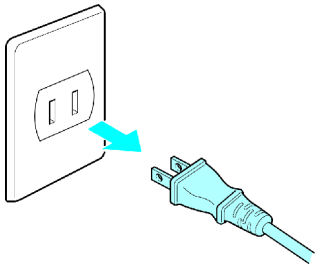
Clean the Paper Retainer about once a month to maintain better printing quality and help prevent problems. Also clean the Paper Retainer in the following situations to ensure the printer offers a comfortable working environment.

- If the printed surface or the underside of paper is dirty after printing
- After printing on small paper

Caution

- During cleaning, use a type of paper that does not generate much dust from cutting, such as Plain Paper. It may affect printing quality if you use film or other media that are more likely to generate debris when cut, or that have a surface finish that may come off.

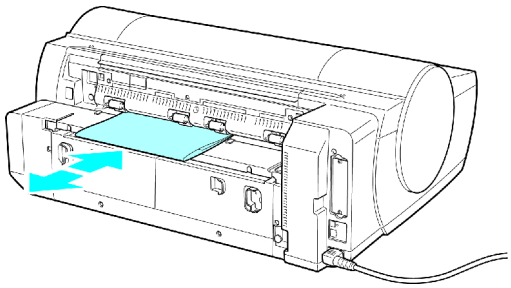
1. Turn the printer off. (→P.20)
2. Unplug the power cord from the outlet.



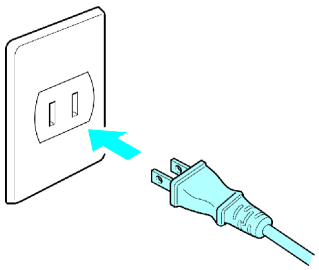
Caution

- Always turn off the printer and unplug the power cord before cleaning and maintenance. Accidentally leaving the printer on poses a risk of injury if you touch moving parts inside the printer.

3. Remove the Roll Feed Unit or Paper Tray Unit. (→P.147)
4. Fold a sheet of Plain Paper two or three times (a) and insert it under the Paper Retainer (b) behind the printer to wipe the entire surface of the Paper Retainer clean.



5. Install the Roll Feed Unit or Paper Tray Unit again. (→P.148)
6. Plug the power cord into the outlet.



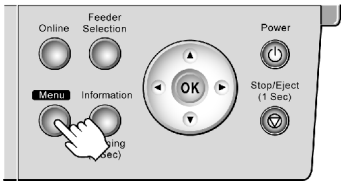
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller

Cleaning the Pick Up Roller may solve feeding problems when using the Cassette.

Note

- The menu option **Clean Roller** is not displayed after you have started supplying paper from a roll or the tray. Remove the paper to access **Clean Roller**.
- **Clean Roller** is not available unless plain paper is used. If you attempt cleaning with other paper, **Load Plain Paper In Cassette** is displayed for two seconds, after which the display reverts to the upper level menu.

1. Load a sheet of Letter-size plain paper in the Cassette. (→P.80)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Maintenance**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Maintenance ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Clean Roller**, and then press ▼.

```
Maintenance
Clean Roller ↓
```

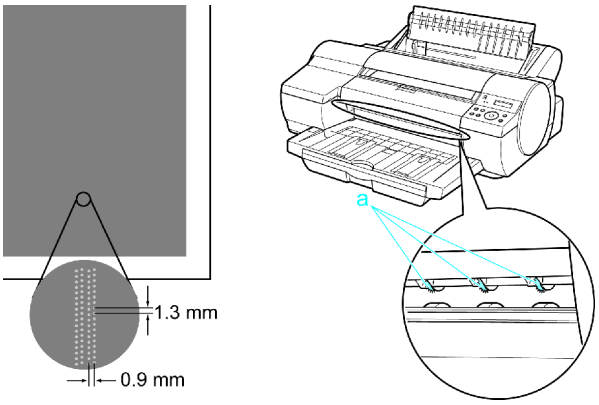
5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

```
Clean Roller
= Yes
```

   The paper is fed to clean the Pick Up Roller, and the printer goes online.

Cleaning Spurs Used in Paper Feeding

If white dots about 1 mm (0.039 in) apart appear on printed documents in the direction paper is fed, clean the spurs (a).
During spur cleaning, a Cleaning sheet fed from the Top Paper Feed Slot is repeatedly advanced and retracted to clean the spurs.



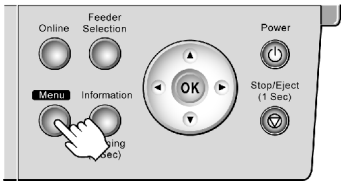
Note

- Spur cleaning requires a Cleaning sheet.
- If the spurs are quite soiled, executing cleaning once may not be enough to clean them completely. Execute cleaning again if one time is not effective.
- If a roll is loaded, rewind the roll before this procedure. (→P.146)

Important

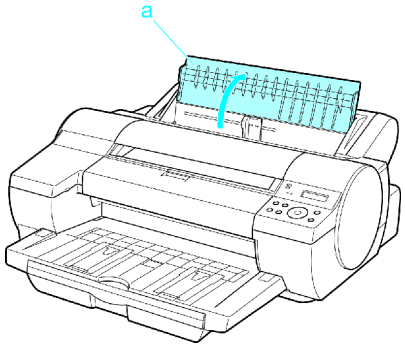
- Do not fold the Cleaning sheet.
- Do not use a frayed Cleaning sheet or Cleaning sheet that has become very dirty.
- If the Cleaning sheet is warped, straighten it before use.
- To cancel cleaning, press the **Stop/Eject** button.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

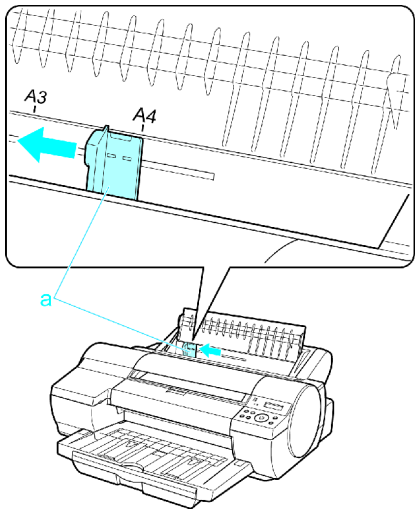


2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Maintenance**, and then press the ▼ button.
3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Spur Cleaning**, and then press the ▼ button.
4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

5. Open the Paper Tray Cover (a).

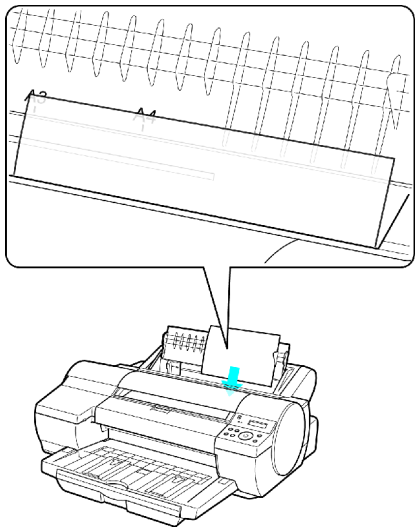


6. Squeeze the Width Guide (a) and slide it all the way to the left.



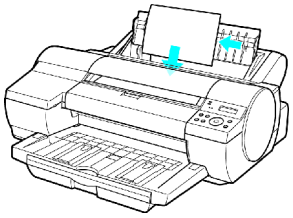
7. Remove the Cleaning sheet from the pouch.
The pouch is used to store the Cleaning Sheet, so keep it in a safe place.

8. Insert the long side of the Cleaning sheet in the Top Paper Feed Slot in the position to be cleaned.
Insert the Cleaning sheet gently until it stops.

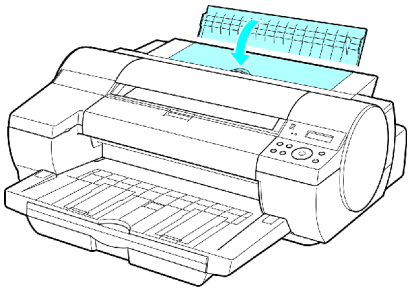


Note

- If the width of the paper used when soiling occurred is wider than the Cleaning sheet, insert the sheet in different positions as you perform cleaning.



9. Press the **OK** button to start cleaning.
   Cleaning takes about a minute and a half.
10. **Remove cleaning sheet, press OK** is shown on the Control Panel. At this point, pull out the Cleaning sheet and press the **OK** button.
11. Put the Cleaning Sheet back in the pouch.
12. Close the Paper Tray Cover.



Cleaning the Printhead

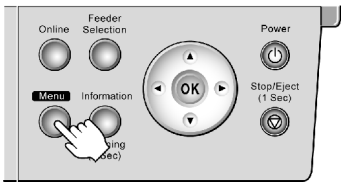
Cleaning the Printhead may help clear nozzles that are clogged.

Note

- You can perform automatic nozzle checking and cleaning every time you finish printing that quantity by specifying a number of pages in the printer's **Nozzle Check** menu. (→P.47)
- You can start **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for three seconds or more.
- If POP Board (paper thickness 1.5 mm [0.06 in]) is loaded in Front Paper Feed Slot, printhead cleaning will not work correctly. Remove the paper before cleaning.

Cleaning the Printhead

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Head Cleaning**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Head Cleaning ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select the type of cleaning, and then press the **OK** button.
   - **Head Cleaning A**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if printing is faint or contains foreign substances. This method of cleaning consumes the least amount of ink. It takes about four minutes to complete.
   - **Head Cleaning B**
     Use **Head Cleaning A** if no ink comes out of the printhead, or if **Head Cleaning B** does not solve the problem. It takes about six minutes to complete.

   The setting is updated, and an equals sign "=" is displayed at left.

Head Cleaning = Head Cleaning A

   The printhead cleaning is finished, and the printer goes online.
4. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles, and determine whether cleaning has cleared the nozzles. (→P.651)

Note

- If printing does not improve after **Head Cleaning A**, try **Head Cleaning B**. If this does not solve the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If this still does not improve printing, the Printhead may have reached the end of its useful life. Contact your Canon dealer.

Other Maintenance

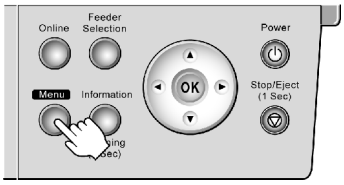
Preparing to Transfer the Printer

To protect the internal parts in transit, always follow the steps below before transferring the printer to a new location. Refer to the Quick Start Guide for details on packing the printer and installing it after transfer.

Note

- You cannot prepare to transfer the printer if **MTCart Full Soon** or **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart** is shown on the Display Screen. Replace the Maintenance Cartridge before transfer preparations. (→P.661)
- Do not tilt the printer in transit. Ink inside the printer may leak and cause stains. If it is necessary to stand the printer up or tilt it, contact your Canon dealer.

1. Remove the paper.
   - Cassette
     Removing Paper from the Cassette (→P.171)
   - Rolls
     1. Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit (→P.122)
     2. Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder (→P.117)
   - Sheet
     Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot (→P.196)
2. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Maintenance**, and then press ▼.

```
MAIN MENU
Maintenance ↓
```

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Move Printer**, and then press ▼.

```
Maintenance
Move Printer ↓
```

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press **OK**.
The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Move Printer = Yes

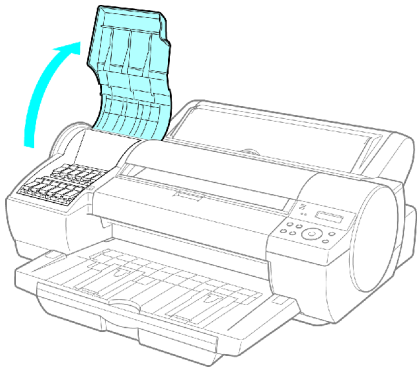
Ink Draining.. is shown on the Display Screen.

Move Printer Ink Draining..

Open InkTankCvr is shown on the Display Screen.

Move Printer Open InkTankCvr

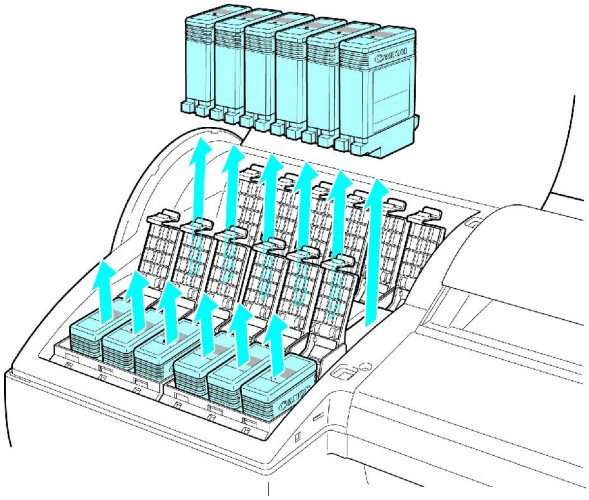
6. Open the Ink Tank Cover.



Remove Ink Tank is shown on the Display Screen.

Move Printer Remove Ink Tank

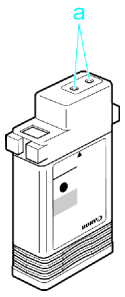
7. Open the Ink Tank Lock Lever and remove every Ink Tank.



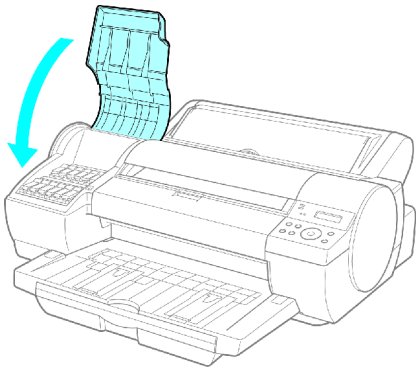
Put the Ink Tank in a plastic bag and seal it.

Note

- Store the Ink Tank you removed with the ink holes (a) facing up. Otherwise, ink may leak and cause stains.



8. Close every Ink Tank Lock Lever, and close the Ink Tank Cover.



After **Please Wait..** is shown on the Display Screen, **Ink Draining..** is displayed as ink in the printer tubes is absorbed.

9. After **Completed! Turn Power Off!!** is shown on the Display Screen, turn off the printer.

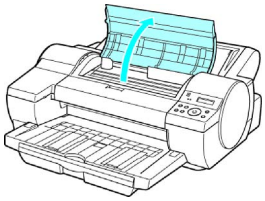
Completed! Turn Power Off!!

Important

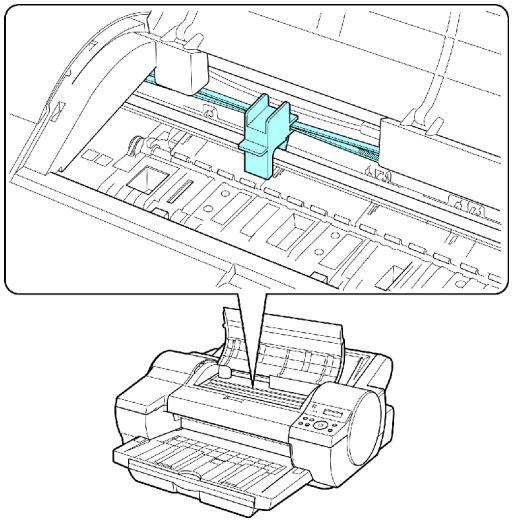
- Turn off the printer before you unplug it. It may damage the printer if you unplug it before it is off and transfer it in that state. If you accidentally unplug the printer, plug it in again, reinstall the Ink Tanks, wait until the printer comes online, and follow this procedure again.

10. Disconnect the power cord and interface cable.

11. Open the Top Cover.

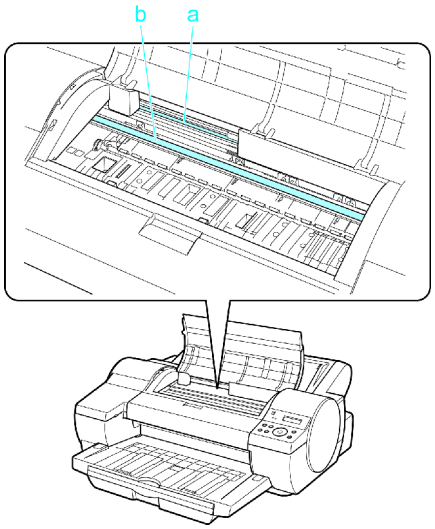


12. Grasp the Belt, insert it between the Belt Stopper, and affix the Belt Stopper to the Carriage Shaft.



Important

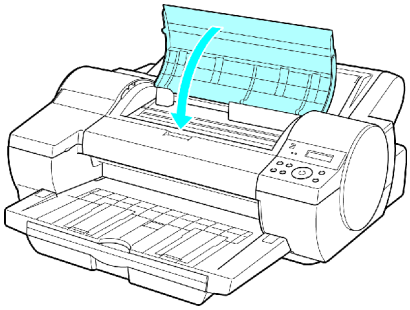
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



Note

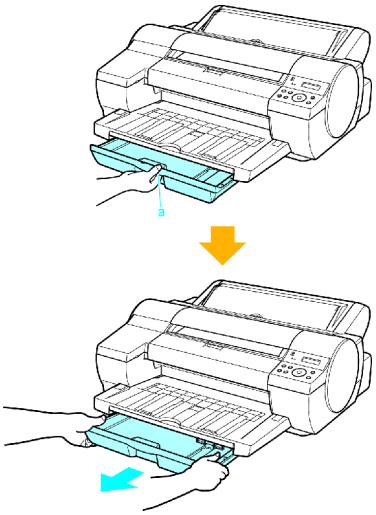
- Here, the Belt Stopper is the one that was removed and stored after initial installation.

13. Close the Top Cover.

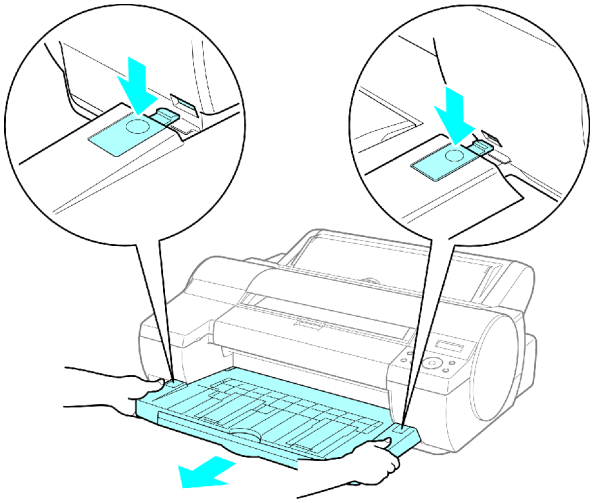


14. Tape down printer covers to secure them, in the reverse order of tape removal during installation.

15. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.



16. Holding the Output Tray on both sides by the far end, press the button to release the lock, and then remove the tray.



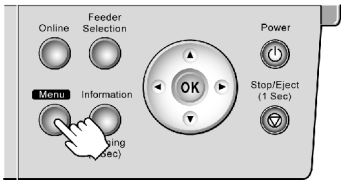
17. Repack the Roll Holder, Holder Stopper, and printer in shipping materials, and then package them in a shipping box.

Updating the Firmware

Update the printer firmware to take advantage of new and improved printer functions.

Confirming the firmware version

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Select **Information** → **Version**.
   The firmware version is displayed.

Updating the firmware

To obtain the latest firmware, visit the Canon website. If the firmware available online is newer than the installed firmware, update the printer firmware. For details on downloading and updating the firmware, visit the Canon website.

Troubleshooting

Frequently Asked Questions

Frequently Asked Questions

This section presents frequently asked questions and answers. To view more detailed explanations, click the hyperlinks in the answer column.

Question	Answer
How do I print on a roll?	When printing on rolls, after loading the roll, specify the paper type and length, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. ⇒Loading and Printing on Rolls (→P.82)
How do I print manually?	When printing manually, specify the paper type and size in the printer driver, and then load the paper. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.86)
How do I print on sheets in the cassette?	When printing from the cassette, load the paper, and then complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size. ⇒Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette (→P.80)
How do I switch between printing on a roll and printing manually?	You can switch between manual and auto paper feed methods by pressing the **Feeder Selection** button. ⇒Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source (→P.114) ⇒Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source (→P.155) ⇒Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source (→P.154)
How do I change the paper type or size?	Specify the type and size of paper, both on the Control Panel and in the printer driver. • Specifying it in the Printer Driver ⇒Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (→P.688) • Specifying it on the Control Panel Selecting the paper type ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) (→P.124) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) (→P.168) ⇒Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) (→P.167) Selecting the Paper Size ⇒Specifying the Paper Length (Roll) (→P.125) ⇒Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) (→P.193) ⇒Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) (→P.170)
How do I cut the roll paper after printing?	You can wait until ink dries before cutting the roll, and you can cut rolls at a desired position. ⇒Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls (→P.130)

Question	Answer
How do I print without borders?	Borderless printing is possible on rolls. You can also specify borderless printing in the printer driver by adjusting the original size to match the paper size. Borderless printing is not supported on sheets. ⇒Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size (→P.325) ⇒Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.327) ⇒Borderless Printing at Actual Size (→P.307)
How do I print an A4 original enlarged on A2 paper?	In the printer driver, you can adjust the original image to match the paper size or width, or you can specify enlargement or reduction before printing as desired. ⇒Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (→P.273) ⇒Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (→P.274) ⇒Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (→P.275)
How do I print without wasting paper?	To conserve paper, you can specify in the printer driver to rotate originals 90 degrees or to print without top and bottom margins. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.422) ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (→P.423)
How do I print without wasting all the blank space on the right side when printing an A4-sized original at A3 size?	By specifying to rotate originals 90 degrees in the printer driver, you can print at A4 size to fill the width of A3 paper. ⇒Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (→P.422)
How do I print in landscape (or portrait) orientation?	You can print originals that are in landscape (or portrait) orientation automatically enlarged to fit the roll width. This is an easy way to create vertical or horizontal banners. ⇒Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) (→P.358)
How do I print on a custom paper size?	You can specify custom sizes temporarily in the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.359)
How do I register custom paper sizes?	You can add desired sizes (Custom Media Sizes) in the **Size Options** dialog box of the printer driver. ⇒Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (→P.359)
How do I print lines thicker?	By specifying **Thicken Fine Lines** in the printer driver, you can print fine lines thicker to make them easier to see. ⇒Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing (→P.203)

Question	Answer
How do I modify how colors are printed?	To compensate for changes in color from individual variation among Printheads or from the printing environment and to ensure better color consistency, execute color calibration. ⇒Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors (→P.628) You can adjust colors even further in the printer driver before printing. ⇒Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver (→P.214)
How do I use printer driver settings again in subsequent jobs?	By saving settings information in a favorite, you can apply the settings again before printing anytime as needed. ⇒Using Favorites (→P.447)
Can I use the printer in combination with a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	The printer can be used for automatic enlargement and printing of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.276)
How do I print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** ?	By using Color imageRUNNER Enlargement Copy (iR enlargement copy), you can automatically print enlargements of scanned originals from a **Color imageRUNNER** . ⇒Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (→P.276)

Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver

If you replace the paper, complete the printer driver settings for the paper type and size.
For instructions on configuring paper settings in the printer driver, refer to the following topics, as appropriate for your computer and operating system.

- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) (→P.94)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) (→P.96)
- Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) (→P.98)

Printing does not start

The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is not on.	Make sure the power cord is securely plugged in, all the way. Press the **Power** button to turn the printer on.
The printer is not selected in the printer driver. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, select the printer by clicking **Select Printer** or **Printer** in the printing dialog box and try printing again.
	In Mac OS X, select the printer by clicking **Printer Setup Utility** (or **Print Center**) and try printing again.
	In Mac OS 9, select the printer in **Chooser** and try printing again.
The print job is paused. (The printer is in Sleep mode.)	In Windows, restart the print job as follows. 1. Select the printer icon in the **Printers and Faxes** (or **Printers**) window. 2. Clear **Pause Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS X, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility** (or the **Print Center**). 2. Select the printer, and then **Start Jobs** in the **Printers** menu to restart the print job.
	In Mac OS 9, restart the print job as follows. 1. Open **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** . 2. Choose **Resume Printing** in the **File** menu to restart the print job.

The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is offline.	Press the **Online** button on the Control Panel to bring the printer online.

The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink

Cause	Corrective Action
When the printer was turned off previously, some cleaning operation was terminated.	Wait until the system has been filled with ink. This process may take about ten minutes.

Cannot print over a network

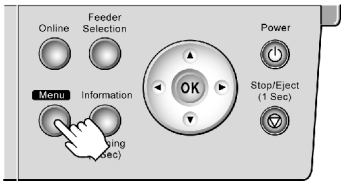
Cannot connect the printer to the network

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ethernet cable is not connected correctly to the printer's Ethernet port.	1. Make sure the printer is connected to the network with the correct Ethernet cable, and then turn the printer on. For instructions on connecting the cable, refer to the Quick Start Guide . 2. Make sure the Link indicator is lit. The Link indicator is green if the printer is connected via 100 Base-TX and orange if connected via 10Base-T. If the Link indicator is not lit, check the following points. • Make sure the hub is on. • Make sure the end of the Ethernet cable is connected correctly. Insert the Ethernet cable until it clicks and locks in place. • Make sure there is no problem with the Ethernet cable. If there is any problem, replace the Ethernet cable. • Check the communication mode with the hub. Although the printer normally detects the hub communication mode and transmission rate automatically (in auto negotiation mode), sometimes the hub settings cannot be detected. In this case, configure the connection method manually, specifying the communication mode in use. (→P.691)

Configuring the Communication Mode Manually

This topic gives instructions for configuring the communication mode manually.

1. Press the **Menu** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Interface Setup**, and then press ▼.

MAIN MENU Interface Setup ↓

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **Ethernet Driver**, and then press ▼.

Interface Setup Ethernet Driver ↓

4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Auto Detect**, and then press ▼.

Ethernet Driver Auto Detect ↓

5. Press ◄ or ► to select **Off**, and then press **OK**.

   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Auto Detect = Off

   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Comm.Mode**, and then press ▼.

Ethernet Driver Comm.Mode ↓

7. Press ◄ or ► to select the communication mode, and then press the **OK** button.

   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Comm.Mode = Half Duplex

   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

8. Press ◄ or ► to select **Ethernet Type**, and then press ▼.

Ethernet Driver Ethernet Type ↓

9. Press ◄ or ► to select the Ethernet type, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Ethernet Type = 10 Base-T

   Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

10. Press ◄ or ► to select **Spanning Tree**, and then press ▼.

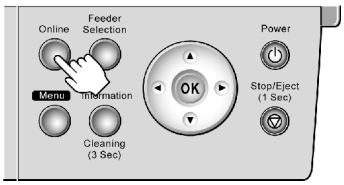
Ethernet Driver Spanning Tree ↓

11. Press ◄ or ► to enable or disable spanning tree support, and then press **OK**.
    The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Spanning Tree = Use

    Return to the **Ethernet Driver** menu.

12. Press the **Online** button.
    After the confirmation message is displayed, press **OK**.
    The printer will now restart.



Note

- If an error message is displayed, check the settings and correct any invalid values.
- To cancel the setup process, hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more.

Cannot print over a TCP/IP network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's IP address is not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's IP address is configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility". (→P.495) or see "Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel". (→P.575)
The printer's TCP/IP network settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings". (→P.573)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's TCP/IP network settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows)". (→P.593)

Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks

Cause	Corrective Action
The AppleTalk protocol is not enabled on the printer.	Activate AppleTalk on the printer. For details, see “Configuring the Printer’s AppleTalk Network Settings”. (→P.598)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer’s AppleTalk settings are configured correctly. For details, see “Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.600) or see “Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh)”. (→P.608)
The computer and printer are not on the same network.	Due to the nature of Bonjour, you cannot print if the printer is on another network behind a router. Make sure the computer and printer are on the same network. For information about network settings, ask your network administrator.

Cannot print over a NetWare network

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer's NetWare settings are not configured correctly.	Make sure the printer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. In particular, make sure a valid frame type is selected. For details, see "Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings". (→P.582)
The computer you are trying to print from is not configured correctly.	Make sure the computer's NetWare settings are configured correctly. For details, see "Configuring NetWare Network Settings". (→P.592)
The NetWare server and services are not configured correctly.	Check the following points. 1. Make sure the NetWare file server is running. 2. Make sure there is enough free disk space on the NetWare file server. Insufficient disk space may prevent you from processing large print jobs. 3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm that the print service is configured correctly and the print queue is available. 4. If data transmission to a printer on another subnet fails, deactivate NCP burst mode in that printer's network protocol settings. 5. If the printer is used in queue server mode, specify "Other/Unknown" as the printer type.

The printer stops during a print job

An error message is shown on the Display Screen

Status	Corrective Action
An error message is displayed during printing.	Check the error message and take action as necessary. (→P.731)
The last portion of roll paper was used during a print job, and paper could not be fed because the trailing edge was taped to the roll.	Remove the portion of roll paper that was used and insert a new roll. (→P.122) (→P.117) (→P.82)

The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper

Status	Corrective Action
The leading edge of the roll paper was cut to straighten it.	This operation is normal. The printer cuts the leading edge of the roll to straighten it and ejects the scraps when **Trim Edge First** in the printer menu is **On** or when **Trim Edge First** is **Automatic** and the leading edge is slanted. The printer is ready to print after this initial preparation. When **Off** is selected under **Trim Edge First** , the edge is not cut and scraps are not removed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and make sure the Printhead is in good condition for printing. (→P.651) Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.652)
There is little ink left.	Check the ink level and replace the Ink Tank that is low. (→P.642)
A print job was received from an incompatible printer driver.	Use the correct imagePROGRAF printer driver for the printer and try printing again.
The printer is damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Problems with the printing quality

Printing is faint

Cause	Corrective Action
You may be printing on the wrong side of the paper.	Print on the printing surface.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.651)
Because the printer was left without Ink Tanks installed for some time, ink has become clogged in the ink supply system.	After the Ink Tank has been installed for 24 hours, run **Head Cleaning B** . (→P.652)
Paper is jammed inside the Top Cover .	Follow the steps below to remove the jammed piece of paper inside the Top Cover . 1. Press the **Online** button to bring the printer offline. 2. Open the Top Cover and make sure the Carriage is not over the Platen . 3. Remove any scraps of paper inside the Top Cover . 4. Close the Top Cover . For tips on clearing paper jams, refer to the following topics. • Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette (→P.173) • Clearing Jammed Roll Paper (→P.138) • Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray (→P.179)
During borderless printing, the ink was not dry enough before cutting.	Specify a longer drying period in the printer menu, in **Roll DryingTime** in **Med.Detail Set.** . (→P.47)
Printing may be faint if **Print Quality** in **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver is set to **Standard** or **Draft** .	In **Advanced Settings** in the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality** . (→P.203)

Paper rubs against the Printhead

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver. (*1)	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.167) (→P.124) (→P.168)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
Paper has been loaded incorrectly, causing it to wrinkle.	Reload the paper. (→P.156) (→P.118) (→P.159)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height** , choose **Automatic** . (→P.614)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **High** . (→P.623) (→P.614)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard** , **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **High** . (→P.623) (→P.614)
	When printing on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 in) thin or thinner, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Weakest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **High** . (→P.623) (→P.614)
	If edges of the paper curl and become soiled when printing on rolls of glossy photo paper, in **Media Detailed Settings** in the printer driver, set **Near End Margin** to **20mm** .

*1: Always make sure the loaded paper matches the media type setting on the printer.

The edges of the paper are dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen . (→P.670)
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same paper type is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.167) (→P.124) (→P.168)
	Make sure the same paper type is specified in the printer driver as on the printer. 1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper is wrinkled or warped.	Straighten out the wrinkles or curls and reload the paper. Do not use paper that has been printed on previously. (→P.156) (→P.118) (→P.159)
A cut line is printed because the function to reduce cutting dust has been activated.	If this function is not needed, deactivate **CutDustReduct.** through the printer menu. (→P.47)
The Printhead is set too low.	In **Head Height** , choose **Automatic** . (→P.614)
You are printing on heavyweight paper or paper that curls or wrinkles easily after absorbing ink.	When printing on Heavyweight Coated Paper or other paper-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Strong** or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **High** . (→P.623) (→P.614)
	When printing on CAD Tracing Paper or film-based media, choose a **VacuumStrngth** setting of **Standard** , **Strong** , or **Strongest** . If the paper is still scratched, try setting the Printhead level in **Head Height** to **High** . (→P.623) (→P.614)
	If edges of the paper curl and become soiled when printing on rolls of glossy photo paper, in **Media Detailed Settings** in the printer driver, set **Near End Margin** to **20mm** .
The Output Tray is soiled.	Clean the Output Tray . (→P.669)

The surface of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer . (→P.673)
You are using a paper that does not dry easily.	Specify a time of about a minute in **Roll DryingTime** .

The back side of the paper is dirty

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen has become dirty after borderless printing or printing on small paper.	Open the Top Cover and clean the Platen . (→P.670)
The Paper Retainer is soiled.	Clean the Paper Retainer . (→P.673)

Banding in different colors occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is not loaded correctly in the Roll Feed Unit.	Remove the roll and reload it. (→P.118)
The paper feed amount is not adjusted correctly.	Adjust the feed amount. (→P.615)
Printing does not proceed smoothly because print jobs are interrupted during transmission.	Exit other applications and cancel other print jobs.
In the printer menu, **Print Length** is specified in **Feed Priority** .	To adjust the feed amount, specify **Band Joint** in **Feed Priority** in the printer menu. (→P.615)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.610)
Streaks may occur if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver and try printing again. (→P.203)

The contrast becomes uneven during printing

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper feed amount is out of adjustment.	Execute **Adjust Band** during printing. (→P.615)

Colors in printed images are uneven

Cause	Corrective Action
Line Drawing/Text is selected when printing images in many solid colors.	Specify **Image** in the printer driver.
You are printing on paper that curls easily.	Printed colors may appear uneven on the leading edge of paper that is susceptible to curling. Increase the level of vacuum holding the paper against the Platen or specify a margin of 20 mm (0.79 in) or more for the leading edge. (→P.623)
If you use Glossy Paper , art paper or Coated Paper , color shading may appear at the rear edges of the paper.	In **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, choose **Highest** or **High** in **Print Quality** . (→P.203)
Printed colors may be uneven if you set the **Print Quality** too low.	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.203)
Color may be uneven between dark and light image areas.	Select **Unidirectional Printing** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.
When using Borderless Printing, the edge of the paper is cut during printing. Thus, ink density may not be even at the edges.	Specify **No** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver before printing. In this case, the paper can be printed without borders on the left and right sides only. Cut the printed document ejected from the printer, then use scissors to cut away the edges on the top and bottom.
	Choose a higher level of **Print Quality** in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver. (→P.203)
The Printhead is out of alignment.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.610)
Drying documents stacked on each other may cause uneven colors.	To avoid uneven colors, we recommend drying each sheet separately.

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper

For paper-specific troubleshooting tips to improve the printing quality, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107)

Lines are misaligned

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead alignment is not adjusted.	Adjust the Printhead alignment. (→P.610) (→P.612)

The length of printed images is inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
In the printer menu, **Band Joint** is specified in **Feed Priority** .	To ensure the feed amount matches the paper size, select **Print Length** in **Feed Priority** in the printer menu and enter the amount for adjustment in **Adjust Length** . You can adjust the feed amount in 0.02% increments. (→P.47)

Documents are printed in monochrome

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, **Monochrome** or **Monochrome (Photo)** , is specified in **Color Mode** .	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, specify **Color** in **Color Mode** and try printing again.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the color ink nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.651)

Printed colors are inaccurate

Cause	Corrective Action
Color adjustment has not been activated in the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver.	In the **Advanced Settings** of the printer driver, access **Color Settings** in **Color Mode** to adjust colors.
Colors have not been adjusted on the computer or monitor.	Refer to the computer and monitor documentation to adjust the colors.
	Adjust the settings of the color management software, referring to the software documentation as needed.
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Print a test pattern to check the nozzles and see if they are clogged. (→P.651)
In the printer driver, **Application Color Matching Priority** is not selected.	Click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver and select **Application Color Matching Priority** in the dialog box.
There may be a slight difference in how colors are printed after you replace the Printhead because of individual variation among Printheads .	Execute color calibration.
Printhead characteristics gradually change through repeated use, and colors may change.	Execute color calibration.
Color may change slightly even on the same model of printer if you use a different version of the firmware or printer driver, or when you print under different settings or in a different printing environment.	Follow these steps to prepare the printing environment. 1. Use the same version of firmware or printer driver. 2. Specify the same value for all settings items. 3. Execute color calibration.
The region selection of the Media Configuration Tool was changed when you reinstalled the printer driver. If you change the region selection of the Media Configuration Tool , region-specific paper information originally registered on the printer before installation will be deleted. If the information of paper you used for color calibration is deleted, such color calibration can no longer be applied to any type of paper.	Perform color calibration again using paper supported in the newly selected region and compatible with color calibration.

Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs

Cause	Corrective Action
The Platen suction is too strong.	Set **VacuumStrngth** to **Weakest** . (→P.623)
The Printhead is set too high.	Lower the Printhead . (→P.614)

Documents are printed crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
Skew **Skew Check Lv.** has been set to **Loose** or **Off** .	Choose **Standard** in **Skew Check Lv.** . If strict skew detection is required, choose **High Accuracy** in **Skew Check Lv.** .

White dots about 1 mm (0.039 in) apart appear on printed documents, in the direction paper is fed.

Cause	Corrective Action
The media type setting is incorrect.	After you select the correct media type, clean the parts used in paper feeding (spurs). (→P.167) (→P.168) (→P.124)
Parts used in paper feeding (spurs) are soiled.	Clean the Spurs. (→P.675)

Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette

Cause	Corrective Action
When glossy paper is fed from the cassette, paper dust or other debris on the guides or in the paper path that turns paper around may damage the surface of glossy paper.	It may help prevent scratches from the paper path if you print glossy paper from the Top Paper Feed Slot instead. (→P.86)

Immediately After Borderless Printing, the Trailing Edge Margin is Soiled During Regular Printing

Cause	Corrective Action
Depending on your printing environment, after borderless printing in which the leading and trailing edge of the roll is cut automatically, any ink adhering to the cutter unit may rub off on the next printed document.	Follow these steps to set the **Between Pages** setting of **Drying Time** in a range of 30 seconds to 3 minutes before borderless printing. 1. On the **Main** sheet of the printer driver, click **Settings** in **Media Type** . 2. Select the ink drying time in the **Between Pages** list of **Drying Time** .

Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper

Cause	Corrective Action
A document was removed after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot without pressing the ▲ button.	Following the instructions, press the ▲ button, remove the paper, and then press the ▼ button.
	Wipe away any soiling on the rollers. (→P.670) (→P.673)

Line thickness is not uniform (Windows)

Cause	Corrective Action
In the **Special Settings** dialog box of the Windows printer driver, **Fast Graphic Process** is selected.	Open the printer driver's **Properties** dialog box from **Print** in the application software's **File** menu, and try printing following the steps below. 1. Remove the check from **Open Preview When Print Job Starts** in the **Main** sheet. 2. Remove the check from **Page Layout** in the **Layout** sheet. 3. Click the **Special Settings** button in the **Layout** sheet to open the **Special Settings** dialog box, and remove the check from **Fast Graphic Process** .

Installation problems

The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly

In Windows, the device interface driver may not be installed correctly in some cases if you connected the IEEE 1394 cable before installing the printer driver.
If so, reinstall the IEEE 1394 device interface driver and the printer driver as follows.

Important

- This procedure is based on an example for Windows XP. The name of the wizard may be different in other operating systems.

1. Right-click **My Computer** and choose **Properties** to display the **System Properties** window.
2. On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager** to display the **Device Manager** window.
3. Right-click **Other Devices** icon and choose **Properties**.
4. On the **Driver** sheet, click **Update Driver** to start the **Hardware Update Wizard** (or the **Upgrade Device Driver Wizard**.)
5. Follow the instructions on the screen.
6. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the CD-ROM drive. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer and follow the instructions on the screen.
   The device/interface driver is installed.
   The device is detected, and the **New Hardware Wizard** (or **Add New Hardware Wizard**) is started.
7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
8. When the window is displayed to choose the source for driver installation, select the printer driver folder.
   Choose the CD-ROM drive > **Driver** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver**, and click **OK**. (For Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003)
9. Follow the instructions on the screen.
   The printer driver is installed.

Removing Installed Printer Drivers

Follow the steps below to remove installed printer drivers and utilities.

Removing printer drivers (Windows)

Remove the printer driver as follows.

Note

- In Windows 2000/Windows XP/Windows Server 2003/Windows Vista, you must log on with administrative rights such as “Administrator” account.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **Canon Printer Uninstaller** > **imagePROGRAF Printer Driver Uninstaller** to display the **Delete Printer** window.
2. Select the printer in the list and click **Delete**.
3. Click **Yes** in the **Warning** message dialog box.
4. Make sure that the printer has been removed from the list, and click **Exit**.

Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh)

Remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor as follows.

1. Insert the User Software CD-ROM provided with the printer in the CD-ROM drive.
2. Start the printer driver installer included in the User Software CD-ROM.
   For Mac OS X, open **OS X** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer X**.
   For Mac OS 9, open **OS 9** and double-click **iPF Driver Installer 9**.
3. In the upper-left menu, choose **Uninstall**, and click **Uninstall**.
4. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove the printer driver or imagePROGRAF Printmonitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Status Monitor** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Status Monitor)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Status Monitor.

Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows)

Remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility as follows.

1. From the Windows **start** menu, select **Programs** > **imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility** > **Uninstaller (imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility)** to start the wizard.
2. In the wizard window, click **Delete**, and then click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen to remove imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility.

Clearing jammed paper

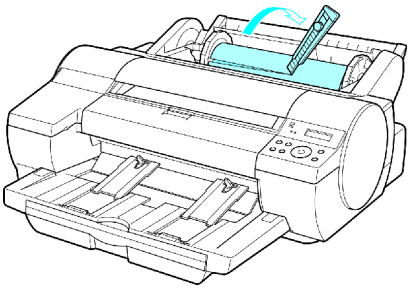
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper

If paper from a roll becomes jammed, **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

Note

- For instructions on removing a paper jam from a roll if the scrap of paper remains in the Paper Feed Slot, see “Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)”. (→P.142)

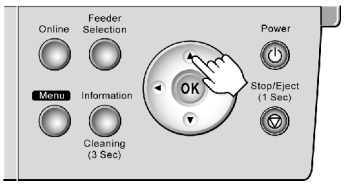
1. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover. Use a store-bought cutter or the like to cut the paper of the loaded roll.



Caution

- When cutting paper, be careful to avoid scratching the printer.

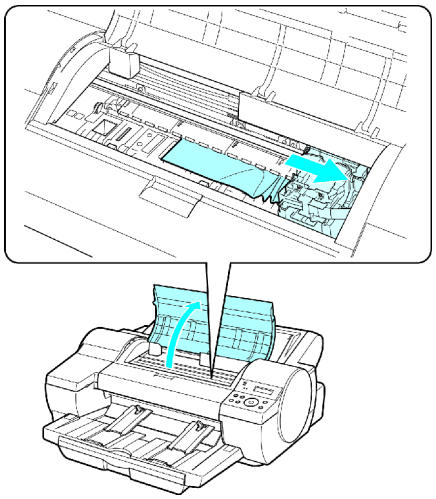
2. Press ▲ button.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

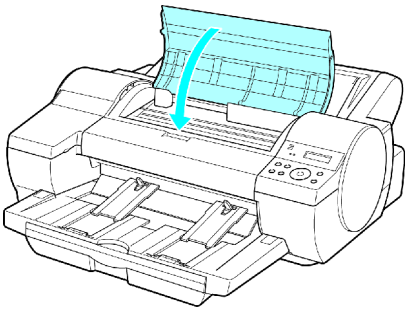
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



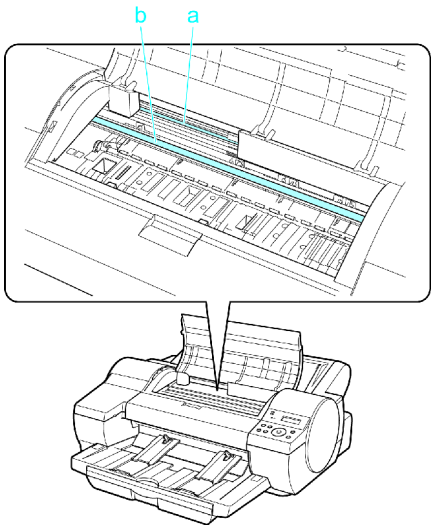
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



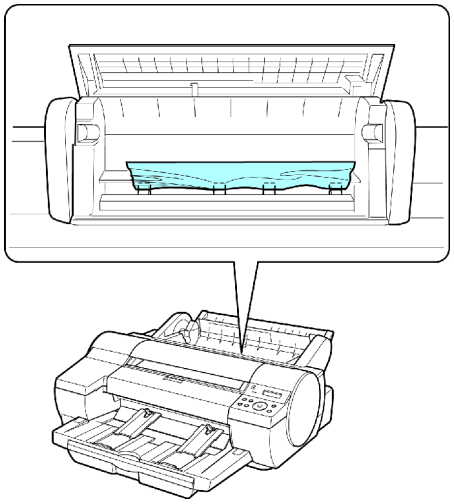
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).

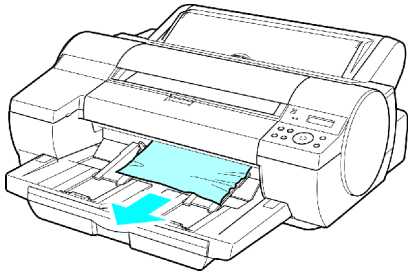


- If paper from a roll is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot

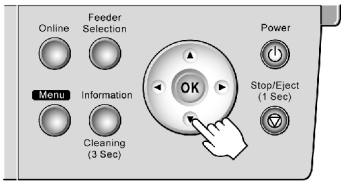
  1. Open the Roll Paper Unit Cover.
  2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.
     After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.711), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

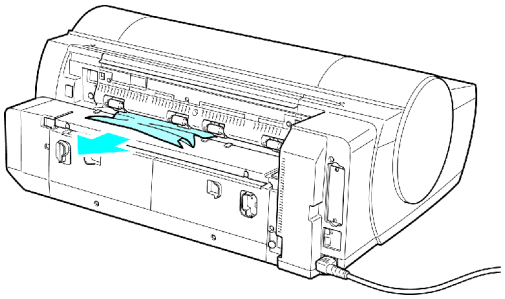


4. Press ▼.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer. (→P.147)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer again. (→P.148)

Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot)

Follow these steps to remove any scraps left in the Paper Feed Slot after you clear jammed sheets or roll paper.

1. Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Paper Tray lamp.
2. Press ◄ or ► to select **POP Board**, and then press the **OK** button.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Type = POP Board

3. Press ◄ or ► to select **ISO A2**, and then press **OK**.
   The setting is updated, and an equals sign “=” is displayed at left.

Manual Pap.Size = ISO A2

   A confirmation message is displayed notifying you that the printer is changing the media source.

Please Wait..

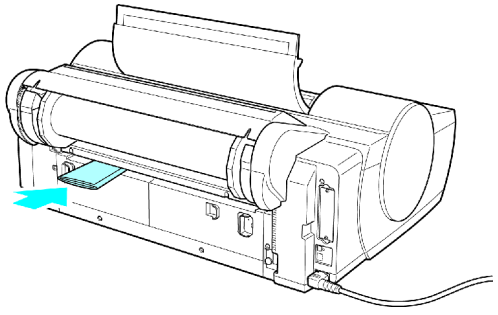
4. After the following message is displayed, press the **OK** button.

Chk Back Space Press OK

5. After the following message is displayed, open the Top Cover.

Open UpperCover

6. Fold an A4 sheet lengthwise four times and insert it through the gap of the Back Cover. Push the scrap out toward the Platen.

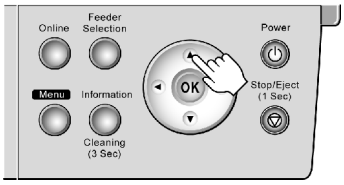


7. Remove the scrap when it is pushed out onto the Platen.
8. If any scraps remain inside the Paper Feed Slot, repeat steps 6 and 7.
9. Close the Top Cover.
10. Turn the printer off. (→P.20)

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray

If a sheet loaded manually becomes jammed, **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** is shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. Remove the jammed paper as follows.

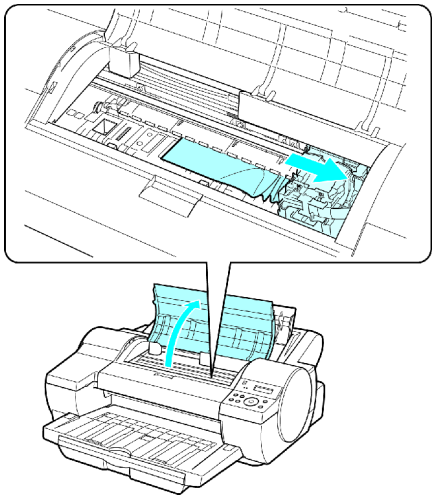
1. Press ▲.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

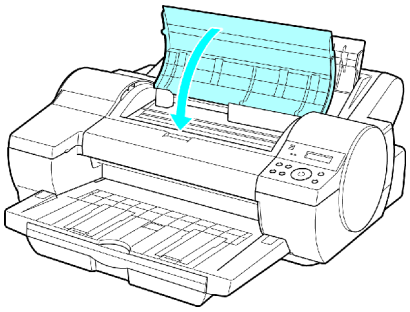
- If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.



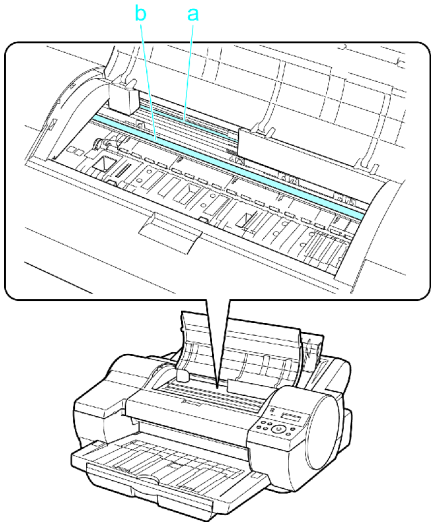
2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. Close the Top Cover.



Important

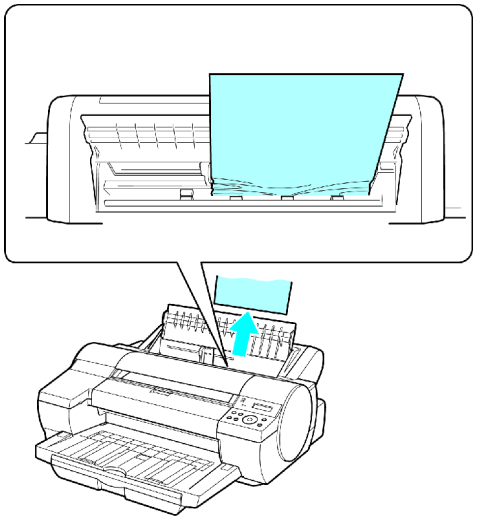
- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b).



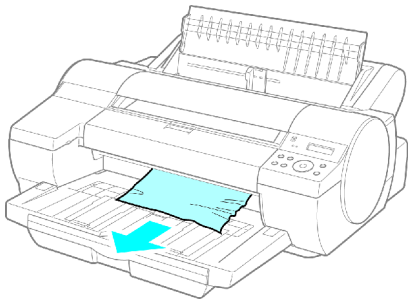
- If paper is jammed by the Paper Feed Slot of the Tray

  Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.

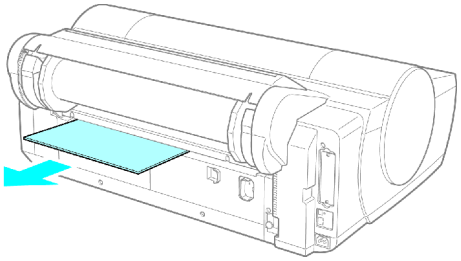
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer. If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot (→P.716), remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam.



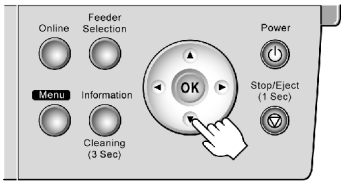
- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray Output Tray
  Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer
  Remove the jammed paper from the back.
  After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

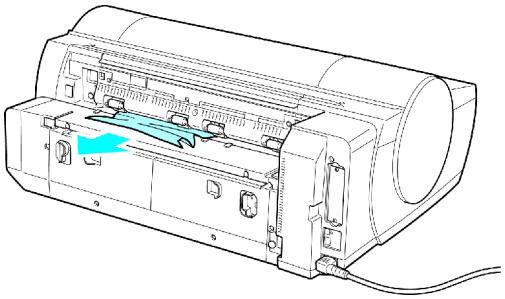


3. Press ▼.



If paper is jammed deep in the Paper Feed Slot, remove the Roll Feed Unit and clear the paper jam as follows.

1. Turn off the printer and remove the Roll Feed Unit from the printer.
   (→P.147)
2. Remove the jammed paper from the Paper Feed Slot.



   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Install the Roll Feed Unit on the printer.
   (→P.148)

Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette

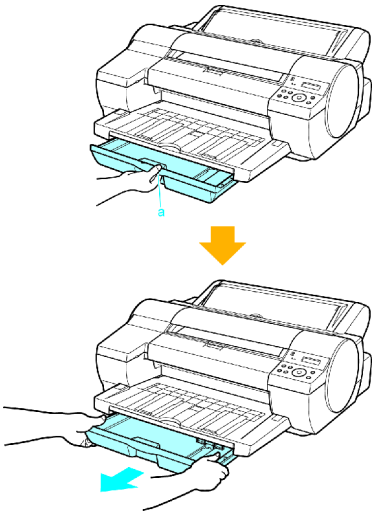
If paper from the Cassette becomes jammed, the following messages are shown on the Display Screen of the Control Panel. How to clear the paper jam varies depending on the message.

- **Can't DetectPapr / Remove Paper** (→P.717)
- **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** (→P.720)

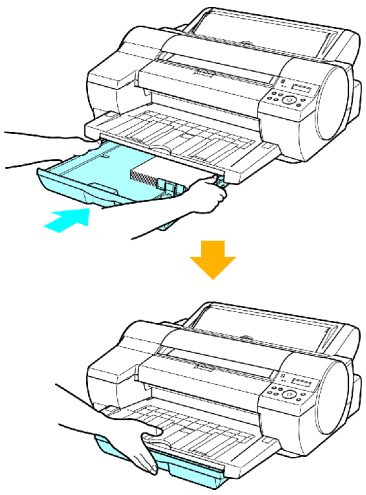
If Can't DetectPapr / Remove Paper is displayed

If paper is jammed in the paper feed slot of the cassette

1. Grasp the handle (a) on the front of the Cassette and pull it forward a little. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, remove the cassette.

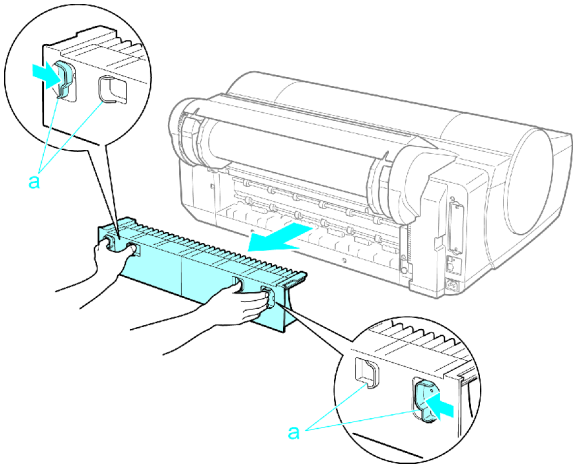


2. Clear any jammed paper from the paper feed slot of the Cassette.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
3. Holding the Cassette on both sides with both hands, insert it firmly into the printer.



If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

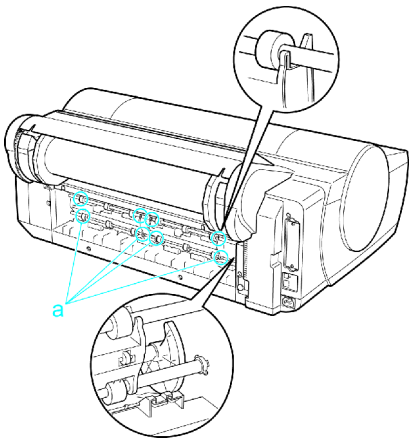
1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the Back Cover from the printer.



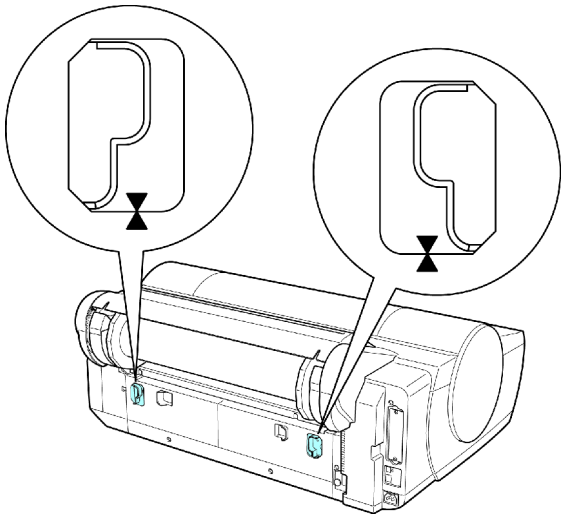
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

Caution

- Do not touch the areas in the printer indicated by (a). If the grease that coats these parts is accidentally wiped away, it may cause feeding problems.

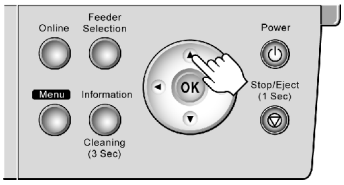


3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.



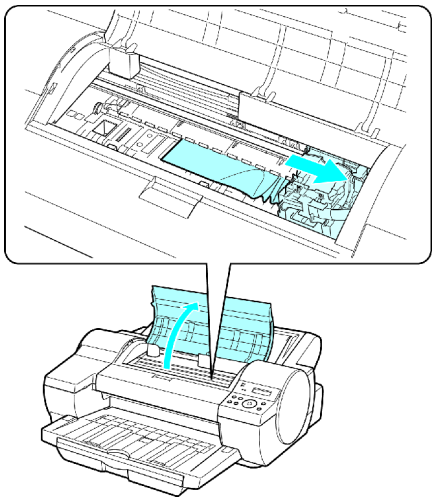
If Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key is displayed

1. Press ▲.

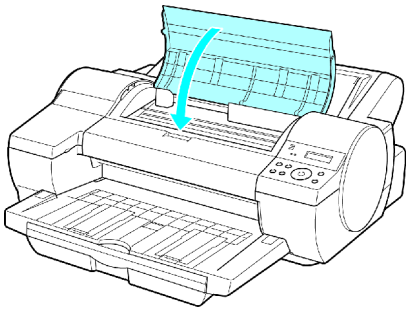


2. Remove the jammed paper.
   - If paper is jammed inside the Top Cover

   1. Open the Top Cover and move the Carriage to the side.

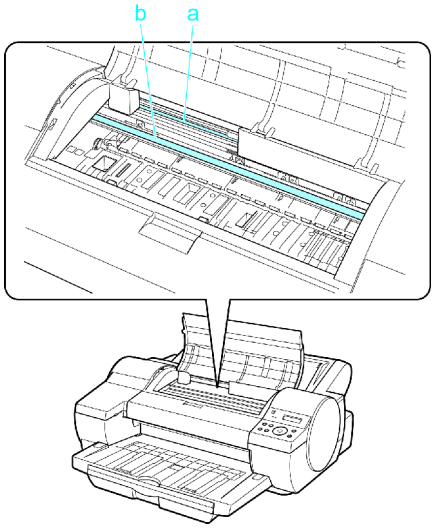


   2. Clear any jammed paper from inside the Top Cover.
      After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.
   3. Close the Top Cover.



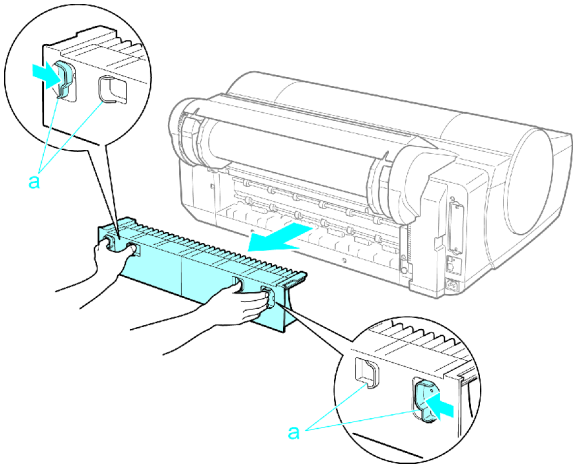
Important

- Do not touch the Linear Scale (a) or Carriage Shaft (b). This may stain your hands and damage the printer.



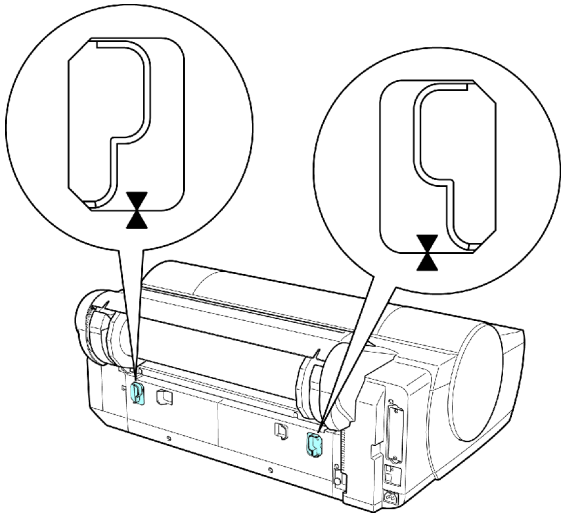
- If paper is jammed in the back of the printer

1. While squeezing the two levers (a) at two positions on the Back Cover, remove the cover from the printer.



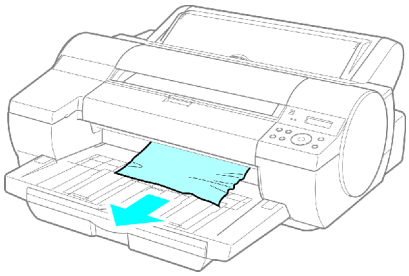
2. Remove the jammed paper from the back.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.

3. After attaching the Back Cover, push the lower part of the levers at two positions so that the levers are aligned with the marks on the Back Cover.

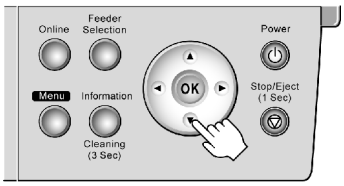


- If the paper is jammed by the Output Tray.

1. Remove the jammed paper from the Output Tray.
   After removing the paper, make sure there are no other scraps of paper in the printer.



3. Press ▼.



If the Printer makes a strange sound

If the Printer Makes a Strange Sound

The following sounds do not indicate a problem with the printer.

- There is a sound of vacuum from the Platen
  To prevent paper from rising, paper is held against the Platen by suction from Vacuum holes under it.
- Roll paper makes a fluttering sound during printing
  There may be a fluttering sound when large paper is advanced.
- If you suddenly hear the tone for cleaning operations
  At regular intervals, for printer maintenance, cleaning operations will begin automatically, even if the printer is in Sleep mode.

In other cases, contact your Canon dealer.

Other problems

The printer consumes a lot of ink

Cause	Corrective Action
Many full-page color images are printed.	In print jobs such as photos, images are filled with color. This consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.
Head Cleaning B is used often.	**Head Cleaning B** consumes a lot of ink. This does not indicate a problem with the printer. Unless the printer has been moved or stored for a long period or you are troubleshooting Printhead problems, we recommend not performing **Head Cleaning B** , to the extent possible.
You have just finished initial installation, when more ink is consumed to fill the system.	After initial installation or at the first-time use after transfer, ink flows into the system between the Ink Tank and Printhead , which may cause the ink level indicators to drop to 80%. This does not indicate a problem with the printer.

A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has not detected the new Maintenance Cartridge .	Remove the new Maintenance Cartridge you have just installed and insert it again firmly.
	Restart the printer.

Paper is not cut straight

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is bent or curled at the cut position.	Straighten out any curling by the edges of the paper.
Paper rises by the ends of the cut position before it is cut.	Reload the paper correctly.

Paper cannot be cut

Cause	Corrective Action
The printed document became caught on a foreign object by the Output Tray , which lifted the document. The Cutter passed under the paper.	Remove the foreign object by the Output Tray to enable the printer to eject the printed document, keeping it level.
In the printer driver, **No** or **Print Cut Guideline** is specified in **Auto Cut** .	Specify **Yes** in **Auto Cut** in the printer driver.
In **MAIN MENU** , **Eject** or **Manual** is specified in **Cutting Mode** .	Specify **Automatic** in **Cutting Mode** in **MAIN MENU** .

Depression on the leading edge is left

Cause	Corrective Action
Keeping a roll in the printer for a long time without printing on it may leave a depression on the leading edge.	When printing quality is most important, we recommend setting **TrimEdge Reload** to **On** or **Automatic** so that the paper edge is automatically cut before printing.

Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper

Cause	Corrective Action
A document was removed after printing from the Front Paper Feed Slot without pressing the ▲ button.	Following the instructions, press the ▲ button, remove the paper, and then press the ▼ button.
	Wipe away any soiling on the rollers. (→P.670) (→P.673)

The printer does not go on

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer is unplugged.	Plug the power cord into the outlet, and then turn on the printer.
The specified voltage is not supplied.	Check the voltage of the outlet and breaker. For information on the specified voltage, see “Specifications”. (→P.72)

Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll paper is warped.	Straighten out curls and reload the roll.
The roll was pulled out by force when it had been advanced before printing, and this action closed the Paper Feed Slot .	Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a while and reload the roll.

Cannot load sheets in the tray

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper source selection is incorrect.	Press the **Feeder Selection** button to activate the Paper Tray lamp .

The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot.

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper cannot be ejected because the roll was advanced when the Front Tray Guides were in the Front Paper Feed Slot .	On the Control Panel , momentarily select **POP Board** on the screen for selection of the media type. The Front Paper Feed Slot will rise, so lift the Vertical Paper Guides and store them toward the front.

Ink level detection

Ink level detection will be deactivated if you load ink tanks once emptied.

Ink level detection

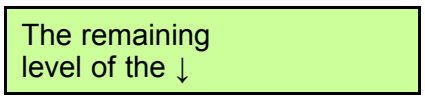
Ink Tanks (→P.641) specified for this printer feature an ink level detection function to prevent the ink from running out during printing, which prevents printer damage.
This function will not work correctly if you use refill ink tanks. As a result, printing stops. Thus, before using refill ink tanks, you must cancel the ink level detection.
Printing with the ink level detection canceled may lead to printer damage and printing problems. Canon Inc. is not liable for any damage that may occur as a result of refilling ink.

Caution

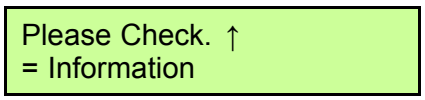
- After ink level detection has been disabled, this function cannot be reactivated for the currently loaded Ink Tank. To use ink level detection again, replace the Ink Tank with a new ink tank specified for use with the printer.
- Repeatedly removing and inserting an Ink Tank may damage the connection between the Ink Tank and the printer, which may cause ink leakage from the Ink Tank and damage the printer.

Disabling Ink Level Detection

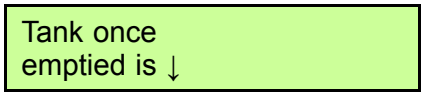
On the Display Screen, a message indicates that the ink level cannot be detected.



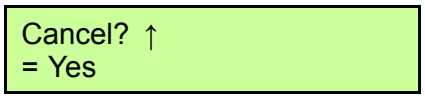
1. Press ▼ and check the message on the Display Screen.
2. Press ◄ or ► to select **Information**, and then press the **OK** button.



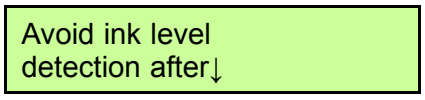
A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen about disabling ink level detection.



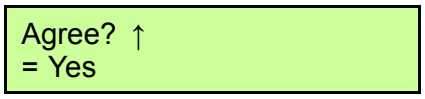
3. Press ▼ and check the message on the Display Screen.
4. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



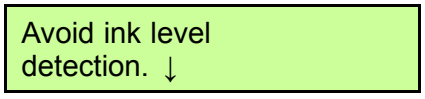
A confirmation message is shown on the Display Screen.



5. Press ▼ and check the message on the Display Screen.
6. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.



A confirmation message regarding updating ink information is shown on the Display Screen.



7. Press ▼ and check the message on the Display Screen.
8. Press ◄ or ► to select **Yes**, and then press the **OK** button.

Ink level detection is now disabled, and the printer goes online.

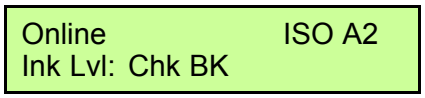
Error Message

Responding to Messages

Responding to Messages

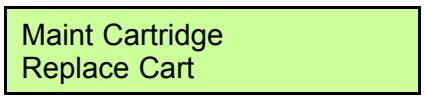
Warning messages

The printer status is indicated on the top line of the Display Screen, and the warning message on the bottom line of the Display Screen.
Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.731)



Error messages (if action can be taken)

Error messages are indicated in two pages of the Display Screen if the printer operation stops until you take some action. The pages are displayed alternately.
Check the message and take the appropriate action. (→P.731)



Error messages (if no action can be taken)

Error notification (“ERROR”) is displayed with the error code on the top line of the Display Screen, and a message is displayed on the bottom line of the Display Screen.

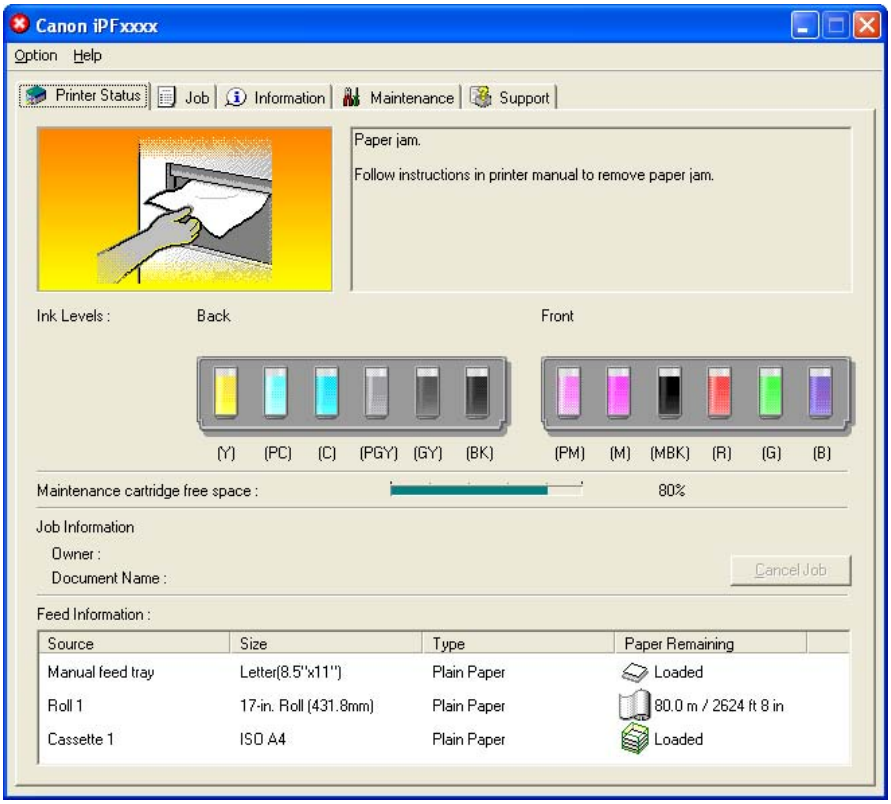
Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.
If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

Note

- Messages are also displayed in imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) or **imagePROGRAF Printmonitor** (Macintosh).



Error Messages

Warning messages

The printer status is indicated on the top line of the Display Screen, and the warning message on the bottom line of the Display Screen.
Although warning messages do not prevent printer operation, you should check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **GARO Wxxxx** (x represents a number) (→P.759)
- **Ink Lvl: Chk xx** (xx represents an ink color) (→P.750)
- **Check Printout** (→P.757)
- **Feed Limit..** (→P.747)
- **Consumables Low** (→P.761)
- **Repl Consumables** (→P.761)
- **MTCart Full Soon** (→P.758)
- **Paper Mismatch** (→P.735)
- **PaprSiz Mismatch** (→P.736)
- **PaprTyp Mismatch** (→P.735)

Error messages (if action can be taken)

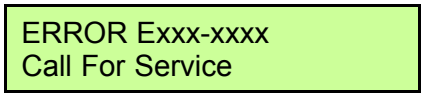
Check the message and take the appropriate action.

- **Need 10 in or Larger Roll** (→P.737)
- **Need A4/Letter Vert. or Larger** (→P.737)
- **Press OK and recalibrate** (→P.755)
- **No Ink Left** (→P.752)
- **Ink Tank / Check xx** (xx represents an ink color) (→P.750)
- **Ink Tank / Replace xx** (xx represents an ink color) (→P.752)
- **Top Cover / Please Close** (→P.759)
- **Online Key / and recalibrate** (→P.754)
- **Cassette Undetected** (→P.739)
- **Cassette Selectd / Press ↑ Key** (→P.739)
- **Load Papr in Cas / Press Online.** (→P.739)
- **Calibration multi-sensor err** (→P.733)
- **Media Check / Please Cancel** (→P.739)
- **Paper Feed Slot / SpcfdPapr NotFit** (→P.739)
- **Check Supported Paper.** (→P.741)
- **Sheets Loaded / Press ↓ To Eject** (→P.740)
- **Tray Selected** (→P.740)
- **Power On / Again** (→P.760)
- **Power On / Again / Multi-sensor Err** (→P.761)
- **Not Enough Ink** (→P.751)
- **Cannot update firmware** (→P.761)
- **Printhead / Please Check** (→P.757)
- **Printhead X / Replace Printhd** (x is Left or Right) (→P.757)
- **Printhead X / Check Nozzles** (x is Left or Right) (→P.756)
- **Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart** (→P.758)
- **Maint Cartridge / Load Cartridge** (→P.758)
- **Cutting Error** (→P.748)
- **Paper Mismatch / ReplcPap:Press↓** (→P.733)

- **Paper Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline** (→P.733)
- **Can't DetectPapr** (→P.747)
- **Paper Too Large / Please Check** (→P.734)
- **Paper Too Small / Please Check** (→P.734)
- **Paper Size / Please Check** (→P.737)
- **Papr Size Undetected** (→P.746)
- **PaprSiz Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline** (→P.734)
- **PaprTyp Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline** (→P.734)
- **Paper Type / Please Change** (→P.754)
- **Paper / Please Reload** (→P.746)
- **Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key** (→P.747)
- **Paper Loaded / Crooked** (→P.744)
- **Paper loaded askew.**(→P.733)
- **Remove paper** (→P.742)
- **Paper Askew / Please Reload** (→P.745)
- **Roll Selected / Load Roll** (→P.749)
- **Roll Paper / Please Replace** (→P.738)
- **Roll Paper Chk / Check Width/Spcr** (→P.743)
- **Roll P Unit / Please Check** (→P.748)

Error messages (if no action can be taken)

Error notification ("ERROR") is displayed with the error code on the top line of the Display Screen, and a message is displayed on the bottom line of the Display Screen.



Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power.
If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.

Other Messages

These messages do not prevent printer operation. Check the information on the Display Screen and take action as necessary. Messages requiring special attention are as follows:

- **Excessv Temp/Hu / Press OK/Stop** (→P.755)
- **The remaining level of the following ink cannot be correctly detected.** (→P.753)

Calibration multi-sensor err

Cause	Corrective Action
The performance of a sensor inside the printer may be impaired.	Press the **OK** button and cancel calibration. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Paper loaded askew.

Cause	Corrective Action
A sheet has been loaded askew in the Top Paper Feed Slot .	Remove the sheet and reload it straight.

Paper Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type and size as specified in the printer driver do not match the type and size specified on the printer.	1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Try printing again after adjusting the paper size and type as specified in the printer driver and the size and type specified on the printer so that they match.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

Paper Mismatch / ReplcPap:Press↓

Cause	Corrective Action
When using multiple sheets to print test patterns for printer adjustment, you are using sheets of different sizes or types of paper.	Press the ▼ button to eject the sheet and load a sheet of the same size and type as the first sheet.

Paper Too Large / Please Check

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper exceeds the maximum size supported by the printer.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error message. For details on supported paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

Paper Too Small / Please Check

Cause	Corrective Action
The loaded paper is smaller than the minimum size supported by the printer.	Press the **Online** button to clear the error message. For details on supported paper sizes, see “Paper Sizes”. (→P.112)

PaprSiz Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline

Cause	Corrective Action
The sizes of paper specified in the printer driver and on the printer do not match when **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected in the printer driver.	1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Try printing again after adjusting the paper size as specified in the printer driver and the size specified on the printer so that they match.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

PaprTyp Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Try printing again after adjusting the paper type as specified in the printer driver and the type specified on the printer so that they match.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

Messages regarding paper

Paper Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The type and size of paper as specified on the printer do not match the type and size specified in the printer driver.	Adjust both settings so that they match and try printing again.

PaprTyp Mismatch

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper type as specified on the printer does not match the type specified in the printer driver.	Make sure the same type of paper is specified on the printer as in the printer driver. (→P.82) (→P.86) (→P.80)
	Follow these steps to ensure the paper type matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Either change the type of paper specified in the printer driver settings or replace the loaded paper and change the paper type setting on the printer.
	Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

*Printing will continue if you have set **Detect Mismatch** to **Warning** or **None**.

PaprSiz Mismatch

Cause		Corrective Action
The paper size as specified on the printer does not match the size specified in the printer driver.	If you have selected **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver settings and **Warning** in **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu:	Printing resumes after the warning message is displayed. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality. Try printing again after adjusting the paper size as specified in the printer driver and the size specified on the printer so that they match.
	If you have selected **Fit Roll Paper Width** in the printer driver settings and **Pause** in **Detect Mismatch** in the printer menu:	Follow the steps below to ensure the paper size matches on the printer and in the printer driver. 1. Load paper of the same size as you have specified in the printer driver. 2. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 3. Change the paper size in the printer driver and try printing again.
		Press the **Online** button to resume printing. However, this may cause a paper jam or printing problem.

Paper Size / Please Check

Paper Too Small / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too small for the printer has been loaded.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.112)
Paper has been loaded that is too small to print the test pattern for printhead adjustment or nozzle checking.	Load a sheet of unused paper Letter-sized or larger. (→P.80) (→P.82)

Paper Too Large / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper that is too large for the printer has been loaded.	Load paper of the correct size. (→P.112)

Need A4/Letter Vert. or Larger

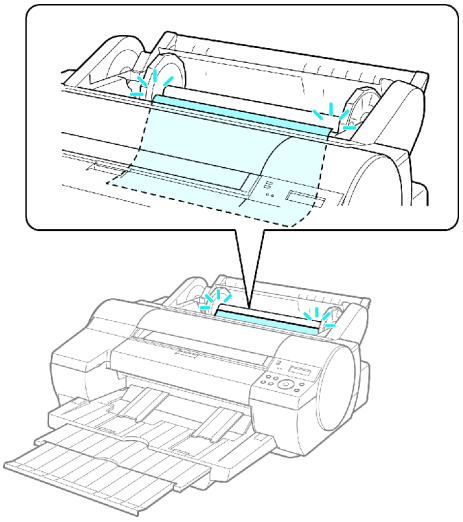
Cause	Corrective Action
Paper too small for the printer has been loaded.	Replace the paper with A4/Letter (vertical) or larger. (→P.112)

Need 10 in or Larger Roll

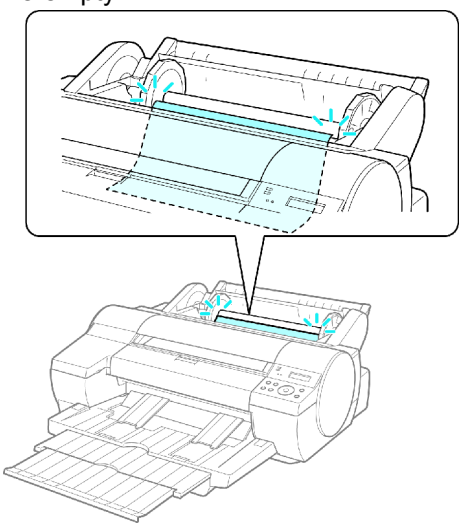
Cause	Corrective Action
Paper too small for the printer has been loaded.	Load a roll 10 inches wide or larger. (→P.82)

Roll Paper / Please Replace

Paper Level Low / Replace Paper

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job longer than the amount of roll paper left. 	Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing, then follow these steps to replace the roll. 1. Remove the roll. (→P.122) (→P.117) 2. Load a roll with enough paper left. (→P.115) (→P.118) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.124) 4. Specify the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.125)
	Press the **Online** button to continue with printing. However, the roll paper may run out during the print job and you may not be able to print all of the document.

Paper Not Loaded / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll is empty. 	Follow the steps below to replace the used roll with a new roll of the same type and size. 1. If the last paper on the roll has not been ejected, follow the steps below. **1.** Press the ▲ button. **2.** Remove the used roll. (→P.138) **3.** Press the ▼ button. 2. Load a new roll. (→P.115) (→P.118) 3. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.124) 4. Select the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll or you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.125)

Load Papr in Cas / Press Online.

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for the Cassette was sent when no sheets are loaded there.	Load paper of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver in the Cassette . (→P.80)
	Change the printer driver settings to match the paper feed slot specified for the sheet already loaded, and then try printing again.
	Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Cassette Selectd / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
After printing on a roll, the printer has received a print job that specifies the cassette.	1. Press the ▲ button and release the paper retainer. 2. After rewinding the roll by hand, press the ▼ button to print from the cassette.

Cassette Undetected

Cause	Corrective Action
The Cassette is not fully inserted.	Remove the Cassette , reinsert the Cassette firmly, and press the **Online** button.

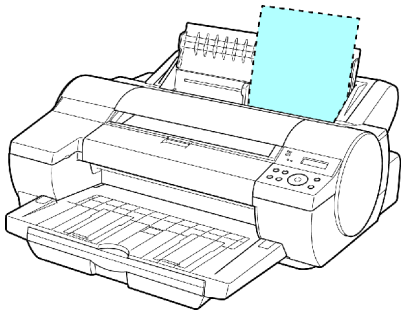
Media Check / Please Cancel

Cause	Corrective Action
You have attempted to print from the Cassette using a type of paper that cannot be printed from the Cassette .	Switch to a type of paper that is compatible with the Cassette and try printing again.
	Print from the tray.

Paper Feed Slot / SpcfdPapr NotFit

Cause	Corrective Action
Sheets supplied from the tray are being fed through a different paper feed slot than specified for the paper selected in the printer driver.	After pressing the ▼ button to eject the sheet being fed, insert the sheet into the correct paper feed slot for the paper specified in the printer driver. (→P.159)

Sheets Loaded / Press ↓ To Eject

Cause	Corrective Action
Sheets are loaded in the tray. 	1. Press ▼ to eject the sheet. 2. Load the indicated paper. (→P.118) (→P.156)

Tray Selected

Cause	Corrective Action
A print job for manually printing on sheets was sent when a roll is loaded.	Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing.
	Follow these steps to reload sheets. 1. Press the **OK** button. 2. Press ▲ . 3. Remove the roll. 4. Press ▼ . 5. Load sheets of the type and size you have specified in the printer driver. (→P.86)
	Change the printer driver settings to match the roll already loaded, and then try printing again.

Check Supported Paper.

Cause	Corrective Action
The print job received specifies a type or width of paper that is not compatible with borderless printing.	Follow the steps below to change the settings of the print job to enable borderless printing. 1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing. 2. Make sure the dedicated printer driver for your printer is selected and try printing again. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide. (→P.107) (→P.325) (→P.327) (→P.307)
	Press the **Online** button to continue with printing. However, note that this error may cause paper jams and affect the printing quality.

Remove paper

Cannot Feed / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
Roll paper is not fed on the Platen , even if you try to feed it.	Remove any jammed roll paper in the Paper Feed Slot and reload the roll.
The printer has received a print job for a type of paper that cannot be supplied from the paper source.	Check printer settings for the paper type and source.
	Change the paper type in the printer driver and try printing again.
The paper in the Cassette is not loaded correctly.	Adjust the Width Guide and Length Guide to match the paper size. (→P.156)
The Cassette is not inserted correctly.	Insert the Cassette firmly, all the way into the printer. (→P.156)
Unsupported paper is loaded in the Cassette .	Load paper that can be used in the Cassette . Refer to the Media Guide for details on supported paper. (→P.107)
Too much paper is loaded in the Cassette . The paper height exceeds the maximum capacity.	Load the paper making sure not to exceed the Maximum Capacity Line of the Cassette . For details on the paper capacity, see Specifications (→P.72) or the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
The paper is wrinkled or warped in the Cassette .	Remove the paper, straighten it, and reload it.

Roll Paper Chk / Check Width/Spcr

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper is loaded askew.	Insert the paper and Spacer for Borderless Printing firmly all the way into the printer.
	When using A2 rolls, attach the Spacer for Borderless Printing before loading the roll. (→P.144)
	When using sizes other than A2, remove the Spacer for Borderless Printing before loading the roll. (→P.144)
The paper loaded is not compatible with borderless printing.	Load paper compatible with borderless printing and try printing again. Paper you can use for borderless printing is restricted to particular types of paper and rolls of particular widths. For information on types of paper compatible with borderless printing, refer to the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)
Because paper expands or contracts depending on the environment of use, it may become narrower or wider than the supported width for borderless printing.	Use each type of paper only where the recommended environmental conditions are met. For details on environmental conditions for various paper, see the Paper Reference Guide . (→P.107)

Paper Loaded / Crooked

Cause	Corrective Action
The roll has been loaded askew.	Follow these steps to reload the roll. 1. Press the **Online** button to clear the error message. 2. Insert the edge of the roll straight into the Paper Feed Slot.
Paper has been loaded in the Cassette askew.	Follow the steps below to reload the paper. 1. After pressing the ▲ button to clear the error message, remove any jammed paper from the cassette. (→P.173) 2. Load paper in the Cassette . (→P.156)
Paper has been loaded in the tray askew.	Follow the steps below to reload the paper. 1. After pressing the ▲ button to clear the error message, remove any jammed paper from the tray. (→P.179) 2. Load sheets in the tray. (→P.159)

Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.**. setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams as paper may be askew when it is printed. Also, the Platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

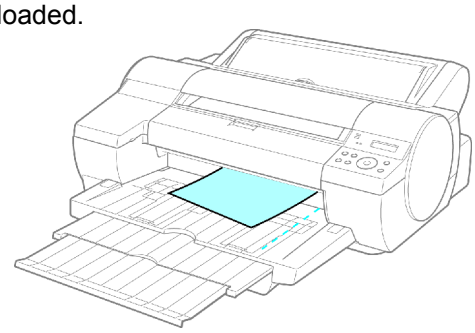
Paper Askew / Please Reload

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded in the Cassette askew.	Follow these steps to reload the paper. 1. Press the ▲ button. 2. Remove the sheet. 3. Press the ▼ button. 4. Load paper in the Cassette . (→P.156)
Paper has been manually loaded askew.	Follow these steps to reload the paper. 1. Press the ▲ button. 2. Remove the sheet. 3. Press the ▼ button. 4. Load a sheet manually. (→P.159)

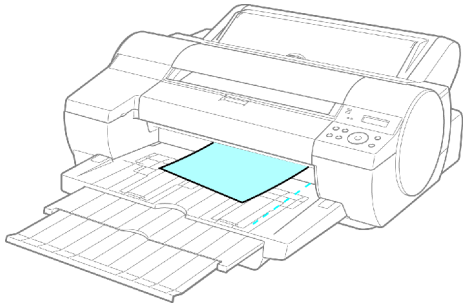
Note

- To disable this message (if it is displayed repeatedly despite reloading paper, for example), choose **Off** or **Loose** in the **Skew Check Lv.** setting of the printer menu. However, this may cause jams if paper is crooked when printed. Also, the platen may become soiled, which may soil the back of the next document when it is printed.

Paper / Please Reload

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Reload paper straight, in the correct position. (→P.156) (→P.118) (→P.159)

Papr Size Undetected

Cause	Corrective Action
Paper has been loaded askew, or warped paper has been loaded. 	Reload paper straight, in the correct position. (→P.156) (→P.118) (→P.159)

Can’t DetectPapr

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper has come out of the printer.	Remove the paper that has come out of the printer, press the **Online** button, and reload the paper. (→P.82) (→P.86)
A paper jam occurred in the printer.	Remove the jammed paper, press the **Online** button, and reload paper. (→P.138) (→P.179) (→P.173)
The roll cannot be correctly detected.	Rewind the roll manually until the paper caught in the rollers is completely out of the rollers. Press the **Online** button and reload the roll.

Feed Limit..

Cause	Corrective Action
You are pressing the ▲ button on the Control Panel and trying to rewind the roll completely.	Release ▲ .

Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key

Cause	Corrective Action
A paper jam occurred in the printer during printing.	Press the **Stop/Eject** button and remove the jammed paper. (→P.138) (→P.179)

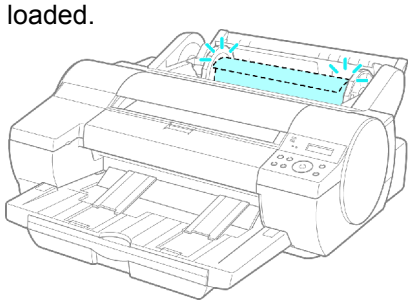
Cutting Error

Cause	Corrective Action
There are sheets left on the Output Tray .	Remove the paper.
There is a foreign object by the Output Tray , obstructing the Cutter Unit .	Remove the foreign object.
You are not using the printer under the recommended environmental conditions for the paper.	Use the printer only where the recommended environmental conditions for the paper are met. Note that various environmental conditions are recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see “Types of Paper”. (→P.107)
You are using paper that is not compatible with automatic cutting.	Cut the roll manually. (→P.130)
The Cutter Unit stops in the middle of cutting.	Move the Cutter Unit to the left, and then remove the roll paper. If the roll cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit , cut the roll manually. (→P.130)
In other cases, the Cutter Unit may be damaged.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Roll P Unit / Please Check

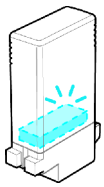
Cause	Corrective Action
The printer has received a print job that specifies rolls, but the Roll Feed Unit is not installed.	Change the paper source in the printer driver to a source other than roll, and then try printing again.
	Install the Roll Feed Unit and resend the print job.

Roll Selected / Load Roll

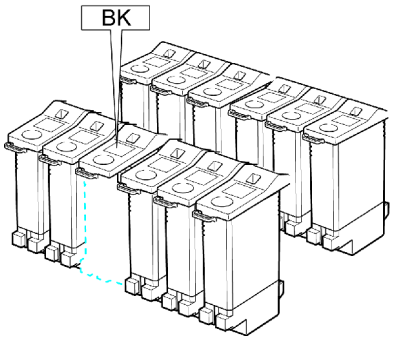
Cause	Corrective Action
No roll is loaded. 	Follow these steps to load the roll. 1. Load the roll. (→P.115) (→P.118) 2. If no barcode was printed on the roll, specify the paper type. (→P.124) 3. Specify the paper length, unless a barcode has been printed on the roll and you have deactivated the automatic detection function of the remaining roll paper. (→P.125)
	Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for a second or more to cancel printing.

Messages regarding ink

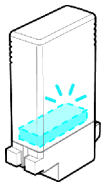
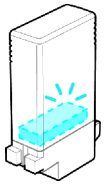
Ink Lvl: Chk xx (xx represents an ink color)

Cause	Corrective Action
Not much ink is left. 	Prepare a new Ink Tank . We recommend replacing the Ink Tank with a new Ink Tank at this point if you plan to print large-format or high-quantity jobs.

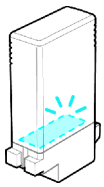
Ink Tank / Check xx (xx represents an ink color)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no Ink Tank of the indicated color in the printer. 	Load or reload the Ink Tank . (→P.642)
There is a problem with the Ink Tank .	Replace it with a new Ink Tank . (→P.642)

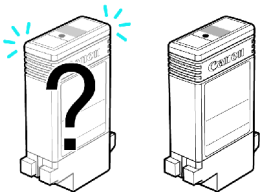
Not Enough Ink

Cause	Corrective Action
The ink level is low, so you cannot clean the Printhead . 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank . (→P.642)
The ink level is low, so there may not be enough ink to finish printing. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank that is low with a new Ink Tank . (→P.642) You can print until the ink runs out by pressing the **Online** button. However, if the ink runs out during printing, the following situation will occur depending on the position of the leading edge when it passes through the printer. 1. **No Ink Left** is displayed and printing stops. Press the **Stop/Eject** button to cancel printing, or open the Ink Tank Cover , replace the ink tank that is low with a new one, and continue printing. However, note that because printing is paused, colors may be slightly different. (→P.642) 2. **No Ink Left / Canceling page..** is displayed and printing stops. After the paper is ejected, open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the ink tank that is low with a new one. (→P.642)

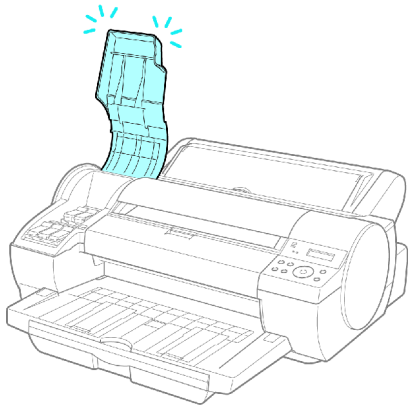
No Ink Left

Cause	Corrective Action
There is no ink left. 	Open the Ink Tank Cover and replace the Ink Tank for which the Ink Lamp is flashing. (→P.642)

Ink Tank / Replace xx (xx represents an ink color)

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank in the printer is incompatible or empty. 	Load or reload the Ink Tank . (→P.642)
There is a problem with the Ink Tank .	Replace it with a new Ink Tank . (→P.642)

Ink Tank Cover / Close Please

Cause	Corrective Action
The Ink Tank Cover is open. 	Close the Ink Tank Cover .

The remaining level of the following ink cannot be correctly detected.

Cause	Corrective Action
Ink level detection cannot work correctly if you use refill ink tanks.	The refill ink tank can no longer be used. See the section “Ink level detection” in “Disabling Ink Level Detection” and take the appropriate action. (→P.727)

Mist Full Soon

Cause	Corrective Action
The printer cannot process any more ink mist.	There is a possibility that printing may stop in the middle of large-format or borderless printing jobs. Contact the Canon dealer for such types of printing. You can continue printing.

Messages regarding printing or adjusment

Paper Type / Please Change

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead and feed amount cannot be adjusted when highly transparent film is loaded.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.610)
	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.619)

Online Key / and recalibrate

Band Adj Error / Please Readjust

Cause	Corrective Action
The feed amount cannot be adjusted; highly transparent film is loaded.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.619)

Printhd Adj Err / Please Readjust

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.651) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.652)
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.610)

Excessv Temp/Hu / Press OK/Stop

Cause	Corrective Action
The temperature or humidity where the printer is installed is out of the acceptable range for printer operation.	Press the **Stop/Eject** button and stop printing. Use the printer in an environment that meets the requirements for the operating environment. Note that various environmental conditions are also recommended for various types of paper. For details on the recommended environmental conditions for paper, see Paper Reference Guide ." (→P.107)
	Press the **OK** button and complete color calibration. However, calibration may not be completed successfully.

Press OK and recalibrate

Cause	Corrective Action
The paper for printing a test pattern for adjustment is soiled. Otherwise, colored paper is loaded.	Load unused paper compatible with color calibration. (→P.107)
The printed test pattern is faint.	Take steps to remedy the faint printing. (→P.697)
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.

Messages regarding printheads

Online Key / and recalibrate

Band Adj Error / Please Readjust

Cause	Corrective Action
The feed amount cannot be adjusted; highly transparent film is loaded.	Adjust the feed amount manually. (→P.619)

Printhd Adj Err / Please Readjust

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are clogged.	Follow the steps below to check the nozzles. 1. Print a test pattern to check the nozzles. (→P.651) 2. Clean the Printhead if the nozzles are clogged. (→P.652)
The Printhead cannot be aligned; highly transparent film is loaded.	We recommend using a type of paper that you often use, other than film, for Printhead adjustment. (→P.610)

Printhead x / Check Nozzles (x is Left or Right)

Cause	Corrective Action
The printhead nozzles may be clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead. If “Left Printhead” is displayed, clean the Printhead L ; if “Right Printhead” is displayed, clean the Printhead R . (→P.652)
	Press the **Online** button to continue with printing. However, note that this error may affect the printing quality. To cancel printing, press the **Stop/Eject** button.

Printhead / Please Check

Cause	Corrective Action
The left Printhead is installed in the right position and vice versa.	Turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring the power. If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Check Printout

Cause	Corrective Action
The Printhead nozzles are becoming clogged.	If printing is faint, clean the Printhead . (→P.652)

Printhead x / Replace Printhd (x is Left or Right)

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible Printhead has been installed.	Install a Printhead specified for use with the printer. If “Left Printhead” is displayed, install the Printhead L ; if “Right Printhead” is displayed, install the Printhead R . (→P.653)
There is a problem with the Printhead .	Open the Top Cover . If the Carriage is visible, replace the Printhead with a new one. If “Left Printhead” is displayed, replace the Printhead L ; if “Right Printhead” is displayed, replace the Printhead R . (→P.653)
	If, after opening the Top Cover , you see that the Carriage is not visible, follow the steps below. 1. Close the Top Cover and press the **Online** button. 2. If “Left Printhead” is displayed, install the Printhead L ; if “Right Printhead” is displayed, install the Printhead R . (→P.653)

Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge

Maint Cartridge / Load Cartridge

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is not installed.	Install the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.661)

MTCart Full Soon

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is almost full.	You can continue printing. However, prepare a new Maintenance Cartridge .

Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart

Maint Cart Error / Replace Cart

Cause	Corrective Action
An incompatible or used Maintenance Cartridge has been installed.	Install a Maintenance Cartridge specified for use with the printer. (→P.661)

Maint Cart Full / Replace Cart

Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.661)

Maint Cart Full / Replace Cart

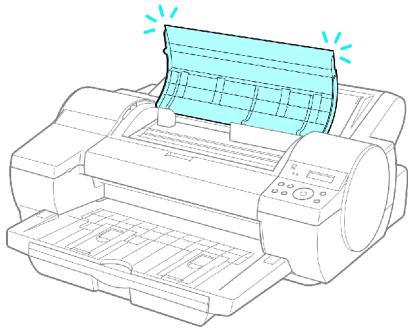
Cause	Corrective Action
The Maintenance Cartridge is full.	After confirming that the printer has stopped operating, replace the Maintenance Cartridge . (→P.661)

Other Messages

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number)

Cause	Corrective Action
There is a problem with the print job.	Try printing again, using the correct printer driver.
	It is also possible to continue printing in this state. However, you may not be able to obtain the desired printing results.

Top Cover / Please Close

Cause	Corrective Action
The Top Cover is open. 	Close the Top Cover .

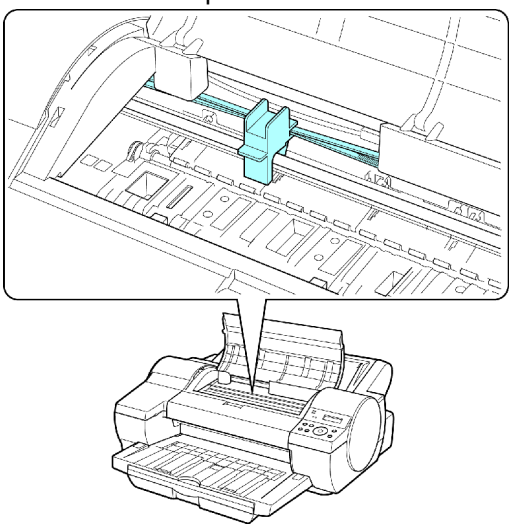
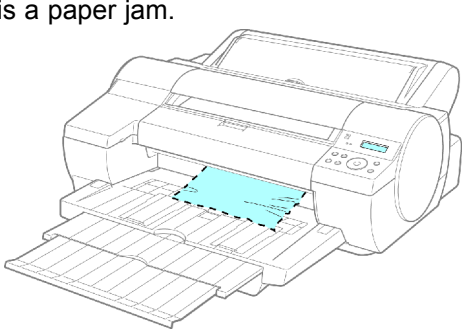
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)

In the following situations, turn off the printer and wait at least three seconds before restoring power.
If the message is still displayed, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

- Error notification (“ERROR”) is displayed with the error code on the top line of the Display Screen and a message on the bottom of the Display Screen.

ERROR Exxx-xxxx
Call For Service

Power On / Again

Cause	Corrective Action
Fastening tape or the Belt Stopper has not been removed inside the Top Cover . 	Follow the steps below, referring to the Quick Start Guide as needed. 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Open the Top Cover and remove the tape or Belt Stopper . 3. Turn the printer on.
There is a paper jam. 	Follow these steps. 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Remove the jammed paper. (→P.173) (→P.138) (→P.179) 3. Turn the printer on. 4. Reload the paper. (→P.80) (→P.82) (→P.86)
There is a problem with the printer.	Turn off the printer and wait for three seconds or more before restoring the power.
	If the message is still displayed after this, write down the error code and message, turn off the printer, and contact the Canon dealer for assistance.

Consumables Low

Cause	Corrective Action
It is almost time to replace consumables for which service is required.	If **Repl Consumables** is displayed, you can continue to use the printer for some time. Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Repl Consumables

Cause	Corrective Action
It is past the recommended time to replace consumables for which service is required.	Contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Power On / Again / Multi-sensor Err

Cause	Corrective Action
Direct sunlight or strong lighting may be shining on the printer and causing the sensor to malfunction.	Take steps to ensure the printer is not used when exposed to direct sunlight or strong lighting.

Cannot update firmware

Cause	Corrective Action
You have uploaded firmware for a different model.	Check the firmware version. (→P.685)
	If the message is displayed again, contact your Canon dealer for assistance.

Index

A

A message to check the Maintenance Cartridge is not cleared after you replace the Maintenance Cartridge....724
About This User Manual....1
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS 9)....559
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Mac OS X)....535
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from Applications (Windows)....497, 639
Accessing the Printer Driver Dialog Box from the Operating System Menu (Windows)....149, 499
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)....552
Additional Settings Pane (Mac OS X)....529
Adjusting Color on the Trailing Edge of Sheets....626
Adjusting the Color in the Printer Driver....214
- Color Adjustment....214
- Color Mode....214
- Gray Tone Adjustment....217
- Matching....215

Adjusting the feed amount....615
Adjusting the Feed Amount Automatically....615
- Adjusting the feed amount during printing....618

Adjusting the Feed Amount Manually....619
- Adjusting the feed amount during printing....621

Adjusting the Measurement Scale for Better Accuracy....624
Adjusting the Printhead....610
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Automatically....610
Adjusting the Printhead Alignment Manually....612
Adjusting the Printhead Height....614
Adjusting the Vacuum Strength....623
An error message is shown on the Display Screen....696
Attaching Accessories to the Roll Holder....144
- Attaching the Spacer for Borderless Printing....145
- Mounting the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment....144
- Removing the 3-Inch Paper Core Attachment....144
- Removing the Spacer for Borderless Printing....145

B

Back....10
Banding in different colors occurs....700
Basic Environmental Performance....77
- Packaging materials....77
- Printer....77

Basic Printing Workflow....80
Borderless Printing....325
Borderless Printing at Actual Size....307, 329
- Borderless Printing....307, 329
- Borderless Printing Method....307, 329
- Print Image with Actual Size....308, 330

Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS 9)....314, 336
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Mac OS X)....311, 333
Borderless Printing at Actual Size (Windows)....309, 331
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width....327
- Borderless Printing....327
- Borderless Printing Method....327
- Scale to fit Roll Paper Width....328

Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9)....345
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X)....342
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows)....340
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9)....354
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X)....351
Borderless Printing by Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows)....349
Borderless Printing on Paper of Equivalent Size....325
- Borderless Printing....325
- Borderless Printing Method....325
- Fit Media Size....326

By selecting color tones on Charts before printing (Windows)....632

C

Calibration multi-sensor err....733
Canceling print jobs....100
Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS 9....104
- Canceling background print jobs....104
- Canceling foreground print jobs....105

Canceling Print Jobs from Mac OS X....102

Canceling Print Jobs from the Control Panel 100
Canceling Print Jobs from Windows.....101
Cannot connect the printer to the network 690
Cannot load sheets in the tray.....726
Cannot print over a NetWare network 695
Cannot print over a network 690
Cannot print over a TCP/IP network.....693
Cannot print over AppleTalk or Bonjour networks ..694
Cannot update firmware 761
Can't DetectPapr 747
Carriage.....14
Cassette 19
Cassette Selectd / Press ↑ Key 739
Cassette Undetected.....739
Centering originals 405
Check Printout.....757
Check Supported Paper. 741
Checking for Nozzle Clogging 651
Checking Ink Tank Levels.....648
Checking the Layout Before Printing.....519
Preview (Macintosh).....519
Checking the Layout Before Printing (Mac OS X) ..520
Checking the Maintenance Cartridge Capacity 667
Checking the Print Quality.....650
Choosing a Paper for Printing 202
If the paper type is not listed for selection.....202
Media type.....202
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS 9) 225
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Mac OS X).....222
Choosing the Document Type and Printing Conditions (Windows) 220
Cleaning Inside the Top Cover 670
Cleaning Spurs Used in Paper Feeding 675
Cleaning the Paper Retainer 673
Cleaning the Pick Up Roller 674
Cleaning the Printer.....669
Cleaning the Printer Exterior 669
Cleaning the Printhead.....652, 678
Cleaning the Printhead.....652, 678
Clearing jammed paper 708
Clearing Jammed Paper (Paper Feed Slot) ...142, 712
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Cassette ...173, 717
If Can't DetectPapr / Remove Paper is displayed 173, 717
If Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key is displayed...176, 720
Clearing Jammed Paper from the Tray ..179, 197, 713
Clearing Jammed Roll Paper 138, 708
Color adjustment 628
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS 9) 561
Color Adjustment pane: color 561
Matching pane.....563
Object Adjustment dialog box.....562
Color Settings Pane: Color (Mac OS X) 536
Color Adjustment pane: color 536
Matching pane.....537
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 564
Color Adjustment pane: monochrome 564
Object Adjustment dialog box.....565
Color Settings Pane: Monochrome (Mac OS X).....538
Color Adjustment pane: monochrome 538
Color Settings Sheet: Color (Windows).....501
Color Adjustment : color 501
Light Source Check Tool 506
Matching sheet: Ambient Light Matching Mode (Kyuanos).....505
Matching sheet: Driver Matching Mode.....503
Matching sheet: ICC Matching Mode, Driver ICM Mode, and Host ICM Mode 504
Object Adjustment dialog box.....502
Color Settings Sheet: Monochrome (Windows) 507
Color Adjustment : monochrome 507
Object Adjustment dialog box.....508
Colors in printed images are uneven.....701
Configuring NetWare Network Settings.....592
Configuring the Communication Mode Manually....691
Configuring the Destination for AppleTalk Network (Macintosh).....600
Activating AppleTalk on the printer 600
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9).....601
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 602
Configuring the Destination for Bonjour Network (Macintosh).....608
Configuring the Destination for TCP/IP Network (Macintosh).....604
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS 9).....604
Configuring the Destination (Mac OS X) 606
Configuring the IP Address on the Printer 571
Configuring the IP Address Using ARP and PING Commands 577
Configuring the IP Address Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 495, 597
Configuring the IP Address Using the Printer Control Panel 575
Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Macintosh).....599

Configuring the Printer Driver Destination (Windows) 593
Configuring the Printer's AppleTalk Network Settings 598
Configuring the Printer's NetWare Network Settings 582
Configuring the Printer's TCP/IP Network Settings 573
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS 9) 542
Checking a preview of the settings....542
Checking a print preview....543
Confirming Print Settings (Mac OS X)....517
Checking a preview of the settings....517
Checking a print preview....518
Confirming Print Settings (Windows)....467
Checking a preview of the settings....467
Checking a print preview....468
Confirming the Print Image Before Printing....509
Conserving roll paper 422
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins 423
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)....423
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS 9) 429
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Mac OS X)....426
Conserving Roll Paper by Printing Originals Without Top and Bottom Margins (Windows) 424
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees....422
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS 9) 436
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Mac OS X) 433
Conserving Roll Paper by Rotating Originals 90 Degrees (Windows)....431
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)....422
Consumables Low....761
Control Panel....16, 20
Correcting Print Misalignment 610
Cutting Error 748
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing....447
Automatic Cutting....447
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS 9) 453
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Mac OS X)....451
Cutting Roll Paper After Printing (Windows)....450
Cutting the Leading Edge of Roll Paper Automatically....128

D

Depression on the leading edge is left 725
Desktop Stacker 71, 200
Detection of the Remaining Roll Paper 127
Device Settings Pane (Mac OS 9)....551
Device Settings Sheet (Windows) 486
Digital Photo Front-Access....496
Documents are printed crooked 704
Documents are printed in monochrome 702

E

Email Notification When Printing is Finished or Errors Occur 581
Enhanced Printing Options....202
ERROR Exxx-xxxx (x represents a letter or number)....759
Error Message....729
Error Messages....731
Error messages (if action can be taken)....731
Error messages (if no action can be taken)....732
Other Messages....732
Warning messages....731
Excessv Temp/Hu / Press OK/Stop....755

F

Favorites Sheet (Windows) 483
Feed Limit....747
Feeding Paper from the Roll Feed Unit....146
Feeding Roll Paper Manually 126
Fine Scratches Appear on Glossy Paper from the Cassette 704
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 234
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Mac OS X)....231
Fine-Tuning Colors of Photos and Images (Windows) 228
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS 9)....242
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Mac OS X) 239
Fine-Tuning Monochrome Settings When Printing Photos (Windows) 237
Finishing Pane (Mac OS 9) 549
Frequently Asked Questions 686
Front 8

G

GARO Wxxxx (x represents a number) 759
Giving Priority to Particular Graphic Elements and Colors for Printing 203
- Advanced Settings 203
- Color Settings 205
- Enhancing Printing Quality 206
- Print Priority 203
- Print Quality 204

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS 9) 550
- Gray Adjustment 550

Gray Adjustment Pane (Mac OS X) 528
- Gray Adjustment 528

Gray Adjustment Sheet (Windows) 482
- Gray Adjustment 482

H

Handling Paper 106
Handling rolls 114
Handling sheets 154
Handling sheets for paper feed slots 182
How to use this manual 1
HTML Version of the Manual for Printing 4

I

IEEE 1394 Expansion Board 71
If the Printer makes a strange sound 723
Image Edges are Blurred or White Banding Occurs 704
imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 493
imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 534, 558
imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 492
Immediately After Borderless Printing, the Trailing Edge Margin is Soiled During Regular Printing 705
Improving the Print Quality 650
Initializing the Network Settings 572
Ink level detection 727
- Disabling Ink Level Detection 728
- Ink level detection 727

Ink Lvl: Chk xx (xx represents an ink color) 750
Ink Tank 641
Ink Tank / Check xx (xx represents an ink color) 750
Ink Tank / Replace xx (xx represents an ink color) 752
Ink Tank Cover (Inside) 15
Ink Tank Cover / Close Please 753
Ink Tanks 641
Installation problems 706
Installing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility 494, 596
Installing the Roll Feed Unit 148
Introduction 1

L

Layout Sheet (Windows) 480
Line thickness is not uniform (Windows) 705
Lines are misaligned 702
Load Papr in Cas / Press Online. 739
Loading and Printing on Rolls 82
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Cassette 80
Loading and Printing on Sheets in the Paper Feed Slot 86
Loading Rolls in the Roll Feed Unit 118
Loading Rolls on the Roll Paper Holder 115
Loading Sheets in the Cassette 156
Loading Sheets Manually 159, 183
- Loading heavyweight paper in the Front Paper Feed Slot 162, 186
- Loading paper in the Top Paper Feed Slot 159, 183

M

Mac OS 9 541
Mac OS X 516
Main Menu Operations 30
- Entering Numbers in Main Menu Settings 31
- Selecting Menu Items 30
- Selecting Submenu Items 31

Main Menu Settings 47
- Adjust Printer 51
- Information 57
- Interface Setup 53
- Maintenance 54
- Med.Detail Set. 49
- Paper Settings 48
- System Setup 55

Main Menu Settings (During Printing) 58
- Information 59

Main Pane (Mac OS 9) 545
- Configuration using Advanced Settings 546
- Configuration using Easy Settings 545

Main Pane (Mac OS X) 523
- Configuration using Advanced Settings 524
- Configuration using Easy Settings 523

Main Sheet (Windows) 474
Configuration using Advanced Settings....476
Configuration using Easy Settings 474
Maint Cartridge / Load Cartridge 758
Maint Cartridge / Replace Cart....758
Maint Cart Error / Replace Cart....758
Maint Cart Full / Replace Cart....758
Maintenance....610
Maintenance Cartridge 661
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation....446
Mirror....446
Orientation....446
Rotate 180 degrees....446
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS 9) 459
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Mac OS X) 457
Making the Original Orientation Match the Paper Orientation (Windows)....455
Media Check / Please Cancel 739
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 153, 566
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS X)....152, 539
Media Detailed Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 151, 510
Media Size Options Dialog Box (Windows)....511
Menu Structure....32
Main Menu....32
Main menu during printing....46
Submenus 45
Messages regarding ink 750
Messages regarding paper....735
Messages regarding printheads 756
Messages regarding printing or adjusment 754
Messages regarding the maintenance cartridge ...758
Mist Full Soon....753
MTCart Full Soon 758

N

Need 10 in or Larger Roll 737
Need A4/Letter Vert. or Larger 737
Network Environment 569
Network environment 570
System requirements 569
Network Setting 569
Network Setting (Macintosh) 598
Network Setting (Windows) 582
No Ink Left 752
Not Enough Ink....751

O

Online Key / and recalibrate 754, 756
Band Adj Error / Please Readjust....754, 756
Printhd Adj Err / Please Readjust....754, 756
Optional accessories 69
Other Maintenance....679
Other Messages 759
Other problems....724
Other useful settings 445
Output Stacker 200

P

Page Setup Pane (Mac OS 9)....547
Page Setup Pane (Mac OS X) 525
Page Setup Sheet (Windows) 478
Paper....106
Paper Size....106
Paper Type 106
Paper / Please Reload 746
Paper Askew / Please Reload 745
Paper cannot be cut 725
Paper Feed Slot / SpcfdPapr NotFit....739
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Mac OS X)....522
Paper Information on Printer Dialog Box (Windows) 470
Paper is not cut straight....724
Paper Jam / Press ↑ Key....747
Paper Loaded / Crooked 744
Paper loaded askew. 733
Paper Mismatch 735
Paper Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline 733
Paper Mismatch / ReplcPap:Press↓....733
Paper rubs against the Printhead....698
Paper Size / Please Check....737
Paper Too Large / Press ↑ Key....737
Paper Too Small / Press ↑ Key....737
Paper Sizes....112
Roll 113
Sheets 112
Paper Too Large / Please Check....734
Paper Too Small / Please Check....734
Paper Type / Please Change....754
Papr Size Undetected 746

PaprSiz Mismatch 736
PaprSiz Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline 734
PaprTyp Mismatch.....735
PaprTyp Mismatch / Prnt:PressOnline 734
Power On / Again 760
Power On / Again / Multi-sensor Err 761
Preparing to Transfer the Printer 679
Press OK and recalibrate 755
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS 9).....544
Previewing Images Before Printing (Mac OS X) 521
Previewing Images Before Printing (Windows) 469
Print Area.....78
Rolls 79
Sheets 78
Print quality and color settings 202
Printed colors are inaccurate.....703
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS 9).....541
Printer Driver Settings (Mac OS X) 516
Printer Driver Settings (Windows) 465
Printer Menu Operations 29
Printer Modes 23
Menu mode, and state of the Control Panel.....26
Mode transition.....24
Modes.....23
Offline, and state of the Control Panel 25
Online, and state of the Control Panel 24
Submenu mode, and state of the Control Panel 26
Printer Parts 8
Printer Specifications.....72
Printhead 650
Printhead / Please Check.....757
Printhead x / Check Nozzles (x is Left or Right).....756
Printhead x / Replace Printhd (x is Left or Right) ...757
Printheads 650
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS 9) 555
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Mac OS X).....531
Printing Adobe RGB Images (Windows) 489
Printing at full size 305
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS 9) 323
Printing at Full Size (Mac OS X).....320
Printing at Full Size (Windows) 318
Printing banners or at other non-standard sizes 358
Printing CAD Drawings.....438
Printing does not start 689
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER.....276
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Mac OS X).....279
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 280
Registering a hot folder on your computer 279
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 280
Printing Enlargements of Scanned Originals from a Color imageRUNNER (Windows).....277, 512
Completing the scanning settings on the Color imageRUNNER. 278, 513
Registering a hot folder on your computer 277, 512
Scanning the original and print an enlargement 278, 513
Printing enlargements or reductions.....273
Printing from Mac OS 9 92
Printing from the application software 93
Selecting the printer 92
Printing from Mac OS X.....90
Printing from the application software 91
Registering the printer.....90
Printing from Photoshop.....448
Using the Plug-in to Print.....448
Using the Printer Driver to Print.....448
Printing from Windows 89
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light.....636
Printing in Ideal Colors for Light in the Viewing Environment 218, 631
By selecting color tones on Charts before printing.....218, 631
Printing in Colors Matching the Measured Ambient Light 218, 631
Printing is faint.....697
Printing Large Posters (Mac OS 9) 387
Printing Large Posters (Windows).....385
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS 9) 212, 249, 443
Easy Settings 212
Print Target.....212
Print targets for line drawings and text.....212
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Mac OS X).....247, 441
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows) 245, 439
Printing Line Drawings and Text (Windows, Mac OS X) 211
Easy Settings 211
Print Target.....211
Print targets for line drawings and text.....211

Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other 380
Free Layout (Windows) 380
imagePROGRAF Free Layout (Macintosh) 381
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Mac OS X) 391
Printing Multiple Originals Next to Each Other (Windows) 389
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously 382
Roll paper (banner) 382
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS 9) 396
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Mac OS X) 394
Printing Multiple Pages Continuously (Windows) 393
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet 383
Page Layout 383
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS 9) 403
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Mac OS X) 400
Printing Multiple Pages Per Sheet (Windows) 398
Printing Office Documents 213
Easy Settings 213
Print Target 213
Print targets for office documents 213
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS 9) 255
Printing Office Documents (Mac OS X) 253
Printing Office Documents (Windows) 251
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes 359
Registering non-standard paper size in the printer driver 359
Specifying custom media sizes for temporary use 359
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS 9) 366
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Mac OS X) 364
Printing on Non-Standard Paper Sizes (Windows) 360
Printing by using Custom Media Size 361
Printing by using Custom Size 360
Printing on Oversized Paper 305
Oversize 305
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 88
Paper Size 88
Printing Options Using Rolls and Sheets 88
Rolls and Sheets 88
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls 405
Centering originals relative to roll paper width .405
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS 9) ...412
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Mac OS X) ..409
Printing Originals Centered on Rolls (Windows) 407
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets 406
Centering originals on sheets 406
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS 9) 419
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Mac OS X) 417
Printing Originals Centered on Sheets (Windows) 415
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS 9) 209, 262
Easy Settings 209
Print Target 209
Print targets for photos and images 209
Printing Photos and Images (Mac OS X) 259
Printing Photos and Images (Windows) 257
Printing Photos and Images (Windows, Mac OS X) 207
Easy Settings 207
Print Target 207
Print targets for photos and images 207
Printing Photos in Monochrome 219
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS 9) 270
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Mac OS X) 267
Printing Photos in Monochrome (Windows) 265
Printing Posters in Sections 384
Page Layout 384
Printing procedure 80
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing) 358
Fit Roll Paper Width 358
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS 9) 376
Print the banner 377
Register a Custom Media Size 376
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Mac OS X) 373
Print the banner 374
Register a Custom Page Size 373
Printing Vertical or Horizontal Banners (Large-Format Printing; Windows) 369
Creating the banner in the application 370
Printing the banner 370
Registering a Custom Media Size 369
Printing With Watermarks 445
Watermark 445
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Mac OS 9) 463
Printing with Watermarks-COPY, FILE COPY, and so on (Windows) 461
Problems with the printing quality 697

Problems with the printing quality caused by the type of paper 702

R

Reducing Dust from Cutting Rolls 134
Remove paper 742
Cannot Feed / Press ↑ Key 742
Removing Heavyweight Paper from the Front Paper Feed Slot 196
Removing Installed Printer Drivers 707
Removing imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility (Windows) 707
Removing imagePROGRAF Status Monitor (Windows) 707
Removing printer drivers (Windows) 707
Removing Printer Drivers and imagePROGRAF Printmonitor (Macintosh) 707
Removing Paper from the Cassette 171
Removing Roll from the Roll Feed Unit 122
Removing Rolls From the Roll Holder 117
Removing Sheets from the Top Paper Feed Slot 172, 195
Removing the Roll Feed Unit 147
Repl Consumables 761
Replacing Ink Tanks 642
Compatible Ink Tank 642
Precautions when handling an Ink Tank 642
Replacing an Ink Tank 643
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 661
Compatible Maintenance Cartridge 661
Precautions when handling the Maintenance Cartridge 661
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge 662
Replacing the Printhead 653
Compatible Printhead 653
Precautions when handling the Printhead 653
Replacing the Printhead 654
When to replace the Printhead 653
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value 275
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 275
Scaling 275
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS 9) 286
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Mac OS X) 283
Resizing Originals by Entering a Scaling Value (Windows) 281
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width 274
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 274
Fit Roll Paper Width 274
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS 9) 295
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Mac OS X) 292
Resizing Originals to Fit the Roll Width (Windows) 290
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size 273
Enlarged/Reduced Printing 273
Fit Media Size 273
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS 9) 302
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Mac OS X) 300
Resizing Originals to Match the Paper Size (Windows) 298
Responding to Messages 729
Error messages (if action can be taken) 729
Error messages (if no action can be taken) 729
Other Messages 730
Warning messages 729
Roll Holder Set 70, 143
Roll P Unit / Please Check 748
Roll Paper / Please Replace 738
Paper Level Low / Replace Paper 738
Paper Not Loaded / Press ↑ Key 738
Roll paper cannot be inserted into the Paper Feed Slot 726
Roll Paper Chk / Check Width/Spcr 743
Roll Paper Unit Cover (Inside) 13
Roll Selected / Load Roll 749
Roller marks are left across the trailing edge of paper 705, 725

S

Selecting the Cassette as the Paper Source 154
Selecting the Paper Size (Cassette) 170
Selecting the Paper Size (Tray) 193
Selecting the Paper Type (Cassette) 167
Selecting the Paper Type (Roll) 124
Selecting the Paper Type (Tray) 168, 191
Selecting the Roll as the Paper Source 114
Selecting the Tray as the Paper Source 155, 182
Settings Summaries Dialog Box (Windows) 471
Sharing the Printer in Windows 594
Sheets Loaded / Press ↓ To Eject 740
Software 465
Special Settings Dialog Box (Mac OS 9) 567
Special Settings Dialog Box (Windows) 514

Specifications 72
Ink....74
Interface 73
Maximum stacking capacity 76
Paper....75
Paper capacity (Cassette) 76
Printer....72
Printing performance 73
Specifying NetWare Print Services....587
Choosing the type of print services 587
Using NWADMIN or PCONSOLE to set up the print server 588
Specifying NetWare Protocols....590
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver 688
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS 9) ...98
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Mac OS X) ..96
Specifying Paper in the Printer Driver (Windows) 94
Specifying Printer-Related Information....579
Specifying the Cutting Method for Rolls 130
Eject (waiting for ink to dry after printing) 131
Manual (when using paper or media that cannot be cut using the Cutter Unit) 132
Paper Cutting (to have the roll cut at your specified position)....133
Specifying the Ink Drying Time for Rolls....135
Mac OS 9 137
Mac OS X 136
Windows....135
Specifying the Paper Length (Roll)....125
Specifying the Printer's Frame Type....584
Specifying the Frame Type Using imagePROGRAF Device Setup Utility....584
Specifying the Frame Type Using the Printer Control Panel....585
Stand 69
Status Print....62
Checking the information in the Status Print report 63
Printing Status Print Reports....62
Submenu Display 60
Cassette paper size....60
Cassette type 60
Manual Paper Size 61
Manual Paper Type 61
Remaining ink levels and Maintenance Cartridge capacity 60
Roll: width and remaining length 61
Roll: width and type 61
Support Pane (Mac OS X)....530
Support Sheet (Windows) 485
Switching Modes 27
Switching the Printer Online/Offline....27
Switching to Menu Mode 28

T

The back side of the paper is dirty 700
The contrast becomes uneven during printing 700
The Data lamp on the Control Panel does not light up 689
The Display Screen indicates the system is filling with ink 689
The edges of the paper are dirty 699
The Front Tray Guides are in the Front Paper Feed Slot. 726
The IEEE 1394 Driver Cannot Be Installed Correctly 706
The length of printed images is inaccurate....702
The printer consumes a lot of ink 724
The printer does not go on 725
The Printer Does Not Respond Even if Print Jobs are Sent....689
The printer ejects blank, unprinted paper....696
The printer stops during a print job....696
The remaining level of the following ink cannot be correctly detected. 753
The surface of the paper is dirty....700
Tiling and multiple pages per sheet....380
Top Cover (Inside) 11
Top Cover / Please Close....759
Tray Feed Area....12
Tray Selected 740
Troubleshooting....686
Turning the Printer On and Off 20
Turning the printer off 21
Turning the printer on 20
Types of Paper 107
Updating paper information 110
Viewing the Paper Reference Guide 107

U

Updating the Firmware 685
Confirming the firmware version....685
Updating the firmware 685
Using Color Calibration to Adjust Colors 628
Using Favorites 447
Favorites....447

Using Favorites (Mac OS 9) 553
Printing using the favorite 554
Registering a favorite 553
Using Favorites (Mac OS X) 530
Using Favorites (Windows) 472
Printing using the favorite 473
Registering a favorite 472
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals 449
Edit Using PosterArtist 449
Using PosterArtist to Compose Originals (Windows) 487
Using RemoteUI 580
Using the Output Stacker 201
Utility Pane (Mac OS X) 527
Utility Sheet (Windows) 484

V

Vents 18
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS 9) 568
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Mac OS X) 540
View Settings Dialog Box for the Printing Application (Windows) 515
Viewing Videos of Explanations 3

W

When to Replace Ink Tanks 649
Before print jobs and maintenance that consume a lot of ink 649
If a message for checking the ink is shown on the Display Screen 649
If a message for ink replacement is shown on the Display Screen 649
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge 668
If a message for checking the Maintenance Cartridge is shown on the Display Screen 668
If a message for the Maintenance Cartridge replacement is shown on the Display Screen 668
When much of the Maintenance Cartridge capacity is depleted 668
White dots about 1 mm (0.039 in) apart appear on printed documents, in the direction paper is fed 704
Windows 465

©CANON INC. 2007